



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



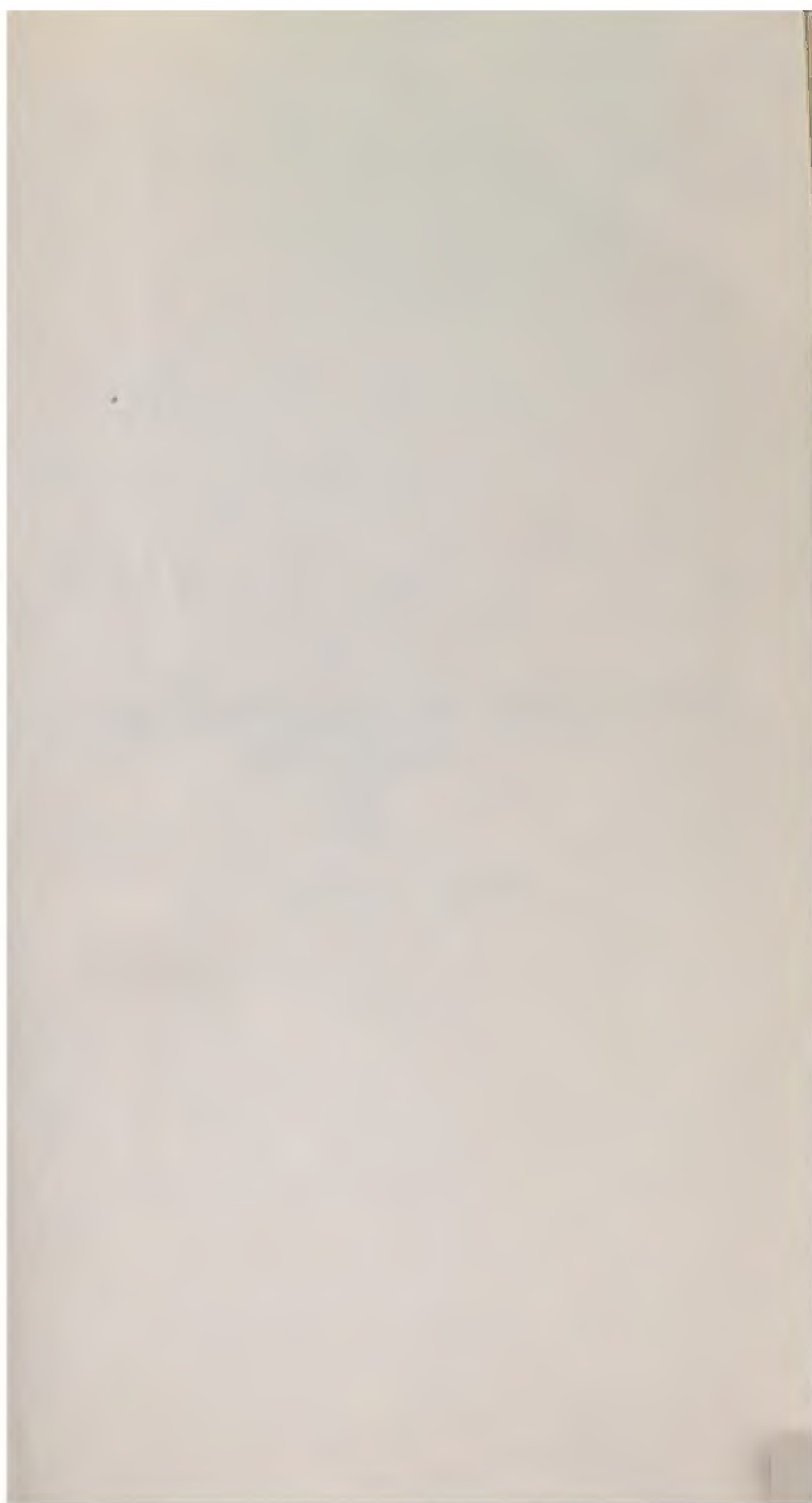














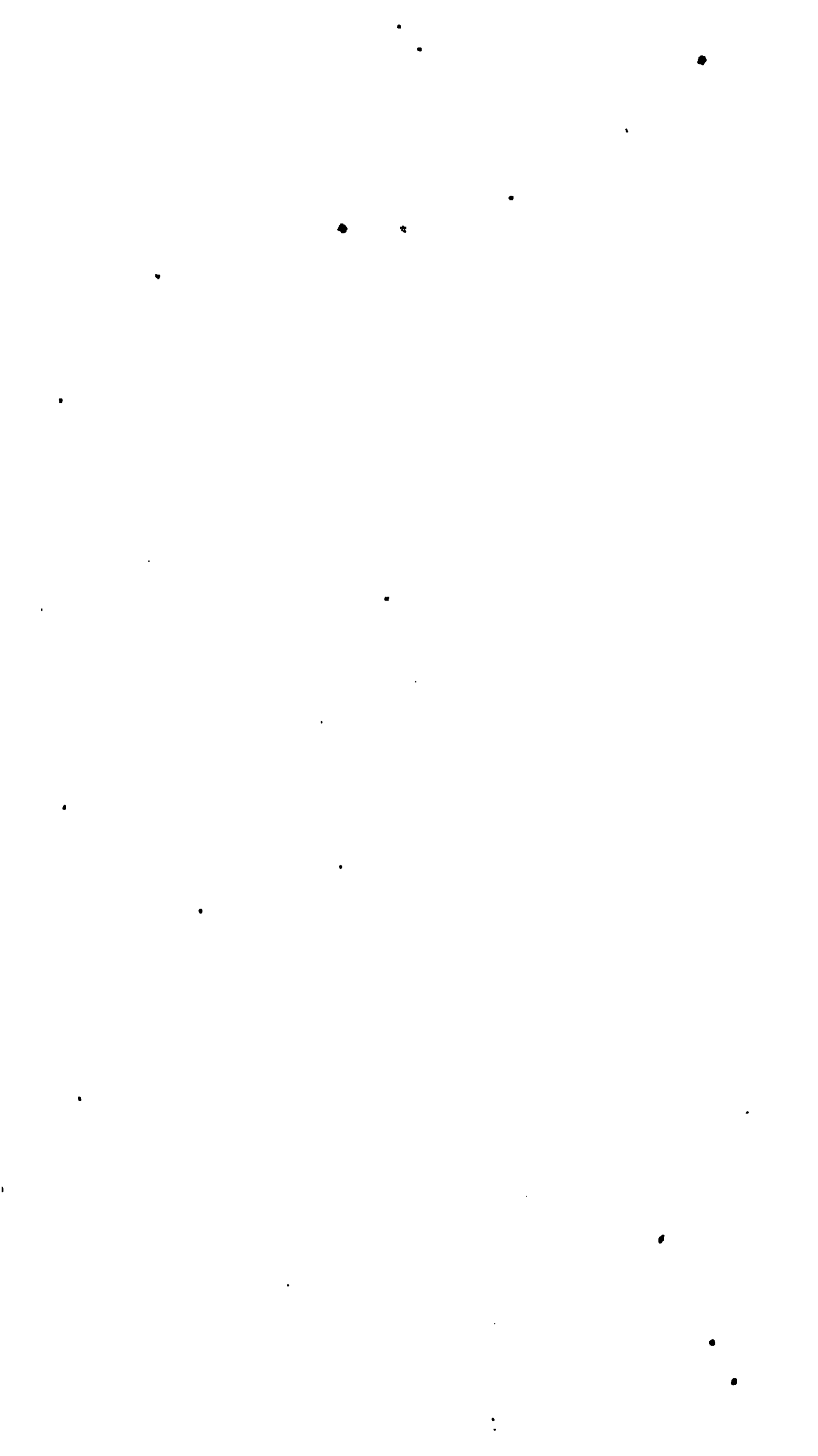
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.



THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS
OF
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

ON the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the plan for each Chronicle and historical document should be printed in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from the best MSS., and that no notes should be inserted except such as were illustrative of the value of the original. They suggested, however, that the preface to each volume should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,
December 1857.*

CHRONICA

MAGISTRI ROGERI DE
HOUEDENE.

EDITED

BY

WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., -

REGIUS PROFESSOR OF MODERN HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,
FELLOW OF ORIEL COLLEGE, AND SOMETIME LIBRARIAN
TO THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.

VOL. III.

No. 51 v.3

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON: LONGMAN & CO., AND TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER ROW;

ALSO BY

PARKER & CO., OXFORD; AND MACMILLAN & CO.,
CAMBRIDGE.

1870.

106137

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

YIARU
W. COOPER & CO. LTD.
STATIONERS

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE - - - - -	vii
APPENDICES TO PREFACE:	
MONACHUS FLORENTINUS DE EXPUGNATIONE	
CIVITATIS ACCONENSIS - - -	cv
EXTRACTA EX ANSBERTO - - -	cxxxvii
CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOVEDEN -	1



P R E F A C E .



P R E F A C E.

THE history of the first three years of the reign of Richard I. was included by the author or editor of the "Gesta Regis Henrici," or "Chronicle of Benedict," in the work which forms the basis of the Compilation of Roger of Hoveden on the same period. The present volume containing the History of England and Richard from 1189 to the end of 1195, embraces this common portion, which fills about half of it. It will be desirable in order to complete the collation of the two authors attempted in the preface of the second volume, to notice briefly their principal variations, before proceeding to the more general historical considerations proper to this place. In doing this it is unnecessary to advert to the passages omitted by Hoveden in copying the earlier chronicle, except where they illustrate some point of importance or throw light on his additions and alterations. In the notes to this edition, as well as in the notes and margin of the Chronicle of Benedict which has preceded it in the present series, these have been carefully marked, and their general bearing already stated. The same indeed may be said of the alterations and additions of Hoveden, to which, wherever they touch questions of authorship or of chronology, attention has been given in the notes. The following is an attempt only at a classification of these places :—

Contents of
this volume.

Comparison
of Hoveden
with his
predecessor.

1. The most important of Hoveden's additions are those which are concerned with the doings of Hugh de Puiset, bishop of Durham, and Geoffrey, archbishop of

Hoveden's
additions.

Hoveden's
additions
touching
Yorkshire
and Dur-
ham.

York. In these, even in places where our author has added nothing substantial to our information, he has often departed from the language of the previous writer and re-written the story in his own way; and it is clear from the sequel of his history that he was personally acquainted with most of the actors in it, and familiar, so familiar as to be careless occasionally, with the details. Under this head the most important independent additions are the passage (pp. 31, 32) narrating the first outbreak of personal violence between the archbishop and chapter of York; the account of the appointment of Osbert Longchamp to the sheriffdom (p. 34); the grant of Sadberge to the bishop of Durham (p. 38); the opening of the struggle between bishop Hugh and archbishop Geoffrey (pp. 168, 169); and its continuation under the judges delegate (pp. 171, 172). There is very little in Hoveden's way of narrating these circumstances that gives any clue to his real opinions on the subject. Probably he regarded them with the eye of a judicial historian, open to the faults of his heroes, and secure of their criticism. He is occasionally severe on the violence, quarrelsomeness, or underhand dealing of both: and he must have seen that men so unquiet and fickle in their friendships and enmities, were unsafe subject-matter for the praise or blame of a partizan. On the whole we may regard him as a friend of Hugh de Puiset against archbishop Geoffrey, and of Geoffrey against the party of John or of Longchamp, but otherwise an impartial, as he is certainly an unimpassioned, judge.

His addi-
tions on the
struggle of
the Long-
champ
struggle.

2. A second most important, though scanty class of additions to our earlier information is that which includes the few details of the struggle between Longchamp and his rivals for power. The most valuable of these is the copy of the treaty between the two parties chiefly concerned, made at Winchester in July 1191 (pp. 135-137). The letter of Peter of Blois to Hugh of Nunant, up-

braiding him with his treatment of the Chancellor (pp. 148–150), is valuable in its way, but the insertion of it cannot be ascribed to Hoveden, as it is not found in the best MSS., and bears marks of later intrusion in those in which it occurs. The whole details of this interesting crisis will be found examined with some minuteness in the later pages of this Preface, in which I have also embodied such remarks as seemed necessary on the variations between Hoveden and our other authorities, on Richard's plan of governing England in his absence on the Crusade.

Additional letter of Peter of Blois, not inserted by Hoveden.

3. The additional particulars touching the history of the Crusade are minute and numerous, but not very important or contributing much that is not found elsewhere, especially in the "Itinerarium" of Richard the Canon, a book which might very well be within Hoveden's reach. Some of these are interesting as indicating our author's love of the marvellous, particularly the story of the breaking of Richard's staff on the occasion of his investiture as a pilgrim at Tours (p. 36); and some of the details of the King's discussion with Abbot Joachim (pp. 75, 79). Of the actual additions to our knowledge the mention of the pope's brief, empowering Richard to grant licences of dispensation from the vow of the Crusade (p. 17); the short mention of Richard's visit to Gascony, which is also hinted at by Richard of Devizes,¹ and fixed to certain dates by existing charters (p. 35); the repairing of the ships at Messina, which had suffered from the devastations of the worm peculiar to the Sicilian Waters (p. 71); the

Additions on the history of the crusade.

¹ Ed. Stevenson, p. 12. "Regem reversum a Vasconia, ubi latrunculos armis dejecerat." This must be the visit referred to by Hoveden, iii. 35., and be placed between Easter and June. Richard, according to the letter preserved by R. de Diceto, 655, was at Bayonne

on the 6th of June. This must then have been a second visit to his southern provinces, and is to be distinguished from the earlier one, during which the two charters were issued at La Reole, in February, to which reference is made in the note on Ben. Pet. ii. 109.

Hoveden's
additions on
the history
of the crusade.

story of Isaac Comnenus, preserved at page 110; the negotiations with the Mesopotamian princes before and after the capture of Acre, which do not agree with the corresponding details in Benedict (pp. 115, 118); the letters of Richard containing the account of the battle of Arsouf (pp. 129-133); and the corrected version of the news from Palestine in the winter of 1191 (p. 181), may be regarded as the most valuable. Hoveden seems to have paid very careful attention to the history of the Crusade; his version of the Assize drawn up for the conduct of the pilgrims at Messina, is more full than his predecessor's (pp. 58-60); and he likewise gives a more complete copy of the treaty between Richard and Tancred, in which the former writer had retrenched the names of the sureties (p. 62). In these points, as well as in the few additional names of places on Richard's route (pp. 39, 41), the matter is a little complicated by the fact to which in the earlier prefaces I have more than once adverted, that our only MS. of Benedict in this part of his work was written by a man who had a copy of Hoveden before him; so that it may be questioned whether the discrepancies are to be ascribed to his habit of omitting or to Hoveden's habit of expanding. The general conclusion has been already stated,¹ and the particular cases are remarked upon in the notes as they occur. Of points of coincidence between Hoveden's additions and the Itinerarium, the chief are the identification of Alberic Clement² on the occasion of his martyrdom (p. 117), and the lodging of Philip in the Templars' palace at Acre³ (p. 123). In the numeration of the Saracens massacred after the capture (p. 128), Hoveden nearly doubles the computation of the Itinerarium⁴. His account of Richard's narrow escape from capture at Joppa in September, 1191, is perhaps borrowed from

Points of
agreement
with the
Itinerarium.

¹ See the Preface to Benedict, vol. i. p. xxvi, note ³. Preface to Hoveden, vol. i. p. lvi.

² Itin. R.R., 223.

³ Itin. R.R., 234.

⁴ Itin. R.R., 243.

the same work.¹ But it is not necessary to press these cases, in which there is no correspondence in verbal detail, and in which both writers may have drawn from a common source. Hoveden's list of the deaths of the Crusaders varies in some important points from Benedict's, which is both more full and more accurate, so far as we have the means of judging. Two or three obscure names are added, but several more, and those, curiously enough, which are especially connected with Yorkshire and Lincolnshire are omitted.²

Hoveden's agreement with the Itinerarium.

4. Closely connected with this subject are the details preserved by Hoveden of the journey of Eleanor to Messina and her return by way of Rome. The fact of her undertaking to plead the cause of Geoffrey with pope Celestine III. (p. 100) is especially interesting³; but the importance of the story depends chiefly on its bearing on Hoveden's authority for the particulars touching the coronation of Henry VI., and the destruction of Tusculum (pp. 100-105). In these, as is well known, his testimony stands alone, and is scouted by the foreign historians who have examined the subject. Without venturing to disagree with them, I may say that, after all, Hoveden's informant probably picked up his information on the spot; that not only the queen's retinue, but a number of York clergy must have been at the time at Rome;⁴ and that the recital is not to be regarded as a mere fable, but as one of those traveller's tales, perversions or misrepresentations of real events, of which the

Eleanor's visit to Rome.

Coronation of Henry VI.

¹ Itin. R.R., 286. Bohadin, *V. Saladini*, 203.

² Hoveden, iii. 87-89. Ben. Pet. ii. 149.

³ I must here correct an error which I made in editing Benedict, as to the purpose of Eleanor's visit to Rome, B. P. ii. 161 note ¹; where for *prevent* should be read *procure*.

⁴ See Gir. Cambr. V. Galfr. :

Anglia Sacra, ii. 387. The mere improbability of an event which could be witnessed only by a very limited circle of bystanders is no objection to its truth. What could be more improbable than that the peer who rolled down the steps of the throne at Queen Victoria's coronation should be Lord Rolle?

Information
about Rome.

Roman cicerone has been in all ages somewhat prolific. That Hoveden, moreover, had information about and took interest in the secular government of Rome appears later on from his account of the senatorship (p. 270).

Spanish
geography

5. Next to these may be noted the numerous particulars of Spanish geography and history, which are given by our author in addition to the somewhat full details of the same sort found in the work of his predecessor. They are too numerous and far too remote from our immediate subject to be considered here; but considering the scarcity of our information on the point and the poverty of all attempts at a map of Mediæval Spain, the perfect survey of the seaboard given at p. 47 and the following pages, and also at p. 177, must be of considerable value. The story of the loves of Sancho of Navarre and the Moorish princess is less important, except as showing how very short a time is taken in the process of the circumstantial elaboration of a myth.¹

Statements
attributing
Richard's
captivity.

6. It is not necessary to do more than refer here to the passages in which the events that preceded Richard's captivity are read by Hoveden by the light of those which followed it; especially the visit of Philip to Rome and his negotiations with Henry VI. On these points, as they affect the relation between Hoveden and the earlier writer, enough has been said in the prefaces to Benedict and to the first volume of Hoveden.²

Hoveden's
habit of
massing his
information.

7. I have called attention in the notes to several places in which Hoveden, by massing the information which he abridged from his predecessor's work, has either run into error, or at all events given a different impression from that given by the earlier writer. The most important instances are those at p. 7, touching the honours bestowed on John, and at p. 23, in which the dates of the consecrations of the new bishops of 1189 are confused. It is more than probable that some such carelessness has led to

¹ See pages 90-92.

² Hoveden, i. pref. lxxi. Ben.

Pet. i. pref. xxviii, xliii, xliv;
ii. 229. Itin. R.R. pref. xxxix.

the difficulties attending his account of the committees of regency appointed at different times by Richard before his departure on the Crusade, on which more will be said by-and-by.

It has produced confusion here and there.

8. I may mention here one place in which Hoveden seems to have corrected a mistake of his predecessor. The latter writer giving an account of the council held by Richard in London, in November 1189, mentions William Mandeville as one of the persons who swore in the king's name to observe his engagement with Philip for the opening of the Crusade. Now William Mandeville had in the previous month been sent to Normandy, where he died on the 14th of November. It is then almost certain that in substituting the name of William Marshall for that of William Mandeville our author has made a decided improvement on the text of his exemplar. At the same time it is quite possible that the error is merely one of transcription. The singularity of the case speaks highly for the authority of the earlier book.¹

An error corrected by Hoveden.

9. There remains a class of small additions not referable to any single head, such as the mention of the confiscation of the goods of Geoffrey Ridel,² bishop of Ely, who died intestate (p. 7), and the bestowal of the deanery of S. Martin-le-Grand on William of S. Mere l'Eglise (p. 16). These may fairly be considered as contributions from Hoveden's personal knowledge of the facts, as they are not noticed in Benedict. Closely akin to these are such minute additions, as the explanation of the name of Finisterre, as "de fine Posternæ."³ The older writer contented himself with the obvious explanation "de finibus Terræ." Hoveden possibly had drawn his new one from Jordan Fantosme, who makes

Minute additions.

¹ Hoveden, iii. 20. Ben. Pet. ii. 93.

² It is mentioned also by R. de Diceto, 647; and by Gervase, 1549, who remarks that the bishop's trea-

sures were squandered on buffoons; 8,200 marka being spent on the coronation.

³ Hoveden, iii. 42. Ben. Pet. ii. 116.

Derivation
of Finis-
terre.

Account of
the corona-
tion of
Richard.

Hoveden's
additions
unimport-
tant.

Henry II. say in one place that the barons of Brittany are in his power, "tres qu'en fine Busterne."¹ He has, however, if this be so, confounded Finisterre in Spain with Finistère in Brittany. In his account of the coronation of Richard, Hoveden interpolates two or three particulars: the spreading of woollen cloth all the way from the king's chamber to the altar (p. 9); the offering of a mark of gold as the regular oblation of the king on such occasions (p. 11);² and the explanation of the anointing in its symbolical meaning (p. 10). Of these the first is possibly a fact of his own knowledge; the second he would find in the rubric of the coronation service; and the third is a repetition of an explanation laid down by S. Thomas in a letter given in a previous part of the work.³ The discrepancies occurring in the two accounts of the ceremony are remarked on in the notes. Some little attention is required in the examination of such minute points, in which it will be found that Hoveden generally adds only matter of extremely small importance; and even where he seems to be adding, often only quotes from another page of his original. An instance of this habit will be found at page 167,⁴ where his fixing the position of Godstow as between Oxford and Woodstock, is not an addition made from his knowledge of the country but simply to be ascribed to the transposition of the clause from another part of Benedict's work.⁵

¹ Jordan Fantome's Chronicle, v. 141 (ed. Michel, Surtees Soc., p. 9.)

² Compare the rubric "Deinde offeret marcam auri" in the early coronation office given by Maskell, Monumenta Ritualia, iii. 42. The order for the coronation may also have contained the mention of the cloth spread for the procession to walk on, as in the case in the office for the coronation of a queen (*ibid.*

p. 53), and in the order for the coronation of Richard II. (*ibid.* 68).

³ Compare the letter of Becket, Hoveden, i. 234.

⁴ See Ben. Pet. ii. 231.

⁵ Benedict, ii. 240. The same may be said of his notice of the death of Ralph Hauterive, archdeacon of Colchester, Hoveden, iii. 87. The name had been given before, p. 70, from Benedict, ii. 142.

10. The two largest independent additions made to the earlier book are the two chapters on Antichrist (pp. 80–86), of which enough is said in the notes; and the hymn on the opening of the Crusade, at page 37. After careful investigation of the probable sources of the latter I have been unable to form any other conjecture as to the authorship than that it may have been the work of that Monachus of Florence, who wrote the much longer poem on the siege of Acre, in the same metre, which I have reprinted in the appendix to this preface.

Chapters on Antichrist.

Poem on the crusade.

This very valuable relic of contemporary history was unknown to me when I edited the *Itinerarium* of Richard the Canon, with whose work it has much in common, and might have been published in connexion. On finding a portion of it in an Oriel manuscript, and almost immediately after, the poem in its integrity, in Herold's Appendix to the continuation of William of Tyre, I determined to prepare it to accompany, by way of commentary, the present account of Richard's Crusade. Between that time and the present it was printed privately by M. Paul E. D. Riant, at Lyons; and I have had the benefit of his collations and valuable literary researches as to its authorship. Whilst I am obliged to differ in some respects from his conclusions, I think it right to put on record how very much I admire his careful investigation, and the exhaustive manner in which he has treated the subject.

Appendix to the Preface.

1. Monachus Florentinus.

A second appendix will be found to contain an extract from the chronicle of Ansbert, giving the Austrian account of Richard's capture, transfer and release; and comprising also a document necessary to the completion of the series given by Hoveden on the subject.¹

2. Extract from Ansbert.

¹ I had intended adding a third appendix from the early French Chronicle extant in the MS., C.C.C.C., 432, which may be called

a romance of the History of Europe during the period of the crusades. The MS. is of the thirteenth century and is a better version of the little

Notice of
the MSS. of
Hoveden.

The mutual relations of the MSS. used in the preparation of this edition of Hoveden, and described in the preface to the first volume, continue to be throughout the present portion of the work much the same as before. MSS. B., D., and I., generally agree, except where D. has omitted or abridged, often from carelessness. MS. G. continues to be a faithful and intelligent transcript of A., until nearly the close of the volume, where it begins to abridge documents in a way that detracts much from its value, and which becomes more marked as we approach the end of the work. MS. C. is so much abridged, and so imperfect, as to be absolutely useless for the purpose of collation.

A mistake
noted by Sir
F. Madden.

Before finishing the literary portion of the preface I must be allowed to thank Sir Frederick Madden¹ for having pointed out a mistake into which I had fallen through too hasty generalization: I said in the preface to the first volume that the work of Hoveden was unknown to Roger of Wendover and Matthew Paris.² This is a misstatement. I believe that it is true to say that for the portion of history common to Hoveden and Benedict, that ending in 1192, these two authors used the latter only. For the later years of Richard's reign they must have used Hoveden, as will appear in detail in the fourth volume. Having carefully examined into the former point, I had unwittingly overlooked the passages towards the end of Hoveden, the language of which is identical with that of Matthew Paris.

How far
Hoveden
was used by
Matthew
Paris and
Roger of
Wendover.

known work published at Paris in 1837 by M. Louis Paris, under the title of "Chronique de Rains." The portion I had selected was the story of the discovery of Richard by the minstrel Blondel; for which this is first authority. On reading over, however, my MS. for the press, the work appeared to me to be too fabu-

lous and frivolous for any part to be introduced into a book of real history, and I content myself with referring the curious reader to M. Paris's edition.

¹ Preface to the *Historia Minor* of Matthew Paris, vol. iii. p. 23.

² Preface to Hoveden, vol. i., p. lxxii.

§

The interest of the internal history of Richard's reign is only very slightly indebted to the personal action of the king. His influence is felt only as a remote and varying pressure, affecting the amount and impact of taxation, the placing and displacing of ministers. The island kingdom, irrespective of its function as supplying revenue, lies very much out of the sphere of his political plans, and owes nothing to any paternal care or special exercise of sagacity on its behalf. He originated no reforms; he did not even interest himself in such things so far as to reverse the measures of his father. He had no policy of government, and for his policy of aggression England satisfied him by contributing money.

Sketch of the early history of Richard I.'s reign.

His personal interest in England.

Henry's early idea of dividing his dominions among his sons had this, among other indirect effects: Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey were exposed to all the temptations of a sovereign position without the absolute liberty of action which would have left them free to find work for themselves. Whilst other princes of their age were learning experience and sowing wild oats in the Crusades, they were exercising substantial power as the colleagues or vassals of their father in England, Normandy, Aquitaine, and Brittany. Their education, such as it was, was carried on amidst the people whom they were to govern, and, as is usual in such cases, their characters were formed by the moral and political tone of their provincial courts. Henry became the ally, the hero and the victim of the feudal party in England and Normandy; Geoffrey developed the Ange-

Early education of Henry's sons.

Provincial influence on their characters.

Richard, his
mother's
child.

vinity—the dishonesty, turbulence, and general want of principle which marked his grandfather's line; Richard, the faults and the brilliancy of the Poictevin. Throughout his life he is amenable in a remarkable way to the personal authority and national influences of his mother.

His birth,
nursure, and
early pro-
spects.

Richard was born in England,¹ and nursed by an Englishwoman;² but there his personal interest in England seems to determine. At a very early age he was marked out as the heir of Eleanor.³ When he was two years old his father planned for him a marriage with the daughter of the queen of Arragon, one of the terms of which was the settlement of the duchy of Aquitaine on the infant couple.⁴ In 1165 his mother brought him from England into Normandy.⁵ At Epiphany 1169 he did homage to Lewis VII. for the duchy of Aquitaine;⁶ the following year he received it as his share of his father's dominions, when,

¹ His birth at Oxford is asserted by Ralph de Diceto, c. 531. The event is placed at Windsor by the author of the chronicle quoted in the next note, but Oxford is more likely. Windsor might easily be substituted for Oxford by one ignorant of the circumstances; not so Oxford for Windsor. The month September, 1157, is mentioned by Robert de Monte, 890 (ed. Struve), and the day "Sexto Idus Septembris" is given in the *Chronicon Andegavense*, published by Labbe, *Bibliotheca MSS.*, I. 276, from a MS. of the monastery of S. Albinus at Angers.

² "Mense Septembri natus est anno MCLVII^o, regi filius Ricardus nomine apud Windleshore; eadem nocte natus est Alexander Necham apud Sanctum Albanum; cujus mater fovit Ricardum ex

"mamilla dextra, sed Alexandrum fovit ex mamilla sua sinistra," MS. in the Lord Arundel's collection, quoted by James in his collections now in the Bodleian, vol. vii. 34. The name of Richard's nurse, whether she was Alexander Neckham's mother or no, was Hodierna. She had an estate in land of seven pounds a year at Chippenham, and the parish of Knoyle Hodierna in Wiltshire still preserves her name. Rot. Claus. Hen. III. (ed. Hardy) i. 416. This could not have been the whole of her property, for her land in 30 Hen. III. was talliaged at 40s.

³ Gir. Camb. De Inst. Pr. lb. fil. c. 8.

⁴ Rob. de Monte (ed. Struve), 892.

⁵ *Ibid.* 900.

⁶ *Ibid.* 905.

in the expectation of death, Henry, at Mote de Ger, ^{He becomes Duke of Aquitaine in 1171.} divided them among his elder sons.¹ In 1171 he joined with his mother in laying the foundation of the church of S. Augustine at Limoges.² On Trinity Sunday the same year he was installed as duke in the abbatial seat of S. Hilary at Poitiers, receiving the lance and banner from the bishop John of Poitiers, and the archbishop of Bourdeaux, and having the hymn, "O princeps egregie," sung in procession. The same year he was invested at Limoges with the ring of S. Valeria, the protomartyr of the Gauls;³ and in 1173 he received the homage of the count of Toulouse, being then sixteen.⁴

By that unhappy fate which attended his family, he ^{His wars with his father.} fought his first campaign as duke of Aquitaine, against his father, under the influence of his mother and her advisers Ralph de Fai and Lewis VII.⁵ From the time of the pacification Richard, unlike his elder brother, recovered his hold on his share of the inheritance, and from his eighteenth year administered Aquitaine with very slight control from his father.⁶ In the apparently

¹ Ben. Pet. i. 7.

² Geoff. Vigeois, Labbe, Bibl. Manusc. ii. 318:—"Monasterium Sancti Augustini Lemovicis inceptum est construi. Tempore illo Regina Alienor cum filio Ricardo Lemovicæ forte cum esset, lapides in fundamento primos jecerunt."

³ Geoff. Vigeois, Labbe, ii. 318:—"Tempore illo rex Henricus senior filio Ricardo ex voluntate matris Aquitanorum tradidit ducatum. Post hæc apud Sanctum Hilarium Pictavis Dominica post Pentecosten, juxta consuetudinem, in abbatis sedem elevatur, sed a Bertramo Burdegalensi et Johanne Pictavensi præsulibus lancea ei

"cum vexillo præbetur, et ad processionem cantatur *O princeps egregie* Procedenti tempore Ricardus Lemovicæ veniens in urbe cum processione suscipitur, annulo Sanctæ Valeriæ decoratur novusque dux ab omnibus proclamatur."

⁴ Ben. Pet. i. 36. Geoff. Vig. (ap. Labbe, ii. 319) gives the day Feb. 25.

⁵ Ben. Pet. i. 42.

⁶ In 1175, Ben. Pet. i. 81. Ralph de Diceto places the date of his creation as duke of Aquitaine in his 23rd year 1179, R. Dic. 675; but he was in active employment there long before.

Richard's
government
of Aquitaine
during his
father's life.

conflicting statements of Giraldus that during this period he showed great powers of organization, reducing the disorderly nobles to subjection, extending the boundaries, and improving the laws of his states;¹ and those of Benedict and Thomas Agnellus,² that he governed capriciously and tyrannically, that he was "malus omnibus, suis peior, pessimus sibi,"³ we trace an element of agreement. His policy was, like his father's, directed to the humiliation of the barons who had enjoyed under the weak and luxurious princes who preceded Eleanor an almost unbridled licence; and to the creation of a really independent sovereignty. The complaints of his treatment of the wives and daughters of the nobles, show, if they were true, that he followed in other respects the traditions of his mother's house too faithfully. By the barons of Aquitaine the younger Henry, who had been the stalking horse of the baronage in Normandy and England, was called in against Richard.⁴ His death opened the way for his brother to higher honours, but Richard's relations with the great vassals of the duchy were throughout his life the same; and the stand which during his father's life he made against them without help from abroad abundantly vindicates his character for perseverance and military skill. The lords of Saintonge, the counts of Angoulême, the viscounts of Limoges,⁵

¹ De Inst. Fr. iii. 8 :—"Terram
"hactenus indomitam in tenera
"estate tanta virtute rexit et domuit,
"ut non tantum ipsam per omnes
"ejus anfractus longe plenius et
"tranquillus solito pacificaret,
"verum etiam mutilata dudum et
"dispersa reintegrans, strenua
"virtute pristinos in status singula
"revocaret. In formam igitur
"informia redigens, in normam
"enormis quæque reducens, fortis
"confundens et aspera complansans,

"antiquos Aquitanis terminos et
"jura reformavit."

² See the passage quoted in the
preface to Hoveden, vol. ii. p. lvii.

³ Ben. Pet. l. 292.

⁴ Richard's enemies are the same
throughout his career. They are
enumerated by Benedict, l. 115,
and much of their history may be
learned from Geoffrey of Vigeois.
The barons of Poitou seem to have
had an admitted right of making
private war; at least Richard on

with a wide network of alliances amongst the almost inaccessible lordships of the Pyrenees, afforded him work and discipline enough, not to speak of the claims on Auvergne and Toulouse, which could, if enforced, have brought only an empty homage. Two short visits, one in 1176,¹ and another in 1184,² seem to be the sum of his opportunities for making acquaintance with England, during the twenty years that preceded his accession to the crown.

He visits England only twice before his accession.

Untrained to English ways, and exempt for the most part from the influence of English factions, Richard must have seen that his best policy was to leave the kingdom alone, to be governed on his father's principles, and to develop resources which might enrich him without giving him trouble. But he must have underrated the personal influence of his father if he trusted that the institutions which he had created would act by themselves, or answer to the handling of new, inexperienced workmen. Henry's influence had been felt directly everywhere, and his servants had been educated under him, or had grown with him into the knowledge of their work. Richard's first attempt was to manage by new men a system which was far from maturity, and would not bear rough or indiscriminate usage. The elements which had supplied Henry's early difficulties survived, although weakened and disarmed. Much of

He attempts to rule the kingdom by new ministers.

one occasion alleged it to Philip as an excuse for not using compulsion with them (Hoveden, iii. 255); but this must be distinguished from the constant trouble which the *mala consuetudines* of the Pyrenean counts and barons gave him, who were really patrons of banditti who lived on the plunder of pilgrims to Compostella. See Ben. Pet. i. 132. Ric. Devizes, p. 12. Hoveden, iii. 35, 36.

¹ In 1176 he landed on Good Friday at Southampton, spent Easter at Winchester, and almost immediately returned to Poictou. Ben. Pet. i. 115, 120.

² In 1184 he came to England in November, stayed over Christmas, which he spent at Windsor with the king, and sailed from Dover before New Year's Day 1185. Ben. Pet. i. 319, 333, 334.

His system was a rude tent of his father's policy.

the influence which his great ministers exercised over the baronage was personal quite as much as official. It might be a question whether after his guiding hand was removed, the old administrators could have successfully maintained their position and his policy. Richard's initial measures, and the results which followed them during the years which he spent on crusade and in captivity, were such as to try very cruelly the fabric which his father had raised.

The history of the reign is really the history of the ministers.

The English history of the reign is then the history not of Richard, but of his ministers; of the administrations of his four successive justiciars, William Longchamp,¹ Walter of Coutances, Hubert Walter, and Geoffrey FitzPeter. The importance of the first two of these is of a political, that of the latter, of a constitutional character. But the survey of a period which coming between Henry II. and John, must necessarily have witnessed a great growth of national life, and which contains other elements of interest which have engrossed the attention of contemporaneous and later historians, to the exclusion of the less romantic topics, deserves examination in detail.

His independent choice of ministers, and provision for John and Geoffrey.

The seeds of the difficulties of the first three years of the reign were sown by Richard himself during the few months that followed his coronation, in the choice of the ministers who were to govern England during the crusade, and in the measures taken for securing the good behaviour of John and Geoffrey. In neither of these respects can Richard be charged with any greater fault than political short-sightedness. The events that illus-

¹ William Longchamp was chief justiciar either solely or with colleagues from Dec. 11, the day of Richard's departure, to October 10, 1191, when he was compelled to vacate the post. Walter of Coutances held the office from Oct. 10,

1191, to the time of his departure to Germany in, January 1194. Hubert Walter from January 1194 to July 31, 1198. Geoffrey FitzPeter from that time to his death in 1213.

trate them begin from the very moment of his father's funeral.

No sooner was the body of Henry consigned to the tomb at Fontevraud than the question arose how were the new and old relations of his successor to be reconciled; how was he to treat those who had been faithful to his father on principles which would make them not less faithful to himself, and how to reward those who had been his friends on principles which would from the moment of his succession make them his enemies. First and foremost of these classes came his brothers, the faithful Geoffrey and the faithless John; after them the whole roll of the baronage; on the one side, Ranulf Glanvill and Stephen of Turnham, with the rest of Henry's servants; on the other, Ralph of Fougères, Juell of Mayenne,¹ and the rest who had deserted the father to make capital in the service of the son. Richard's first thought was to revenge himself on his father's friends; but it was a short-lived idea, and gave way so soon to better feelings that the two on whom the first brunt of his hasty anger fell, seem to have become, as soon as their punishment was over, his most faithful friends.² Stephen Turnham³ and Ranulf Glanvill⁴ were compelled to purchase his goodwill by heavy fines; but those paid, the former was restored to his post as steward of Anjou, and Glanvill, although he was not suffered to retain the justiciarship, attended the court as a counsellor until his departure for the crusade, on which he died. Towards those who had deserted Henry in his last difficulties, Richard adopted different conduct: dispossessed them of their estates, and treated them as his own enemies. The lords of Fougères and Mayenne continued during his

Richard's treatment of his father's friends and enemies.

He exacts money from the former.

and punishes the latter.

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 72.

² See Ben. Pet. ii. 76.

³ Ric. Devizes, pp. 6-8. See also Ben. Pet. ii. 71, 72, where the king is said to have broken off the

marriage of Stephen's son on account of the inferiority of his birth.

⁴ Ric. Deviz., pp. 6-8.

Opposition
in Anjou.

reign, as they and their ancestors had done constantly before, to lead the baronial opposition in Brittany, Maine, and Anjou.

He attempts
to make
peace the
interest of
all parties :

The requirements of revenge and justice being satisfied, the new sovereign seems to have determined to bind to himself by gifts and promises all the leaders, or would-be leaders, of the parties which his own quarrels with his father had, if not created, at least furnished with opportunities for organization. As soon as he was invested with the duchy of Normandy he began

provides for
John and
Geoffrey :

to make a lavish provision for John; he renewed the promise of the archbishopric of York to Geoffrey, and he proposed to pay to Philip not only the 20,000*l.* with which Henry had purchased peace, but 4,000*l.* more to indemnify him for the expenses of the war; this done, the two undertook to meet early in 1190, and proceed to the crusade together. The provision made for John on this occasion was the bestowal of the county of Mortain, in Normandy, which had been the property of king Stephen, and had escheated on the death of his son William in 1159,¹ and the promise of a revenue of 4,000*l.* a year² from lands in England, with

and pays
money to
Philip.

Liberality
to John.

¹ I have remarked at vol. ii. p. 6, on the difficulties attending the statement that John had the county of Mortain before his father's death, made by Hoveden (as an addition to Benedict), and also by Richard of Devizes, who says, "præter comitatum de Moritonic, quem dono patris pridem perceperat." p. 7. William of Newburgh (iv. 8.) describes Richard as raising his father's gift. The truth seems to be that Henry had promised the county and that Richard actually bestowed it. Although Count William died in 1159, his sister who married Matthew of Boulogne, carried the claim on the county to him. He died in 1173, and his

daughters do not seem to have made any claim; it was in the king's hands in 1180, and he had in fact bought off Count Matthew's claim in 1168. See Stapleton, Norman Rolls, i. pp. lxxiii, cxxiii. Benedict distinctly says that the county was given by Richard to John on the occasion of his investiture as duke of Normandy, July 20, 1189. B. P. ii. 73.

² Ben. Pet. ii. 73. M. Paris, 152. This promise of 4,000*l.* a year in land, was not regarded as fulfilled by the bestowal of the counties shortly after mentioned, although it is nearly the sum at which their revenues may be valued; we find that in 1195, when John

the completion of the marriage contract with the daughter of the last Earl of Gloucester, the son of Robert, who had been betrothed to John in 1176, and who brought with her by way of dowry the honour of the earldom of Gloucester. John's marriage.

To all this were added, as soon as the brothers arrived in England, the several castles and honours of Marlborough, Lancaster, Ludgarshall, and the Peak, the castle of Bolsover, the town and honour of Nottingham, the honours of Wallingford and Tickhill, and the county of Derby with the Peverell fee.¹ It is to be observed that this enumeration of the endowments should be construed exactly as detailed by Benedict and abridged by Hoveden. In a few cases the castle and honour are given together, but in the more important ones, Tickhill, Wallingford, and the impregnable one of Nottingham,² the honour is given without the castle; the hold of the crown is maintained on these castles as well as that of Gloucester, a matter that has much significance in its relation to later events.³ Not content with this enormous accession of territory, John received in addition, before Richard's departure from England, the counties of Devon, Dorset, Somerset, and Cornwall.⁴ Bestowal of honours and castles on John.

Castles of the honours withheld.

Bestowal of counties.

had been removed from the government of the counties, his income from the exchequer was 8,000*l.* Hoveden, iii. 286. But unfortunately for Richard's character as a liberal brother, the 8,000*l.* are in Angevin money and only equal to 2,000*l.* sterling. However, it is clear that whilst he was in charge of the counties, he was receiving a large sum from the exchequer. R. Devizes, p. 26.

¹ These honours were given before the coronation, Ben. Pet. ii. 78. The money value may be estimated

roughly by reference to the roll of the 3rd of John, when Wallingford is worth 80*l.*, Tickhill, 85*l.*, the Peverell fee, 232*l.* 10*s.*; and to the Pipe Roll of 1 Richard I., when the honour of Gloucester is worth 548*l.* 17*s.* 11*d.*, and Lancaster, 251*l.* 5*s.* 10*d.*

² R. Devizes, 30.

³ It is especially noted by Hoveden, iii. 6.

⁴ Bestowed in December. Ben. Pet. ii. 99. The gross values of all these counties, for Richard bestows

Appoint-
ments made
at the coun-
cil of Pipe-
well, to
propitiate
all aues.

Church
appoint-
ments.

Immediately after the coronation Richard held a great council at Pipewell, at which he filled up the vacant church preferments, and changed the sheriffs of the counties in contemplation of the Michaelmas session of the Exchequer. In the former class of appointments we trace the working of several natural influences. His father's servants, Hubert Walter, the nephew of Glanvill; Richard FitzNeal, the treasurer of the Exchequer; Godfrey, the son of Richard of Lucy the loyal,¹ were secured by bishoprics; and William of S. Mere l'Eglise, the prothonotary, by a rich stall at York. To his own personal servant, William Longchamp, he gives a bishopric; to the brother of William Marshall, who had been the intimate friend and companion of his brother Henry, the deanery of York. The old bishop of Durham is propitiated by the bestowal of the treasurer-ship of the same church, which had been held by his cousin S. William and himself, in succession, on his nephew Bouchard de Puiset; and the services of the Champagne connexion, still so strong both in France and in England, were further secured by the nomination of Henry de Soilli,² to the abbacy of Glastonbury. In all these, a prudent regard to existing personal or political interests is distinguishable.

not only the fermes, but all the profits of administration, were in the 1 Rich. I., as follows:—

	£	s.	d.	
Devonshire - -	2,041	12	11	} In all 4,081 <i>l.</i> 9 <i>s.</i> 8 <i>d.</i>
Dorset and Somerset -	1,153	15	1	
Cornwall - -	512	3	11	
Notts and Derbyshire -	373	17	9	

or if the fermes alone be counted,—

	£	s.	d.	
Devonshire - -	312	7	0	} In all 1,345 <i>l.</i> 7 <i>s.</i>
Corawall - -	233	4	1	
Dorset and Somerset	480	0	0	
Notts and Derby	319	15	11	

¹ Jordan Fantosme, p. 71. "Godefridus filius memorandi Ricardi illius de "Luci." R. Devizes, 9.

² Ben. Pet. ii. 85. Hoveden, iii. 15, note 5.

The secular appointments were not bestowed with similar circumspection, although the marriages and wardships in the hands of the crown were distributed on much the same principle. Amongst the latter class of preferments, William Marshall got the heiress of the earldom of Strigul; the son of Roger FitzRainfrai, the heiress of the barony of Kendal;¹ William Longchamp, the wardship of Stephen Beauchamp.² But with the official posts it was otherwise. The place of Ranulf Glanvill was filled by two old statesmen, Hugh de Puiset, bishop of Durham, and William Mandeville, earl of Essex and count, in the right of his wife, of Aumâle, the most faithful servant of Henry II.;³ and this change of the head of the administration was followed by a clean sweep in the sheriffdoms. It is not clear whether this was done at Pipewell, or a fortnight later at the Michaelmas exchequer; probably it was arranged at the former place, and carried into execution in the latter. The changes seem to imply an imprudent desire on Richard's part to carry with him most of the leading members of his father's government; a desire that was aided by the fact that most of these were already under a vow of crusade, which under a king who was himself an ardent crusader, and who had obtained from the pope the privilege of commuting the vows of his subjects for a money payment, was not likely to be re-

Secular preferments.

New justiciars.

New sheriffs.

Most of the barons were under vow of crusade

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 73, 76.

² I mention this because it seems to have been a lucrative piece of preferment. It had been bought by Bertram de Verdun for 200 marks; he sold it to Longchamp for 20 marks' profit. Madox, Hist. Exch., 691. After the chancellor's death his brother Henry had the wardship of the heir of Stephen, and paid 100*l.* for it in the first year of John.

Possibly it was in this way that he became sheriff of Worcestershire, the hereditary sheriffdom of which belonged to the Beauchamps. Rot. de Finibus, 1st John, p. 15.

³ Hoveden adds to Benedict's information that Geoffrey FitzPeter, William Briwere, Robert de Wihtefeld and Roger FitzRainfrai, were associated in the office. See Ben. Pet. ii. 87. Hoveden, iii. 16.

The old king's friends displaced for the new.

deemed without enormous cost.¹ In a few cases some method may be traced. In Yorkshire Ranulf Glanvill gives way to John Marshall, the old king's friend to the new;² in Herefordshire Ralph Arden, Glanvill's son-in-law, is replaced by Henry Longchamp, the chancellor's brother. Such appointments strengthened no doubt the hands of the king's personal friends. Others, however, must have seriously weakened the administration.

Purchase of sheriffdoms and castles.

Amongst these the foremost are the purchase of sheriffdoms by three of the bishops: Hugh de Puiset, of Durham, buys Northumberland for 2,000 marks;³ Godfrey de Lucy, by a single fine, obtained for himself the county of Hampshire, with the castles of Winchester and Porchester, his own inheritance, and indemnity for the treasure of his church;⁴ Hugh of Nunant, bishop of Coventry, was allowed to take for a smaller fine the sheriffdoms of Leicestershire, Stafford-

¹ Of the barons and justices of Henry II.'s reign, Ranulf Glanvill, Bertram de Verdun, Roger Glanvill, Gilbert Pipard, and others, went with the king. Geoffrey Fitz-Peter, William Briwere, and Hugh Bardolf bought of the king a licence to stay at home. *R. Dev.*, p. 8. Hugh Bardolf is mentioned as being at Messina in November, 1190; *Hoveden*, iii. 62; and even William Marshall must have been there early in 1191, if we are to take literally the words of *Benedict*, ii. 158, *Hoveden*, iii. 96. Yet he was acting as a judge in England very shortly before (*Mon. Angl. l.*, 391); perhaps he accompanied and returned with Eleanor.

² Glanvill had administered Yorkshire by his steward Reiner, who went with him on crusade, and

died in Cyprus. *Ben. Pet.* ii. 150. He had rendered account of a fine of 1,000 marks on his own account in the second of Richard I. (*Pipe Roll*); another proof of the way in which as Richard of Devizes describes, the Glanvill connexion was plundered at this time.

³ "*Pipe Roll*, 2 Ric. I. :—' Hugo "episcopus Dunelm, debet mm. "marcas pro comitatu Northumbrie habendo." He gave 1,000 marks for the justiciarship, *Ben. Pet.* ii. 90; 600 for Sadberge; *Hoveden*, iii. 39. Richard of Devizes raises the sum of money invested by him to 10,000*l.*, p. 8.

⁴ For 8,000*l.*, *R. Devizes*, p. 10. Another 3,000*l.* he paid for the restoration of Meon and Wargrave, *Rot. Pip.*, 2 R. I.

shire, and Warwickshire.¹ The counties bestowed on John were withdrawn from the ordinary administration of the government. Gerard Camville, one of his sworn followers, for 700 marks, entered on the sheriffdom of Lincolnshire;² Hugh of Nunant was also his personal adherent. Of the other counties, only seven or eight retained their old sheriffs, and only five of the old sheriffs³ found places in the same capacity: these were old servants of the State, not likely to become politically dangerous. But the changes in the sheriffdoms are not to be imputed solely to Richard's wish to carry with him to Palestine all the men of mark; in some cases the office was doubtless bought. Those officers who were removed were not disgraced, for out of them, after making them pay heavily for the commutation of their vows, Richard chose the chief advisers of the regency. The great offices of State were, moreover, paid for by their fortunate holders; Hugh de Puiset paid at least a thousand marks for his share of the justiciarship,⁴ and William Longchamp, although the king's confidant, paid three thousand for the chancery, notwithstanding that the bishop of Bath bid a thousand more.⁵ Other very large sums were levied on the barons and bishops for the ratification of rights and confirmation of their tenure of estates, the greatest bargain being that made by the king of Scots, who, for a payment of 10,000*l.*, emancipated himself from the conditions imposed on him by Henry II. in 1175. But the object of these latter sales was merely the raising of money.

Weakening
of the
government
in con-
sequence.

Sale of the
Justiciar-
ship and
Chancellor-
ship.

¹ For 300 marks, Madox, *Hist. Exch.*, 316.

² "Gerardus de Camvilla reddit computum de 700 marcis pro vice-comitatu Lincoln. et castello civitatis habendis." Rot. Pip., 2 Ric. I.

³ Oger Fitz-Oger, Henry de Cornhell, William Ruffus, William Fitz-Hervey, Robert de la Mara; others, however, probably acted under John in his counties.

⁴ See above, p. xxviii., note 3.

⁵ R. Devizes, p. 9.

Theory of
Richard's
policy.

By such means Richard endeavoured to secure peace during his absence from Europe; his policy was to work the governmental machinery by men who were not likely to be dangerous, to bribe by large benefactions those whose claims might have made them so, to bind those who had invested their treasure so largely in public appointments, to the maintenance of public security, to carry away with him as much as possible of the money which might have sustained private wars, and as many as possible of those members of the feudal baronage whose possessions were so large or their traditions so continuous as to render them jealous of royal authority. But before he left England he had reason to see that all this would be futile. The death of William Mandeville in November left the justiciarship vacant, for Hugh de Puiset could not be trusted to act alone—nay, it was a question whether the king ever seriously intended him to act in this capacity at all. The archbishop-elect of York had quarrelled with his clergy and fallen into disgrace with Richard, and it was found necessary to secure John with further gifts. The king was, however, in a hurry to embark, and perhaps not unwilling to leave matters to settle themselves. The bishop of Durham was left as justiciar, but with the chancellor, Hugh Bardulf and William Briewere as colleagues.¹ Further questions were to be settled at a council in Normandy before the pilgrimage to the East began.

Early indications of
its failure.

The justiciars
quarrel.

Richard left England on the 11th of December. Almost immediately after his departure the chancellor and justiciar quarrelled. The bishop of Durham saw

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 101. Hoveden makes the chancellor co-justiciar, and Hugh Bardulf, William Marshall, Geoffrey FitzPeter, and William Briewere, associates; a different committee from that ap-

pointed at Pipewell. It is not improbable that Hugh was really the chief justiciar for the short time that intervened between the king's departure and his summons to Normandy.

that the bishop of Ely was intended to hold the substance of power, whilst, even if faith were to be kept with himself, there would be left him only the shadow, the expense, and the responsibility. To him the castle of Windsor had been intrusted; but to the chancellor the Tower of London.¹ Longchamp was not indisposed for a struggle; he declined to admit the presence of the bishop of Durham at the Exchequer,² or to recognize him as in charge of the county of Northumberland. No reason is given for this, but the probable one is, that the bishop had not actually paid the money offered for the county,³ and that the chancellor acted under Richard's orders. At the same time, however, he dispossessed the bishop of Winchester of the honours he had purchased, and even of his own inheritance, on which he had so lately entered.⁴ In this case the desire of getting both the sheriffdom and the castles into the hands of the government probably operated. As for the bishop of Coventry, it was thought sufficient to proceed against him in the ecclesiastical court, and obtain an injunction from the archbishop of Canterbury against his holding a sheriffdom.⁵

The seemingly arbitrary conduct of the Chancellor dictated by policy, perhaps prescribed by Richard.

The Chancellor quarrels with the bishops of Durham, Winchester, and Coventry.

When in the month of February or early in March the king held his council in Normandy, complaints on all these grounds were laid before him. Most of the leading men in England attended; the chief business

Complaints laid before the king.

¹ Benedict, ii. 101. Hoveden, iii. 28.

² R. Devizes, p. 11.

³ The money is still a debt, in the Pipe Roll of 2 Rich. II., that is, at Michaelmas, 1190.

⁴ R. Devizes, 11.

⁵ See the letter from Archbishop Baldwin to the Bishop of London, in R. Diceto, 652: Hugh had at Rouen promised to resign his sheriffdom within a fortnight after Easter. In the Roll of the 2nd of Richard I.,

he renders account for Warwickshire and Leicestershire for half a year, and Hugh Bardulf for the second half, and in 1191 Hugh Bardulf accounts for the whole year in Warwickshire and Leicestershire, whilst the Bishop has had Staffordshire for a whole year. It would seem then that he had obeyed the Archbishop's command as long as he lived. In 1192 he accounts for all the three counties.

The Justiciarship divided.

Longchamp to be legate.

Difficulties of Longchamp's task.

Removal of the great earls and bishops.

Power of Hugh de Puiset.

done was the appointment of the chancellor as justiciar of England, the bishop of Durham's jurisdiction being confined to the north of the Humber;¹ John and Geoffrey were sworn not to return to England for three years. Hugh of Nunant undertook before the archbishop to give up his secular office. Measures were also taken to obtain for the chancellor the office of legate in the absence of archbishop Baldwin.

Notwithstanding the great powers with which Longchamp was now invested, the task which he undertook was probably as difficult a one as ever fell to the lot of any minister. He was, indeed, trusted by his master, but he could have hardly trusted Richard out of his sight, knowing how uncertain were the expedients of his fickle policy, how easily he was imposed upon, and how his inveterate extravagance laid him open to intrigues in which money would be too powerful a temptation for him to resist. The condition of England was anything but bettered by Richard's policy. The great earls of Cheater and Leicester, the great minister Glanvill, and his colleagues Bertram de Verdun, Gilbert Pipard, and others, the great bishops Hubert of Salisbury, and Walter of Rouen, were indeed gone; and John and Geoffrey were sworn to stay away. But the uneasiness was not removed with them; the sources of disturbance were in the very atmosphere of society. The removal of the great men made the country more difficult to manage, the balance more difficult to adjust. Hugh de Puiset had made himself a comfortable principality in the north, where the justiciarship of the whole province was added to his ordinary and palatine jurisdiction as bishop, and the newly-purchased earldom or sheriffdom of Northumberland. John had an equally compact, though less extensive, dominion in the west; and in

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 106. Hoveden, iii. 32. Longchamp is now "summus justitiarius." R. Devizes, 14.

the middle of England, he and his friends possessed a band of jurisdictions and castles reaching through the counties of Lincoln, Nottingham, Derby, Leicester, Warwick, and Stafford. Although many, if not all, the towns in this midland territory were faithful to the crown, and some of the castles were still retained by the king as a check on his brother, the whole of the ordinary jurisdiction was withdrawn from the direct action of the justiciar. John's own counties rendered no account at the Exchequer, and their judicial business was managed by his own justiciar; in the shires under Hugh of Nunant and Gerard Camville, the influence of the justiciar could not be available without the co-operation of the sheriff. The chancellor could regard only the east and south-east of England as really amenable to his authority. Any attempt to exert it beyond these limits would necessarily lead to a complication with one or all of his rivals.

Localisation of parties.

Withdrawal of John's counties from the ordinary jurisdiction of the justiciar.

Hugh de Puiset was a man whose ancestors had been accustomed to deal on an equality with kings, and to give them no small trouble. He was, in all probability, the son of that Hugh de Puiset,¹ viscount of Chartres,

Ancestry of Hugh de Puiset.

¹ It is impossible to speak with entire certainty of the parentage of Hugh de Puiset, but I believe the following to be the truth. I should say that the whole pedigree of the Puisets is difficult to make out. The Puisets were lords of the castle of that name, near Chartres, and the head of the family was hereditary Viscount of Chartres. I. Ebrard, Viscount of Chartres and his wife Hunbergis were the parents of Hugh de Puiset, Viscount of Chartres, and Adelaide the wife of Roger Montgomery the ally of William the Conqueror (*Cartulaire de S. Pere de Chartres*, 159. Ord. Vit. v. 13.)

II. Hugh de Puiset, viscount of Chartres, married Adelaide of Montlheri, sister of Guy de Rochfort, dapifer to the king of France. He was viscount in 1096 and had three sons, Ebrard, Hugh, and Guy, and a daughter Hunbergis. *Cartulaire*, &c. p. 240. III. Of these three sons, Guy was viscount of Etampes; Hugh married Mamilia de Roucy and went to the Holy Land about 1106. (Will. Tyr. xiv. 15.) Ebrard went on the first crusade and took part in the siege of Antioch in 1097. (W. Tyr. vi. 4. Alb. Aq., 236, 255.) IV. The next viscount of Chartres is Hugh

Inheritance
of turbulent
traditions.

who had for many years defied the power of Lewis VI. Another Hugh de Puiset, his cousin,¹ had nearly produced a revolution in Palestine; another ancestor, Bouchard of Corbeil, had attempted to wrest the crown of France from Philip I.² Hugh himself was a great-grandson of William the Conqueror; nephew of Stephen, of Henry of Winchester, and Theobald of Champagne; cousin to both Richard I. and Philip II. Adelidis, the mother of one at least of the bishop's children, was a lady of the great house of Percy,³ and this connexion added the

de Puiset, the enemy of Lewis VI., who is described by Abbot Suger as the nephew of Guy of Etampes, and son of the countess Adelaide of Corbeil. (*Opp. Suger.* ed. Le Coy de la Marche, p. 70.) His father had gone on the first crusade. He was, then, the son of Ebrard who died at Antioch, and as viscount, agrees with the abbot of S. Pierre for the commemoration of his father Ebrard as soon as the day of his death is known. (*Cartulaire, &c.*, 452.) V. This Hugh had a wife Agnes, and two sons, Ebrard and Bouchard. (*Cart.*, p. 412.) Of whom Ebrard was viscount of Chartres 1143. (*Cart.*, 644; Bouquet, xv. 493.) VI. The next viscount is Hugh de Puiset, count of Bar, son of Ebrard (*Ben. Pet.* i. 278) and nephew of Hugh de Puiset, bishop of Durham. Therefore bishop Hugh must have been a younger son of Hugh and Agnes, and Agnes must have been an unknown daughter of Count Stephen of Blois and Adela the daughter of William the Conqueror. This pedigree which has given me a good deal of trouble, will be found to agree with the charters and historians, but not

with the deductions of the French genealogists, who rather ignore bishop Hugh. In addition to the references given above, compare Martene and Durand, *Amplissima Coll.*, i. 774; Bouquet, xv. 493; Duchesne, iv. 528. The identification of Hugh the viscount, as the son of Ebrard, is proved by the charter of the abbey of S. Pierre, in which he refers to his imprisonment; *Cart.*, &c., 452; Suger, pp. 73, 76; and that of his son Ebrard by the letter of Lewis VII. *Cart.*, &c., 644.

¹ Hugh the younger, son of Hugh and Mamilia de Roucy, count of Joppa. See *W. Tyr.* xiv. 15.

² Suger, V. Ludov. VI. p. 80. He was slain by Stephen of Blois. *Ib.* 81. He was father of Adelaide the wife of Ebrard, and grandmother of the bishop.

³ According to William of Newburgh, v. 11, the bishop was father of three sons by three different ladies before he took priest's orders, but as one of the persons called by the historians his sons, was his nephew Bouchard, archdeacon of Durham; the rest of the story may be apocryphal. Two sons he is known to have had, of both of whom

influence of her family to the other sources of the bishop's strength. One of his sons, also Hugh de Puiset, had been chancellor to Lewis VII.¹ Hugh had had now a longer tenure of power than any man of his mark in Europe. At an early age he had been made treasurer of York, in which capacity he had styled himself Hugh, "by the grace of God, treasurer and archdeacon"; had fought the battles in court, council and chapter, of his cousin S. William, and had headed the garrisons and trained the soldiers of Henry of Winchester when Henry II. was yet a child.² He had every opportunity and many qualifications for becoming a very great man, and in spite of his failures, he left a mark upon the north of England which is not yet effaced. He was a man of grand stature, and singularly noble face,³ eloquent, energetic, a mighty

Family of
Bishop
Hugh.

His early
promotion,
versatility,
and ex-
perience.

Adelaide may have been the mother, as she certainly was of his son Henry. This Henry gave Stockdale to Sallay Abbey "pro salute animæ meæ et Adelidis de Perci matris meæ et Dionysiæ sponsæ meæ Sicut in cartis Ricardi de Morevill et Willelmi de Perci continentur." Mon. Angl. v. 510. Adelidis de Percy had another son named Alan de Morvill, who confirmed a donation which Adelidis de Percy his mother had made to Henry de Puiset his brother, of all the land of Settle and the church of Giggleswick. Whitaker, *History of Craven*, p. 111. She probably had married a Morvill after Hugh became a bishop. Henry de Puiset's wife Dionysia was a daughter of Odo de Thilli, of the family to which Randulf de Thilli, archbishop Roger's constable belonged. Madox, *Hist. Exch.*, p. 356, from Pipe Roll of 31 Hen. II. It is clear that the

connexion of the Puisets and Percys was very close, and that the former had gained a strong position in Yorkshire. Henry de Puiset was a great benefactor of Finchale priory.

¹ See Ben. Pet. i. 241, W. Newb., v. 11. He is to be distinguished from Hugh the count of Bar on the Seine, the bishop's nephew, who comes more into English history and was buried in the Galilee at Durham, Ben. Pet. ii. 92. The bishop's son, who was chancellor in 1180, died before 1185. He was the youngest of the family.

² John of Hexham, ed. Raine, p. 155. "Qui Hugo thesaurarius interim episcopales possessiones Wintoniæ et castra cum militari manu ipse militans defensabat." *Ibid.* p. 158. Mon. Angl. v. 494.

³ Geoff. Coldingham, *Scr. Dunelm*, p. 4. This writer makes bishop Hugh only 25 at the time of his election to Durham in 1152; if this

Character
and policy
of Hugh
de Puiset.

hunter,¹ a great shipmaster,² a magnificent builder, an able defender and besieger, a consummate intriguer, and a very wary politician³. Against great odds he had retained his position through all the struggles of Henry's reign. Of the Becket quarrel he kept himself comparatively clear, sympathizing, doubtless, as his uncle of Winchester and his cousin of Sens did, with the ecclesiastical principles of the martyr, but unwilling to risk anything by taking a decided part against the king. The death of the bishop of Winchester in 1171, and his own close connexion with the French court, induced him in 1173 to take a more hazardous part, and although not actually to rebel, to attempt the position of mediator which had been held by his uncle in the contest between Stephen and Matilda, but which Matilda's son was little likely to regard as loyal. His temporizing policy on this occasion drew down on him the severe animadversion of Henry,⁴ but he was not like Arnulf of Lisieux, a prelate who could be driven into resignation. Henry

His earlier
career.

is right he must have been trained early to the use of arms, as he was early preferred in the church. But he was probably older.

¹ On his "chase" or chace in the forest of Weardale, which was quite on a royal scale, like everything else about him, see *Bolton Buke*, ed. Greenwell, pp. liv., lv. His hunting hall, built for each chace by the villains of Auckland was 60 feet long, chapel and kitchen, &c. in proportion.

² On his ships see Surtees' account of him in the *Hist. of Durham*, Coldingham, p. 13:—"Naves pulcherrimas . . . ut majorum episcoporum aive ducum gloriam superaret." Also Madox, *Hist. Exch.*, 493.

³ His character is drawn by William of Newburgh, v. 10.

⁴ *Ben. Pet.* l. 64, 67. His policy is, I think, quite that of the Champagne counts and bishops; resistance to the royal authority on ecclesiastical grounds, in all other matters thoroughly secular. Hugh is always found on the clerical side, although he had very little that was clerical about him; and so helped to thwart archbishop Geoffrey, and was always on the best terms with the popes. Without being a great man, he was always in a great position, and seldom unequal to the occasion. His biography, if it could be written in detail, would be a diplomatic or political history of at least 50 eventful years of English national life.

doubtless saw that his own policy was to make it the bishop's interest to be faithful, and not to risk on the side of Scotland the substitution of a weaker, even if more trustworthy, champion. By every turn of affairs, then, he had gained power, and could he have realized the authority apparently entrusted to him by Richard, he would have exercised during the remaining years of his life a rule more exactly resembling that of the great ecclesiastical princes of Germany than anything that has ever existed in England. We picture him as like one of those grand stern figures that look down in stone from the walls and piers of the cathedrals of Mentz, Würzburg, and Bamberg. He was very ambitious, not more than commonly unprincipled or unscrupulous, and with the exception of the shortsightedness inseparable from a narrow personal selfishness, an able, as he was a very experienced, man. He seems to have possessed strong affections, and, notwithstanding their constant ill usage of him, to have been personally a friend of both Henry¹ and his sons. His charm of manner and good nature, perhaps, did as much for the permanence of his power as did the versatility of his policy.

Hugh de Puiset the nearest approach in English history to the imperial type of prelate.

Such was the first enemy, for he was an enemy by the very necessity of the case, whom William Longchamp had to encounter; a man whose position, character, and history stood in the most marked contrast with his own. William Longchamp was a *novus homo*. Without crediting the ill-natured statement of Hugh of Nunant²

Contrast of Hugh de Puiset with William Longchamp.

¹ So far as Henry is concerned this is an inference from the treatment he received from him. Richard, although he sometimes made a jest of him, and certainly plundered him cruelly, seems to have been as fond of him as of any one; interfered promptly when Longchamp went beyond his orders, and treated him personally with great regard.

See Hoveden iii. 239. Coldingham mentions that Richard used to call him his father, p. 14; and both he and John always recognized the near relationship. John even carried it on to the next generation, calling Henry de Puiset his cousin. Rot. Cart. (ed. Hardy), p. 126.

² See Ben. Pet. ii. 216. Hoveden, iii. 142.

Family
history of
William
Longchamp.

and Giraldus¹ that his grandfather was a run-away serf who had escaped from the Beauvaisis into Normandy, it may be considered as certain that that grandfather was the founder of the family. William was a son of Hugh de Longchamp,² who, so far as we can see, was the person to whom, early in the reign of Henry II., lands in Herefordshire had been given by the King;³ who held in the same county a knight's fee under the house of Lacy,⁴ and in Normandy the office of fermier of the Honour of Conches.⁵ He took his name from the ducal demesne and castle of Longchamp, one of the four castles in the forest of Lions, in which he occupied a small holding. He seems to have married a Lacy,⁶ and perhaps was one of those knights who made their fortunes in the service of the younger Henry. In the year 1180 he was in disgrace, being greatly in debt to the exchequer of the duchy, and having failed to present himself before the justiciar when he was summoned. His balance of account unpaid for the Honour of Conches was upwards of 700*l.*, and he owed besides for purprestures in the forest, for the rents of the carpenters of Longchamp, and an amercement of 100*l.* for non-appear-

¹ *Gr. Camb. V. Galfr. in Ang. Sac. ii. 404*

² "VIII. kal. Nov. obiit Hugo de Longocampo, et Willelmus filius ejus Ehelensis episcopus" *Necrology of Rouen, among the Rolls' Transcripts: "Archives of Normandy, No. 412, excerpta ex necrologio ecclesiæ Rothomagensis de obitu principum Angliæ."*

³ "In terris datis Hugoni de Longocampo 16*l.* 10*s.* in Iantuna "et in Wiltuna." *Rot. Pap. 3 Hen. II.*, p. 93, also pp. 51, 144. I am aware that Dugdale decidedly denies the connexion of the chancellor with this family, but the

following notes will probably be thought to be proof enough.

⁴ *Liber Niger Scaccarii* (ed. Hearne,) p. 155:—Among the knight's fees of Hugh de Lacy, "et feodum unius militis de feodo antiquo quod obtulus sum, feodum Willelmi de Burehopa quod tenet Hugo de Longo Campo in marungio," and p. 159:—"Henricus de Longocampo tenet Wilton per unum feodum." "Rex pater regis Johannis dedit Wilton Hugoni ob gen." *Testa de Nevill*, p. 70.

⁵ Stapleton, *Rolls of the Norman Exchequer*, i. 74, &c

⁶ See note ⁴ above.

ence and waste.¹ That his difficulties were the result of political misconduct appears from the statement of Giraldus, that the chancellor had been spoken of by Henry II. as a traitor on both father's and mother's side.² The date of his appointment to Conches would tally very nearly with the period of the younger Henry's ascendancy in Normandy. That he was a man of mark may be inferred from the fact that Ralph Tesson, Reginald of Pavilly, and Richard Vernon, three of the great barons of Normandy, were amongst the sureties for the payment of his debt, a fourth being his son Hugh de Longchamp the younger.³ To this Hugh the estate of Wilton in Herefordshire is stated to have been given by his father,⁴ although the person whom we first find administering it was named Henry. The elder Hugh must have had a large family; amongst his sons were, besides the chancellor and the second Hugh,⁵ Stephen,

Difficulties
of Hugh
Longchamp.

Brothers
of the
Chancellor.

¹ "Rob. de Stoteville debet 23s. 4d. de censibus porpresturarum in Longo Campo recuperatis per juream, quas Hugo de Longo Campo tenebat Præter hæc LI acræ et dim. virgata terræ quas Hugo et homines ejus tenebant sunt recuperatæ per juream Hugo de Longocampo debet 706l. 17s. vid de rem. computi sui de honore de Conches. Et 8l. 8s. de porpresturis forestæ de Leons de septem annis, de unoquoque anno 24s. Et 66l. 10s. de censibus carpentariorum de Longo Campo de septem annis et xi. mensibus. Et de hoc anno 7l. 10s. Et 100l. de misericordia sua pro prædictis porpresturis et quia non venit ad submonitionem justitiarum. Et pro wasto de districto de Longo Campo." R. Stapleton, *Rolls, &c.*, i. 74.

² V. Galfr., p. 390. "Improperabat enim eidem pluries quod proditorem suum et proditionis

"hæredem ex utroque parente familiarem habebat." See also p. 405. It would appear from the Pipe Roll, 1 Ric. I., that both Walter de Lacy and Henry Longchamp had been kept out of their Herefordshire estates by Henry II., and only restored to them on his death, pp. 141, 145.

³ Stapleton, *Rolls, &c.*, i. 64, 80, 96, &c.

⁴ Rot. Cart. R. Joh. p. 146 :— "Sciatis nos concessisse . . . Henrico de Longo Campo, assensu et concessione Gaufridi fratris sui primogeniti, Wilton in Hereford-siria cum castello quæ Hugo avus suus dedit Hugoni patri ejusdem Henrici." Mar. 7. 1205.

⁵ This Hugh, if he was the father of Geoffrey Longchamp, son of Emma of S. Leger, who afterwards married Walter Baskerville, must have died before 1195, as in that year Geoffrey fines as his mother's

Brothers
and sisters
of the
Chancellor.

Steward of Normandy,¹ Henry,² Sheriff of Herefordshire, Osbert,³ Sheriff of Yorkshire, and afterwards of Norfolk and Suffolk, and Robert, who was abbot of S. Mary's at York. Of his daughters, one, Richenda, was married to Matthew de Cleres, castellan of Lions and Dover; and another to the head of the Herefordshire house of Evreux.⁴

Description
of Long-
champ's
person.

At its best the origin of the chancellor was very humble compared with that of the bishop of Durham. His personal qualifications were scarcely less so. That he was the monster of ugliness that Giraldus depicts,⁵ more like an ape than a man, deformed and lame, we may safely set down as an exaggeration; but the utmost that a tolerant critic could say for him was that his person was respectable,⁶ and that it required all the greatness of his mind to compensate for the shortness of his body. And the careers of the two statesmen were in strong contrast; whilst Hugh de Puiset had

heir. Anyhow Geoffrey was one of the family, for Osbert Longchamp is his pledge. Madox, *Hist. Exch.*, 356. See more of Geoffrey below, p. cii. note.

¹ Stephen Longchamp had Frome Herbert in Herefordshire of the gift of Walter de Lacy, and Mutford in Suffolk in right of his wife Petronilla, daughter of Osbert de Cailly, and Hildeburga, lady of Baudemont. This connexion accounts for the mention of him in the treaty between Philip and Richard in 1193; and for his relations with Henry de Vere. See below p. lxxv. Stapleton, *Rolls*, &c. II. cxi. &c. Rot. Pip., 3 John, &c.

² Henry the chancellor's brother is identified with the sheriff of Herefordshire by the mention of his imprisonment at Cardiff. Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 399. The sheriff was prevented by imprison-

ment from rendering his accounts in 1192, and released before the Exchequer session of 1193.

³ Osbert's career will be found worked out further on, and Robert's also.

⁴ Stephen Devereux in 1205 had Frome Herbert by the gift of his uncle Stephen Longchamp. *Rot. Carl. R. Joh.*, p. 156. He was a nephew also of the chancellor. See Eyton's *Hist. Shropshire*, v. 21.

⁵ V. Galfr. part ii. 12, p. 405:—

“statura exigua despectaque . . .
“claudus . . . capite grosso . . .
“simiam simulans . . . facie canina
“ . . . mento reflexo . . . collo con-
“tracto, pectore gibboso, ventre
“præambulo, renibus retrogradis,
“tubiis tortis, et in modico corpore
“pes immensus.”

⁶ R. Devizes, p. 11:—“Persona
“spectabilis, brevitatem corporis
“animo recompensans.”

been plotting and warring, William had been working as a clerk in the chancery, first under Geoffrey, who had made him his official in the archdeaconry of Rouen¹, then under Richard, who had made him his confidant and chaplain before he came to the crown.² His rise from such a post to that of chancellor, justiciar, and legate was very sudden, and shows that he possessed in an extreme degree the confidence of his master as well as great ambition and confidence in himself. The horrid accusations of immorality brought against him by Giraldus³ defeat themselves; they are the utterance of a spiteful and defeated antagonist, one, moreover, whose words on a question of personal interest are never worthy of consideration. All that we really gather from his description is, that William was a plain, short, lame man, who did not understand English, and who was very imprudent in showing his dislike to the nation that he had to govern.⁴ Against the charges of immorality, so easy to bring and so hard to repel, which both his chief assailants allege against him, we must set the panegyrics of the

Career of
William
Longchamp.

¹ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 390.

² R. Devizes, p. 6. :—"Ante
" coronam comitis Pictavorum
" fuerat cancellarius."

³ V. Galfr., p. 406 :—It is impossible if there were any truth in such charges, that John should have charged him, as his most offensive crime, with introducing into England the foreign custom of serving on the knee, R. Devizes, p. 31. The whole may be based on the story of Eleanor's refusal to entrust her grandson to his care. *Ibid.* p. 403; and on the mere insinuations of Hugh of Nunant in his letter against him. Hoved. iii. 142, &c.

⁴ Although there is no reason whatever to believe Giraldus, he states this in a circumstantial way;

and it is at all events important, as showing that although the leading men in England were still all of Norman blood, it was beginning to be regarded as an unwise thing to despise the English. He is arguing so as to excite odium amongst a people who felt themselves English :—"Anglos autem cum
" tota curia sua tanto et tam ex-
" orabili est odio persecutus, ut
" usuali verbo in eorum oppro-
" brium et improprium dicere
" consueverint; 'Anglicus sum, si
" ' hoc fecero. Pejor sum Anglico
" ' si illud admisero.' Ad injuria-
" rum quoque cumulum, et dedecoris
" argumentum cum ad exquisita
" nature pergere parabant, dicere
" solebant 'Eamus facere Angli-
" ' cum.'" V. Galfr., p. 407.

Improbability of his being a vicious man.

monks of Canterbury who dared not have taken as their patron a bishop of notoriously evil life;¹ of Peter of Blois, who had nothing in common with the monks,² but was a sincerely pious man; and of Nigel Wireker, of whose sincerity and desire of reform there can be no doubt, and who actually dedicated to him his satire on the manners of the age.³ It is, however, simply impossible that such a man as Giraldus describes should have been tolerated in an age and country in which S. Hugh, of Lincoln, was religiously all powerful. S. Hugh does not seem to have liked the chancellor's policy; their political principles were opposed, and the Saint took part in the proceedings against Longchamp in defence of Archbishop Geoffrey; but their personal relations were not unkind, and the chancellor seems to have trusted implicitly to the bishop's good will.⁴ The man who would not tolerate the dead bones of Fair Rosamond within the choir of Godstow, would not have hesitated to denounce a profligate in the sacred offices of legate and bishop.⁵ Setting aside, then, these calumnies, his character seems to have been this:—He was a strong-minded, ambitious, self-confident, resolute man; faithful to his master, ready and active in his service; unsparing of labour, energetic, and unwearied; relentless in exactions and oppressions where his master's interests could be advanced by such means; fearless to rashness in his undertakings; greedy of advancement for his family; intolerant of opposition or equality; devoid of tact in dealing with his peers and of sympathy with his inferiors; probably, as appears

Theory of his character.

Character of Longchamp.

¹ *Epp. Cantuar.*, p. 354; and see the introduction to that book, pp. lxxxv, lxxxvi, &c., also Wharton's note in *Anglia Sacra*, i. 632.

² Hoveden, iii. 148-150.

³ *Leyser, Hist. Poetarum*, p. 754; and compare the note in *Epp. Cantuar.*, pp. lxxxv., lxxxvi.

⁴ Hoveden, iii. 152-154. *Bened.* ii. 223, 224.

⁵ The same argument is available in defence of Richard himself, against whom the like charges are insinuated. S. Hugh of Lincoln heard his confessions and declared that his most crying sins were his unfaithfulness to his wife, which was notorious, and his carelessness in the use of church patronage. *Magna Vita S. Hugonis*, p. 265.

from the general tone of his history as told by neutrals as well as by enemies, elated by the greatness of his position beyond the ordinary exaltation of the upstart. He was thus a man whose nobler as well as meaner qualities would lay him open to attack from the king's enemies and his own competitors for power.

William Longchamp had been consecrated to the see of Ely on the last day of 1189 and enthroned with great pomp on the feast of the Epiphany 1190.¹ Before the end of February,² having quarrelled with the co-justiciar, he joined the king in Normandy, where he stayed till Easter, and immediately after the festival returned to England with full powers; the Bishop of Durham remaining behind to secure his grant of the justiciarship of the north, and the Bishop of Winchester to obtain the restitution of his purchased honours.³ The first event of the chancellor's government was untoward. The Jews of York, alarmed by the riot which had taken place at London on the occasion of the coronation, and was followed by similar outbreaks at Norwich in February, at Stamford in March, at Bury St. Edmund's on Palm Sunday, and at almost every large town except Winchester,⁴ had obtained, in expectation of a general rising, permission from John Marshall, the sheriff of Yorkshire, to occupy a tower in the castle of York. Thither they had removed their families. Before the alarm had blown

After the council in Normandy he returns to England

Panic of the Jews at York.

¹ *Anglia Sacra*, i. 632.

² *Benedict*, ii. 106. He was at Westminster on the 24th of January, where he attested a charter together with the bishops of London, Durham, and Coventry, with the other justices. *Eyton, Hist. Shropshire*, vii. 12. In Normandy on the 14th of March, John of Alençon the vice-chancellor was acting for him, but on the 20th he is at Rouen with the king, also on the 22nd and 23rd;

on the 27th he was at Lions. *Fœd.* i. 51.

³ *R. Devizes*, p. 11-13. *Benedict*, ii. 109.

⁴ *R. Devizes*, p. 5. *W. Newb.*, lib. iv. cc. 7-11. It is a curious coincidence that whilst the Jews were being persecuted in the towns, Richard was issuing charters of protection for them, especially on Mar. 22. See *Fœd.* i. 51.

Frightful
catastrophe
of the Jews
at York.

over, the sheriff ordered the Jews to quit the tower, and on their demurring, called out the force of the county against them. The knights of Yorkshire besieged the castle, and the Jews, on the Friday before Palm Sunday, slew their wives and children; shut themselves up in the tower, set it on fire, and perished in it. The citizens and knights thereupon seized the Jews' houses in York and burned them, destroying with them the bonds by which the debts due to them were secured, and on which the whole banking business of the north depended.¹ The leaders of the knights in this exploit were Philip of Falconberge, Richard Malebyse, William Percy, and Marmaduke Darrell.²

Conduct of
the York-
shire
knights.

Longchamp
visits York,

Immediately on the chancellor's return from Normandy, early in May, he visited York with a military force under his brother Henry.⁴ The citizens denied all complicity with the persecutors, several of whom had fled to Scotland.⁵ Longchamp, unable or unwilling to use harsh measures, accepted a fine from the citizens,⁶ and took hostages of them, who were sent in custody to Northampton.⁷ He inflicted, however, severe penalties on the knights who had taken the lead in the transaction. John Marshall he removed from the sheriffdom, appointing his own brother Osbert⁸ in his place. It was unfortunate, that

and punishes
the knights.

¹ Benedict, ii. 107. Hoveden, iii. 33.

² Chron. de Melsa, i. 251.

³ "Circa Dominicæ Ascensionis
solemnia." W. Newb., iv. 11

⁴ "Henrico de Longo Campo et
aliis militibus qui abierunt Eboracum
propter occisionem Judæorum, lx. li. per breve Cancellarii." Rot. Pip., 2 Ric. I., Lincolnshire.

⁵ "De exitu terrarum et catallo-
rum hominum qui aufugerunt
pro assaultu Judæorum in civitate
Eboracensi." Rot. Pip., 2 Ric. I.
W. Newb., iv. 11.

⁶ W. Newb., iv. 11.

⁷ Rot. Pip., 2 Ric. I. :—"Cives

"Eboraci reddunt computum de x
marcis pro habendis obsidibus suis
qui fuerunt Norhantonie propter
occisionem Judæorum." This
was in 1193, when Longchamp
was out of the way and the affair
had blown over.

⁸ Hoveden, iii. 34. In the Pipe
Roll, 2 Ric. I. John Marshall
accounts for Yorkshire for half a
year, and Osbert for the other half
Osbert had also Westmoreland,
which had been held, like York,
by Ranulf Glanvill.

whether justly or not the punishment fell most heavily on the adherents of the Percies, the relations and allies of the bishop of Durham. The lands of William Percy and Richard Malebysse, his kinsman,¹ with those of their squires, were seized to the King's use: the entire property of the fugitives was also confiscated, and the money due to the Jews was collected where it could be by the king's officers. On the same occasion the cathedral was put under interdict and the clergy suspended, because they declined to receive Longchamp as legate, although he had not yet received his commission.² It was clear to the bishop of Durham and his friends, both in the county and in the chapter, that the chancellor had jumped at an opportunity of infringing his jurisdiction as justiciar, and that his sense of right had been

The punishment falls heavily on the adherents of the bishop of Durham.

¹ Rot. Pip., 4 Ric. I.:—"Ricardus Malebysse reddit computum de xx. marcis pro rehabenda terra sua usque ad adventum domini regis, quæ seisita fuit in manu regis propter occisionem Judæorum Eboraci; et ut ipse et Walterus de Carton et Ricardus de Kukeneia, armigeri ejus, habeant pacem regis usque ad adventum ejus." Madox, 334. Also William de Percy, knight, and Picot, Roger de Ripun and Alan Malekake "debent v. marcas pro eodem." These are probably nominal compositions made after Longchamp's deposition. Richard Malebysse, the ancestor of the Yorkshire clan of Beckwith, is called nephew of Agnes Percy in a charter of Sallay; Mon. Angl. vi. 513. Picot is a family name among the Percies; Mon. Angl. vi. 93. Picot the sheriff was grandfather of William Percy, whose charter is attested by Henry

de Puiset. Alan Malekake and Picot de Percy are found attesting a grant of Henry de Puiset to the monastery at Bakestanforde, in Raine's *Priory of Finchale*, p. 10, and Henry de Puiset and Richard Malebysse sign another together, p. 15. On the other hand, the Fauconbergs and Cukeneys were closely connected and were fellow benefactors of Welbeck; Mon. Angl. vi. 873. Marmaduke Darrell also attests a charter of William Percy; Mon. Angl. vi. 1190. I should not like to accuse the Puiset and Percy connexion of a deliberate attempt to get rid of the evidence of their debts on this occasion, but so it may have been. These details are not unimportant, if we consider Roger Hoveden's own relation to Hugh de Puiset, and that many of these charters are attested by William of Hoveden.

² Ben. Pet. ii. 108, 109.

quickened by his desire of injuring the supporters of his rival.

Interview of the bishops of Durham and E. v. ending in the arrest of the former.

As soon as the examination was over, William Longchamp set out towards Lincoln, where he had a like work to do; but he had only reached Blythe,¹ in Nottinghamshire, when he met Bishop Hugh bearing his commission, and hastening to secure himself in the territory in which he was now scarcely less than sovereign. Hugh was not without suspicion of the chancellor's double dealing, for in passing through London he had presented himself to the barons of the exchequer and suffered a rebuff at their hands.² Now he delivered his credentials. Longchamp professed himself most happy to obey the directions of the king: Hugh talked largely of his new powers: the chancellor was more reserved. At last the commission was read and proved to be less formidable than he expected.³ He agreed to meet the bishop a week later at Tickhill.⁴ On the appointed day he received him alone in the castle there, and, to the bishop's disgust, produced a commission to himself dated some days later than his rival's. Hugh felt that he had been shamefully treated, but he had no chance of retreating. The chancellor arrested him, and swore by the life of Richard that until the old bishop surrendered everything that he had purchased of the king,—castles, justiciarship, earldom, and sheriffdom, he should remain a prisoner.⁵ In vain he protested; he was taken back to London and there compelled to surrender all and to give up, moreover, his son Henry and another knight, Gilbert de la Leya,⁶ as hostages for his good behaviour. This done, he was allowed to return northwards; but when

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 109.

² R. Devizes, p. 12.

³ R. Devizes, p. 13.

⁴ R. Devizes, p. 13.

⁵ R. Devizes, p. 13. Benedict, ii.

⁶ Benedict, ii. 109. Gilbert de la Leya held a fief in Craven under the Percies, as did Henry de Puiwet, Bolton in Bolland. Whitaker, *Hist. Craven*, p. 110.

he reached his manor of Howden he was stopped by the sheriff Osbert and William Stuteville,¹ and obliged to give security for residing there during the chancellor's pleasure. He forwarded his complaints immediately to the king, who was now at Marseilles. Richard, thinking, perhaps, that his minister had been too zealous, and that it was hard treatment for so old and dignified a man, wrote to Longchamp ordering him to restore the manor of Sadberge and the castle of Newcastle-on-Tyne.² But Hugh was kept still at Howden. The fruits of victory remained with the chancellor. He had effectually rid himself of his chief competitor: and in this matter his appointed counsellors in the exchequer were at one with him. He saw himself at the summit of his ambition: and he now received the legatine commission from Clement III., which made him supreme in church and state; a letter of Richard, from Bayonne, dated the 6th of June, which was perhaps the document which had confounded Hugh de Puiset, gave him full power to act in all things as the king's lieutenant.³

He is kept under bond at Howden.

The barons of the exchequer connive at Longchamp's treatment of him.

The measures which he next took were dictated partly by the king and partly by his own instinct of self-defence. His brother Stephen accompanied the king; but Osbert and Henry remained with him: to Osbert he entrusted the sheriffdoms of Yorkshire and Westmoreland—he had already received from the king the keeping of the palace of Westminster and the prison of London.⁴ He himself undertook the fortifying of the Tower, which he entrusted to one of his dependents, William

Longchamp strengthens his hold on the royal fortresses.

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 109.

² Hoveden, iii. 38, 39.

³ R. de Diceto, 655. The letter of legation is dated June 5, that of the king June 6.

⁴ That is, the Fleet prison. The appointment is printed in the *Fœdera*, i. 50, dated Nov. 30, 1189, Canterbury. That the prison in question

was that "de Ponte de Fliet" appears from an entry in the Pipe Roll of the 9th Ric. I., Madox, Hist. Exch., 356. Osbert has 10*l.* 12*s.* 11*d.* for his trouble at Westminster and 7*l.* 12*s.* 1*d.* for the charge of the gaol in 2 Ric. I. See the Pipe Roll of that year.

His proceed-
ings at the
Tower and
at Dover.

Character of
his adminis-
tration.

He strength-
ens his posi-
tion by new
alliances
among the
barons.

Puinetel, as constable, and on the repairs of which he laid out 2,887*l.* 1*s.* 10*d.*¹ On Dover Castle, which was held by his brother-in-law, Matthew de Cleres, he expended 1,068*l.* 3*s.* 8*d.*, through the hands of William Maunsel.² The ten months which followed were the heyday of the chancellor's prosperity. He traversed the country with a large retinue, levying contributions from the barons as justiciar, and as legate exacting procurations from the clergy. He was attended by a court of clerks and knights, the latter anxious to connect themselves with so successful a man by marriages with his kinsfolk, and the former singing his praises as a liberal and magnificent patron.³ It was probably at this time that he secured for the son of Henry Longchamp the heiress of the great family of Croun:⁴ he placed in his brother's hands also Stephen Beauchamp, whose wardship he had purchased from Bertram de Verduin: for another brother, Robert, he intrigued that the monks of Westminster might choose him as their abbot.⁵ He made use of his position also to strengthen himself in the good graces of his colleagues. By a transaction which seems scarcely less than fraudulent, he allowed Geoffrey FitzPeter to be received as heir, in right of his wife, of William Mandeville, Earl of Essex.⁶ He formed

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 101, 106. Rot. Pip., 2 Ric. I. This William Puinetel is doubtless a relation of Alexander Puinetel who captured archbishop Geoffrey at Dover.

² Rot. Pip., 2 Ric. I.

³ Benedict, ii. 143; and see Hugh of Nunant's account. Hoveden, iii. 142, &c.

⁴ William, son of Henry Longchamp, married Petronilla daughter of Guy de Croun, and got through her large estates in Lincolnshire. He died before 1207, and she afterwards married Henry de Mara and Oliver de Vaux. The identity of

her father-in-law is established by the suit which she and her second husband brought against the lord of Wilton for dower. Rot. Fin., 9 John, p. 410.

⁵ R. Devizes, p. 34.

⁶ Beatrice de Say was aunt of William Mandeville, last earl of Essex, and his heiress. She had two sons William and Geoffrey. William died leaving two daughters, one of whom married Geoffrey FitzPeter. The inheritance was disputed between this lady and her uncle Geoffrey de Say. Longchamp first adjudged the whole to Geoffrey

a strict alliance with the earl of Arundel, to whom, for 2,000 marks, he restored the honour of his earldom, which had been for sixteen years retained in hand by the crown;¹ and with William de Braiose² and others who had the power to serve and defend his family on the Welsh border, where the family estates lay.

Alliance with the earl of Arundel and William de Braiose.

The country was at peace, and only troubled with those heavy exactions, which, as being a part of Richard's necessary policy under all his ministries, cannot be ascribed to the influence of the chancellor, although they tended doubtless to make him unpopular. Complaints from the co-justiciars that their advice was systematically neglected are said to have been conveyed to the king; but they continued to act with him, and Richard gave no sign of believing them, or of a design to modify his minister's commission to please men whom he less trusted. Longchamp found time to hold solemn meetings of the clergy. On the 1st of August he held a council at Gloucester, the object of which may not have been entirely ecclesiastical, as Richard of Devizes ascribes his presence there to a wish to besiege the castle.³ It is not clear, however, who could be holding the castle against him. Here the bishop of Winchester met him, and received back his patrimony, but not the purchased sheriffdom. The reconciliation seemed to be perfect. Longchamp took the bishop's advice in not pressing for entrance into the castle. This is the first sign of difficulties to

Conduct of the co-justiciars.

Council at Gloucester.

de Say, at his mother's wish, for 7,000 marks, and gave him seisin. There was some difficulty about the payment, and in consequence the chancellor, for 3,000 marks down, transferred the barony to Geoffrey FitzPeter. See Mon. Angl. iv. 145, and the Pipe Roll of the 2nd of Richard I.

¹ Dugdale's *Baronage*, 120. This was done by Richard's order, dated

at Montrichard, June 27. See *Fœd.* i. 48.

² Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 396, an affinity with William de Braiose the younger. Can this refer to the marriage of Walter de Lacy with Margaret de Braiose which took place a few years later, but may have been arranged now? Dugdale's *Baronage*, p. 98.

³ R. Devizes, p. 13. R. Diceto, 655.

Council at
Westminster.

come. On October 13, he held a legatine assembly at Westminster,¹ in which the bishop of London sat on his right hand and the bishop of Winchester on his left. In November, on the 18th, he visited Canterbury and was entertained with great honour by the monks of Christ Church.² Little is known of the business transacted on these occasions. Gervase, the Canterbury Chronicler, preserves an account of a discussion relative to the consecration of the bishop-elect of Worcester, and Richard of Devizes mentions the quarrels of the bishop and monks of Coventry as a topic at Westminster; but there is no trace of any important act of constitutional

Obscurity of
transactions
at these
councils.

policy during this time; and the sole political move which is mentioned, is the negotiation with the King of Scots, carried on, doubtless, with Richard's sanction, for the recognition of Arthur of Brittany, as heir in case of the king's dying childless.³ The charters of towns granted so freely by Richard at a later period, which form the mark of his reign on domestic history, are scarce under this administration;⁴ and although the chancellor acted as judge in the courts both in London and in the country, there is no trace of any improvement introduced by him, such as had distinguished year after year the rule of his predecessor.

Long-
champ's
rapid move-
ments in
1190.

The few notices we have of his acts during this period show that he was in constant progress, and confirm the statements of the historians as to the burden of entertaining him. A visit of a single night cost the house which received him three years' savings.⁵ He entertained a train of a thousand horsemen.⁶ He moved through the kingdom, Richard of Devizes says, like a

¹ R. Diceto, 856. R. Devizes, 14. Gervase, 1566.

² Gervase, 1566.

³ Will. Newb., iv. 14.

⁴ One to Winchester is printed in

the Federa, l. 50, 51, dated at Nonancourt, March 14, 1190.

⁵ Bened., ii. 143.

⁶ Will. Newb., iv. 14. "Procedebat cum mille equis."

flash of lightning.¹ Unhappily, the collection of revenue to satisfy the ever-increasing demands of Richard seems to have been his principal occupation. His occupations.

So the year 1190 ends. Early in 1191 we find him at Northampton witnessing, with the other judges of the Curia, a final concord between the abbot of Peterborough and one Roger de Torpel, relative to the advowson of the church of Maxey.² This seems to have been about the last peaceful transaction in which he was engaged.

His misfortunes came upon him all at once. Complaints had been carried to Richard, who was now at Messina, in unbroken succession, and he had refused to listen; now the queen-mother herself undertook the task of remonstrance. She started on her journey to Sicily in February;³ one part of her errand was to forward the consecration of the archbishop of York. The same month brought from Messina the news of the death of the archbishop of Canterbury.⁴ As soon as the two metropolitan sees should be filled up, the legatine power would almost to a certainty be withdrawn from the bishop of Ely, and with it a large part of the influence which made him for the time invulnerable. Complaints forwarded to Richard.
Vacancy of the see of Canterbury.

But Eleanor's journey to Messina seems to have had another more speedy and more fatal consequence. Unfortunately the want of exact dates prevents us from ascertaining the period of John's return to England; but if it was before February 1191, his mother's influence, whilst she was within reach, must have kept him within bounds. As soon as she departs, we find him in active mischief. Eleanor's visit to Sicily.
John begins to move.

¹ R. Devizes, p. 14, "in similitudinem fulguris coruscantis."

² Mon. Angl. i. 391. :—"Coram W. Elyensi episcopo, domini regis cancellario, et Willelmo Comite Arundel et W. Marescallo, Galfrido filio Petri, Hugone Bardulf, W. Briwerre, Simone de

"Pateshill, Roberto de Whitefeld, justitiis domini regis." Thursday after S. Vincent's day, i.e. Jan. 24.

³ R. de Diceto, 654.

⁴ The letters containing the news are given in the *Epp. Cantuar.*, pp. 329, 330; one of them dated Messina, Jan. 25.

John had
tasted the
sweets of
power.

John was not inclined to wait for his succession; the foolish policy of Richard in attempting to conciliate by the gift of real power, an enemy whom he knew to be faithless and whose weakness of character he despised too much for his own safety, had given John a taste, too tempting by far, of substantial sovereignty. After he had returned to England he set up his own court in the castles which had been given him, with scarcely less than royal pretension. He had his own justiciar, Roger de Plasnes,¹ lord of Eastthorpe and Birch in Essex; his chancellor, Stephen Ridell,² afterwards archdeacon of Ely and always a thorn in Longchamp's side; a member of one of the great ministerial houses of Henry I.'s reign, nephew to the archdevil of Canterbury; his seal bearer was Master Benedict,³ probably the same who became in after years bishop of Rochester; William of Kahannes was his seneschal;⁴ Theobald Walter his butler.⁵ With these ministers he taxed and judged the tenants of his estates and the inhabitants of his franchises. The counties under his control were administered by his own sheriffs, and their revenues were a loss to the exchequer of the king. Extravagant as he was, he was rich enough to dispense with the oppressive measures taken by the chancellor; his magnificence made him popular, and his court became the headquarters of all

His court
and minis-
ters.

His wealth
and magni-
ficence.

¹ R. Diceto, 664.

² Ben. Pet. ii. 224. Ang. Sac., i. 634. Longchamp deprived him of his preferments after Richard's return, Gir. V. Gall., 404. The date of his appointment to the archdeaconry is not settled, but it was probably after this. He was many years later the papal candidate for the see of Ely. A letter from the pope's chamberlain, Stephen, to John is in existence, asking for his promotion, *4th Report of the Deputy-*

Keeper of the Records, App. ii. p. 141. This must have been in 1215. He died before the see was filled up.

³ Ben. Pet. ii. 224.

⁴ *Fœdera*, i. 55.

⁵ *Fœdera*, i. 55. This is the brother of Hubert Walter, chief butler to John as Lord of Ireland, and ancestor of the Butlers of Ormond. He was also constable of Lancaster castle, and ferrier of the honour. Madox, *Hist. Ex.*, 412.

who had grounds of complaint against Longchamp. He lived at Lancaster, where Theobald Walter was his castellan, or at Marlborough, and waited for a chance of supplanting the minister. The leading man in his counsels was Hugh of Nunant, bishop of Coventry, who, much as he hated Longchamp, had not yet quarrelled with him. John himself, until the outbreak, seems to have been on good terms with him, and it was from him as legate that he had received absolution from his vow of absence from England for three years.¹

He waits for his opportunity.

Hugh of Nunant his chief adviser.

Hugh of Nunant was sprung from a family the head of which held the barony of Totness by gift of King William Rufus. He was sister's son and adopted child of Arnulf of Lisieux,² the pertinacious schemer of Henry II.'s reign, and had inherited from him the diplomatic abilities of his race. He had travelled and negotiated, and under Henry II. had been ambassador to Frederick I. and Alexander III.³ He had tried his hand also at the work of a legate; had been sent in that capacity to Ireland for John's coronation, in 1187;⁴ and on his way had insulted the church of Canterbury by carrying a cross and wearing a mitre whilst yet unconsecrated, in the presence of Archbishop Baldwin. Since his consecration, on the other hand, his aim had been to play the part of a temporal lord; he had bought, as we have seen, the sheriffdoms in three counties. He was possessed with an extreme hatred of monachism, which was amply repaid by the monks. He was a thoroughly unprincipled man; very vain and ambitious; clever, eloquent, and adroit, but jealous of all pre-eminence and unscrupulous in word and deed. Gervase of Canterbury, with some discrimination, represents him as an able and spirited man of business; captious in word;

Character and career of Hugh of Nunant.

¹ Gir. Camb., *De rebus a se gestis*.
Ang. Sac. ii. 496.

² Arn. Lexov., ep. cxxvii.

³ Ben. Pet. i. 322.

⁴ Ben. Pet. ii. 4. Gervase, 1486.

His death-bed confession and repentance.

ready to curse where a curse would frighten; apt enough with soft words where the object was to subvert the strong¹ I have already referred to him as the author of the vile charges brought by Giraldus against Longchamp. If the monks might be believed, his own character was no better. It was said that when lying on his death-bed he recounted the sins of his life, he found no confessor who would venture to appoint him a penance.² Giraldus³ adduces this as a proof of the greatness of his penitence; but the story proceeds to say that he sentenced himself to purgatory until the day of judgment. It was he who advised Richard to send the monks to the devil; devils was the best name he ever found for the fraternity; and the great object of his episcopal policy was to substitute for them canons, not only at Coventry but in the other conventual cathedrals.

His quarrel with the monks.

The whole details of his contest with his own monks, which was as long and lively as that of the archbishop with those of Christchurch, are not preserved; but it is not unlikely that part at least of his hatred of Longchamp was caused by the conduct of the latter in this respect. Longchamp was a favourite with the monks and possibly exerted himself on their behalf with a view to the promotion of his brother Robert. Before Baldwin's departure, in a council at Westminster on the 22nd of October 1189,⁴ Hugh had shown himself to the bishops black and blue with the blows the monks had given him; and Baldwin, whose feelings were easily excited, and who had no love of monks who were not Cistercians, had joined in a sentence of excommunication against the assailants. The chancellor had so far yielded to the same pressure as to order, in the council at Westminster

¹ Gervase, 1487.

² M. Paris, 192. Chron. de Melsa, i. 249, from Higden.

³ Gir. Camb. *de Vita H. Nonant*; Ang. Sac. ii. 353, 354.

⁴ R. Devizes, p. 9.

in October 1190¹, the removal of the monks; but it is probable that he hesitated to sanction the oppressive means by which the change was carried out, or that when the see of Canterbury became vacant, he adopted the more promising policy. Whether Hugh had kept terms with him until he gained his object, or had quarrelled with him on the subject, does not appear; but now the close friendship which the world had seen between the two bishops, broke up suddenly,² and Hugh of Nunant became the intimate friend of John.

Longchamp at first connives at his treatment of the monks for a time.

Subsequent events showed the line of argument by which John's fears and mistrust of the chancellor were aroused. Richard whilst at home had avoided any recognition of John as his heir, and the very liberality with which he had dealt with him was clogged with restrictions that showed his mistrust. The prospect of the succession of Arthur was intolerable; yet it was understood that that was a settled thing between Richard and his minister. The king had in the November just past, arranged for a marriage between Arthur and a daughter of King Tancred, and had written to the pope about Arthur as his heir.³ Possibly the news of this negotiation may have prompted Eleanor's visit to her elder son, and her anxiety for his speedy marriage. She cared little for Arthur, and her love for John probably made her desirous that his state of suspense should be terminated by the birth of a direct heir. In pursuance of the king's plan, Longchamp had negotiated with William the Lion,⁴ who was the nearest kinsman, on the side of his mother, to the young duke. Besides, the vacancy of the see of Canterbury laid open to the legate the highest constitutional position in the realm: if Richard were to die on the crusade, there could be no doubt whose voice would be most potent in the nomination of his successor;

Causes of John's hostility to Longchamp.

The probability of Arthur's succession.

The probability of Longchamp becoming archbishop.

¹ R. Devizes, p. 14.

² Will. Newb., iv. 18.

³ Ben. Pet. ii. 137. Hoveden, iii. 65.

⁴ Will. Newb., iv. 14.

Influence of
the arch-
bishop in
the determi-
nation of the
succession
to the
kingdom

there could be no doubt either that the chancellor was tampering with the monks to obtain the election for himself. The bishops as a body were sure to accept the king's nominee, and the king was certain to nominate the chancellor; the monks who alone could impede or delay such a consummation were being prepared to look to him as their protector; he would soon be archbishop; then John's chance of the crown would be gone. Richard's object in nominating the archbishop of Montreal could only be guessed. It might be that he had sold the appointment, or that he had sold the promise; or that he merely wished to waste time, and shut out other competitors. It could be scarcely thought that he intended the nomination to be sustained. In the meantime some blow must be struck that would disgrace or disable Longchamp, nor would it be difficult to find an occasion. He had offended all classes and all parts of England by his exactions, his arrogance, and his contempt for the nation at large. He had rejected the advice of John himself, had virtually imprisoned his fellow justiciar the bishop of Durham; he had shown a provoking disregard of the counsel of the barons whom Richard had associated with him in the regency. There is so much truth unquestionably in these accusations that we cannot be surprised that John acted upon them. And an opportunity soon presented itself.

Longchamp
had offended
all classes.

Behaviour
of Gerard
Camville.

The immediate cause of the outbreak was this:— Gerard Camville, son of that Richard who commanded the English fleet on the crusade and was afterwards viceroy of Cyprus, had married Nicolaa of Hay, the heiress of the castellanship of Lincoln, and shortly before the king's departure had bought the sheriffdom of Lincolnshire, with a promise of seven hundred marks. The impolicy of allowing the sheriff's jurisdiction and the possession of the castle to be in the same hands was an admitted principle of administration; even John himself had not been suffered to hold both castles and

provincial jurisdictions together: but Gerard Camville's position was not in itself illegal. He had, however, allowed his castle to become a den of robbers, and then, to avoid judicial inquiries, had done homage to John.¹ On hearing of this, the chancellor ordered him to give up both castle and sheriffdom. This he refused to do and prepared for resistance. Nearly at the same time Roger Mortimer, lord of Wigmore, got into difficulties with the government and held his castle against the chancellor's men.²

He does homage to John and defies Longchamp.

It is impossible to say whether the interview which was held between John and Longchamp on Mid-Lent Sunday at Winchester, preceded or followed this outbreak of revolt.³ But it is certain that an estrangement had by this time taken place, and that the two had then and there a serious discussion as to the tenure of certain castles belonging to the honours which John enjoyed, that were yet withheld from him, and as to the pensions settled upon him out of the exchequer. Unless, however, events followed very rapidly, we may place the revolt of Lincoln after this meeting; and it was probably a result of it. If John had not quarrelled with Longchamp, Gerard Camville would not have dared to put himself into his power on the chance of being protected. The interview certainly settled nothing, and John, for once in his life, prompt to action, hastened to the north. Longchamp had to go first to Wigmore; long before he could reach Lincoln the castle was in a state of defence, and worse still, the castles of Tickhill and Nottingham, which had been purposely withheld from John, had been

Interview between John and Longchamp. (March 24, 1191.)

John gets possession of Tickhill and Nottingham castles.

¹ R. Devizes, p. 30. Will. Newb., iv. 16. Hoveden, iii. 242:—"retatus fuit de receptatione prædonum:" the sum of the charges only appears after the king's return, when they were heard before him at Nottingham.

² R. Devizes, p. 30. The charge against Roger was that he was contriving rebellion against the king with the Welsh. I believe this fact is noticed by no other writer than Richard.

³ R. Devizes, p. 26.

Treachery
of the
constables.

surprised by him.¹ John de Lacy, the constable of Chester, who had undertaken to hold them for the chancellor, had entrusted them to Robert of Croxton, and Eudo Deiville, and had gone to the crusade, during which he died at Tyre.² Roger, his son, had placed two other knights as companions of these two, and all four had turned traitors. John won the first move of the game, and when Longchamp arrived in Lincolnshire, after taking Wigmore and sentencing Roger Mortimer to three years of exile,³ he found his forces weary and an attack impossible. At the same time two other pieces of news reached him.⁴ Clement III. was dead, and his legation would require the confirmation of the new pope; and Walter of Coutances, archbishop of Rouen, the trusted minister of Henry II., who had accompanied Richard to Messina, was returning to England with unknown instructions. A proposal for pacification was only too welcome: the legate returned to Winchester, and there, on the 25th of April, an agreement was drawn up for an arbitration.

Long-
champ's
first discom-
fiture.

Arbitration
at Winches-
ter (April
25, 1191).

The management of this was entrusted to three bishops, Winchester, London, and Bath. The bishops summoned three barons to represent each side: for the chancellor, the earls of Warren, Arundel, and Clare; for John, his chancellor, Stephen Ridell, William of Wenneval and Reginald of Wasseville; and in addition to these, each party chose eight other knights. The choice of the three earls,—old Hamelin of Warren, the brother of Henry II.; William of Albini, son of Queen Adeliza, and his stepson Richard of Clare, shows that the chancellor's position still recommended itself to those who might be supposed to have the

¹ Hoveden, iii. 134. Benedict, ii. 207. Will. Newb., iv. 16. R. Devizes, p. 30.

² Ben. Pet. ii. 232. Hoveden, iii. 172.

³ R. Devizes, p. 30.

⁴ Will. Newb., iv. 16 (ed. Hamilton, p. 46.)

king's interest most at heart. They had been among the most faithful friends of Henry II.; John's representatives, on the contrary, were three of his own creatures. Both parties swore to act fairly, and the arbitration was pronounced, as follows:—Gerard Camville is reconciled with the chancellor and allowed to retain the castle of Lincoln. John is formally to restore the castles of Tickhill and Nottingham, but the chancellor is to entrust the command of them to Reginald of Wasseville, and William of Wenneval, liegemen of the king but partizans of John; each of whom is to give security for the surrender of them to the king, if he shall return; if not, to John. As for the other castles belonging to the honours of John, the chancellor is to change the wardens if John can show due cause for such a measure. In case of the king's death the chancellor is to do his best to secure the succession for John. All the articles, it will be seen, are decided in favour of John,—a proof either that his cause was regarded as superior, or that the chancellor's fortunes were sinking in the estimation of his friends; for the two main points of his policy, so far as we can discover, were the maintenance of the king's hold on the castles and of the succession of Arthur.¹ Two days after the pacification, the archbishop of Rouen landed at Shoreham, furnished with a batch of instructions from the king.²

Articles of arbitration.

Its practical meaning.

Walter of Coutances, "the Pilate of Rouen,"³ was a man of fair abilities, noble birth,⁴ sound religious character, and great experience. He was, however,

Arrival of Walter of Coutances.

¹ R. Devizes, pp. 32, 33. See also the notes to Benedict, ii. 208. Hoveden, iii. 185.

² R. Diceto, 659. Gervase places the arrival of the archbishop two months later, about Midsummer c. 1571.

³ This is the name given him by

Longchamp after his deposition; Ben. Pet. ii. 224. Hoveden, iii. 155.

⁴ Gir. Camb., V. Galfr., ii 10, p. 399:—"Galterius iste ab antiqua et authentica Britonum prosapia Trojanæ nobilitatis apicem præferente originem trahens."

Instructions
given by
Richard to
Walter of
Coutances.

somewhat wanting in resolution, and scarcely strong enough to be entrusted with the almost unlimited discretion with which Richard accredited him. He left Messina with Queen Eleanor on the 2nd of April,¹ glad to escape by the sacrifice of his treasure, the further perils of the crusade. Richard, in a characteristic way, although in the utmost need of his services, made him pay heavily for the relaxation of his vow.² But hastily as he had made his way home, his commissions were dated as far back as the 23rd of February.³ It would seem that the king had not been able to make up his mind to discard the chancellor until the arrival of Eleanor; and that even when, in consequence we may suppose of her representations, he at last confided the instructions to the archbishop, it must have been with a verbal command to use them as the occasion might seem to warrant. Unless there were some such private direction the conduct of the archbishop is inexplicable. He was far too honest a man to conceal an order given peremptorily by the king; unquestionably his mission was in the first place to investigate, although after investigation he had full power to act. It must, however, be considered that Richard's conduct was puzzling to all parties; at the very moment he was entrusting the widest powers to the archbishop, he was writing to urge John and others to act in unison with the chancellor.⁴ On his arrival he found that John had gained a decided advantage over the chancellor, and that to produce the letters which superseded the latter would be to throw all power into the hands of the man whom

Richard's
curious
varillation.

State of
affairs on
the arch-
bishop's
arrival.

¹ Itin. R.R. 175. Hoveden, iii. 100. Ben. ii. 158, 161.

² R. Devizes, p. 27.

³ R. Diceto, 659. Gir. Camb., V. Galfr. p. 396.

⁴ R. Devizes, 29. This may account for his hesitation in acting. Longchamp had utterly foiled the

bishop of Durham by producing instructions of later date than his own. Walter of Coutances' letters were dated in February. Many letters of later date must have reached England before the end of April; and these were favourable to the chancellor.

his master most reasonably distrusted.¹ He saw also, it seems likely, that the humiliation which Longchamp had gone through would be enough to cut him off from the hope of the primacy, and his legation had already expired. John was at the moment the most dangerous of the two, and Longchamp's authority must be sustained.

Probable reason for his not acting.

The chancellor, on the other hand, finding that the archbishop produced no new instructions, and that the mercenary force which he had introduced into the country was daily increasing,² took heart and prepared for another struggle. Before attempting this, however, he had to visit Canterbury, where the bishop-elect of Worcester was waiting for consecration. There on the 5th of May he met the bishops of Winchester, Bath, Chichester, and Rochester,³ and his great enemy Hugh of Nunant; and by these the consecration was performed. On the following day the legate, for so he still called himself, presented to the monks of Christ Church the king's letters, recommending them to elect the archbishop of Montreal.⁴ The monks expressed surprise at the urgency of the

Longchamp prepares for a second struggle.

He visits Canterbury.

¹ The letters subsequently produced by the archbishop are given in part or entire by R. Diceto and Giraldus Cambrensis. Of these, one is a fragment of a letter addressed to William Marshall, Hugh Bardulf, Geoffrey Fitz Peter and William Briwere; placing in their hands the supreme power, in case the chancellor shall have not acted faithfully; it is not dated and contains no mention of the archbishop. R. Diceto, 659. A second, also given by R. Diceto, is dated Feb. 28 at Messina addressed to the chancellor and the four barons above-mentioned, associating the archbishop in the government of the kingdom, and speaking of an especial commission given to him relative to the see of

Canterbury. A third, dated Feb. 20, and addressed to William Marshall alone, contains words nearly identical with those of R. Diceto's first fragment, but directing that in case of the chancellor's unfaithfulness, the justices are to act "secundum prædicti archiepiscopi dispositionem." Richard of Devizes mentions other instructions, no doubt addressed to the convent of Canterbury; and one in particular giving Longchamp leave to manage by himself the election to the abbacy of Westminster. R. Dev., p. 29. See notes on Benedict, ii. 157, 158, Hoveden, iii. 96.

² W. Newb., iv. 16, p. 46.

³ Gervase, 1568.

⁴ Gervase, 1569.

Long-
champ's
transactions
with the
monks of
Canterbury.

legate's behaviour, and asked leave to present their answer to the council of bishops which was to sit a few days later at Northampton. The permission was granted by Longchamp readily enough, for although he might have preferred the election of a stranger to the translation of any of his brethren, he was better pleased that the archbishopric should be vacant still. It is to be suspected that on this occasion there was some underhand dealing between Longchamp and the monks, for immediately on the departure of the legate,¹ they displaced their prior, Osbert, whom Baldwin had appointed against their will, an act for which they were never called to order by Longchamp: from this moment also the idea recovered ground that he himself intended to be the new archbishop. The report reached John, who wrote urgently against him to the convent,² and the archbishop of Rouen allowed so much of his instructions to transpire, that it was known that one part of them at least was to settle the business of the election.

Fear of his
being
elected arch-
bishop.

Successive
postpone-
ments of the
election.

The meeting at Northampton followed shortly,³ and a further postponement of the election. The monks required further evidence of Baldwin's death and of the qualifications of the aspirant. The justices urged that the election should be proceeded with instantly, but the monks as usual contrived to gain their point, this time probably with the direct support of the chancellor.

Hostilities
resumed.

Shortly after this arrangement was made, the hostilities between the chancellor and Gerard Canville were resumed. Immediately after Midsummer,⁴ having taken measures to secure his reappointment as legate, one of which was the forwarding of urgent letters in his favour from the bishops and from Walter of Coutances amongst

¹ Gervase, 1570.

² Epp. Cantuar., 330, 346.

³ Gervase, 1570.

⁴ "Post festum Sancti Johannis
" Baptistæ." Ben. Pet. ii. 207.

them,¹ he brought together his forces and again advanced on Lincoln, this time taking permanent possession of the sheriffdom, which he handed over to William Stuteville.² The castle, however, still held out, and on the first report of the chancellor's march, the garrisons of Tickhill and Nottingham, as might be expected, opened their gates to John. But again both parties avoided a battle, although Longchamp had called up a third of the feudal levy of England for his defence.³ The moderate counsels of the archbishop of Rouen prevailed, and at another conference at Winchester on the 28th of July, a somewhat fairer arbitration was arranged.⁴ In this the bishop of Durham also took part, having, it would seem, been liberated from his forced inactivity by the arrival of Walter of Coutances; and besides the three who had arbitrated in April, the bishops of Coventry and Chichester were present. Preserving in some measure the lines of the former agreement they decided that John was to place Tickhill in the hands of William of Wenneval,⁵ and Nottingham in those of William Marshall, to be held by them for the king, but in the event of his death or of a further attack on John by the chancellor, to be surrendered to the former. The other castles of John's honours are entrusted to the archbishop of Rouen, the bishop of London, and others, to be surrendered to him in case of the king's death. The castle of Windsor is handed over to the earl of Arundel, Winchester to Gilbert de Lacy,⁶ and Northampton to Simon Pateshull, all partizans of the

Longchamp marches against Lincoln.

Second pacification at Winchester.

¹ So Pope Celestine III. states distinctly, "omnes Anglicani episcopi pro eodem legationis officio confirmando mihi proprias litteras transmiserunt." Ben. Pet. ii. 242, 243. Hoveden, iii. 190.

² Hoveden, iii. 134. Ben. Pet. ii. 207.

³ R. Deviz. 32.

⁴ Hoveden, iii. 135.

⁵ He had held Nottingham under the earlier treaty, R. Devizes, 33, and he was constable there again in 1194. Hoveden, iii. 240.

⁶ Another of the numerous proofs of the connexion of Longchamp with the Lacies; as indeed was the fact that he entrusted Nottingham and Tickhill to the constable of Chester, above p. lviii.

Result of the
second arbitra-
tion.

chancellor. Gerard Camville is to be replaced in the sheriffdom. In all these points the chancellor gave way somewhat more than was wise, but less than he had done in April. When these arrangements should be completed, the complaints of the chancellor against Gerard Camville were to be heard and John was bound not to interfere. Oaths were taken on both sides, for

Sureties on
both sides.

Longchamp, by the earls of Arundel, Salisbury, Norfolk, and Clare, William FitzRobert, William de Braiose, and Roger FitzRainfrai: for John, by his chancellor Stephen Ridell, William of Wenneval, Robert de Mara, Philip of Worcester, William of Kahannes, Gilbert Basset, and William of Montacute. Among Longchamp's jurors were some who very shortly showed themselves to be his enemies, especially the earl of Salisbury and Roger Fitz-Rainfrai.¹ It is possible that his interests were intentionally betrayed, and it was certainly a puerile piece of lawyer's work to pretend to regard the main question as one between Gerard Camville and the chancellor. But the archbishop of Rouen probably sacrificed other considerations to the maintenance of his own position as mediator, and to the obtaining the omission of any terms which would have openly asserted John's claim to the succession.

Influence of
the arch-
bishop of
Rouen.

Break up of
the con-
ference.

After the party broke up the chancellor returned to London,² and John removed to Marlborough,³ whence a little later he went to Lancaster.⁴ The archbishop of Rouen now again attempted to carry out the king's

¹ These were both excommunicated by him after his exile. Ben. Pet. ii. 293. Hoveden, iii. 153.

² Two days after the pacification, July 30, the chancellor writes from Preston to the sheriff of Sussex to secure Geoffrey of York. Gir. Camb., V. Galfr. p. 390. On the

2nd of August he writes to the bishop of Bath from the Tower of London; "teste Radulfo Archidiacono Herefordiam."

³ Hence he dates his letter to the monks of Canterbury against the chancellor. Epp. Cantuar., 346.

⁴ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 393.

directions as to the election at Canterbury, but was met by a positive prohibition from Longchamp.¹

Return of
Geoffrey,
archbishop
of York.

Another cloud was rising, not now in the distance. After two years of struggling, the archbishop-elect of York had received permission and an order to be consecrated by the archbishop of Tours.² Immediately on his consecration, urged by John and perhaps not discountenanced by Eleanor,³ he gave out that he was determined to proceed to his see, and that he, as well as John, had been allowed by their brother to withdraw his promise to absent himself for three years from England. The chancellor had received no such instructions; it was his duty to prevent his return, or at least to compel him to swear fealty to the king: as early as July 30,⁴ he had ordered the sheriff of Sussex to arrest him if he should attempt to land within his jurisdiction,⁵ and about the same time had obtained a promise from the countesses of Boulogne and Flanders to forbid his embarkation. Having satisfied himself with these precautions he moved northwards, and having visited probably Ely and St. Edmunds,⁶ he is next found at Norwich.⁷

Precautions
of Long-
champ.

Geoffrey Plantagenet, the eldest surviving son, if not the first-born of Henry II.,⁸ is not like William Long-

¹ R. Diceto, 660, 661. Gir. Camb., 395. The letter is dated August 25, "apud Releiam."

² Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 388.

³ Benedict, ii. 210. I cannot go so far as to say that Geoffrey's visit was the result of a deliberate plot on John's behalf, any more than the revolt of Gerard Camville had been; but in both cases he grasped with avidity the opportunity of damaging Longchamp and strengthening his own position.

⁴ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 390. R. Diceto, 660.

⁵ *Ibid.*

⁶ Jocelin of Brakelond mentions

his visit to S. Edmund's, which it is difficult to place at any earlier period after the date of his legation.

⁷ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 392.

⁸ He was born in 1151, if Giraldus is right in stating that he was 40 at the time of his consecration. V. Galfr. p. 388. He must have been born therefore six years before Richard. If his mother were indeed Fair Rosamond, who is described as a girl in 1176, she must have been the king's mistress for six-and-twenty years, and he must be credited with constancy at least. See Ben. Pet. ii. pref. xxxi.

Character of
Geoffrey.

champ and Hugh of Nunant, a man of whom his contemporaries could deliver contradictory characters. His virtues and faults are clearly the same in the mouths of friends and enemies. His faithfulness to his father when his legitimate children had forsaken him is no recommendation to those who hated his father, but it is not less a virtue. His skill in arms, his energy, his high and generous spirit, are apparent even when adduced as an argument of his unfitness for high spiritual office. His secular ambition calls for the animadversions both of his rivals and of those who would condemn such a feeling in an ecclesiastic altogether, neither choosing to remember that his ecclesiastical character was forced upon him. He had been for many years the close companion of his father as chancellor, and it was Henry's last expressed wish that he should be archbishop of York; probably he saw that in such a character only would his life be safe against his brothers, or any share of the power which he had enjoyed so long, remain to him. His own ambition, Giraldus tells us, pointed¹

His strange
ambition.

another way; to his chance of surviving his childless brothers and becoming king of England. The idea is so strange that we might almost suspect that Giraldus did not invent it. Such a thought, however, explains in some measure the conduct of both Geoffrey and Richard. The king was anxious to have him ordained, as the tonsure would be a bar to the crown; Geoffrey held back from ordination himself, as he had done before when elected to the see of Lincoln; nor did he receive consecration until he had seen both Richard and John married. But on Giraldus's word alone it cannot be taken for truth, and there were plenty of people whose interests were con-

¹ "Sperabat enim si de rege fra-
tre suo in peregrinatione tam
periculosa quicquid forte sinistre
contigerit, se regnum universam

"et regni partem non modicam
"assecurum." Gir. Cam. V. G.,
p. 333.

cerned in hindering his acquisition of the full rights of his position. Hugh de Puiset had no wish to be placed under an ecclesiastical superior from whom, although he had by papal privilege obtained the right of refusing him formal submission,¹ he might look for constant canonical as well as constitutional interference. Richard was anxious, for a long time at least, to keep Geoffrey out of England, and to retain in the hands of the exchequer the great revenues of the see of York. The chapter of York was filled with turbulent and secular men, a large proportion of whom Geoffrey had offended immediately after his election by refusing to confirm their titles. These were in constant strife with him before and after his consecration, and during the whole of his pontificate, misinterpreting and perverting every action of his, and catching at every chance which his undeniable talent for quarrelling with every one gave them, of attempting his deposition. John could have nothing in common with Geoffrey, although he anxiously pressed upon him his duty of taking charge of his church, with the intention no doubt of preparing fresh difficulties for the chancellor. William Longchamp seems to have been fully persuaded that the king had made no concession in respect of the oath, and that he was perfectly justified in forbidding his return. He might, however, have seen that Geoffrey, if he could make him a friend, would be a counterpoise to John in the north of England.

His many enemies and rivals for power.

It was probably the news brought from England by Eleanor that induced Richard to stir at last in the matter ; he saw, perhaps, that Geoffrey might be harmless, or even useful in the case of a struggle between the bishops of Durham and Ely. Eleanor, on her visit to Rome, laid the circumstances before pope Celestine ;² all

Eleanor's influence used in Geoffrey's favour.

¹ Ben. Pet. ii. 146. Hoveden, iii. 74.

² Hoveden, iii. 100. It was probably a result of this intercession of

Geoffrey's
consecra-
tion.

He is for-
bidden to
sail to Eng-
land.

He crosses
to Dover,
and an
attempt to
arrest him is
made.

difficulties were obviated; the letters of Clement III., by which Hugh de Puiset was authorized to refuse the profession of obedience, were set aside; and the archbishop of Tours, Bartholomew of Vendôme, under whose eye Geoffrey had studied in the schools,¹ was ordered to consecrate him. This was done on the 18th of August; the same day he received the pall, and immediately set out for England. On his arrival at Guisnes² he learned that the countess of Flanders had forbidden her men to convey him across the straits, and that the countess of Boulogne had done the same at Whitsand. On remonstrating, however, he was told that the prohibition extended only to him personally, that the Whitsand boatmen would carry his equipage, and that he might cross in an English vessel. The hint was taken; the retinue, under Simon of Apulia, crossed in Flemish vessels on Friday the 13th of September;³ Geoffrey followed in an English boat and reached Dover on the following day about nine in the morning. The authorities were prepared for him; before he had time to land, the messengers of the lady of the castle, Richenda, the chancellor's sister, boarded the vessel, and insisted on his proceeding straight to the castle, where the day before his baggage had been deposited. Geoffrey declined the invitation, hastily disguised him-

Eleanor, that Celestine III. on the 11th of May issued the letter to Geoffrey which is printed in the *Mon. Angl.* vi. 1188, and contains the following statement: "quod licet personam venerabilis fratris nostri Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi . . . sedes apostolica providerit et duxerit honorandum, quia tamen juri et statui Eboracensis ecclesie nos oportuit et decuit providere . . . ei dedimus in mandatis atque præceptis, tibi sicut suo metropolitano,

"exemptione qualibet obtenta pro eo a Romana ecclesia non obstante, et ante consecrationem et cum fueris consecratus assistat . . . et . . . debitam tibi obedientiam et reverentiam, sublato cujuscumque contradictionis et appellationis obstaculo, impendere non postponat." The letter is printed unintelligibly in the *Monasticon*.

¹ *Benedict*, i. 93.

² *Gir. Camb.*, V. *Galfr.*, p. 390. *Bened.* ii. 210.

³ *Gir. Camb.*, V. *Galfr.*, p. 390.

self,¹ and mounting the horse which was prepared for him on the beach, started at full speed for the priory of S. Martin. One of Richenda's men rode after him, and caught the horse by the bridle; but Geoffrey was equal to the occasion, struck out with his right leg, and hit his adversary's horse full on the side with his armed heel. The horse plunged, and compelled the rider to relax his hold.² The archbishop, after this exploit, proceeded unmolested to the priory, where he found the canons beginning mass; the epistle was being read: the words (so the story went) in the reader's mouth were, "He that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be," and "I would they were even cut off that trouble you."³ The soldiers who followed did not venture to lay hands on him, but took possession of the monastery. When the mass was over, the archbishop sent to ask Richenda whether the outrage were authorized by her. She replied that she had the chancellor's order, and that if he bade her to burn both Dover Castle and London town,⁴ she would obey. The knights of Kent, under William Auberville, son-in-law of Ranulf Glanvill, entreated the archbishop to take the oath of fealty to the king and chancellor at once. Geoffrey, with his usual impetuosity, replied that to the king he had already sworn fealty, and would not do it again upon compulsion; as for the chancellor, he would do nothing for him but what should be done for a traitor. The state of siege continued for four days; on the Sunday,

He takes
refuge at S
Martin's.

Negotiations
with the
lady of the
castle.

Geoffrey re-
fuses to
swear fealty

¹ "Mutavit vestes." Benedict, ii. 210. Hoveden, iii. 138. Giraldus does not mention this undignified act of his hero.

² Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 390.

³ This is mentioned by Benedict, ii. 210, and Hoveden, iii. 138. Yet the day was the feast of the exaltation of the Cross, and the epistle for that day does not contain these

words; nor does that for the week (the 13th Sunday after Trinity), although it is taken from the same epistle, that of S. Paul to the Galatians. Either the historians have imagined a coincidence, or the missal of the Austin canons had a peculiar rite for the day.

⁴ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 390.

Geoffrey ex-communicates his enemies.

Geoffrey excommunicated Richenda;¹ thereupon the soldiers took possession of the church. By the evening Matthew de Cleres, the constable, arrived in person, a little shocked by his wife's zeal, but his entreaties failed to persuade Geoffrey to take the oath. At last, on the Wednesday, he was arrested by a band of mercenary soldiers, under Aubrey Marney, an Essex knight, and Alexander Puintel, a hanger-on of the chancellor.²

He is taken from St. Martin's to the castle.

He was dragged from the altar, where he had been assisting at mass, and brought on foot, for he refused to mount a horse, carrying his archiepiscopal cross, to the castle.

Public excitement at the news.

The news of the outrage spread like wild-fire; the few parallels which presented themselves with the sufferings of St. Thomas invested Geoffrey for the time with the character of a church champion.³ S. Hugh of Lincoln, who was at Oxford, excommunicated with lighted candles⁴ the castellan and his wife, with all their aiders and abettors.

The bishops remonstrate with Longchamp.

The bishop of London hastened to Norwich to remonstrate with the chancellor:⁵ the bishop of Norwich, that old John of Oxford, who had known so long the dangerous waters on which Longchamp was launching, forgot his failing health,⁶ and urged the immediate liberation of the archbishop in very brisk argument. The prior and convent of Canterbury, on whose goodwill he had so much reason to depend, wrote more in sorrow than in anger.⁷ In vain the chancellor cursed the zeal of his friends and the fickleness of his master.⁸ He lamented the outrage. He had given no such orders; he had simply directed that the archbishop should take the oath of fealty to the king, which he had not yet done since

¹ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 391.

² R. Diceto, 663.

³ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 391.

R. Dic., 663. Gervase, 1576.

W. Newb., iv. 17, p. 48.

⁴ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 392.

⁵ R. Diceto, 663.

⁶ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 392.

⁷ Epp. Cantuar., 344. Gervase, 1576.

⁸ Epp. Cantuar., 344, 345. Gerv., 1577. R. Devises, 36.

his consecration, and that if he refused he should be sent, bag and baggage, to Whitsand. In vain he showed the letters-patent in which Geoffrey had promised to stay away for three years.¹ His blunder was more fatal to him than his crimes. His enemies had at last secured a charge which would unite all classes against him; or, for all classes were already against him, would give them a common excuse for action.

The charge against him taken up by all his rivals.

Hugh of Nunant drew together the strings of the plot.² As soon as the arrest was known he hastened to John at Lancaster, and pointed out to him the greatness of the opportunity. Together they came immediately to Marlborough,³ whither John invited the chief men on whom he could depend, either as personally attached to himself, or as likely, for the sake of keeping order in the country, to take part against the chancellor. Longchamp, in compliance with the remonstrances of his friends, sent a hurried order for the archbishop's release.⁴ He was obeyed; Geoffrey was conducted back to S. Martin's after eight days of restraint,⁵ for it had not been an uncourteous captivity, on the 26th of September; he stayed there until the 28th, and then proceeded to London, where the bishop Richard FitzNeal received him with a solemn procession at S. Paul's on Wednesday the second of October.⁶ The chancellor was now assembling his friends and preparing for the first new move that John and his party might take.

Hugh of Nunant works upon John.

Release of Geoffrey. He goes to London.

We inquire in vain what the justices had been doing all this time. Richard had appointed, at various times, William Marshall, William Briwere, Hugh Bardulf, Geoffrey FitzPeter, Robert de Wihtefeld and Roger Fitz-Rainfrai, as assessors to the chancellor. We do not find

Inactivity of the justices.

¹ Epp. Cantuar., 345.

² Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., p. 393, It is not too harsh to call it a plot. See R. Devizes, 37.

³ Gir. Camb. 393.

⁴ W. Newb., p. 49. R. Devizes, 36.

⁵ Triduanus. R. Devizes, 36. Die septima. Gervase, 1577. Sept. 26th. R. Diceto, 663.

⁶ R. Diceto, 663.

Their con-
nivance at
Long-
champ's pro-
ceedings.

They now
take part
against him.

a trace of opposition on their part to the oppressions charged against Longchamp; they had joined in his refusal to admit Hugh de Puiset as justiciar;¹ they had not resigned their seats, or stood aloof when he treated them with neglect. Yet they joined immediately in John's proposal for his overthrow.² It was, perhaps, the sight of Hugh de Puiset's unlucky attempt to resist him, that intimidated them, but it is more probable that, although they disliked their chief, and were glad of an opportunity to get rid of him, they could not disown his acts, and perhaps saw nothing enormous about them. William Marshall was a brave soldier, but he had been hand and glove with the younger Henry in his treason,³ and his wisdom had yet twenty years to ripen before he became governor of England and her king. Geoffrey FitzPeter also was an able and moderate minister, whose character was to develop under the discipline of the next reign. Of William Briwere,⁴ we know little that is distinctive, but he was certainly a trusted man of business. Roger FitzRainfray we have seen apparently on the chancellor's side in the quarrel with John.⁵ None of them were yet marked men. Richard had done foolishly in taking away those of their own class who could have led them and kept them together. Just now, if Giraldus is right, they were scattered through the country, preparing perhaps for the Michaelmas audit of the Exchequer. William Marshall was in Gloucestershire, William Briwere in Oxfordshire, Geoffrey FitzPeter in Northamptonshire.⁶ One by one they received John's invita-

¹ R. Devizes, p. 12.

² Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 393.

³ Ben. Pet. i. 46.

⁴ Notwithstanding the English sound of his name, William was a Norman by extraction, and his family name in full is Briquerre. It is frequently spelled by Hoveden,

in MS. A. Brigwere, and is softened down gradually through Briwere, Briwere, Bruere, &c.

⁵ Hoveden, lii. 137.

⁶ Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 393. William Marshall was sheriff of Gloucestershire this year, and William Briwere of Oxfordshire.

tion, and one by one they accepted it. The bishop of Winchester, who had suffered so much from Longchamp, the bishop of Bath, who had hitherto been his friend,¹ who had negotiated for him the business of the legation, followed. They met at Marlborough, and the arrival of the archbishop of Rouen gave a head and authority to their proceedings. The time was clearly come for him to act up to his fullest powers. The chancellor must be sacrificed before John had time to bind to himself, by complicity in revolution, the barons who were now loyal enough to Richard, although they hated, and had just grounds of complaint against, his representative.

The justices, bishops, and barons meet John at Marlborough.

Longchamp could not at first see the difficulty of his situation; he saw that the muster at Marlborough was a step to revolution, but he could not see the enormity of the offence that he had given, and above all he was ignorant of the policy, and even of the commission, of the archbishop of Rouen. He issued orders to Geoffrey to appear in London before the barons of the kingdom, and to the bishops and justices who had joined John, to leave him immediately as a traitor.² He was, however, so far in the dark that he allowed Geoffrey³ to leave London and join the party of malcontents, who had now advanced by Oxford, where they had picked up S. Hugh of Lincoln, to Reading. He himself proceeded from Norwich to London, and thence to Windsor,⁴ to watch the movements of the other side. There he was met by a summons to attend a conference or parliament of the barons, which was to be held on the 5th of October at the bridge over the Lodden, about four miles from Reading and twelve from Windsor.⁵

Longchamp's preparations for resistance.

He comes to Windsor; and is invited to a conference.

Geoffrey FitzPeter had been so in Northamptonshire in 1189; but Richard of Engaine had paid 300 marks for three years' tenure of the office and was now sheriff. Rot. Pip. 3 Rich. I.

¹ W. Newb., iv. 17. p. 49.

² Gir. Camb., pp. 393, 394.

³ Gir. Camb., p. 394.

⁴ Gir. Camb., p. 394.

⁵ Gir. Camb., p. 394.

Conference
at the bridge
of the Lod-
den.

The 5th of October was a Saturday,—an unlucky day for oaths and contracts, as men thought,—and the chancellor, much against his will, set out from Windsor with the bishops of London, and the earls of Arundel, Norfolk, and Warren, who seem to have stuck to him until now. But at the fourth mile from Windsor his heart failed him; he saw that his companions were without spirit to support him, and that his policy was not to endanger his own liberty. He sent on his friends, and complaining of illness, returned to the castle. They, not rendered more enthusiastic by his desertion, proceeded to the place of meeting.¹

Longchamp
is faint-
hearted.

Barons and
bishops as-
sembled.

There were assembled the two archbishops, the bishops of London, Winchester, Bath, Lincoln, and Coventry; John earl of Mortain, William of Arundel, Roger Bigod of Norfolk, Hamelin of Warren, and William Marshall of Strigul; Geoffrey FitzPeter, William Briwere, and many other barons, with their retainers. As soon as the assembly was got together and order proclaimed, the archbishop of York stood up and exhibited his complaints; the documents by which the king had authorized his return and his participation in public business were read and explained by Hugh of Nunant to the barons.² The archbishop of Rouen followed; he had been sent by the king to arrange the election at Canterbury, with the fullest powers and the most private instructions, yet the chancellor had forbidden him to proceed on his mission—nay, he had sent him word that he would cross London Bridge at his peril; further, he had never once since he landed in April been consulted by the chancellor on any matter whatever.³ In the third place the justices, especially William Marshall, William Briwere, and Geoffrey FitzPeter, asserted that their counsels, which he was obliged by the king's express order to respect, were never

Speeches of
Geoffrey,
Hugh of
Nunant, and
the justices.

¹ Gir. Camb., 395. Bened., ii. 212. | ² Gir. Camb., p. 395.

³ Gir. Camb., 395.

attended to. Even the earl of Arundel, who seems to have wished to say what he could for him, could not deny this.¹ There were other complaints of a less general character. Hugh of Durham and his son Henry sent in the tale of their wrongs.² Henry de Vere in particular, who had been deprived of his estates through the chancellor's agency, probably in favour of Stephen Longchamp, who was his brother-in-law, was bitterly urgent against him ;³ Roger FitzRainfrai forsook him completely. The conclusion of the whole deliberation was put by the archbishop of Rouen ; he pledged the barons present to rise against the chancellor, to depose him as useless to the king and kingdom from the office of justiciar, and to appoint another in his place.⁴ Whether on this occasion Walter of Coutances produced his commission cannot be quite ascertained, but he clearly left the assembly assured that he had good authority for his proceedings. The bishops of London, Lincoln, and Coventry were deputed to fetch the chancellor at once to hear his fate, but before they had gone far they met his messengers reporting that he had returned to Windsor.⁵

Complaints of Longchamp's special foes.

Walter of Coutances shows his hand at last

Sunday, October 6, was a busy day. Very early, messengers began to pass between Windsor and Reading. The chancellor sent two of his confidential servants to persuade John to intercede for him ; knowing John's weakness they were to promise any amount of money to him and his like. Personal mediation, as in the case of William de Braiose, who had courage to make a move for his friend, was also employed. But all that was attained was an invitation to meet the barons at the old place on

Negotiations between Longchamp and John.

¹ Gir. Camb., 359.

² Benedict, ii. 212.

³ R. Diceto, 664. Henry de Vere married a daughter of Osbert de Cailly, and co-heiress with Stephen's wife, of Mutford in Suffolk ; see

Stapleton, *Norman Rolls*, ii. cxv. There may have been other grounds of quarrel.

⁴ Gir. Camb., 395, 396.

⁵ *Ibid.*

He fails to
make
friends.

and is ex-
communi-
cated.

Both parties
hasten to
London, on
the Monday,
Oct. 7.

the morrow ; if the chancellor declined to appear there and give account of his misdeeds, he was to expect no more consideration from the barons.¹ By the arguments of his friends he was prevailed on to promise to attend and so pledge himself. The bishops lost no time. At High Mass in the morning the bishop of Bath acted as celebrant, and Hugh of Nunant preached ; the point of application of his sermon was the excommunication of all aiders and abettors of the outrage on the archbishop of York. Not only Aubrey Marney and Alexander Pointell, but the chancellor himself was named in the anathema, and denounced as excommunicate.²

Probably the news of this act diminished still further Longchamp's inclination for a parley. The postponed meeting did not take place ; both parties dreaded treachery. The barons, on the Monday morning, after marching in order out of Reading, crossed the Lodden and sent their baggage under the charge of a strong guard through the forest to Staines, whilst they themselves proceeded on the highway towards Windsor.³ The chancellor on his part advanced about two miles to meet them, when he was met by one of his knights, Henry Biset,⁴ who had seen the division of the forces and the larger part taking the London road. He immediately gave the alarm ; the malcontents were going to seize the capital. Longchamp hastily returned to the castle, and, having made a hurried arrangement for its defence, started, as he supposed, in pursuit : crossed the Thames and took the northern as the shorter road, in order to intercept the enemy. The barons hearing of his departure, pursued him at full speed, and it became a race who should reach London first ; the chancellor's retinue, having the start, arrived a little before the others, but not in time to avoid a skirmish

¹ Gir. Camb., 396.

² R. Diceto, 664.

³ Benedict, ii. 211, 212.

⁴ Gir. Camb., 396, 397. R. Devizes, p. 37.

in which Roger de Plasnes, John's justiciar, was killed¹ by Ralph Beauchamp, one of the chancellor's knights. This must have occurred somewhere near Hounslow, where the direct road from Windsor meets that from Staines, which the barons had taken. Skirmish on the road.

As soon as Longchamp arrived in London, he called together the citizens in the Guildhall,² and entreated them to defend the king's right against the attacks of John, who, according to his view, had thrown away every scruple, and was now plainly aiming at the crown.³ To his dismay, his words seemed without effect. Archbishop Geoffrey, in his passage through the capital, the week before, had made too good use of his time; he had taught his friends to regard the struggle as merely an attempt to unseat the justiciar, no treason being contemplated towards the king.⁴ The magnates of the city were divided,—Richard FitzReiner, the head of one party, took the side of John. Henry of Cornhell was faithful to the chancellor.⁵ These two knights had been sheriffs at Richard's coronation, and both represented the ancient burgher aristocracy: Reiner, the father of Richard, the son of Berenger, had filled the same office;⁶ and Henry was the son of Gervase of Cornhell, who had held the sheriffdom of Kent, which, with that of Surrey, the son now held. It is probable that Richard headed the party of change, and Henry, who was more closely connected with the country interest, and, through his office of fermer of the mint, with the exchequer, that of order.⁷ The Longchamp meets the citizens in the Guildhall.

Two parties in the city.

¹ R. Diceto, 664. Benedict, ii. 212.

² R. Devizes, 38. Gir. Camb., 397:—"In aula publica quæ a potorum conventu nomen accepit."

³ Gir. Camb., 397.

⁴ R. Devizes, 38.

⁵ Gir. Camb., 397.

⁶ Madox, *Hist. Exch.*, p. 476,

194. Rot. Pip., 2, 3, 4 Hen. II., pp. 17, 18, 27, 112. Rot. Pip., 1 Rich. I., p. 228. Liber de Antiquis Legibus, p. 1.

⁷ Madox, *Hist. Exch.*, p. 631. This year Henry de Cornhell renders account of 1,200*l.* which he has received of the treasure, by the brief of the chancellor, to sustain the Mint of all England, except Win-

Longchamp
betakes
himself to
the Tower.

division in council was so even that the chancellor thought it his safest plan to take up his quarters in the Tower. This he had scarcely done when John arrived. He was welcomed by Richard FitzReiner with open arms, and entertained in his house, where he learned the terms on which he was to expect the adherence of the city.¹ The burghers had long been anxious to obtain for themselves the royal recognition of their corporate character, or *communa*. This had been opposed to the theory of Henry II., who, instead of conferring political or municipal independence on towns by charter, preferred to deal out his benefactions by the medium of fines, keeping thus the power of withdrawing them in his own hands. Henry knew and probably disliked the foreign idea of the commune: "tumor plebis, timor regni, tepor sacerdotii."² John, however, had no scruples. He

John under-
takes to
confirm the
commune of
the citizens.

was ready to promise for the whole party that they would swear to observe the rights and customs of the citizens, and accordingly in the morning of Tuesday, when the assembly met at S. Paul's, this large and aristocratic body was fully represented.³ The city had, indeed, quarrelled with Longchamp by refusing, at his request, to shut the gates against John, and a large proportion of the burghers was prepared to take extreme measures against him.⁴

Meeting at
S. Paul's,
Tuesday,
Oct. 8.

The scene in S. Paul's seems to have been a repetition of that of the Lodden. First Geoffrey, then Hugh of Nunant, told the story of the chancellor's misdeeds; the

chester, and of 400*l.* the profit of the Mint for a year, in all 1,600*l.* He must have been closely connected in this way with the chancellor, and his connexion with the court may have set him in opposition to the supporters of the guild or *communa*. This theory seems to be supported by the fact of his marriage with Alice de Courcy;

and that of his daughter with Hugh Nevil, the master forester of England. See Mr. Stapleton's preface to the *Liber de Antiquis Legibus*, p. 11.

¹ R. Diceto, 664. Gir. Camb., V. Galfr., 397, 398.

² R. Devizes, 53, 54.

³ Gir. Camb., 398. Bened., ii. 218.

⁴ R. Devizes, 38.

wrongs of Hugh de Puiset and the ignominy heaped on the justices were not forgotten.¹ Then, for the first time, Walter of Coutances produced the commission dated in February, addressed to William Marshall and his fellow justices, and directing that in case of the chancellor's misconduct he should be superseded by the archbishop.² The barons, at John's instigation, at once recognized the letter as genuine, and declared by acclamation that the chancellor was no longer the governor of the kingdom, that the archbishop of Rouen was now the king's chief justiciar. John himself should be regarded as regent, "summus rector totius regni ;"³ next under him should be the archbishop as justiciar; under him the other justices would have no difficulty in acting, and again the whole administration of the country would be able to work. In this recognition of John the assembly went beyond anything that had been contemplated by Richard or even by Walter of Coutances; the office of regent, if it existed formally at all, being filled already by the queen-mother, whose absence from England had thrown considerable additional weight into the scale against Longchamp. This done, oaths were largely taken : John, the justiciar, and the barons swore to maintain the communa of London ;⁴ the oath of fealty to Richard was then sworn, John taking it first, then the two archbishops, the bishops, the barons, and last the burghers, with the express understanding that, should the king die without issue, they would receive John as his successor.⁵

Walter of
Coutances
presents his
commission.

The barons
welcome
him as chief
justiciar,
and salute
John as
regent.

Oaths taken
to the com-
muna;

fealty sworn
to Richard.

Longchamp
shut up in
the Tower.

The sentence had still to be enforced on Longchamp, and the citizens willingly joined in besieging the Tower. Unfortunately for the chancellor, it was not victualled for a siege, or, with time on his side, he might still have won.⁶

¹ Bened., ii. 213.

² Bened., ii. 213; "tunc pri-
mum."

³ R. Devizes, p. 38.

⁴ Gir. Camb., 398. Bened., ii. 214.
R. Devizes, 53, 54. R. Diceto, 664.

⁵ R. Diceto, 664. Bened., ii. 214.

⁶ W. Newb., p. 50.

His chances
of success.

Henry of Cornhell was ready to divide the city in his favour; John, having got all that he wanted, might be bought over, especially as his object now would be to undermine the authority of the new justiciar. The party had been brought together by an accident, and any accident might dissolve it. But the state of the stores would not admit of Longchamp standing a siege, and both Geoffrey and Hugh of Nunant saw that their only safety was in his downfall. He was obliged to offer

He applies
for recon-
ciliation and
is visited by
four bishops,
on Wednes-
day, Oct. 9.

terms to the new powers, and early on the Wednesday the four bishops of London, Lincoln, Winchester, and Coventry,¹ were sent in answer to his application, and to declare at the same time the resolution of the assembly. According to Giraldus, they found him in an abject state of prostration, mental and physical; he knelt before them—he swooned away from the violence of his agitation. Richard of Devizes confirms the story of his fainting, and adds that he was recovered by the sprinkling of cold water on his face; he ascribes the swoon to angry excitement and not to fear.² He was told that he must resign the seal, and surrender the king's castles.

He refuses
to resign.

He declared that he would do neither; he charged the barons with disloyalty to Richard; already they had given the kingdom to John. He threatened them with the king's anger, if he should ever live to see him. As for the castles, how could he surrender them? None of his house had ever yet been a traitor. Hugh of Nunant

He is in-
sulted by
Hugh of
Nunant.

argued like a brute—"Do not talk to us about your house, but do what you ought to do; what cannot be avoided, it is of no use to dally over. Depend on it, your house, young as it is, cannot account you its first traitor."³ Prostrate as Longchamp was, he held his

¹ Gir. Camb., 398.

² R. Devizes, 89. As this writer is anything but favourable to Longchamp, I think his statements may

be accepted always in mitigation of Giraldus's language.

³ Giraldus, p. 398.

ground in argument until evening, when, having tried to bribe John,¹ and found that if he were successful with him, there were, besides, more enemies than he could purchase, he yielded at nightfall to the entreaties of his servants, and allowed one of his brothers to go to John to say that he agreed to give hostages for his appearance before the justices the next day.² The hostages were his brother Osbert and Matthew de Cleres.³ Whilst this was being done, or perhaps, earlier in the day, the bishops executed one little piece of spite against him, by procuring the election of William Postard as abbot of Westminster, to the destruction of the chancellor's scheme of promoting his brother Robert.⁴

In the evening he agrees to appear the next day before the justices.

The barons met in great force early on the morning of Thursday, October 10th, in the fields to the east of the Tower, and there at last William Longchamp stood face to face with his accusers.⁵ With singular ill-feeling, Hugh of Nunant undertook to declare the charges and the ultimatum of the barons. For justiciar they would have him no longer; bishop he might be still, but justiciar he was not, and as chancellor they would do their best to strip him. He might keep three castles, Dover, Cambridge, and Hereford; but the rest he must resign; he must give pledges to keep the peace, and might then go where he liked. Longchamp could scarcely have entertained any hope of changing the mood of his enemies by a speech, but he seems to have been overwhelmed by the volubility of the bishop, at once declaring the indictment and pronouncing the sentence. When he found words he declared himself innocent of every charge. His fellow justices could,⁶ he said,

Longchamp meets the barons on Thursday Oct. 10.

Terms offered him by Hugh of Nunant.

He declares his innocence of the charges.

¹ *Ibid.* "Comitem Moritonis a deo ab incepto fere Cancellarius avertit."

² R. Devizes, 40. Gir. Camb., 398.

³ Gir. Camb., 398.

⁴ R. Diceto, 664.

⁵ R. Devizes, 40. Gir. Camb., 398. R. Diceto, 665.

⁶ R. Devizes, 41.

He consents to give pledges for the surrender of his castles.

if they were questioned, justify all that he had done to raise revenue for the king, and for every farthing he had so raised, he could render an account. For the surrender of the castles, as he was in their power, he would give pledges, but his offices he could not resign, nor would he recognize the act of his enemies in deposing him. "I am

On Friday, Oct. 13, he quits the Tower, and on Saturday goes to Dover.

"one, you are many, and you are stronger than I. I, the chancellor of the king and justiciar of the king-

dom, sentenced contrary to the form of all law, yield to the stronger, for yield I must."¹ So much said, and the words were true and not deficient in dignity, the meeting closed. That night Longchamp slept in the Tower;² on the Friday he gave up both that and Windsor, and moved with his baggage to Bermondsey.³

On the Saturday he proceeded, in company with bishop Gilbert of Rochester, and Henry of Cornhill, to Dover.⁴ His reason for going into Kent was said to be that he might lay down at Canterbury the cross of his legation which had expired on the death of Clement III.; but the events that followed showed that this was a mere pretext.⁵ He had been compelled to swear to surrender all the king's castles and to leave the appointment of constables for his own three, to the justices;⁶ until this was completed he was not to quit the country. Windsor and the Tower he had given up, but he could not bear to do more. Neglectful of the safety of his pledges, his brothers Henry and Osbert,⁷ as well of his own oath, he attempted, in the dress of a woman, to escape on board ship, on the Thursday after his arrival at Dover.⁸ This

He attempts to escape before he has fulfilled the conditions forced on him.

¹ R. Devizes, 41. 42.

² R. Diceto, 665.

³ Gir. Camb., 399. R. Diceto, 665.

⁴ R. Diceto, 665.

⁵ Benedict, ii. 219. Hoveden, iii. 145.

⁶ Gir. Camb., 398.

⁷ R. Diceto, 665.

⁸ Benedict, ii. 219, 220. Hoveden, iii. 146. R. Devizes, p. 42. R. Diceto, 665.

was prevented; he was dragged into the town and imprisoned with great ignominy in a cellar. The justices, on hearing of his discomfiture, issued immediate orders for his release, and having compelled him to yield in every point, let him go his way. He crossed over to Whitsand on the 29th of October. His misfortunes did not end here; he was seized, plundered, and put to ransom by the Flemish nobles.¹

He is taken and insulted, Oct. 18; leaves England, and lands at Whitsand, Oct. 29.

This little crisis occupies in our histories a place more proportionate to the interest of its personal incidents than to its constitutional importance.² The proceedings of the barons were revolutionary. Although the question of allegiance to the king does not enter formally into the complication, the insurrection must be regarded as of the same character as those by which from time to time the king's tenure of power has been directly attacked,—the machinery which has the power to make laws interposes with effect to meet a case, and to overcome difficulties, for which the laws have failed to provide; to punish the offences of a person who by circumstances, as in this case, or on theory as in case of the monarch, is above the ordinary process of law. The accused, when such a consummation is imminent, cannot expect to secure the benefit of legal treatment; rightfully or wrongfully he must be condemned; for he whom in such a position it is possible to bring to trial, has fallen too low to be able to resist, although not so low as to be safely spared. Nor does our history present us with a case in which the wrong doings of such a person, have by themselves provoked the revolution which overwhelms him. He falls under the accumulation of hatred, not because of it; it is because there is some one ready to take his place, who

Importance of the crisis here described.

The proceedings really revolutionary.

Revolution made possible by Longchamp's misconduct, but produced by John's intrigues.

¹ R. Diceto, 665. Hoveden, iii. 150. Ben. Pet. ii. 220. R. Devizes, 42.

² Sir Francis Palgrave has given

a recension of it in the preface to the 1st volume of the Rotuli Curie Regis, which is very valuable.

Opportunity
and cause of
revolution.

cannot afford to wait. So it may often be that the pretexts of revolution are out of all harmony with its real justification, and have nothing whatever to do with its definite causes. Longchamp's position was unrighteous and tyrannical; the hatred he had inspired was widely spread and not unwarranted; the movement by which he fell was of the nature of a conspiracy; the real objects which his enemies had in view were strictly selfish aims after personal or political aggrandizement. It was, however, a good precedent against John himself in after years.

Conduct of
the arch-
bishop of
Rouen at
the crisis.

The man who appears to the most advantage in the matter is the new minister, the Pilate of Rouen, who, if not a strong man, was an honest one, and in the main gave himself as thoroughly as Longchamp had done to the king's interests. If we consider that he was sent by Richard to England to hold the balance of power between John and Longchamp; to humour John as long as he could do so without encouraging him in disaffection; to strengthen the chancellor unless he found that it was no longer possible to keep peace between him and the barons; that he knew all the time that Longchamp was trusted by Richard, and that John only lacked the power to be a traitor; and if we consider further that in the motley band of malcontents with whom he had to work, there were not two who had the same object in view; that John was striving for the increase of his own power and the right of succession, that Geoffrey was struggling for the see of York, whilst Hugh de Puiset, who for the moment was working with him, was bent on vindicating his personal independence of his metropolitan; that the barons cared far more to get rid of Longchamp than to administer the kingdom under himself, also a foreigner, and scarcely less suspected than Longchamp:—we may, I think, regard his conduct of the crisis as skilful and complete. He managed to get rid,

by John's aid, of the chancellor who could govern no more, and yet to keep the substance of power as far as ever out of John's reach. His success in the crisis

But his own administration was not very successful. Although strengthened by the support of the queen, he was unable to meet the manœuvres of John aided by Philip of France. The result was that from the moment of Richard's captivity, he lost his grasp on the reins of government, and the country was only saved from anarchy by the management of Hubert Walter, who superseded him after two years and three months of office in the opening of the year 1194. His comparative failure as a minister.

The archbishop's first piece of work was a failure. The day of Longchamp's surrender, October 10, letters were issued for a meeting of the bishops at Westminster on the 22nd, and for the election of a successor to Baldwin.¹ The king had not yet withdrawn his nomination of the archbishop of Montreal; the monks were suspected of wishing to elect the chancellor; the archbishop of Rouen, who was supposed to have the king's instructions, was also suspected of wishing to exchange a poor archbishopric for a rich one.² The monks were really inclined to a delay which prolonged the day of their own independence and would increase the chances of their patron. But the justiciar was pressing, and they could resist no longer. After a preliminary meeting on the 22nd of October, they made the election on the 2nd of December. The bishop of Bath, whom no one seems to have thought of before, was elected. He died a few weeks after, but his election had satisfied the occasion.³ No new one could be made before the king had been consulted, and leave to elect granted. The primacy continued for a year and a half longer unfilled. Business of the election to Canterbury.
Election of Reginald Fitz-Jocelin

¹ Epp. Cantuar., 348.

² Gervase, 1580.

³ See Epp. Cantuar., pref. pp. lxxxvi-xc.

Long-
champ's
acts re-
versed.

Cross-fire of
excommuni-
cations.

Excommuni-
cations by
Longchamp.

As a matter of course, Longchamp's more offensive acts were now remedied; the bishop of Winchester was reinstated in the castle of which he had been deprived; the county of Northumberland was delivered over to Hugh de Puiset;¹ Osbert and Henry Longchamp were removed from their sheriffdoms, and the latter imprisoned at Cardiff.² The Yorkshiremen who had got into trouble about the Jews were restored to their estates.³ The bishops were instructed to take no notice of the legate's letters. Geoffrey returned to his see, and before Christmas had time to excommunicate his late ally the bishop of Durham.⁴ Hugh bore the sentence with equanimity, and met it by contriving new difficulties for the metropolitan, for whose sanctity he had been so lately ready to fight. The archbishop of Rouen regarded the chancellor as lying still under the Reading anathema. Longchamp, as soon as his legation was renewed, issued an excommunication, in which he included the whole ministry. Not content with this, he named seriatim all his great enemies,—the bishop of Winchester, Hugh of Nunant, the four co-justices;⁵ Richard Malbyse, the persecutor of the Jews and ally of Hugh de Puiset; Roger FitzRainfrai who had deserted him at the last; Henry de Vere, his brother Stephen's competitor for the Baudemont heritage; Gerard Camville, the delinquent of Lincoln; Stephen Ridell the chancellor of John, and the best endowed clerk in the diocese of Ely; Master Benedict, who pretended to bear the king's seal; the

¹ R. Devizes, 89.

² Gir. Camb., 399.

³ See above p. xlv. note. Richard Malbyse did not keep long out of mischief, in 1194 we find "Ricardus de Malbyse reddit computum de 300 marcis pro habenda benevolentia regis, quia dicebatur fuisse cum comite Johanne; et ut sit

"quietus de foris-facto occisionis

"Judæorum Eboraci, et pro habenda

"dis terris et wardis et forestaria

"sua sicut habuit quando rex iter

"arripuit Jerusalem." Rot. Pip.,

6 Rich. I.

⁴ Ben. Pet., ii. 225.

⁵ Ben. Pet., ii. 223. Hoveden, ii. 153, 154.

earl of Salisbury and the count of Meulan; two of the Bassets, and Simon of Avranches, lord of Folkstone, are thrown in, perhaps, as having taken part in the Dover outrage; Earl John himself is spared, and Hugh Bardulf; but the latter is ordered to give up the sheriffdom of Yorkshire to William Stuteville, and John, if he does not take care, will find himself excommunicated on the next Quinquagesima Sunday.

His threats
addressed to
John.

Before the chancellor ventured on this act he had received very encouraging news from Rome. The pope had not yet renewed his legation, but addressed him as if it had never been interrupted.¹ The savage attack made upon him by the bishop of Coventry had caused some little reaction in his favour. Peter of Blois wrote manfully for him;² Celestine III. would hear nothing from the other side; he argued, in fact, from his knowledge of Richard's trust in Longchamp and the obsequiousness of the bishops and barons in the days of his prosperity, that the attack on him was more prompted by envy and jealousy than it really was.³ The chancellor's steadfast purpose was to make his way back to England. After his expulsion he had passed through Flanders to Paris, where he had been received with processions, at his own expense, by the bishop at Notre Dame.⁴ Returning to Normandy he found himself treated everywhere as excommunicate; neither the office of chancellor nor the title of legate spared him this humiliation.⁵ Whilst he was there, Philip returned from Palestine.

Reaction in
favour of
Longchamp.

He visits
Paris and
goes thence
to Nor-
mandy.

Historians have recorded of the early events of 1192 little more than the cross-fire of excommunications; the interest of the period is in the crusade. John's plots and Longchamp's counter-plots lie below the surface. But we can see that Philip's return has introduced a

Obscurity of
the early
events of
1192.

¹ Benedict, ii. 221. Hoveden, ii. 242-244. W. Newb., iv. 18, p. 53.

² Hoveden, iii. 148-150.

⁴ Benedict, ii. 220.

³ Hoveden, iii. 190, 191. Bened.

⁵ Benedict, ii. 221.

Philip's return re-kindles the ambition of John.

new element into the calculations of both; that Philip's object is to injure Richard wherever he has the chance, by stirring up war on the Continent and persuading John to unsettle England.

Proposals of Philip and Longchamp to John.

John spent Christmas at Howden, with bishop Hugh, learning how to behave under excommunication.¹ Early in the year he received two communications. Philip invited him to France to a conference, offering him his brother's French possessions with the hand of the precious Alais,² William Longchamp offered him a round sum in money if he would contrive his restoration.³

Longchamp visits Philip.

John listened, to both the tempters, contrary as their purposes were. He had found by this time that the archbishop of Rouen was not inclined to give way to him, and that the title of ruler of all England which he had assumed, was less effective than the more constitutional rule of the justiciar. He promised to visit Philip; he also promised to do his best for Longchamp. It would seem that Eleanor was the first to hear of these negotiations, and the news quickly brought her to England. The chancellor had visited Philip in order to lay before him a complaint of the seizure of his property by the Flemish nobles;⁴ and the juxtaposition of two such men was not a little alarming. The queen landed at Portsmouth on the 11th of February,⁵ and found John ready to sail to France. Very determined he proved himself. Between Sexagesima Sunday and Easter the queen held four councils of the barons, at Windsor, Oxford, London, and Winchester.⁶ John showed himself more obdurate than was conceived. He not only persisted but plotted. He actually succeeded in persuading the constables of Windsor and Wallingford to hand over their castles to him.⁷ It was

Eleanor returns to England and compels John to renounce his projects.

¹ Hoveden. iii. 172. Bened., ii. 235.

² Benedict, ii. 286. R. Devizes, 56.

³ Bened. ii. 239. R. Devizes, 57.

⁴ R. Devizes, 55.

⁵ R. Devizes, 55, Gervase, 1580.

⁶ R. Devizes, 57.

⁷ Ibid.

only by the severest remonstrances that he was prevailed upon to give up his projected visit. The archbishop, with Eleanor and the justices, threatened that the moment he embarked they would seize, in the king's name, every castle and manor that he possessed.¹

Determined opposition of the queen to John.

In the midst of the excitement caused by these discussions, the bishop of Ely landed at Dover and took up his quarters with his sister in the castle.² John had listened

Longchamp lands at Dover in March.

to his overtures and now that he and the archbishop of Rouen had quarrelled, the support of the chancellor would be very important to him. Accordingly, about the fifth week in Lent, Longchamp wrote from Dover to the heads of the government, — the queen, John, and the justices, offering to stand his trial and demanding the restoration of his property. Now, Eleanor as well as John would have listened. She had prevailed already

His proposals to the queen, John, and the justices.

on the archbishop to release the estates of the see and withdraw the excommunication;³ Longchamp also withdrew his sentence against the justices. But even if these could have safely admitted his return, the barons were implacable. Little news came from Palestine. John's succession seemed more than imminent, and with Longchamp they would have nothing to do. John pleaded the cause of his new friend; he saw, in fact, that his arrival gave him the opportunity of making new terms for himself. One of the subjects marked out for consultation in the sitting of the barons was, what notice should be taken of John's treasonable conduct in corrupting the constables of Windsor and Wallingford.⁴ By holding out a threat to side with the chancellor, he

The barons refuse to listen to him.

¹ Benedict. ii. 257.

² In the middle of March, Gervase, 1580. R. Devizes, 57, 58. W. Newb., iv. 18, p. 54. Benedict, ii. 239. Gir. Camb., V. Galfr., 402 (circa kalendas Aprilis).

³ R. Devizes, 56. Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., 402. According to Gervase he came to England by the Queen's invitation, c. 1580.

⁴ R. Devizes, 57, "de presumptione castellorum."

John accepts a bribe from the justices and forsakes his new ally.

Longchamp ordered to quit England.

He sends complaints to Richard.

Mission of John of Alençon.

entirely escaped inquiry into this. And this was, perhaps, all he wanted. He made no secret of the price at which Longchamp had bought him. "Within a week," he told the justices, "the chancellor will pay me 700*l.* of silver if I abstain from interference between him and you. Money is what you see I want. You know what I mean; you are wise men."¹ The justices saw that they must buy him. They offered him 2,000 marks, 500*l.* of which were to be raised from the chancellor's estates.² John graciously accepted the sum, and peremptory letters were at once written by all parties to the common enemy, directing him, if he cared for his life, to quit England. He obeyed; sailed on the Thursday in Holy Week; landed again at Whitsand, and, as the English believed, betook himself at once to the court of Philip as a traitor.³ It is probable that his occupation was rather that of a spy; but we lose sight of him entirely for nearly a year. His envoy, the prior of Hereford, had already made his way to Palestine and poured into the king's ears the complaints which had so impressed the pope.⁴ He found Richard at Ascalon in April. The king was, as might be expected, disturbed at the news, but the distressed state of the crusade at the moment prevented his leaving. Six weeks afterwards, in May, at the Canebrake of Starlings, John of Alençon, the vice-chancellor, whom he had left in Normandy, reached him with new complaints; this time, probably, from the archbishop of Rouen:⁵ but just now it was out of his power to leave with honour. The break-up of the crusade was, however, imminent, and after a bold but destructive march on Jerusalem in the height of summer, the three years' truce with Saladin was concluded, and

¹ R. Devizes, 57, 58. W. Newb., iv. 18, p. 55.

² Benedict, ii. 239. R. Devizes, 59. Hoveden, iii. 188.

³ Benedict, ii. 240, 241. Hoveden, iii. 188.

⁴ Itin., R.R. 333.

⁵ Itin., R.R., 358.

in October, Richard embarked for home. The next news of him is in January 1193, when he is reported to be in prison in Austria. Capture of the king.

During these months the history of England is nearly a blank. Eleanor had succeeded in producing a temporary lull in the political strife. Hugh of Nunant had time to persecute his monks; Geoffrey of York to offend the dignity of the southern as well as to quarrel to the point of anathema with the clergy of the northern province. The justiciar had his hands full of Norman business. Whilst he was acting as the king's lieutenant in England, his own unhappy province was laid under interdict by the legates sent in consequence of Longchamp's complaints.¹ Philip was in arms, and only prevented by a resolute remonstrance of his barons from entering Richard's territories. Old bishop Hugh de Puiset had to be recalled from his retirement and sent into France to negotiate. The queen's pacific influence in England.

Eleanor seems to have continued in England during this time, and her presence was a pledge of peace. Longchamp lurked in Normandy and Aquitaine.² John nursed his grievances at Marlborough and Lancaster. At the Michaelmas exchequer, Richard Malbysse and William Percy were admitted to the possession of their lands until the king's return, for a fine of 20 marks. Gerard Camville was still in possession of Lincolnshire; Hugh of Nunant was sheriff of Warwickshire, Leicestershire, and Staffordshire; Henry Longchamp at Cardiff in prison.³ Minor acts of 1193.

¹ It was not in consequence of Longchamp's complaints that Normandy was laid under interdict, but because the steward had refused to receive the legates without the king's licence. Ben. Pet. ii. 247. R. Devizes, p. 43.

² Gir. Camb., V. Galfr., 403.

³ Rot. Pip., 4 Rich. I. Herefordsh.:

—“ Willelmus de Braiose non reddidit computum hoc anno de forma comitatus neque de summonitionibus, quia Henricus de Longocampo qui anno proximo precedente comitatum tenuerat, propter captionem suam computum non reddidit. Cujus computus oportuit computum Willelmi præcedere.”

Rumours of
Richard's
capture.

Towards Christmas, great uneasiness began to be felt in England as to the fate of the king. The pilgrims who had stayed behind him in Palestine were flocking home, and the last that had been heard of him was that the ship in which he had left Acre had been seen at Brundisium.¹ Rumours of his being in trouble reached the country. Soon after Christmas, John received from Philip the news of the capture and went over to Normandy in consequence.² After attempting to prevail on the Norman barons to swear fealty to himself, he joined Philip and agreed, according to the proposal of the last year, to become his vassal for his brother's dominions, including, as rumour said, England as well as Normandy.³ He then returned to England, got possession of Windsor and Wallingford, and demanded of the barons their recognition of him as king, now that his brother, as he said, was dead.

Intrigues of
Philip and
John.

Communi-
cations
opened with
the captive
king.

The archbishop of Rouen behaved with great circumspection and moderation. The first step was to discover where the king was; for this purpose the abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge were sent to Germany.⁴ To open communications with him when found, William of S. Mere l'Eglise, the prothonotary,⁵ was directed to follow, and he was joined by Hubert Walter, who, returning after Richard from Palestine, had heard in Sicily of his misfortune.⁶ Savaric, bishop of Bath, was directed to

¹ Hoveden, iii. 194.

² Hoveden, ii. 204.

³ The treaty made with Philip on this occasion is printed in the *Fœdera*, i. 57; it is dated at Paris in January, and amounts to a partition of the inheritance of Richard. It is most curious, in our present question, as containing a special provision for the securing to Hugh "Constan' episcopo" safety and restoration in case of peace being

made with Richard. This Hugh can be none other than Hugh of Nunant, and Constans is a misprint for Coventren'. The bishop of Coutances at this time was William of Tournebu who presided from 1179 to 1199.

⁴ Hoveden, iii. 198.

⁵ Hoveden, iii. 209.

⁶ Will. Newb., iv. 33, p. 98. Hoveden, iii. 209.

the imperial court to make the best terms he could.¹ Embassy to Henry VI. Savaric was the emperor's kinsman and friend. The abbots met the king in Franconia in March, and from that time he was in regular communication with the government at home.²

The chancellor was one of the first to find his way to Longchamp visits Richard. him. Richard received him with unreserved delight, and sent him back to England with powers to raise or to treat for the raising of the ransom, and a general commission to do his best for him.³ But the urgent business of the kingdom took precedence even of the king's deliverance. John, as soon as the barons had John in rebellion. definitely refused to listen to his proposals, took up arms. Windsor and Wallingford he had secured before his visit to France; they were now surrendered to him in form⁴; Nottingham and Tickhill had been in his hands since the year 1191; Lancaster and the Peak were fortified, and enabled to resist. He had hired a large force of Welsh mercenaries, whom he placed in Windsor.⁵ He had increased the number of his friends; His friends and allies. Hugh Bardulf, and even William Stuteville, had become his men.⁶ A great fleet of French and Flemish vessels appeared off the coast to co-operate with him,⁷ whilst Philip was using both force and fraud to gain a strong hold on Normandy. But the archbishop of Rouen was Resistance of the archbishop of Rouen. equal to the occasion; he gladly showed that there was no complicity between himself and John, and all the divided parties flocked to his standard. By a hasty call of the whole population capable of bearing arms, he pre-

¹ Hoveden, iii. 197. On Savaric, see Epp. Cantuar., pref., pp. lxxxvii. &c.

² Hoveden, iii. 198.

³ Hoveden, iii. 209. Gir. Camb., V. Galfr., 403. W. Newb., iv. 33, p. 97.

⁴ Hoveden, iii. 204. W. Newb., iv. 33, p. 98.

⁵ Gervase, 1582.

⁶ Hoveden, iii. 206.

⁷ Gervase, 1581. Hoveden, iii. 205.

Capture of
John's
castles.

pared to defend the coast,¹ and utterly defeated the design of invasion. Wallingford, Windsor, and the castle of the Peak fell before the justices.² Archbishop Geoffrey and bishop Hugh laid aside their spiritual weapons and joined to besiege Tickhill.³ But it was not the purpose of the government to reduce to extremity one who might any day become king. The news of Richard was too uncertain; and, much against the will of the barons, Eleanor persuaded the justiciar to conclude a truce with John from May to November.⁴

Measures
for securing
Richard's
release.

By this measure time and peace were gained for the compassing of the king's redemption. This had been, of course, the earliest thought in the archbishop's mind. Before John had begun hostilities, he had called a council of bishops and barons to Oxford for the 28th of February,⁵ whilst Savaric was on his way to the imperial court, and before it was actually known that Henry VI. would require a ransom. What was done at this assembly we are not told; probably the difficulties occasioned by John's behaviour may have prevented its being held, or anything else of the kind being contemplated before the arrival of the ministers who had been in communication with the king. On the 20th of April Hubert Walter landed with authentic news,⁶ and it was his mediating influence, probably, that induced the contending parties to make the six months' truce. A few days later, arrived a letter from the king, dated April 19th, stating that the sum of 70,000 marks was required for his liberation.⁷ To raise this the justices demanded an aid of a fourth part of all revenue, lay and clerical, with an equal sum to be levied on personal property, and a

Return of
Hubert
Walter.

¹ Gervase, 1581.

² Hoveden, iii. 207, 208. Gervase, 1582. W. Newb., iv. 34, p. 100.

³ Hoveden, iii. 206, 207.

⁴ Gervase, 1582.

⁵ Hoveden, iii. 197.

⁶ Gervase, 1582.

⁷ Hoveden, iii. 209. W. Newb., iv. 38, p. 109.

scutage of 20 shillings on the knight's fee: all the wool of the Gilbertines and the gold and silver of the churches.¹

Money raised for the ransom.

Whilst this was in process of collection, for no time was lost about it, arrived the golden bull of the emperor, brought by William Longchamp and delivered by him to the queen and justiciar at S. Alban's.²

Notwithstanding his high credentials and the assurance given by the king's letter that he still possessed his confidence, his very approach revived all the angry feelings of the barons. Before landing he had been obliged to swear that he would attempt to transact no business but that of the king's release. During his stay in London he had, however, ordered the seizure of some houses belonging to the bishop of Coventry, who was in open rebellion, and this produced such an outcry against him on the part of the citizens that the interview between him and the court could not be held in the capital.³

Arrival of Longchamp as the king's envoy.

His behaviour in London.

At S. Alban's he was not more welcome. "I come," he said, "not as a justice, not as chancellor, not as legate, " simply as bishop and the king's messenger."⁴ But the chief justiciar refused him the kiss of peace; when he demanded the hostages, as he was specially accredited to do, the queen refused to entrust to him her grandson William of Winchester,⁵ and the principal nobles declined to put their children in his power. Intensely chagrined, he contented himself with declaring the king's message and summoning the barons whose presence was required by Richard in Germany.⁶

His treatment at S. Alban's.

He retires in disgust.

¹ Hoveden, iii. 210.

² Gir. Camb., V. Galfr., 403. Hoveden, iii. 211, 212.

³ Gir. Camb., 403.

⁴ Hoveden, iii. 212. Longchamp seems to have been fond of distinguishing his own several capacities. We may compare his speech when

he arrested Hugh de Puiset, as given by Richard of Devizes, "ego te " capio, non præsul præsulem, sed " cancellarius cancellarium." R. Dev.. 13.

⁵ Son of Henry the Lion. Gir. Camb., 403.

⁶ Hoveden, iii. 212.

Longchamp
rescued by
Richard.

Richard had empowered his chancellor to undertake this task, probably as a demonstration of his own confidence in him, but he was not inclined to risk anything more; and fearing that his conduct might offend the barons, summoned him hastily to his side again. He was present with him at Worms on the 29th of June,¹ and a few days after negotiated a truce with Philip at Mantes, July 9.² A meeting had been arranged between Philip and Henry for June 24, at Vaucouleurs, the usual trysting place for the emperors and kings of France,³ but many circumstances happened to prevent it, and this truce, which was observed no better than the engagement to meet, was probably a substitute for it.

He negoti-
ates peace
with Philip.

Hubert
Walter and
others ap-
pointed to
collect the
ransom.

In the meantime Hubert Walter had, on the 30th of May, been elected archbishop of Canterbury,⁴ and to him, the bishop of London the treasurer, and the mayor Henry FitzAylwin, with William of Arundel and Hamelin of Warren,⁵—two men who had never wavered in their support of the chancellor,—the care of the money to be raised for the ransom was committed. The date of the assembly at S. Alban's cannot be fixed, but it was probably early in June. In the treaty of Worms, at the end of the same month, the emperor raised his terms. The sum required was now more than doubled; 150,000 marks were to be paid, of which 20,000 were to be the share of duke Leopold.⁶ A new budget was, therefore, necessary, but 100,000 marks being paid and hostages given, the arrangement of the new taxes was left until the king's arrival. Under the skilful hand of Hubert Walter everything was now concluded with facility; the autumn was devoted to the collection of the subsidies.⁷ John was away in France, whither he

Ransom
raised to
150,000
marks.

¹ Hoveden, iii. 215.

² Hoveden, iii. 217.

³ Hoveden, iii. 212.

⁴ Gervase, 1584.

⁵ Hoveden, iii. 212.

⁶ Hoveden, iii. 215, 216.

⁷ Hoveden, iii. 225.

had gone again as soon as he had heard from Philip that the "devil was unloosed."¹ Philip himself was busy with his matrimonial difficulties. The chancellor was in attendance on his master, who had, moreover, summoned to him most of the other uneasy spirits, the ambitious and officious Savaric, and even Hugh of Nunant among the number.² The hopes of Longchamp's party began to revive; his brother Henry was released from prison,³ and by a zealous attempt at poetic justice, Matthew de Cleres ventured to arrest and imprison the bishop of Coventry on his way to the continent with bags crammed with peace-offerings for Richard.⁴ The process of excommunication had to be resorted to again to obtain his release.

Turn of affairs in Longchamp's favour.

The negotiations between Richard and John were carried on, strange to say, through the chancellor,⁵ who seems to have done his best to effect a reconciliation. John was prevailed upon to swear fealty to his brother, but the arrangement was defeated by the barons of Normandy, who refused to give up the castles of his honours in that province, and he returned in disgust to Philip to plot with him the longer detention of the king.⁶ Before the end of the year Richard summoned his mother, the justiciar, and the chancellor to Mentz, and as the absence of the justiciar from England practically vacated his office, he nominated the archbishop of Canterbury in his place.⁷ Hubert had indeed been at the head of the government since his return in April; he maintained the royal authority until the king's return against the frantic opposition of John's supporters, and

He negotiates between Richard and John.

Hubert Walter made chief justiciar.

¹ Hoveden, iii. 216.

² Hoveden, iii. 226.

³ Rot. Pip., 5 Ric. L.:—"Henricus de Longocampo reddit computum de anno tertio Regis Ricardi, qui dilatus fuit propter captionem."

⁴ R. Diceto, 671. Gir. Camb., 404.

⁵ Hoveden, iii. 227.

⁶ Hoveden, iii. 228.

⁷ R. Diceto, 671. Hoveden, iii. 226.

End of the
administra-
tion of
Walter of
Coutances.

had recovered all the castles except Nottingham and Tickhill before Richard's arrival.

Here, however, the administration of Walter of Coutances, and the period of political and personal strife end. The interest of the remainder of the reign is constitutional rather than political, and I shall attempt in the preface to the fourth volume of this chronicle to give a brief survey of it. At present it may not be uninteresting to state the later fortunes of some of the actors who appear no more after the conclusion of the period.

Later his-
tory of
Hugh de
Puiset.

Hugh de Puiset, after the capture of Tickhill, presented himself to Richard at Nottingham, and was received with great show of affection.¹ A few days later he attended the royal council at Nottingham, and after quarrelling at Selston with the king of Scots about lodgings,—a thing which he had done once before with Henry II.,—he drew down on himself a sharp rebuke from Richard.² Partly in consequence of the king's coolness he surrendered the county of Northumberland.³ Scarcely, however, had he done this when he repented, and offered the king, as soon as he had gone to Normandy, two thousand marks for its restoration. When Hugh Bardulf demanded possession, the bishop declined to surrender until he had his answer from Richard. Hugh Bardulf having consulted the king, took possession of the county and exacted, moreover, the 2,000 marks as well as the surrender of the manor of Sadberge.⁴ In September we find him at York annulling the archbishop's sentence against the canons.⁵ On Ash Wednesday, 1195, he was there again, confirming the sentence passed by the dean against Geoffrey's party.⁶ This was his last public act. On leaving York he fell ill at Crayke,⁷ but persevered in riding on to Doncaster; from

¹ Hoveden, iii. 239.

² V. S. Godrici, p. 178. Hoveden, iii. 246.

³ Hoveden, iii. 249.

⁴ Hoveden, iii. 261.

⁵ Hoveden, iii. 272, 273.

⁶ Hoveden, iii. 284.

⁷ W. Newb., v. 310, p. 145.

Doncaster he was taken in a boat to Howden, where, on the 3rd of March, he closed his uneasy although magnificent career.¹ His son Henry survived him several years. He was in difficulties in 1198.² In 1201 he went, as so many of his forefathers had done, to Palestine,³ but, unlike them, he lived to return. He died in or before 1212, and as his estates escheated to the crown, we may conclude that he left no issue.⁴

Death of
Hugh de
Puiset.

Fortunes of
his son.

Hugh of Nunant despaired, as he well might, of Richard's clemency; not only was he known to be in the secret of all John's schemes, but his brother Robert had actually been the emissary who proposed the continuance of the king's imprisonment and refused to be a hostage for him on the ground of his being John's liegeman.⁵ One of Richard's first acts after his liberation was to arrest Robert and order Hugh to stand his trial in the clerical as well as in the secular courts, as bishop as well as sheriff. In the council of Nottingham he failed to appear, and was summoned again on the 31st of March 1194.⁶ The suit of the monks against him was being prosecuted in the Curia regis. He was allowed by the king to purchase his pardon and restoration for 5,000 marks,⁷ in March 1195; but Robert was still imprisoned, under the careful superintendence of the lady Richenda at Dover, where he died.⁸ The bishop sinks into obscurity from henceforth; although his suit with the monks lasted his life, it is uncertain whether he ever returned to England. He seems to have hung about the court until his death. In February 1198, archbishop Hubert restored the monks of Coventry, and

Later his-
tory of
Hugh of
Nunant.

¹ Hoveden, iii. 284. W. Newb., p. 146.

² Maddox, *Hist. Exch.*, p. 366.

³ Pat., 3 John, p. 3:—"Concessimus quod Henricus de Puteaco qui crusiatus est possit invadiare quas voluerit terrarum suarum."

⁴ Cart., 5 John, p. 126. He has a confirmation of the manor of Witton from the king in 1204.

⁵ Rot. Claus. 14 John, p. 124.

⁶ Hoveden, iii. 233.

⁷ Hoveden, iii. 241, 242.

⁸ Hoveden, iii. 287.

His death. in March bishop Hugh died at Bec Hellouin, condemning himself to purgatory until doomsday.

Richard's
treatment
of Long-
champ's
enemies.

Of Longchamp's other opponents it is satisfactory to find that they were treated by Richard exactly as his minister had intended, and this, perhaps, shows that the king had exercised over his movements a closer supervision than was suspected. The bishop of Winchester was, after the council of Nottingham, disseized of his castle and county, and lost with them a large part of his inheritance.¹ Gerard Camville was deprived at the same time of Lincoln castle and county, and put on his defence for the charges brought against him by the chancellor. He recovered the king's favour for 2,000 marks, and on John's accession became a greater man than ever.² His wife Nicolaa stood also so high in John's estimation that on her husband's death she was appointed sheriff or custos of Lincolnshire in 1216.³ The Yorkshire knights also had to raise much larger sums than they expected, to recover the king's goodwill.⁴

Fate of
Stephen
Longchamp.

The fates of the several members of the Longchamp family were various. Stephen, the steward of Normandy, the friend and companion of Richard, survived his master, and on the loss of Normandy by John, after some attempts to maintain his possessions in both countries, went over to Philip.⁵ He was slain fighting for Philip at the battle of Bouvines.⁶ Henry, the sheriff of Herefordshire, after his release from prison, appears

¹ Hoveden, iii. 246.

² Hoveden, iii. 242.

³ Rot. Pat., 18 John, p. 199.

⁴ Rot. Pip., 6 Ric. I., see above.

The citizens of York had to pay 200 marks to prove their joy at the king's return. "Cives Eboracenses r. c. de ca. marcis de dono suo pro gaudio adventus domini regis de Alemannia." Rot. Pip., 6 Ric. I.

⁵ Stapleton, *Norman Rolls*, ii. cxv.

⁶ Rigord, ed. Pithou, 217; he is there called "miles probus et fidei integrus," p. 219. Fighting, besides him, was William des Barres, Richard's companion in the crusade: "Willelmus Barrensis flos militum."

as sheriff of Worcestershire from 1195 to 1198; but ^{Henry Longchamp.} after the death of the chancellor both he and his sons seem to have fallen under the king's displeasure.¹ The last we hear certainly of him is during the fourth crusade. He had placed his estates, before his departure, in the king's keeping,² and is mentioned by Villehardouin³ as joining the Flemish knights who passed through Piacenza and took the route of Apulia, instead of starting from Venice. He died in 1204,⁴ and the next year the king confirmed the gift of the castle of Wilton to another Henry the son of Hugh;⁵ of his two sons, William, the ^{His sons.} husband of the heiress of Croun, died before him. Osbert, after being sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk in ^{Osbert Longchamp} 1194, was, with his brother, in disgrace in 1198,⁶ and no more is heard of him, except in private charters, until his death in 1207, when his wife Avellina paid a fine not to be compelled to marry again, and for the wardship of his heirs.⁷ His family continued in Kent until

¹ Rot. Pip., 9 Rich. I. Dugdale's Baronage, 594.

² Rot. Pat., 4 John, p. 11.

³ Villehardouin (ed. Du Cange), p. 21.

⁴ On the 23rd of March 1204, Matilda, his widow, had from the king an allowance of 10*l.* out of the manor of Wilton. Rot. de Liberate, pp. 84, 106.

⁵ Rot. Cart., 6 John, p. 146. The charter especially names the grantee of Wilton, Henry the son of Hugh. We may ask how it was that Henry's own sons did not succeed him. In answer, I can only suggest either that he himself held Wilton only as guardian of his nephew, or that his sons if he had any surviving, had lost their title by joining Philip, as their uncle Stephen had done. His daughter-in-law Petronilla had claims of dower on the Wilton estate, which

seems to prove to a certainty that he himself had held it. William his son was dead in 1203. Rot. Pat. 37. Madox, Hist. Exch., p. 68.

⁶ In the 3rd of John, Gilbert FitzRainfrai was in trouble, "quia ivit in foresta cum Osberto de Longocampo." Rot. Canc., 3 John, p. 119, 218. Rot. Pip., 10 Rich. I., Kent. "Osbertus de Longocampo reddit compotum pro habenda gratia regis et saisina omnium terrarum et catallorum de quibus dissaisitus fuit per præceptum regis secundum iudicium curiæ regis, si quis cum eo inde loqui voluerit, sed respondit infra partes Herefordiæ in Wallia."

⁷ Rot. Pip., 9, 10 John. Walter Tiwe had bought the marriage for 400 marks; Avellina bid 500 and was relieved from the obligation to marry him.

Robert
Longchamp.

the end of the century.¹ Robert, the monk of Caen, whom the chancellor made prior of Ely, and to whom the king, after his death, in grateful remembrance gave the abbey of S. Mary at York, survived until 1239. A nephew named Geoffrey, son of Hugh and brother of the lord of Wilton was amongst the barons who compelled John to grant the charter.² The lord of Wilton died in 1212,³ and his grand-daughter brought the castle of the Longchamps into the house of Grey.⁴

Geoffrey
Longchamp.

Later years
of the
chancellor.

The chancellor seems to have retained or regained Richard's full confidence and kept his office until his death. During the few years that succeeded Richard's return, he was in constant attendance upon him. Richard had reconciled him with his most formidable enemies before they quitted England, and it is probable that he never returned to the country where he had suffered so much. Anyhow, he passes away entirely from English history. He died at Poitiers in 1196,

¹ Osbert de Longchamp held the manor of Ovenhelle in Kent by serjeanty in the reign of Edward I. Hasted, ii. 129. And his name occurs in the parliamentary writs, vol. i.

² This Geoffrey was the husband of Isabella, daughter of Henry de Mineriis of Westbury in Gloucestershire, Rot. Claus. 345. His estate was at Eston. He was with John's enemies in 1216 (Rot. Claus. 279.) His land was of the fee of Walter de Lacy (Rot. Claus. 241).

³ He married Maud, the sister of William Cantelupe, who had the wardship of the heirs. He was with John's army in Ireland in 1210. Rot. Liberate, anno 12 Joh.

⁴ To make an end of the Longchamps. The identity of the family with that of Wilton, I have I think established in the notes. It would

be a most extraordinary thing if Herefordshire contained two families of exactly the same names and both holding lands under the Lacies. It is of Hugh de Lacy that Hugh de Longchamp held Wilton in 1168; from Walter de Lacy that Stephen held Frome Herbert, and Geoffrey his land at Kempley; and in close connexion with them he was a benefactor of Acornbury. (8th Report of Dep. Keeper, App. ii., pp. 136, 137.) Again, Hugh, the nephew of William the chancellor is closely connected with the Watervilles and Dives. (Eyton, Shropshire, ix. 77.) This Hugh was son of Henry. Rot. Fin., 6 John; and brother therefore of William; both of them had lands in Lincolnshire. Hugh married Georgia, daughter of Henry de Columbaris, Rot. Pip., 3 Joha.

whilst on a journey to Rome to defend the king against the archbishop of Rouen. At Poitiers he was not unpopular, if we may believe that the cross of S. Martial wept a flood of tears at the moment of his death. He was buried in the abbey of Saint Mary du Pin, whose abbot Miles had been his fellow courtier for many years.¹

His death .
in 1196.

The restless career of Geoffrey of York cannot be here even entered on. The process by which he was being developed from his early quarrelsome violence into the character of a defender of constitutional liberties must have been now advancing, but its ripening belongs to the age of John.

Geoffrey of
York.

Walter of Coutances remains. He also, as he advanced in years, sank the character of a statesman in that of an ecclesiastic. In 1196 he had a terrible quarrel with Richard and laid Normandy under an interdict, which the king bought off by an exchange of lands, giving for the land at Andely on which his Château Gaillard was built, an estate which suited the archbishop better. Walter of Coutances acquiesced readily in the transfer of allegiance to Philip, and died the "pater patriæ" in 1207.

Walter of
Coutances.

¹ Hoveden. Itin. R. R. pref. xxxiii, xxxiv.

APPENDICES TO THE PREFACE.

APPENDIX I.

MONACHUS FLORENTINUS DE EXPUGNATIONE CIVITATIS ACCONENSIS.

The following poem was first printed by John Basil Herold, in the Appendix to his Continuation of William of Tyre, at Basel, in 1549; it was reprinted in the same connexion in 1564. The text was derived from a MS. in the Hieronymite Library at Dôle. It was reprinted in 1866 by M. P. E. D. Riant at Lyons, with collations from the Oriel MS. II., and a MS. belonging formerly to the Church of St. Michael, Bamberg, and now to the Royal Library there; of these the Oriel MS. contains a fragment only; the Bamberg MS. is also incomplete. Herold's text, therefore, is still the only perfect one. Editions of
the poem.

The author, whose name is known only from Herold's copy, was Monachus, a Florentine, who is there called bishop of Acre, but who appears really to have been archbishop of Cæsarea from 1181 to 1192, and patriarch of Jerusalem from that year to 1202. M. Riant has identified him with a person named *Heimer* or *Haymarus*, who is mentioned in a various reading of one of the MSS. of the *Chronique d'Outremer; Recueil des Historiens des Croisades II.*, p. 242, note; and gives him as his full literary title the name of "Haymarus Monachus de Florentia, archiepiscopus Cæsariensis, postea patriarcha Hierosolymitanus." As, however, wherever his attestation to charters is found, it appears as "Monachus" only, I cannot think that this addition of the name of "Haymarus" can be regarded as certainly right. Monachus appears as a Christian name in many Florentine families; and our author seems to be the person mentioned in an account of the Translation of the Arm of S. Philip (AA. SS. Boll. May; I. 15-17), as a Florentine who was made chancellor of the Holy Sepulchre by the patriarch Amalric. But notwithstanding the learned and elaborate investigations of the last editor, a good deal of uncertainty prevails about him. The poem is an in- Authorship.

Monachus
of Florence.

Text of this edition. valuable commentary on the portions of the *Itinerarium*, and of the chronicles of Roger Hoveden and Benedict, with which it corresponds. The text of the following edition is mainly that of Herold, and not that of the Bamberg MS. which M. Riand preferred; I have, however, where there was a clear case of error, placed the sound reading in the text. The various readings are only a selection from the other texts.

MONACHI FLORENTINI ACCONENSIS EPISCOPI DE RECUPERATIONE
PTOLEMAIDÆ LIBER.

AD 1187. Saladin invades Syria.	Dum Romanus pontifex præsidet ¹ Veronæ Urbanus memoris atque famæ bonæ, Saladinus impius absque ratione Occupavit Syriam fora ditione.	
Capture of Tiberias.	Urbs Tyberiadæ armis subjugata, ² Cætera sunt moenia sibi sponte data; Non est opus lancea, non est opus spata, Sic ei subveniunt cum fortuna fata.	5
Tripoli and Tyre hold out.	Urbs tamen Tripolis non fuit potitus, Nec quibusdam aliis secus ³ maris litus, Nam defendit ⁴ Marchio jussu Dei citus Urbem Tyri, veluti conjugem maritus.	10
Capture of Ascalon, and sur- render of Jerusalem.	Expugnavit postea urbem Ascalonem, ⁵ Donec eam compulit ad deditionem. Incolis Jerusalem dat conditionem, Ut dent censum propriam in redemptionem. Ad Sepulcrum vetuit ⁶ ire Christianis, Sanctam ac vivificam Crucem dat paganis, Dumque miscet improbus sacra sic profanis, Ecce I nos aspiciamus, sanctum lambit canis.	15 20

¹ *præsidet*] *degeret*, R. This date is strictly correct. Urban III. was at Verona at the time of Saladin's invasion of Palestine. Before he took Jerusalem the Pope had removed to Ferrara.

² *subjugata*] *expugnata*, R. The various readings marked *H.* are from Herold, those marked *R.* from Riand.

³ *secus*] *juxta*, R.

⁴ *defendit*] *tutavit*, R.

⁵ *Ascalonem*] The poet is right,

in placing the capture of Ascalon before that of Jerusalem; and so helps, in common with the *Itinerarium* and the *Chronicon Terra Sanctæ*, to correct the statement of Benedict I., 331; ii. 11, 12, 14, 15 193; and Hoveden, ii. 321. The date is further fixed by the *Itinerarium* by reference to an eclipse of the sun which took place on the 4th September, the day of capture.

⁶ *vetuit*] *nocuit*, H.

*Quomodo fama veniente ad Occidentem reges alii sumpserunt
crucem.* A.D. 1187.
News of the capture.

Fama volans petiit fines¹ Occidentis,
Universos animans Christianæ gentis,
Ad succursum properent ut Omnipotentis,
Qui Solus præcipere mari scit et ventis.

In primis rex Franciæ atque rex Anglorum
Crucis venerabile signum et decorum
Suis figunt humeris; dilatatus quorum
Succursus,² dum nimium servant domi torum.

25 The kings of
France and
England,

Fredericus inclytus princeps Romanorum,
Triumphator bellicus,³ victor præliorum,
Habito consilio, per regnum Græcorum
Ad strages accelerat hostium dirorum.

30 and the
emperor,
join the
crusade.

Cum eodem properant bellatorum flores,
Certatim accelerant viri bellatores,
Vulgus cum proceribus, cum magnis minores,
Terra, mari, resonant crucis portitores.

35

*De exilio domini Adelardi Veronensis episcopi Sacrosanctæ
ecclesiæ Romanæ Cardinalis.*

Cardinalis presbyter, pontifex Veronæ,
Adelardus,⁴ opere clarus et sermone,
Exulat tunc temporis, hac intentione
Ut pugnare doceat nos pro ratione.

The bishop
of Verona,
and his com-
panions.

40

Fert summi pontificis hic legationem,
Ut hortetur⁵ viros ad transfretationem;
Sed ut ejus melius capiant sermonem,
Ipse crucem suscipit, currens ad agonem.

Comitantur præsulem multi boni viri
Strenui militia, probitate miri,
Non oportet nomina quorum hic inquire,
Quod cum eo venerint tamen potest sciri.

45

¹ *petiit fines*] venit ad partes, R.

² *dilatatus quorum succursus*] sed
succursus horum tardus est, R.

³ *bellicus*] habitus, H.

⁴ *Adelardus*]. He is mentioned
by Benedict as taking part in the

purification of the churches after
the capture of Acre, Ben. ii., 180;
Hoveden, iii., 122; and in the Itine-
rarium in one or two places.

⁵ *hortetur*] arceat, H.

A.D. 1189. Siege of Acre.	Pontum a Venetiis navibus sulcantes, Et die tricesimo Tyrum applicantes, Christianos Accaron inœnia vallantes Vallatos accepimus sese vix tutantes.	50
<i>Quomodo Guido Rex Hierosolimitanus venit ad obsidionem Aconis.</i>		
Arrival of King Guy at Acre.	Postquam enim venit rex de captivitate, Non est usus postea Tyri civitate, Inter eum lites sunt et Cunradum natæ, Quas Pisani ¹ frustra flent, pulsæ civitate. Cum quibus et aliis universis fere Peregrinis venit rex Accon obsidere, Sed a tergo tertia die ² gemuere Saladinum acrius eis imminere.	55 60
<i>Quomodo Saladinus expugnavit regem Frisonibus sustentibus agonem.</i>		
The Frisians arrive.	Quos instanter dimicans pellit in Turonem: Sneccis vecti Fresones ³ sustinent agonem, Quos stella deduxerat in simul Acconem, Magis quæ monstraverat Judæ regionem. Hi sulcatis fluctibus æquoris Hispani Ad urbem acephali venerant Messani; ⁴ Ubi ducem statuunt, sicut viri sani, De Avienis Jacobum, ⁵ licet essent Dasi.	65
James of Avesnes.		
<i>Quomodo nostri mittunt pro Marchione ut succurrat eis</i>		
Conrad of Montferrat summoned.	Cum nostrorum paucitas nequit ultra pati Tot incursum hostium, nobiles legati Tyrum missi protenus se committunt rati, Ut succurrat Marchio Christianitati. ⁶	70
<i>Quomodo cum Marchione ivimus Acconem, et de prælio magno quod commisimus ibi.</i>		
He joins in the siege.	Sine mora Marchio jubet præparari Cuncta necessaria, naves onerari; Et quia non poterat terra, venit mari, Fluctibus ut Boream vidit dominari.	75

¹ *Pisani*. See Itin. p. 61.

² *tertia die*] "die tertia postquam
"venerant." Itin. 63.

³ Itin., p. 65. Benedict, ii. 95
Hoveden, iii. 21.

⁴ *Messani*] Melani, II The verse
is wanting in the Bamberg MS.

⁵ James of Avesnes is mentioned
in the same connexion in the *Itinerarium*, p. 65. Benedict, ii. 94.

⁶ Itin., p. 68.

Nos cum eo venimus,¹ gratanter recepti
Ab his qui tunc fuerant ibidem collecti;
Nostri licet undique forent circumsepti
Ad pugnam communiter tamen sunt erecti. 80

A.D. 1189.
September.
Arrival of
Conrad.

Ergo diem² statuunt certam, qua pugnarent,
Cumque Turcos eminus a castris fugarent,
Congregati protenus hi post terga parent,
Nostrique victoria quam sperabant carent.

Disappoint-
ment of the
crusaders.

Milites Templarii Turcis restiterunt,
Et ex illis³ plurimi mortui fuerunt,
Nostri fugam turpiter ad castra dederunt,
Sed qui pigri fuerant ibi remanserunt. 85 Defeat.

Inter dies funebres sit hæc execrata
Maledicta dies hæc, maledicta fata, 90
In hac die nobis sunt quæ sic adversata,
Sed credo quod accidit ob nostra peccata.

*Quando vallavimus nos fossatis, Saladinus ante diem nos
invasit.*

Habito consilio fecimus fossata⁴
Ab utroque littore circumoccupata;
Saladinus valida manu roborata 95
Nos invasit antea quam lux esset nata.

Trenches
made round
the camp.

Sed nil ei profuit, nosque læsit parum
Immo sibi contigit quod fuit amarum,
Unde tristis rediit plenus et irarum,
Sed de suo reditu nobis fuit carum. 100

*De instrumentis paratis et viis subterraneis ad capiendam
civitatem.*

Nostri turres ligneas facere cœpere,
Cattos et arietes fieri jussere,
Machinas, testudines, erigi fecere,
Vias subterraneas quidam effodere. Engines and
mines.

¹ Sept. 24. R. Diceto, 648.

² *diem*] Oct. 4. R. Diceto, 648;
Bohadin, *V. Saladini*, 113.

³ *ex illis*] illorum, R. It was on
this occasion that Gerard of Ride-

ford, the master of the Temple, fell.
Itin., p. 70.

⁴ Itin., p. 73. Benedict, ii. 96.
Hoveden, iii. 22.

A.D. 1189. October, Jealousies of the barons.	Sed nil hæc nec alia nobis profuerunt, Inter se dividere dum barones querunt Terras, quæ tunc temporis Turci possederunt, Neo de illis usque tunc quicquam amiserunt. ¹	105
<i>De Turcis obsidentibus nos die noctuque.</i>		
Pertinacity of the Turks.	Semper nos ad foveas Turci perurgebant, Ventus, nox et pluvia ² non hos retrahebant; Nec illi de mœnibus semper dormiebant, Immo vicem acrius pro vice reddebant.	110
<i>De Quinquaginta galeis intrantibus civitatem et prohibentibus nobis mare.</i>		
Dec. 26. Fifty galleys enter the port,	Die prima Domini post Nativitatem, ³ Colunt Sancti Stephani qua ⁴ festivitatem, Quinquaginta galeæ contra voluntatem Intraverunt omnium per vim civitatem.	115
and shut the crusa- ders off from the sea.	Proh dolor! tunc incipit noster geminari Labor, et miseria nobis cumulari, Nam cum ante liberi fruere[m]ur mari, Cum terra jam incipit mare ⁵ denegari.	120
<i>Quomodo Turci insultabant nobis convicia cruci inferentes.</i>		
Insolence of the Turks.	Si ferire tympana, tubasque sonare Videres, et vocibus Turcos reboare, Cum galeas agitant ante nos per mare, Heu, Heu, Deus! diceres hoc permittis quare? Milites aspiceres super muros stantes Turcos sanctam manibus crucem elevantes, Cum flagellis asperis eam verberantes, Et cum impropriis nobis minitantes.	125
<i>Quomodo Marchio vadit Tyrum pro reparandis galeis in tanto periculo.</i>		
Conrad returns to Tyra.	Habito consilio, galeam repente Unam Jauensium nocte sub silente Est ingressus Marchio, vir robustus mente, Tyrum ut acceleret Africo pellente. ⁶	130

¹ amiserunt] perdiderunt, R.² See Benedict, ii. 96.³ The Itinerarium agrees in this date, p. 78.⁴ qua] quam, R.⁵ mare] aqua, R.⁶ Itin., p. 79.

Si des mille millies marcas Marchioni
Argenti purissimi, atque valde boni,
Ut tunc ei debeat onus hoc imponi,
Eas certe penderes non uni peponi.

A.D. 1190.
Energy of
Conrad.
135

Illum tamen Marchio subire laborem
Non vitavit omnium Patris ob amorem,
Ad totius populi laudem et honorem,
Et culparum illius poenam mitiorem.

140

*De variis periculis et pestibus accidentibus nostris in exercitu
remanentibus.*

Scias in exercitu quod qui remanserunt
Omnes in periculo mortis exstiterunt;
Hyemem sic asperam nam passi fuerunt,
Quod vidisse similem nec antiqui ferunt.

Hardships
of the
winter.

Imbris torrens validus terram inundabat,
Bacchanalis¹ Africus mare perturbabat,
Evulsa tentoria cuncta laniabat
Cum paxillis, funditus vel eradicabat.²

145

Ubi tandem tenebam cum dentibus.

Si confratres mei tunc ibi fuissent,
Et tenere dentibus me tandem vidissent,
Horum quidam reputo super me risissent,
Sed eorum plurimi pro me doluissent.

Sufferings of
the writer.
150

Esse mallet quilibet sine aqua rarus
Quam pati, quot passus sum, tot adversos casus;
Non mihi tunc somnia dictabat Parnasus,
Cum a cibus vacuus jejumat omasus.

155

Accessit et aliud nobis nocumentum,
Ad poenarum cumulum et majus augmentum,
Licet portes manibus aurum vel argentum
Hordeum non invenis, carnem aut frumentum.

160

¹ Nondum vixit aliquis, nec vivit mortalis,
Graviora videret his qui mala malis,
Nam vini vel olei modicum vel salis
Vendebatur carius quam vestis regalis.

¹ *Bacchanalis*] Quando furens, R.
The special severity of the winters
is remarked in the *Itinerarium*,
p. 127.

² line omitted in H.

A D. 1100. Dearness of meat.	Vidi decem solidos pro gallina dari, ¹ Sed bovinas carnes his feci comparari, In eodem pondere pretioque pari, Cum Paulus in azimis jubet epulari.	165
	Qui nummatam voluit carnis coquinare, De lignis oportuit quinque ² comparare; 'Tres ³ in ovo dederam nummos, quod lixare Volens, ligni contigit totidem constare.	170
	Si quando contingeret aliquem ægrotum, Fama licet nominis gloriosi notum, Tyrum qui secedere tunc haberet votum, Quod habebat convenit nautis dare totum.	175
Beans and biscuit the only food.	Delicate vivere domi qui solebat Ibi fabas ciceram ⁴ non fastidiebat, De biscoccto sæpius pane sed famebat, Carnem quoque marcidam avidus edebat.	180
	Qui præsentem aderant poterant videre Variis languoribus homines tabere, Sed nec equi pestibus diris caruere; Pars eorum maxima quare periera.	185
	In diversa studia nostri se scindebant, Nam eorum plurimi foras exiebant, Mori bello quoniam quam fame malebant, Herbam quoque, stipulam, ligna, ⁵ referebant.	190
	E converso reliqui timentes pugnare, Rationes visi sunt pro se allegare, Illis esset tutius quam exire, stare, Dum Conradum velle se dicunt expectare.	190
	<i>De reditu Marchionis et reconciliationis cum rege Guidone.</i>	
April. Return of Conrad to Acra.	Præterlapso spatio mensium duorum, ⁶ Cum immenso Marchio numero virorum, Nobis indigentibus apportavit forum, Ubertatem insuper omnium bonorum.	195

¹ The author of the *Itinerarium* mentions twelve shillings as the price of a fowl, p. 125.

² *quinque*] duas, H.

³ *Tres*]. The *Itinerarium* mentions sixpence as the price of an egg, p. 125. The scarcity of fuel

is mentioned especially by Hoveden, iii. 21.

⁴ *ciceram*]. M. Riant's reading is *cætra*: H. has *siceram*. Cf. *Itin.*, 152.

⁵ *ligna*] simul, R.

⁶ "Cum jam Pascha instaret," *Itin.*, 79.

In adventu fuimus ejusdem lætati,
 Nam in urbe postea Turci sunt serati,
 Sunt amici Marchio rexque copulati,
 Ad pugnandum quoque nos sumus animati.¹

A.D. 1190.
 April.
 Reconciliation of Conrad and Guy.
 200

Quomodo castella trahuntur ad civitatem.

Castella vehiculis ad urbem trahuntur,
 Machinarum ictibus muri colliduntur;
 Civitatis incolæ mortui sternuntur,
 Et de nostris simile plures patiuntur.

New engines brought against the city.

Heu heu! variabilis nimis est fortuna,
 Cum videtur stabilis, hora ter in una
 Permutatur levius² quam in orbe luna,³
 Et relinquit hominem in fervente pruna.

205

Dum speramus etenim urbi dominari,
 Fortuna mutabilis⁴ cœpit variari;
 Ignem⁵ ecce cernimus machinis jactari
 Super ædificia cunctaque cremari.

They are burnt by the besieged.
 210

Lamentantur milites, plangunt servientes,
 Et suspirant pedites præ dolore flentes,
 Sed barones laniant barbam evellentes,⁶
 Heu heu! cuncti clamitant pectora tundentes.

215

De tribus maximis præliis factis in Ascensione et Pentecoste, et Sabbato post Pentecosten.

Ad hoc in sanctissimo die Pentecostes
 Nos ab omni latere circumdabant hostes;
 Nitentes irrumpere fovearum postes;
 Nec est locus vacuus a sagittis, quo stes.

Battle on Whit Sunday May 13.

220

Idem nobis fecerant in Ascensione,⁷
 Nec non post in Sabbato,⁸ et tunc in agone
 Pugnarunt viriliter homines Veronæ
 Memores Ferrariæ tali die pronæ.

Also on May 3, and May 19.

¹ *ad pugnandum animati*]. Et pugnare cuncti nos sumus relevati, R.

² *levius*] sæpius, R.

³ *in fervente*] subardente, R.

⁴ *Fortuna mutabilis*] Res permissio Domini, R. The reading of the text seems to agree best with the tone of the poem.

⁵ The mention of Greek fire is

introduced on this occasion in the *Itinerarium*, p. 81.

⁶ *barbam evellentes*] capillos velientes, R.

⁷ Bohadin mentions this attack, or rather gives the date Friday, May 4, as a fixed point in a series of attacks, p. 115.

⁸ *Itin.*, p. 87; meaning the Saturday after Whitsunday.

A. D. 1100.
June 14.
The Turks
relieve the
city.

*Quomodo Turcis cum galeis intrantibus civitatem nostri
nequiverunt resistere.*

Dum fortuna terimur nimium agresti, 225
Martyrum vigilia Viti et Modesti,¹
Turci truces nimium nobis et infesti
Intrant urbem navibus, unde sumus mœsti.

Armis, victualibus muniti venerunt,
Nostris quibus obviam classibus iverunt, 230
Sed eis resistere dum non potuerunt,
Utrobique mutuo damnum pertulerunt.

*De duobus insultibus factis super galeas nostras ubi duas galeas
eorum cepimus nec postea ausi fuerunt exire.*

July 1.
Sally of the
Turks from
the Tower
of Flies.

Summo mane Julii die kalendarum,
Et in quadam alia præcedente parum,
Cum immensa copia Turci galearum 235
Longe foras exeunt a turri Muscarum.

Super nostros acrius faciunt insultum
Jacentes in eos ignem in occultum,
Sed hoc aliquantulum obfuit nec multum,
Verum non diutius stetit hoc insultum. 240

They lose
two galleys.

Duas enim galeas nostri sunt lucrati,
In quibus sunt plurimi Turci trucidati,
Unde sic sunt reliqui tamque perturbati,
Quod exire taliter post hoc non sunt rati.

*Quomodo veros rumores de Imperatore audivimus et quomodo per
Ungariam et Bulgariam intrans Græciam depopulatus est.*

News of the
Emperor
Frederick.

In eodem tempore² nuncii venere, 245
De Romano principe vera qui dixere,
De quo quia contigit sermonem habere,
Prælibandum arbitror quod hi retulere.

¹ The eve of S. Vitus and Modestus falls on the 14th June. The struggle is placed by Bohadin on the 9th of the former Sjumada; the 15th of June: p. 118. The Itinerary mentions the fact without a date, p. 88.

² *In eodem tempore*] The report of the fate of Frederick Barbarossa reached Saladin at the same time; (Bohadin, 119) he perished on the 10th of June.

<p>Ergo postquam inclytus princeps Romanorum Intravit monarchiam regis Ungarorum, Ubertatum omnium dat rex ei forum, Donec eum ducit ad terram Bulgarorum.</p>	<p>250</p>	<p>A.D. 1190. July. His march through Hungary, Bulgaria, And the Greek empire. (A.D. 1189.)</p>
<p>Per quam passus plurimas est adversitates, Bulgarorum varias ob dolositates, Ad Græcorum pervenit donec civitates, Ubi Græci comperit regis simultates.</p>	<p>255</p>	
<p>Eum nam deceperat Græcus imperator, Pacti quod promiserat factus depravator, Nam sibi promiserat quod esset tutator Ejus, et commercii fidus venundator.</p>	<p>260</p>	
<p>Propter hoc exercitus noster expugnator Regni sui factus est, atque spoliator, Et cunctarum mercium¹ sævus² deprædator, Insuper et hominum ferus trucidator.</p>	<p>265</p>	<p>Treachery of the Greek emperor.</p>
<p>Ut vacare plenius possit ultioni, Et punitis incolis instet regioni, Suxæ Cæsar providens expeditioni Hyemandum ibidem indicat tyroni.</p>	<p>265</p>	<p>Frederick winters in Greece.</p>
<p><i>Cæsaris moram nobis hic disce dolosam.</i></p>		
<p>Moram importunitas temporis et mensis Suadebat, et copia se diffundens mensis, Quod totum exercitus luit Acconensis, Quem sagitta sauciat, quem castigat ensis.</p>	<p>270</p>	<p>This delay was ruinous to the crusade.</p>
<p>Tandem circa Domini Resurrectionem³ Talem Cæsar recipit compositionem, Ut dent Græci naves ad transfretationem. Festinantes Græculi complent jussionem.</p>	<p>275</p>	<p>He leaves winter- quarters about Easter (A.D. 1190.)</p>
<p><i>Quomodo Soldanus Iconii voluit eum prodere sibi datis obsidibus.</i></p>		
<p>Dum sancti Georgii brachium transisset Cæsar, atque fidei obsides cepisset A Soldano, proditus ab eo fuisset, Ni Divina gratia eum præcessisset.</p>	<p>280</p>	<p>Treachery of the Sultan of Iconium.</p>

¹ *mercium sævus*] gentium ferus,
R.
² *ferus*] dirus, R.

³ "Jam instante Pascha." Itin.,
47.

A.D. 1190. The Sultan attacks the emperor's army.	Dum enim Iconium tuti properarent, Assistebant undique Turci, qui vetarent Omnia commercia, hosque trucidarent, Vel a longo ¹ potius eos sagittarent. Circumspectis taliter viris Christianis, Hæc illao volantibus Turcis et paganis, Elapsis ex integro tribus septimanis Major pars exercitus nil comedit panis.	285
	<i>Quomodo expugnaverunt Iconium.</i>	
Order of the march of the crusaders.	Cæsar exercitui retro providebat, ² Sed illius filius ante præcedebat, Quo duce Suevia incolyta gaudebat, Hic primas incolumis acies agebat. Cujus ad insignia nostri cohortantur, Dissipati cunei hostium fugantur, Dux intrat Iconium, omnes comitantur, Superatis hostibus urbi dominantur.	290
Iconium taken.	Soldanus resistere cernens esse durum, Cum thesauris oppidum fugit in securum, Et spondet commercia cunctis se daturum, Dum Augustum videat inde recessurum.	295
The Sultan surrenders.		
	<i>Quomodo in Armenia mortuus est imperator in Salefico flumine.</i>	
Frederick enters Armenia.	Abhinc in Armeniam transiit amœnam, Ubertatem reperit quam cunctarum plenam, Nam de fonte divite trahit ipsa venam, Hæc frumentum sibi dat et equis avenam. <i>Quid profuit imperatori quod vitaverit mare.</i>	300
He perishes in the Salef (June 10.)	Vitis tamen illius hoc dolos paravit, Dum in parvo gurgite hunc solum necavit; Dico mihi quid profuit quod mare vitavit, Ab aquis Salefici dum non sibi cavit. Dictus est Saleficus, quia factus sale, Dicatur maleficus quia fidus male, Salum maris timuit quasi sit mortale, In sale Salefici solum dicit vale.	305
		310

¹ *a longo*] *eminus*, H.² "prima duci Suevic, postrema

"imperatori, media summaris."

Itin., 49.

O dico fallacia cum fortuna fata!
 In Romano principe nimis debacchata,
 Quem non possunt sternere lancea vel spata,
 Morte cita rapiunt et inopinata.

(A.D. 1190.)
 June.
 315 Lamentation over him.

O fata sententiam vestram permutate,
 In Romano principe secus iudicate,
 Ab aquis Salefici illæsum servate,
 Et hunc armis potius quam aquis necate.

320

Romanorum principi et imperatori
 Ampliori¹ longius cederet honori,
 Rutilante sanguine quam in aquis mori,
 Suis nec principibus hoc esset terrori.

Nam ut verum fatear quod mihi dixere
 Qui secum tunc temporis ibidem fuere,
 Universi principes ita tremuere,²
 Quod ex illis³ plurimi mare transiere.

325

Cur sublato principe principes timetis?
 Cum Dominus mirabilis in suis athleticis
 Occultis iudiciis sibi que secretis,
 Hunc ad Sui gloriam traxerit quietis.

330

*Quomodo exercitus ejus veniens Antiochiam ibi per crapulam
 mortuus est fere totus.*

Post hæc Antiochiam cæteri venerunt,⁴
 Et ducem Sueviæ sibi præfecerunt,
 Francorum baronibus nuncios miserunt,
 Et ab his consilium sibi petierunt.

335 The duke of Swabia leads the army to Antioch.

Major et præcipua pars Theutonicorum
 Non attendens regulam hic aphorismorum,
 Multum et repente se dum replet ciborum,⁵
 In brevi deleta est de sorte vivorum.

340 The Germans die of surfeit.

Nam cum per inopiam essent vacuati,
 Postea per copiam nimis crapulati,
 Non est præter physicam si sint infirmati,
 Et de hujus sæculi tædio sublati.

¹ *Ampliori—cederet*] Diceretur |
 potius et esset, R.
² *timuere*] tremuere, R.

³ *ex illis*] illorum, R.

⁴ June 21.

⁵ Cf. Itin., 57.

<p>A.D. 1180. July. Conrad sent to meet the duke of Swabia.</p>	<p><i>Quomodo Marchio vadit ad eos Antiochiam.</i></p> <p>Habito consilio nostri Marchionem Mittant Antiochiam, ut ducat Aconem Per talem Teutonicos viros regionem, Ut nullam incurrere possent lationem.</p> <p>Qui sine periculo cernens se nequire Aconem ulterius per terram redire, Parat cum exercitu navibus venire, Sinit tamen antea Septembrem¹ exire.</p>	<p>345</p> <p>350</p>
<p>July 25. The infantry of the crusaders go outside the camp and plunder.</p>	<p><i>Quomodo nostri pedites occisi sunt in festo Sancti Jacobi.</i></p> <p>Ejus in absentia nobis accidere Plurima quas postea inulta stetero, Nam in festo Jacobi² nostri exiere Pedites, et hostium castra irruere.</p> <p>Turci nimis providi, nimisque sagaces Urunt tabernacla, submittentes faces, Nostri nimis avidi nimisque voraces Certant cuncta rapere, ut lupi rapaces.</p>	<p>355</p> <p>360</p>
<p>The Turks surprise them.</p>	<p>Quos ut Turci taliter vident facientes Neque vident milites eos subsequentes, Ordinatis cuneis in hos irruentes Plus quam quinque millia morti dant sternentes.³</p>	<p>360</p>
	<p><i>Licet bene essent armati tamen culpa sua et militum mortui sunt.</i></p> <p>Sic erant hi pedites bene loricati, Balistic et arcubus decenter ornati, Quod nunquam ab hostibus essent superati, Si posset ordinibus repugnare fati.⁴</p> <p>Anhelantes pedites nostri fugiebant, Equis vecti levibus Turci præcedebant, Sed qui retro venerant nostros prosternebant, Sine ictu etiam plures corruiebant.</p>	<p>365</p> <p>370</p>

¹ *Septembrem*]. The duke arrived at Acre on the 8th of October, Bohadin, 140.

² See the account of the battle in the *Itinerarium*, p. 89. Bohadin,

125. Hoveden, iii. 70. Benedict, ii. 142.

³ *sternentes*] ferientes, R. "quinque millia et quingenti." *Itin.*, 91.

⁴ *Si—fati*] *Ni* quod venit ultio nostri peccati, R.

Si succursum milites eis præstitissent,
Sarracenos turpiter in fugam vertissent,
Et illi de mœnibus ita timuissent
Quod cum rebus omnibus urbem reddidissent.¹

A.D. 1190.
July 25.

375

*Quomodo illi de civitate exeunt et cum Hospitalariis con-
figunt.*

Sed ut nostros taliter vident effugari,
Non oportet quærere si possunt lætari,
Non enim existimant Turcos refrænari,
Donec nostra videant castra concremari.

The Turks
in the city
sally out
against the
Hospitaliers.

380

Ut augmentum igitur nostris darent malis,
Exeuntes januam partis Borealis
Obviant militibus primum Hospitalis,
Inter quos conficitur pugna manualis.

Hospitalis milites ab equis descendunt,
Ut ursa pro filiis cum Turcis contendunt;
Turci nostrum aggerem per vim bis conscendunt,
Hos sagittis sauciant, hos igne succendunt.

385 Battle.

Tunc Hospitalarii equos ascenderunt,
Et Turcos a latere maris invaserunt,
Quos ad urbis mœnia per vim reduxerunt,
Et ex his in foveis multos² occiderunt.

390

Quomodo Turci palam et clam intrabant civitatem.

Post hoc infortunium aliud successit;
Plena victualibus ad portum accessit
Navis, dumque sæpius quæritur unde sit,
Velum hæc reficiens in urbem³ discessit.

Ships full of
provisions
reach the
city.

395

Vidi post hanc alias tres palam venire,
Et galeas obviam illis nostras ire,
Nequiverunt tamen sic eas impedire
Quod vetarent mœnia urbis introire.

400

Intus noctu sæpius ingrediebantur,
A nostris multoties sed capiebantur,
Et ereptis spoliis ipsi necabantur,
Ob hoc tamen alii nunquam terrebantur.⁴

¹ The author of the Itinerarium is also very severe on this point, p. 91.

² *multos*] plures, B.

³ *urbem*] villam, R. The same

event is the subject of a chapter in the Itinerarium, p. 91.

⁴ *ob—terrebantur*] Alii propterea sed non turbabantur, R.

A. D. 1190.
September.
Destruction
of the en-
gines of the
crusaders.

De variis instrumentis nostris frustra consumptis.

Post hæc turres machinas nobis combusserunt, 405
Tuncque nostri ligneum castrum¹ deduxerunt
Ad Muscarum turrim,² sed eam non læserunt,
Nimis cito quoniam navem succenderunt.

Item barcam dirigunt facibus succensum
In illorum validam classim condensatam³ 410
Cum qua navem concremant illorum immensam
Cito Turci vindicant verum hanc offensam.

Nam cum nostri segniter et minus intento
Starent ad custodiam in die sequente,
Ipsi turrim ligneam concremant repente, 415
Cum navi quam fecimus ipsam deferente.

Ad hæc barca desuper trabibus celata,
Dum ad turrim ducitur, fuit naufragata,
Instrumenta cætera ad urbem parata,
Sunt hoc modo perdita vel igne cremata. 420

De adventu comitis Henrici Campanici.⁴

Arrival of
Henry of
Champagne.

Catervatus militum numerositate,
Campaniensis venerat ea tempestate
Comes, et exercitum in necessitate
Sumptibus innumeris roboravit late.

Attamen consilio fretus levitatis, 425
Forte per audaciam juvenis ætatis,
Paucis victualibus secum apportatis,
Summæ nobis præstitit causam egestatis.

*De ariete ferreo cooperto quem Bisuntinus fieri fecit et de igne
Græco a quo combustus fuit.*

Energy of
the arch-
bishop of
Beausépon.

Quid de archipræsule dicam Bisuntino?⁵
Vir est totus deditus operi divino, 430
Orat pro fidelibus corde columbino,
Sed pugnat cum perfidis astu serpentino.

¹ *ligneum castrum*] ligneam tur-
rim, R.

² Sept. 25. Itin., 109.

³ line omitted in H.

⁴ Itin., p. 54. The count arrived
between the 26th of July and the
1st of August. Bohadin, 128, 129.

⁵ Itin. p. 111.

<p>Fecit hic arietem, quem de ferro textit, Qui nostrorum animas plurimum erexit, Nullus enim credidit, nullus intellexit, Quod comburi valeat licet in igne sit.</p>	<p>A.D. 1190. September. His batter- ing ram.</p> <p>435</p>
<p>Terruisse creditur mentes paganorum, Dicebatur etenim quod stragem murorum Et ruinam faceret, esset quæ dirorum Digna retributio scelerum Turcorum.</p>	<p>440</p>
<p>Secus tamen accidit quam æstimabatur, Quod per negligentiam factum non negatur, Nam ad murum positus tantum lapidatur, Quod ferrum excutitur ignisque jactatur.</p>	<p>445 Greek fire.</p>
<p>Ignis ille foetidus, ignis execratus, Cum ampullis vitreis desuper stillatus, Serpit per gracillimos subintrans¹ meatus, Donec intus æstuans magnos dat hiatus.</p>	<p>450</p>
<p>Pereat O! utinam hujus ignis vena, Non enim exstinguitur aqua sed arena, Vixque vinum acidum ejus arcet fræna, Et urina stringitur ejus vix habena.²</p>	<p>455</p>
<p>Ignis hic conficitur tantum per paganos, Ignis hic exterminat tantum Christianos, Incantatus namque est per illos profanos. Ab hoc et perpetuo, Christe, libera nos.</p>	<p>460</p>
<p><i>Quomodo nos fatigati frustra exspectavimus reges Franciæ et Angliæ nequeuntes venire.</i></p>	
<p>Exspectare statuunt reges universi, Sed dum reges veniunt fluctus sunt adversi, Sic quod necessarii retro sunt conversi, Alioquin dicitur quod essent submersi.</p>	<p>Weary waiting for the kings.</p>
<p>Sed non solum regibus est obstrusum mare, Nequiverunt reliqui³ quoque transfretare, Neque victualia nobis apportare; Cara nimis apud nos vendebantur care.</p>	<p>465</p>

¹ *subintrans*] subterraneos, R.
² Cf. Itin., p. 81.

³ *Reliqui*] alii, H.

A.D. 1190. November. Famine amongst the crusaders.	<i>De inceptions famis:</i>	De Andegavensibus libræ datæ trime Sunt a me pro medio parvulo farinae, Palatis nobilium carnes tunc equinæ Respondebant melius quam quondam gallinæ.	470
Price of food fixed.	<i>De edicto vendendorum cibariorum.</i>	Barones constituunt uno prorsus ore Ut dentur cibaria pretio minore, Sed error novissimus pejor est priore, Dum non audent vendere consueto more.	475
		Non enim cibaria tunc inveniuntur Per forum venalis, sed effodiuntur Pavimenta domuum, ubi recluduntur; Sic inops et locuples famem patiuntur.	480
Desertions.	<i>De famelicis servientibus ad Turcos fugientibus.</i>	Milites quid facient? quidve servientes? Expectare reges se sunt hi penitentes, Ne per famem pereant igitur timentes Turmatim effugiunt ad Turcos servientes.	
Sally of the crusaders on the Saracens' camp.	<i>Quod nostri exeunt ad castra Saladini.</i>	Tunc disponunt egredi ad castra Turcorum Nostri, causa straminis et cibariorum, Deputant custodiæ sed prius castrorum Cum Blesensi comite ducem Suevorum. ¹	485
Sally of the citizens on the crusaders' camp.	<i>Quomodo Turci exeunt de civitate a parte Pisanorum sed nostri eos reprimunt.</i>	Secus flumen igitur cum sint hospitati, Cives igne plurimum et armis parati A Pisanis exeunt, simul congregati Castra defensibus destituta rati.	490

¹ So also the Itinerarium, which pp. 115, 116. Benedict, ii. 144; and gives the morrow of S. Martin, Hoveden, iii. 73; say "ad festum Nov. 12, as the date of the attack, " Sancti Martini."

<p> Igne Græco machinas humectarunt,¹ Assuetis² spiculis viros sauciarunt,³ Donec ducis milites eos dissiparunt Et plures per littora⁴ mortuos prostrarunt. Tunc de nostris januam plures⁵ intravere, Et ad muros alii scalas portavere, Et potiri mœnibus urbis speravere,⁶ Nisi quia tenebræ noctis vetuere. </p>	<p> A.D. 1190. November. Brisk struggle. 495 500 </p>
<p><i>Quomodo Saladinus pugna et dolis fatigaverit nostros donec ad castra redeunt.</i></p>	
<p> Ad nostrum exercitum versus Saladinum Properantem circumt juxta matutinum Turci, die tertia post Sanctum Martinum,⁷ Donec castra collocant supra montis sinum. Saladinus subdolan castra concremavit, Et ad montes properans ibi latitavit, Nam ad prædam currere nostros æstimavit, Quos onustos penitus perdere⁸ speravit. Sed ut nostros aspicit non ire prædatum, Universum dirigit ad nos equitatum, Vertunt ultra fluvium nostri comitatum, Et de solo reditu habent cogitatum. Turci sunt acerrime nostris comminati,⁹ Dum coacti sistere sunt castrametati, Sed in die postera procul absentati Nostris fiunt prævii ad postes fossati. A¹⁰ quibus conficitur ibi pugna dura, Prostratis militibus et equis per rura, Christiani redeunt in castra segura, Sic deinceps egredi quibus¹¹ non est cura.¹² </p>	<p> Nov. 13. Removal of the Saracen camp. 505 510 Saladin attacks the crusaders plundering. 515 520 </p>

¹ *Igne—humectarunt*] Super ædificia focum jactitarunt, R.

² *Assuetis*] Usitatis, R.

³ *sauciarunt*] sagittarunt, R.

⁴ *littora*] maris, ins, R.

⁵ *plures*] om, R.

⁶ *speravere*] putavere, R.

⁷ The retreat of Saladin to Tel Caisan, on the 3rd day after Mar-

tinmas. Itin., 116. Bohadin, 148.

⁸ *penitus perdere*] perdere pro ea, R.

⁹ *nostris comminati*] nostros comitati. R.

¹⁰ *A*] pro, R.

¹¹ *egredi quibus*] ingredi, R.

¹² November, 15. Bohadin, 151.

A.D. 1190.
Nov. 24.
Capture of
French
knights.

*De nepote Clarimontensis comitis, et quibusdam aliis dolo
captis.*

Sed quia Teutonici de campo patente
Turcos effugaverant in sancto Clemente,
Exeuntes effugant in die sequente¹
Turcos quidam milites de Francorum gente.

Sed tunc in insidiis pagani latentes 525
Improvise cursitant Francos colligentes,
Inter mortis deditos et captos viventes,
Sunt triginta milites et horum clientes.

*De septem navibus Turcorum intransitibus civitatem nobis
invitis.*

Seven store
ships relieve
the city.

Dum nos de materia plasmata terrestri,
Et in arcto positi loco et sylvestri, 530
Tribulamur malleo nimium agresti,
Quid in festo vidimus audias² Sylvestri.

Septem victualibus naves oneratas
Christiani populi absque voluntate,
Receptas propatulo sunt in civitate, 535
Neo gales nostras sunt eis adversatas.

Quomodo tunc Teutonici viriliter expugnaverunt civitatem.

Attack by
the Ger-
mans on the
city.

Tunc ibidem juxta me si tu pressens fores,
Cum armati circumant villam bellatores,
Certe Teutonicorum jurares furores
Universis gentibus esse fortiores. 540

Nam densos missilium imbres contempsero,
Ignis atque lapidum jactus pertulero,
Et muri fastigio dum sperant hærere
Diminutis plurima scalis corruere.

¹ *in die sequente*] These words, which with the rubric fix the capture of the Butler of Senlis to the morrow of S. Clement, give the most important chronological fact of the whole poem. The Itinerary mentions that the capture took place on the day of the marriage of Conrad and Isabella; (eodem die); therefore November

24 is the date of that marriage, and as archbishop Baldwin, the chief opponent of it, died on the 19th or 20th, no time was lost, as soon as he was out of the way, of completing the disgraceful transaction. Queen Sibylla had died before the 21st of October. Epp. Cantuar., 329, 330, &c. Itin., 122, 123.

² *audias*] Beati, R.

Claruit hoc prælio gens Alemannorum,¹
 Cujus nomen metuunt phalanges Turcorum,
 Nam per negligentiam non stetit eorum
 Quod non simus moanibus potiti murorum.

545 A.D. 1190.
 December.

De duodecim navibus Turcorum naufragatis in portu.

Deus quoque pietas Cujus cuncta regit,
 Qui quos ab initio Sibi præelegit,
 Licet sinat concuti, semper tamen tegit,
 Naves mirabiliter Turcorum confregit.

550 Shipwreck
 of twelve
 Turkish
 vessels.

Nam hærebant scopulis anchoræ jactatæ,
 Neque victualia trahuntur de rate,
 Ventorum² Ceraunijs cum naves quassatæ •
 Sunt in portus medio cunctæ naufragatæ.

555

De muro civitatis per imbrem diruto nihil nobis profuit.

Dum orationibus Virginis Mariæ
 Fulcimur et meritis Genitricis piæ,
 Audias quod accidit nobis quadam die
 Jejunant vigiliam cum Epiphanis.

560 A.D. 1191.
 Jan. 5.
 Fall of part
 of the walls
 in a storm.

Nocte pluit integra nec mane sequente
 Redeunt spectacula, sed Austro fremente
 Crepitant tonitrua æthere candente,
 Nix, imber cum grandine cadit vehemente.

Christus Dei filius, Deus ultionum,
 Qui pro Suis dimicat medio agonum,
 Non gestando clypeum lanceam vel conum,
 Urbis muros diruit dans ad astra sonum.

565

Idem olim mœnia Jericho prostravit,
 Quam Hebræus populus bonis spoliavit,
 Sed Acconis muros dum Ipse dissipavit,
 Ad murum Christicola nullus propinquavit.

570 Parallel
 with the fall
 of Jericho.

Licet nostris pluvia det impedimenta,
 Non fuit militia nostra tamen lenta
 Adaptare bellica membris ornamenta,
 Et a longe premere equos et jumenta.

575

¹ This is fixed by Benedict, ii. 144; and Hoveden, iii. 73, to the month of December, "inter fes-

"tum sancti Andreæ et Natale Domini."

² Ventorum] Fluctuum, R.

<p>A.D. 1191. Jan. 5. Negligence of the be- sieggers.</p>	<p>Periit audacia militum Francorum, Quæ quondam cacumina transcendens murorum Effugabat millia trecenta Turcorum, Sicut Gesta referunt Antiochenorum. 580</p> <p>Si tantum cum machinis de muro stravissent, Certatim ad mœnia credo cucurrissent, Sed virtute Domini cum moniti essent,¹ Promptiores aggredi esse² debuissent.</p>
<p>Jan. 20. Skirmish with the town's- people.</p>	<p><i>Quomodo Turci ascendunt tumulum quem fecimus.</i></p> <p>Dum in natalitiis Sancti Fabiani 585 Pranderent ad tertiam horam Christiani, Exeunt de mœnibus bis mille pagani Qui nuper intraverant facti oppidani.</p> <p>Gradualem tumulum quem nostri fecerunt, Pulsis operariis, statim conscenderunt, 590 Pauci tamen milites eos fugaverunt, Et eos in foveis urbis prostraverunt.</p>
<p>Jan. 21. Another struggle.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>De quodam insultu noctu facto.</i></p> <p>Cum sit exercitio dies destinata Et dicatur otio nox esse dicata, Nocte tamen colitur Agnes qua Beata 595 Ad pugnam egreditur gens Deo ingrata.</p> <p>Non diurno prælio fuit satiata, Sed de nocte veniens caterva densata, Est cum igne spicula Græco jaculata, Super nostros vigiles stantes ad fossata. 600.</p> <p>Illorum clamoribus nostri perturbantur, Et nox licet obviet statim congregantur, Pagani velociter in urbem fugantur. Sed utrinque plurimi prius sauciantur.</p>
<p>The Tower of Flies.</p>	<p><i>Quomodo Marchio frustra tentat expugnare Turrim Muscarum.</i></p> <p>Ratione notum est satis evidenti, 605 Et fide cognovimus hoc experimenti, Quantum exercitui det impedimenti Turris quam in medio portus pulsant venti.</p>

¹ *moniti essent*] muri corruissent, | ² *esse*] eos, R.
R.

Ut hanc ergo Marchio possit vindicare, Fabricatus citius vervex sulcat mare, Sed cum crebris ictibus debet hanc quassare Ipsam cogunt scopuli longius astare.	610	A.D. 1191. January. Ineffectual attempts of Conrad upon it.
Ut quod nil proficeret labor hic cognovit Furens, stridens, Marchio machinam removit, Cum fatorum serie fortunam devovit, Et suam Beelzebub qui sic turrim fovit.	615	
<i>De quodam Polino qui prodebat nostros servientes.</i>		
Martis idus septimo nostri servientes, Ut herbas colligerent foras incedentes, A Polino proditos longe discurrentes, Sarraceni capiunt in dolis latentes.	620	March 9. Serving men taken by ambuscade.
<i>De contraria fortuna ob nostra peccata et de morte praelatorum et baronum.</i>		
Prætermisso quoties muris erumpentes Aut a campis subito nobis irruentes, Turci captivaverant nostros servientes, Prosequamur alia parum divertentes.	625	Bad fortune of the Cru- saders.
Ob totius populi labem et peccatum Fortunam contrariam sensimus et fatum, Quæ nostrum ancipitem diuque rotatum In profundum mergere non desistunt statum.	630	
O nequam et infida series fatorum! O crudelis Atropos! pessima sororum! Numquid simul rumpere vis Christianorum Fila, quos præsidio privas praelatorum.	635	
Ut enim hæreditas nostri Salvatoris, Crucifixi patria, domus Redemptoris, Venit ad extranei manum possessoris, Perdidit auxilii multum et honoris.	640	
<i>De morte Gregorii et Urbani Papæ.</i>		
Primo nam Gregorium statim post Urbanum ¹ Utrumque pontificem perdidit Romanum; Qui de Jerosolima tyrannum profanum Habuerunt animum effugandi sanum.	640	A.D. 1187. Deaths of Popes Ur- ban and Gregory.

¹ Urban III. died Oct. 11, 1187, | on the 17th December the same
and Gregory VIII., his successor, | year.

- A.D. 1189. *De morte Henrici et Guillelmi regum Angliæ et Siciliae.*
Deaths of the kings of Sicily and England.
Post Henricum inclytum regem Anglicorum,¹
Et Guillelmum nobilem regem Siculorum,²
Qui suis præsiidiis sunt Christianorum
Tutati reliquias de manu Turcorum.
- A.D. 1190. *De morte Archiepiscopi Ravennatis et Episcopi Faventini.*
Of the archbishop of Ravenna and the bishop of Faenza;
Quisquis archipræsulem novit Ravennatem,³ 645
Faventini⁴ præsulis atque probitatem,
Ob illorum obitum Christianitatem
Scit tulisse maximam incommoditatem.
- De morte Langravii.*
of the Landgrave of Thuringia;
Sed quid dignum referam nobilis Langravi⁵ 650
Corporis et animi fuit vir magna vi
In Dei servitio, qui labore gravi
Consumptus in reditu periit in navi.
- De morte Comitum Theobaldi et Stephani qui fuerunt fratres.*
of counts Theobald and Stephen;
Adventus laudabilis comitum duorum
Theobaldi, Stephani, fratrum germanorum,
Gaudium infuderat mentibus Francorum, 655
Sed hos nimis vulnerat cita mors eorum.⁶
- De morte Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis.*
of archbishop Baldwin.
Sanctus Archipontifex Cantuariensis,
Populum consilio fovens et expensis,
Miltonum cœtibus catervatus densis,
Recreabat pauperes sumptibus immensis. 660
Quem sic postquam vineæ mors intentum vidit,
Tanti operarii fructibus invidit,
Vitæ filium protinus illius succidit;⁷
Clerus, plebs, cum milite quare vestes scidit.

¹ Henry II. died July 6, 1189.² William II. died Nov. 26, 1189.³ Gerard.⁴ John; he had come with the Archbishop of Ravenna: *Hist. Ravenn.*, p. 860.⁵ The Landgrave Lewis of Thuringia, died Oct. 16, 1190.⁶ Theobald died Jan 20, 1191. Stephen, before Oct. 21, 1190.⁷ Baldwin died Nov. 19 or 20, 1190.

<i>De morte Archiepiscopi Bisuntini et ducis Suevorum Imperatoris filii.</i>	A.D. 1190.
Hinc archiepiscopus, gemma clericorum, Bisuntinus obiit, duxque Suevorum, ¹ Qui nisi contraria foret sors fatorum, Stravisset innumeras acies Turcorum. ²	665 Deaths of the arch- bishop of Besançon and the duke of Swabia.
Nam ut fuit proprio privatus parente, Qui velut prædiximus stipatus ingente Turba venit militum, factus est repente De torrente stabilis, tepens de fervente.	670
<i>De magna fame.</i>	
Sic nostris baronibus in necessitatis Destituti tempore sumus, et prælatis, Aliisque plurimis non hic nominatis, Nobis adversantibus cum fortuna fati! ³	A.D. 1191. The great scarcity of 675 food.
Et in verbo dicere veritatis tibi Possunt qui tunc temporis remanserunt ibi, Quod sunt indigentiam tantam passi cibi, Quod nescimus similem ab antiquis scribi.	680
Ploratu cibaria gravi quærebantur, Pro jugi inedia pauci consolantur, Sed si quando forsitan inveniebantur Cum amaris poculis fletus miscebantur.	
Idem cibus dominum et equum alebat, Nam cum equo dominus panem dividebat, Herbas quas periculo mortis colligebat Equus crudas, dominus coctas comedebat.	685
In tanta penuria rerum edendarum, Nos in Quadragesima cibus equinarum Recreamur carniū, et camelinarum; Aliis rodentibus textas carublarum. ⁴	690
Multi qui divitias suas aliquando Fuderant pauperibus eas erogando, Nihil sumunt exules facti mendicando, Quare diem ultimum claudunt jejunando.	Distress from famine 695

¹ The archbishop of Besançon died Nov. 23, 1191: according to the *Gallia Christiana*; but the year should most likely be 1190, as the siege was over long before November 1191.

² Jan. 20, 1191.

³ *Nobis...fatis*] Puniente peccata Deo nostra satis, R.

⁴ See *Itinerarium*, p. 133.

A.D. 1191.	<i>Quod pontifices statuunt eleemosynas fieri.</i>	
Collection of money for the sufferers.	Tunc sacri pontifices sacrique praelati, Principes Ecclesie sanctae deputati, Vincla poenitentibus relaxant peccati Qui de suis conferunt tantae paupertati.	700
	Ut habere valeant hanc remissionem Omnes largam faciunt erogationem, Post cordis munditiam et confessionem, Sed praelati faciunt distributionem.	
	Ut tantae participes sint remissionis, Prae cordis munditia et confessionis, Erogant de propriis omnes large bonis, Onus ferunt praesules distributionis.	705
	<i>Quomodo mitigatur fames.</i>	
Arrival of provisions.	Ut haec eleemosyna coepit erogari, Iram Dei protinus sensimus placari; Intuemur etenim eminus a mari Nobis victualia navibus portari.	710
	<i>Quanti vendebantur victualia.</i>	
Prices before and after the arrival.	Tunc farinae modius sex minus centenis Vendebatur aureis, frumenti sex denis, Hordei que modium dabant quadragenis Reperto vix furfure aureis septenis.	715
	Tres in uno solidi pomo donabantur, Viginti nuciunculae pro nummo dabantur; Ficus pro denario septem vendebantur; Pruna cum amygdalis decem emebantur;	720
	<i>De miraculo alleviatae famis.</i>	
Thanks- giving for the relief.	Pro praedicto pretio nequibat frumenti Reperiri modius die praecedenti, Qui dabatur publice cuivis offerenti Pro duobus aureis in die sequenti.	

¹ This is the collection made by | scribed in the Itinerarium, p. 135 .
Hubert Walter and others, de- | Benedict, ii. 145.

O mira potentia Summæ Deitatis! 725 A.D. 1191.
 Quæ tam mirabiliter onus paupertatis
 Christianis abstulit, gravis egestatis
 Tempora temporibus mutans ubertatis.

Quomodo Rex Franciæ venit et expugnavit civitatem.¹

Sabbato post Domini resurrectionem, 730 April 20.
 Philippus rex Franciæ veniens Acconem, Arrival of
 Totam mentis operam et intentionem Philip of
 Circa villæ posuit expugnationem. France.

Secus turris igitur maledictæ latus
 Erigit petrarias, illic hospitatus, 735
 Aliasque machinas necnon apparatus,
 Quorum murus ictibus corruat quassatus.

Dumque muros dissipat impletque fossata
 Quæ profunda fuerant admodumque lata, His engines
 Instrumenta plurima sunt ibi cremata, are de-
 Aliisque variis modis dissipata. 740 destroyed in
 an attack on
 the Cursed
 Tower.

De rege Angliæ divertente Cyprum, eamque subjugante.

Interim rex inclitus Angliæ Ricardus 745 Richard's
 Qui per famam redolet ut odore nardus, adventures
 Metuendus hostibus sicut feris pardus, in Cyprus.
 Ciprum iter verterat licet suis tardus.

Nam tyrannus insulæ, turbo pietatis, 745
 Tribus ibi navibus regis naufragatis,
 Homines recluserat manibus ligatis,
 Equis, victualibus, armis usurpatis.

Sed a rege reddere cuncta postulatur, 750
 Negat, pugnat, vincitur, fugit, vinculatur;
 Digna factis ultio digne compensatur,
 Captivator hominum modo captivatur.

Vicis,² castris, urbibus Cipri subjugatis,
 Plene licet faveant rex addenda fati 755
 Cogitat calcaria, nondum³ ergo datis
 Ventis intrat pelagus fluctibus iratis.

¹ Here the Oriel MS. begins.

² *Vicis*] *Victis*, R.

³ *nondum*] *mundum*, H.

- A.D. 1191.
June. *De quadam navi Turcorum onerata Græco igne et armis, volente intrare civitatem, quam ita expugnavit rex Anglorum quod tota penitus submersa est cum omnibus in ea contentis.*
- Capture of
the great
dromond.
- Dum Acconem satagit iter maturare,
Navi magnæ contigit molis obviare,
Quam Acconem comperit velle rex intrare,
Et Turcis præsidia maxima portare. 760
- Ad hanc ergo galeæ cunctæ congregantur,
Sonant tubæ, classica, tympana pulsantur,
Exseruntur gladii, arcus sinuantur,
Et ad instar grandinis spicula vibrantur.
- At Turci de caveis ut de castro forti 765
Ictu nostros lapidis ut tormento torti,
Sudibus et jaculis tribuentes morti,
Metum nostræ maximum ingerunt cohorti.
- Sed per vocem regiam sese resumentes,
Turcos vexant acrius supereminentes, 770
Jaculorum veribus caveis figentes,
Nostros tamen reprimunt igne perfundentes.
- Sed dum navis rumpitur rostris galearum,
Ignis, sudes, jacula, profuere parum;
Nam, dum illos sorbuit puteus aquarum, 775
Esca fiunt volucrum atque beluarum.
- Armis potentissimi periere mille,
Quos si forte mœnia recepissent villæ,
Nunquam hos devinceret iste rex vel ille,
Nec occurrens Græcia tota cum Achille. 780
- Quomodo Rex Angliæ venit Acconem.*
- Richard
arrives at
Acre.
- Versus Accon igitur malus incurvatur
Oculis navigium æquora furatur,
Christianus populus gaudens gratulatur,
Et confusus ethnicus dolet et turbatur.
- De machinis comitis Flandriæ regi datis.*
- He takes
the engines
of count
Philip.
- Instrumenta protinus jubet præparari, 785
Sed, ne vacet interim, comitis præclari
Flandrensis petrarias poscit sibi dari,¹
Omnes flebant obitum cujus tanquam cari.

¹ Cf. Itin., pp. 203–209.

De rege Franciæ murum ascendente cum suis ex altera parte. A.D. 1191

Ruptis propugnaculis muros turres strarat,
 Parte sed ex altera, qui jam explanarat, 790
 Primi muros ordinis alios quassarat,
 Rex Francorum scandere civitatem parat.

Milites appositis scalis ascendebant,
 Sed hos igne liquido Turci perfundebant,
 Et his murum insimul sese opponebant 795
 Aliunde neminem quoniam timebant.

Quomodo Anglicis non pugnantibus Marescalcus Franciæ obiit.

Nam suum rex Angliæ castrum expectabat,
 Nec de suis interim quisquam dimicabat, 800
 Illuc omnis Asiæ manus acclinabat,
 Ubi sola Franciæ virtus impugnabat.

Miles strenuissimus inclytus et fortis,
 Marescaldus Franciæ,¹ militum cohortis
 Rector, ibi subiit diræ jura mortis,
 Quem planxit exercitus lacrymis obortis.

Quomodo Francis cadentibus terretur rex.

Duxit ergo cedere Gallica juvenus, 805
 Sed hinc non efficitur segnior vel lentus, Retreat of
 Nec est primo diruto muro rex contentus, the French.
 Ad stragem alterius ordinis intentus.

De turri maledicta cæsa, tonsa et quassata.

Eminebat ibidem Turris maledicta,
 Quondam solo nomine, nunc re maledicta 810
 Superpensa machinis, subtus facta crypta, The Cursed
 Qua defensa civitas olim est invicta. Tower un-
 dermined.

Nam quadris lapidibus undique sublatis,
 Omnem jam amiserat robur firmitatis,
 Columnis et postibus subtus coaptatis,
 Ruitura funditus tantum concrematis. 815

¹ Alberic Clement ; Itin., 223.

A.D. 1191.
July.
The Turks
propose to
surrender.

Quod Turci timentes ruinam turris offerunt civitatem.

Lapsu turris igitur territi timore,
Pessimo in dubiis rebus suggestore,¹
Turci contumaciæ posito furore
Civitatem offerunt supplicantum ore.

820

*De controversia Christianorum et Turcorum per Marchionem
sedata.*

Conrad
arranges
the terms.

Ablata restitui cuncta Christianis,
Cum captivis postulant reges a paganis,
Dum fit controversia super his immanis,
Hanc diremit marchio doctus in mundanis.
Procurandam etenim hanc per Marchionem
Reges ordinaverant compositionem,
Ad tollendam igitur dubitationem
De promissis tribuunt sese cautionem.

825

De rebus cum civitate redditis.

Terms of
surrender.

Urbem, supellectilem, arma reddidere,
Captivos cum navibus quotquot habuere,
Urbis inter mœnia, quadringentos fere,
Vestes tamen retinent quas jam incisere.

830

De his quos Saladinus nobis reddere promisit.

Saladin's
promises.

Saladinus etiam² ad vota nostrorum
Dans electos milites centum, aliorum
Captivorum corpora mille quingentorum,
Cum ducentis millibus reddit³ aureorum.
Lignum quoque redditur⁴ pretiosæ crucis,
Lignum in quo calicem passionis trucidis
Ebiberunt viscera gloriosi Ducis,
Suggestente principe tenebrosæ lucis.

835

840

De vexillis regum positis in civitate.

Rejoicings
over the
capture.

Juramento placuit pactum confirmari,
Et vexillis regiis turres titulari,
Tunc videres pueros senes gratulari,
Et victori Domino laudes modulari.

¹ This quotation is made in the
Itinerarium on another occasion,
p. 28. Statius, *Theb.* iii. 6.
² *etiam*] insuper, R.

³ *reddit*] spondet, R.
⁴ *Lignum...redditur*] Reddi quoque
debut, R.

- Descriptio temporis quo fuit capta civitas.*
- A natali Domini mille ducentorum
Novem minus spatium fluxerat annorum,
Accon fere circulis obsessa duorum,
Idus quarto Julii redditur annorum.¹
- 845 A.D. 1191.
July 12.
Date of
surrender.
- Quomodo reges discordantur capta civitate.*
- Postquam reges mœnibus urbis sunt potiti,
Arma, victualia, vades, sunt partiti,
Quamque diu foverant intendentes liti,
Simulatæ fœdera pacis sunt obliti.
- Dum enim rex Angliæ protegit Guidonem,
E contra rex Franciæ fovens marchionem,
Illi suam tribuit terræ portionem,
Parat hic ad propriam dum reversionem.
- 850 Quarrel of
Philip and
Richard.

855
- Quomodo Saladinus noluit attendere pactum veniente termino.*
- Imminebat terminus datus a paganis
Quo ipsi sponderant Crucem Christianis;
Nec vult plebem sinere cor iniqui canis
Induratum, redimens tempus verbis vanis.
- 860 The Turks
fail to fulfil
their pro-
mises.
- Quomodo rex Angliæ fecit interfici obsides Turcorum.*
- Coram tabernaculis igitur Turcorum
Jugulari corpora clarus rex Anglorum
Plusquam tria millia jubet captivorum,
Pro reddenda vadium Cruce relictorum.
- Massacre of
prisoners.
- De auro invento in visceribus occisorum.*
- Inhumane carnifex cœpit desævire,
Quæ referre nefas est tædium audire,
Ita vidi plurimos aureos sitire,
Ut aurum in viscera vadant exhaurire.
- Nec illorum sufficit stercora lavari,
Sed jubentur corpora flammis concremari,
Tunc videres cineres cribro ventilari,
Et ab hisdem rutilans aurum sequestrari.
- 865 Discovery of
gold in their
bowels.

870

¹ Here the Bamberg MS. ends.

A.D. 1191.
July.
Ways of
concealing
gold.

Nam hæc plena plurimis dolis gens per ora
Aureos reconderat in interiora,
Quos emittens postea per inferiora, 875
Assumebat iterum sero vel auro.

De corrigiis et felle ab eorum lateribus et hepate raptis.¹

At plures corrigiis arcus incurvabant,
Illorum lateribus quas excoriabant,
Raptum fel ab hepate reliqui portabant,
Quo pleni nequitia Turci redundabant. 880

De gaudio innato nobis ex morte eorum qui crucem promiserant.

Joy at the
massacre.

Talia conspiciens quisquis gratulatur,
Quod in illos Dominus sic Se ulciscatur,²
Qui crucem promiserant in qua designatur
Ejus mortis passio, nobis vita datur.

De provisione Dei civitas nobis reddita fuit per pactum.

Fortunate
result of
the capitu-
lation, in
enabling
the Cru-
saders to
punish the
prisoners.

Dei factum creditur hoc provisione 885
Quod urbs nobis reddita fuit pactione,
Fraudati fuerimus licet sponsione
Super crucis regibus facta datione.

Nam qui cruciatibus digna patravere
Mortem quam meruerant ipsi pertulere, 890
At nostrorum acies salvæ perstitere,
Protegente Domino pro Quo pugnare.

Saladinus etiam fide leviori
A suis habebitur, qui permisit mori
Hos per avaritiam; at nos Creatori
Melos demus, digitum imponentes ori. 895

¹ See Benedict ii. 189. Hoveden,
lii. 128.

² Here the Oriel MS. ends.

APPENDIX II

ACCOUNT OF THE RETURN AND CAPTIVITY OF
RICHARD I.

ANSBERTUS; *Historia de expeditione Friderici Imperatoris.* Ed.
Jos. Dobrowsky, Prag, 1827, pp. 108–121.

NON solum autem ex Romani imperii ambitu, sed ex aliis A.D. 1190.
etiam regnis, occidentali videlicet Francia et Anglia, reges Start of the
cum terrarum suarum incolis universi excitati ad viam Domini kings of
signaculo crucifixi sunt insigniti. Verum inimicus humani Christen-
generis hujus laudabilis propositi executionem impedire volens, dom on the
semina dissensionis inter eosdem reges seminavit, ut con- Crusade.
tinua terra contra se moti, causam Domini qua contra hostes
fidei triumphare debebant, distulerint; neuter tamen viam sine
altero incipere volens alteri cedebat. Tandem zelo Dei ducti,
dissimulantes si qua fuit inter eos odii dissensio, iter aggressi
sunt. Rex Franciæ Philippus et nobilis comes Flandriæ cum
magno comitatu per Italiam transeuntes, apud Januam trans-
fretare volentes mare intraverunt; sed quia autumnalis aspe-
ritas eos repulit, apud Messynam civitatem Calabriæ toto illo
anno coacti sunt morari. Rex etiam Angliæ Ricardus impiger
ad omnia negotia cum infinito exercitu et apparatu, pecunia
etiam tanta qua omnes socios viæ Domini antecedebat, per mare
cum multis galeis navigabat, et in eodem portu Messynensi
supradicta necessitate cogitur applicare, et ibidem hyemare.

Dux etiam Liupoldus Austriæ diu accensus ejusdem pere- March and
grinationis desiderio, quamvis inde noviter reversus fuerit, et voyage of
licet vocatus ac rogatus a domino suo adhuc rege Romanorum the duke of
existente Heinrico fuerit, ut ad suam expeditionem accingeretur, Austria.
maluit tamen æterno militare Regi quam temporali. In As-
sumptione siquidem Sanctæ Mariæ viam Christianæ militiæ
de Vienna se movens aggressus est, et Venetiis naves intrans
per Illyricum et Dalmaticum mare remigare proposuit, sed
simili intemperie quæ, sicut dictum est, circa autumnum qui
tunc instabat gravius sævire solet, prohibitus, Sadire civitate He winters
Dalmatiæ applicare, et tota parte ejusdem anni usque ad prox- at Zara.
imum [110] ver hyemare compellitur; ubi etiam cum aliis
qui simili causa detenti sunt, opportunum tempus transfre-
tandi et vernalem auram mitiorem navigantibus expectavit.

A.D. 1190. *Voyage of the Duke of Austria.* Accepta itaque opportunitate vernalis temporis, tam illi qui in portu Messinensi quam et ii qui apud Sadiram toto illo anno tædio affecti demorati sunt, iter propositum arripuerunt et ad portum Accaron secure et sine detentione applicuerunt. Erant autem in comitatu illustris ducis Austriæ Leupoldi, comes Sifridus de Niderl, et Dietmarus liber, et pauci ministeriales sui; Ortlebus videlicet de Winchil, Hngo de Pucperch, Henricus de Medlik, Albertus de Horn, Albero de Ceniliub, Pertoldus de Wurms, Rudwinus de Gors et unus fratrum de Radun; quorum nullus secum reversus est, sed omnes prædicti fatali necessitate dies suos clausurunt, præter comitem Sifridum, qui fomitem infirmitatis secum reportans ægrotavit, et in via demoratus sequenti anno reversus est.

A.D. 1191. *Conquest of Cyprus by Richard.* Rex vero Angliæ morose navigans in Cypro applicuit. Ubi tunc regnum tenebat quidam Ysaachus, æquivocus illius qui Constantinopolitanum post mortem Andronici arripuerat regnum, et eodem imperio diviso post obitum Manuelis, qui eosdem principatus solus regebat, quis cum quilibet raperet quod posset, totam Cyprum iste suo dominio usurpavit. Cajus insolentiam et malignitatem quam dicitur in peregrinos pauperes exercuisse, rex Angliæ ferre non valens, captum eum secum et uxorem suam transevit, et insulam eandem suis usibus vendicatum sibi etiam censualem fecit. Ipsum etiam apud Margatum munitissimum castrum relegavit. Idem itaque rex Angliæ primus et præcipuus in tota militia Christiana eo quod in facultatibus et in omnibus opibus alios præcedebat, et eos aspernatus postponebat, dominium sibi super omnes usurpabat. Regem etiam Franciæ, cui quamvis homini jure obligatus teneretur, despectui habens, non reverebatur. Marchionem insuper Chunradum dominum Tyri, per quem eadem civitas post desolationem terræ Domini a Christianis retenta est, per quem etiam potestas Turcorum et Saladini principis eorum propulsata est, vilipendebat. Ducem etiam Liupoldum illustrissimum principem, quamvis non ita gloriose sicut decebat ibi manserit, pro subjecto reputavit: cujus fastus intemperantia ad cumulum sui damni cecidit.

Capture of Acre. Itaque cum idem rex et tota militia Christiana valido robore in obsidione Ptholomaidis diversis bellicis instrumentis laboraret, tandem viriliter instantes ipsam expugnaverunt et valida manu ceperunt. Incolas etiam, Turcos videlicet, usque ad VII. millia et amplius captivaverunt. Cujus etiam captæ civitatis dominium ita sibi soli vendicavit quod nec alios consortium habere permisit. Marchionem etiam Chunradum qui ab omnibus rex creatus erat, reprobabat, adeo quod ejus consilio dicitur esse interemptus. Duo siquidem cum eo

diu familiariter conversati, a vetulo (a Leone) de montanis - A.D. 1191.
 missi ad ejus interemptionem, dum nihil de eis sinistri sus- Destruction
 picaretur, eum cultellis perfoderunt et occiderunt. Qui tamen of the cap-
 non impunes abierunt, sed pœnam dignam meritis exsolverunt. tives.
 Capta igitur Acona et a nostris inhabitata, dum Saladinus con-
 ventionem de redi[112]mendis captivis Turcis facere differret,
 commotus rex Angliæ sicut vehementia sui furoris eum sæpius
 exagitavit, omnes trucidavit, præter paucissimos nobiles quos
 adhuc in spe alterius pacti captos reservavit. Dum itaque hæc
 omnia fierent, et ad Ascalonam quæ etiam a Turcis inhabita- Richard
 batur et Christianis rebellabat, milites Christi festinarent, repairs
 Turci territi de captione Aconæ Ascalonam vacuam relique- Ascalon
 runt, et sine bello eam Christiani occupaverunt. Quam ipse rex
 Angliæ non sine scandalo aliorum eis redimendam dedit.
 Cum enim hominum raritas et penuria id faceret, ut nec in-
 habitari nec defendi ab incursu et invasione adversariorum
 posset, maluit eam recepto pretio sub districta conventionem
 relinquere interim, quam sine defensore et præsidio defensionis
 positam iterum perdere.

Rex itaque Franciæ non valens arrogantiam regis Angliæ, a Return of
 quo debebat servitium non contemptum expectare, pati, Comite Philip.
 Flandriæ mortuo ibidem, revertitur, et per Italiam et per Tus-
 ciam transiens summo pontifici Lateranis Cœlestino loquitur; He visits
 a quo bene susceptus et pie admonitus ad liberandam terram Rome and
 Domini eum instantius cohortatur. Insuper etiam ei ut filio Milan.
 carissimo et peregrino dilecto dona et paternæ benedictionis
 munera largitur et abire in [113] osculo eum dimittit. Cum
 itaque Mediolanum civitatem Liguriæ veniret, Imperatorem
 Heinricum de Apulia redeuntem in via invenit; nec subito
 convenerunt, sed quia aliqua dissensionis nebula inter eos
 latebat, non repente comparebat, eo quod prius in discordia
 quam cum Coloniensi Philippo pater ejus habuit, sibi ipse
 auxilium præstabat. Sed mediantibus aliis prudentibus et ex
 utraque parte se sapienter interponentibus, occasio hujus sus-
 picionis extirpata est, et eum Imperator in osculo pacis
 susceptum et honestis muneribus honoratum, posthæc tanquam
 principem gloriosum et amicum dilectum cum honesto ducatu
 abire ad regnum proprium dimisit. Dux vero Liupoldus se- Leopold
 quenti anno post reditum suum ducatum Stirensem mortuo succeeds to
 nepote suo Otacharo, qui ei sine hærede moriens terram coram Styria.
 Imperatore Friderico sub testamento assignarat, post multos
 labores suscepit, et a filio suo Imperatore Heinrico WORMATIÆ
 tam ipse quam filius suus Fridericus excellentissime investiti
 sunt.

A.D. 1192.
Return of
Richard.

He goes
through
Prum.

He is taken
prisoner at
Vienna.

Causes of
Leopold's
enmity.

Rex Angliæ Ricardus, qui gloria omnes anteire voluit, et omnium indignationem meruit, in obsidione terræ et hereditatis Domini plus cæteris et post cæteros moratus, eodem anno Incarnationis Domini M. videlicet *CLXXXIII*^o; nescio utrum timore regis Franciæ qui prius ante eum recesserat, vel tædio peregrinationis affectus, pacem cum Saladino et Turcis ad v. annos faciens et firmans, cum uxore navigio post alios revertitur, et ventorum impulsione in mare periculis multis circumductus jactatur [114], tandemque ad Polam civitatem Ystriæ ad litus fertur et applicare cogitur. Ubi uxorem et familiam totam incertis undis maris relinquens, ipse per Forum Julii cum paucis, de periculis maris egressus et viam per terram aggressus, licet incognitus esse cupiens, a pluribus tamen cognitus et in via suis aliquibus captis, aliquibus truncatis, rebus etiam suis perditis, in Austriam ducis Leopoldi terram transivit. Ubi latenter transire volens et terra principis quem prius graviter et plurimum offenderat, incognitus exire volens, judicio Dei tactus laqueum incidit ejus, quem prius illaqueare voluit. Dum itaque arrogantiam ejus Divina æquitas diutius non sineret transire inultum, eum manibus et potestati tradidit illorum, quos ipse prius quasi contemptos abjecerat, et contumeliose reprobaverat. Justo siquidem Dei judicio, ut cum ipse in prosperis successibus suis illos honorare noluerit, quos dignos honore scire potuerat, ab eisdem etiam dedecorandus judicaretur. Circa Wiennam siquidem latenter moratus, pedes, duobus sociis tantum comitatus, in vili hospitio per exploratores inventus et captus est ab hominibus ducis Austriæ. Cum itaque idem dux illustris Anstris plures causas adversus ipsum efficientes habuerit, jure ipsum in manus ejus Divino judicio traditum tenuit, sed tamen præter meritum ipsum honeste tractavit, et in castro suo Tyernstein juxta Danubium sito servari præcepit. Una siquidem et efficiens causa fuit quod eum in obsidione Aconæ quasi abjectum reputavit, quod etiam Ysaachium principem Cypri et uxorem suam ad sanguinem suum pertinentes captivavit; quod etiam Chunradum filii [115] lium amicitie suæ interemisse suspectus habebatur. Idem siquidem Chunradus princeps nobilissimus et adleta Dei invictissimus, consilio omnium sapientium qui expeditioni Domini interfuerunt, rex Jerosolimorum ordinatus et uxore illa sibi data, quæ prius commanebat Humfrido ejusdem terræ regi dicto, nescio quo divertio inter eos facto, ab omnibus, ipso solo rege Angliæ renuente, est elevatus. Post cujus mortem quæ supradicta est, comes Henricus de Campania in eadem expeditione diu cum multis expensis moratus tam in regno quam

in uxore sibi successit. Itaque rex Angliæ diu observatus a duce Liupoldo Imperatori Heinrico quem etiam in negotiis regni et in filio sororis suæ, duce videlicet Heinrico quondam dicto Saxonie, multis modis contra dominum suum concitato, et in aliis regni impedimentis provocaverat, est representatus, sed non statim oblatus. Sinistra siquidem consilia ibi quæ inter æmulos ducis Leupoldi versabantur, finem rei imponere non sinebant. Dictum quippe fuit ei quod Imperator per consilia pravorum quorundam eum violenter rapere vellet et in suam potestatem redigere. Tandem omni suspicione remota inter eos conventio facta est, ut reductus in Austriam in proximo ad Nebdunam, quæ et Spira dicta est, domino Imperatori committatur, hoc conducto inter eos facto, cujus exemplar jure subjunximus;

A.D. 1192.
The reasons why Richard was delivered to the emperor.

A.D. 1193.
Feb. 14.
Form of the surrender.

“ Hæc est forma conventionis sive tractatus habiti inter
“ dominum Heinricum Romanorum Imperatorem et Liupoldum
“ ducem Austriæ super incolumitate et pace regis Anglorum
“ aliisque negotiis;

“ Ego Liupoldus dux Austriæ da-[116]-bo et præsentabo
“ domino meo Heinrico Romanorum Imperatori regem Angliæ
“ hoc modo seu tenore, quod idem rex sicut conductum est,
“ donet domino Imperatori centum millia marcarum argenti,
“ quarum ego medietatem habebō ad dotandam filiam fratris
“ Anglorum regis, quam ducturus est unus filiorum meorum
“ in uxorem. Hæc autem filia fratris regis Anglorum in festo
“ Beati Michaelis uni filiorum meorum, quem ad hoc elegero,
“ erit præsentanda, et medietas de jam dictis centum millibus
“ marcarum argenti, videlicet quinquaginta millia marcarum ar-
“ genti, in eodem termino erit solvenda; quarum dominus meus
“ Imperator unam medietatem recepturus est, et ego aliam; altera
“ vero medietas de eisdem centum millibus marcarum, vide-
“ licet quinquaginta millia marcarum quæ restant, persolvenda
“ est usque ad initium Quadragesimæ proxime venturæ; cujus
“ pecuniæ similiter dominus Imperator mediam partem habebit,
“ et ego mediam; et quæcunque pars totius pecuniæ prædictæ
“ sub quocunque numero domino Imperatori infra terminum
“ illum, quo tota debet solvi, illius medietas sine malo ingenio
“ mihi præsentetur. Dominus autem meus Imperator ducentos
“ mihi obsides dabit, quod si ipse postquam regem Anglorum
“ ipsi præsentavero, quod Dominus avertat, in fata concesserit,
“ eodem rege in sua potestate existente, ipse rex mihi sine
“ malo ingenio præsentetur; sed si me prius mori contigerit,
“ eadem conventio uni filiorum meorum quem ad hoc elegero
“ per omnia observetur, illi videlicet, qui ducturus est filiam
“ fratris regis Angliæ in uxorem; et si illi non fuerit, alii filio
“ meo eadem servetur conventio. [117.]

The ransom of Richard fixed; and the duke to have half.

Terms of payment.

Provision in case of deaths.

“ Item rex Anglorum dabit domino Imperatori quinquaginta

- A D. 1193.
Feb. 14.
Richard is
to assist
the emperor
to conquer
Sicily.
- He is to give
hostages for
this.
- The emperor
is to detain
the hostages
until the
duke is
absolved.
- The emperor
of Cyprus is
to be freed.
- In case
Richard
fails to fulfil
the condi-
tions of his
release
within a
year,
- “ galeas cum hominibus et expensis et aliis omnibus attinentiis,
 “ et centum milites cum quinquaginta balistariis in eisdem
 “ ponet galeis, et ipse præter hæc in propria persona cum
 “ centum aliis militibus et quinquaginta balistariis intrabit
 “ regnum Siciliae cum domino Imperatore, et bona fide assistet
 “ ei quousque regnum obtineat, nisi de bona ejus voluntate et
 “ licentia ab eo recedat. Et ut idem rex hæc omnia fideliter
 “ exsequatur et persolvat, dabit domino meo Imperatori ducentos
 “ obsides meliores de terra ditionis suæ, quos dominus Im-
 “ perator ab eo requiret, nisi domino Imperatori de veritate
 “ constiterit, quod aliquis vel aliqui ex illis ita manifeste se
 “ ei opponat vel opponant, quod illum vel illos nullatenus
 “ habere posset; et tunc loco illius vel illorum alium vel alios
 “ quem vel quos dominus imperator denominaverit, idem rex ei
 “ obsidem vel obsides dabit, exceptis filiis sororis suæ et Hein-
 “ rici quondam ducis Saxonie, et filio fratris sui. Hii autem
 “ quibus dominus Imperator eadem obsides servandos com-
 “ mittet, jurabunt quidem, si dominus Imperator, quod Deus
 “ avertat, interim dum idem obsides in eorum sunt potestate,
 “ decesserit, ipsos obsides dimittet absolutos et sine malo in-
 “ genio in tutum locum conducet.
- “ Item si rex Angliæ domino Imperatori universa quæ prom-
 “ misit persolverit, dominus Imperator insuper obsides tamdiu
 “ detinebit, quousque ipse rex me ducem Austriæ apud papam
 “ absolvat. Si autem dictus rex promissum non persolverit
 “ domino Imperatori, in voluntate ejus erit ut de obsidibus
 “ regis agat [118] secundum suum beneplacitum, ita quod ego
 “ dux Austriæ nihil inde habeam disponere. Ad hæc dominus
 “ Imperator decem nobiles de imperio suo jurare faciet, tales
 “ videlicet quales ego dux elegero, quod si rex Angliæ uni-
 “ versa quæ ei promisit, persolverit, obsides ejus dimittentur
 “ absoluti.
- “ Item dominus Imperator regem Angliæ in potestate sua
 “ tamdiu detinebit, quousque rex Cypri et ejus filia qui in capti-
 “ vitate regis sunt, absolvantur. Si autem rex Cypri et ejus
 “ filia absoluti sunt a captivitate, et pro liberatione eorum
 “ aliquid datum est vel exactum, dominus Imperator regem
 “ Angliæ similiter in potestate sua detinebit quousque illud
 “ ex integro restitatur.
- “ Item si rex Angliæ infra hunc annum præsentem, vide-
 “ licet ab hoc Capite Jejuni usque ad Caput sequentis Jejunii,
 “ neque pecuniam promissam neque obsides dederit, vel uno
 “ istorum completo reliquum obmiserit, et transacto illo ter-
 “ mino de conscientia mea domino Imperatori de veritate
 “ constiterit, quod dictus rex neque pecuniam promissam
 “ neque obsides persolvere possit, vel uno istorum facto al-

“ terum non fecerit, et eo cognito, si dominus Imperator regem A.D. 1193.
 “ mihi offerre noluerit, in optione mea erit, ut de supradictis Feb. 14.
 “ ducentis obsidibus, quorum dominus Imperator mihi dabit Richard is
 “ quinquaginta, videlicet qui pueri sint et non milites, quos to be given
 “ ego voluero retineam, aliis dimissis, et rex Angliæ in meam up again to
 “ recipiatur potestatem. Si autem regem Angliæ in potestate the duke, or
 “ domini Imperatoris decedere contigerit prædicti ducenti fifty of the
 “ obsides [119] domini Imperatoris erunt absoluti, nisi domi- hostages.
 “ nus Imperator de supradicta pecunia aliquid perceperit;
 “ cujus medietatem ego non habuerim, quia medietate habita
 “ idem obsides erunt absoluti. His autem omnibus, secundum
 “ quod supra dicta sunt, bona fide et sine malo ingenio com-
 “ pletis, dominus Imperator sæpedicto Anglorum regi pacem
 “ firmam observare tenetur et concordiam. Datum apud Wirz-
 “ purch, anno ab Incarnatione Domini M° C° X C° III°, Kalend.
 “ xvi. Martii.”

Dum vero in captivitate in Austria adhuc detineretur, fama News of
 velox vicina regna et regnorum principes penetravit, et Richard's
 auditam humiliationem et captionem tanti viri mirati, cer- capture.
 titudinem hujus facti a duce Austria litteris suis inquirentes
 ipsi scripserunt. Ut igitur probabilius esse credatur quod
 prius eum diximus suspectum haberi de morte Marchionis
 Chunradi, rescriptum epistolæ regis Franciæ, qui secum
 conversatus est in transmarinis partibus, cui etiam res
 ex aliqua parte notior erat, subjungere dignum duximus;

“ Phylippus Dei gratia Franciæ rex carissimo amico suo Letter of
 “ nobili duci Austriæ salutem et sinceræ dilectionis pleni- Philip to
 “ tudinem. Quoniam quam perverse et contra Deum et contra Leopold
 “ hominem Ricardus impiissimus rex Angliæ in transmarinis accusing
 “ partibus vixerit et fecerit, oculo ad oculum vidistis et au- Richard of
 “ distis, singula vobis ad memoriam non oportet reducere. the assassi-
 “ Verum scimus vos fixa tenere memoria quod Ricardus Chun- nation of
 “ radum marchionem et dominum Tyri, qui usque ad supremum Conrad.
 “ diei exitum defensor et columna Christianitatis exstitit,
 “ sine [120] causa et nullis præcedentibus meritis, consan-
 “ guineum quondam vestrum carissimum et nostrum, per
 “ Assessinos crudeliter fecit interfici. Modis igitur omnibus
 “ quibus possumus preces ex intimo cordis affectu procedentes
 “ vobis porrigimus, quatenus intuitu misericordiæ Dei et
 “ respectu cujusque servitii quod unquam vobis potuerimus
 “ exhibere, prædictum Ricardum sub arcta teneatis custodia
 “ nec aliqui modo eum liberetis, donec vobis et nos cum il-
 “ lustri Romanorum Imperatore ore ad os aut per nuncios de
 “ latere nostro locuti fuerimus.”

* * * * *

A.D. 1194.
Release of
Richard.

[121.] Rex vero Angliæ Ricardus adhuc in captivitate detentus, pecunia laudata ex parte data, ex parte etiam adhuc danda positis obsidibus nobilibus, inter quos erat filius regis Novariensis, et filius ducis quondam Saxonie qui erat sororius regis Ricardi, liber abire permittitur. Qui obsides non solum pro pecunia, verum etiam pro reliquis articulis conventionis solvendis, servabantur.

**CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI
DE HOVEDEN.**



CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOVEDEN.

PARS POSTERIOR.

Itaque sepulto rege, comes Ricardus filius ejus statim in-
jecit manus in Stephanum de Turonis,¹ senescallum Andegaviæ:
et mittens eum in carcerem gravibus compedibus et ferreis
manicis catenatum, exigebat ab eo castella et thesauros regis
patris sui, quos ipse in custodia habuit: quibus traditis,
comes Ricardus redemit eum usque ad novissimum
quadrantem.

A.D. 1189.
July.
Richard
compels the
Steward of
Anjou to
give up
king Henry's
treasures.

Eodem vero tempore, quo prædictus rex Angliæ obiit,
Matildis ducissa Saxonæ, filia ejus, similiter obiit.²

Matilda of
Saxony dies.

Ricardus filius Henrici regis factus est dux Normannorum.

Deinde venit idem comes Ricardus Rothomagum, et a
Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, coram episcopis et
comitibus et baronibus Normanniæ, accinctus est gladio
ducatus Normanniæ, in ipsa die Sanctæ Margaretæ, feria
quinta, decimo tertio kalendas Augusti. Deinde acceptis fide-
litatibus a clero et populo ducatus Normanniæ, dedit Gau-
frido, filio Rotrodi comitis de Pertico, Matildam filiam ducis
Saxonæ, neptem suam, in uxorem.

July 20.
Richard
made duke
of Nor-
mandy: he
marries his
niece to
Geoffrey of
Perche.

Tertia autem die sequenti, scilicet festo Sanctæ Mariæ
Magdalænæ, Philippus rex Franciæ, et Ricardus dux Nor-

¹ He is called by Richard of De-
vizes, *Stephanus de Marzai*; by
Benedict, *Stephanus Tirconensis*
(ii. 9.) and *de Turonis* (ii. 67.).
Stephen de Turneham was a com-
panion of Richard on the Crusade

(Itin. 299, 337), and Sheriff of Wilt-
shire in 1199.

² obiit] July 13, R. de Diceto,
c. 645; June 28, Chron. Stederburg.
Leibnitz, *Scr. R. Br.* i. 861.

A. D. 1189,
July 22.

Interview
between
Richard and
Philip
in agreement
between
them.

manniæ, convenerunt inter Calvum Montem et Trie ad colloquium. Ubi rex Franciæ constantè petebat, ut dux Normanniæ reddidisset ei Gisortium, et alia multa, quæ longum est per singula dinumerare. Sed ipse Ricardus videns, quod si ipse hoc fecisset, in damnum et opprobrium sempiternum sibi redundaret, adjecit illis supradictis viginti millibus marcarum argenti, quas rex pater suus conventionaverat¹ se daturum regi Franciæ, quatuor millia marcarum argenti, et sic gratiam et amorem suum obtinuit, et rex Franciæ reddidit ei omnia quæ per guerram super regem patrem suum ceperat, tam castella quam civitates et alias munitiones, et villas et prædia.

Benedict,
ii. 74.

Queen
Eleanor
orders a re-
lease of pri-
soners
throughout
her king-
dom, and the
liberation
of offend-
ers against
the forest
law, and of
others im-
prisoned
otherwise
than by the
common
right.

Interim Alienor regina, mater prædicti ducis, reginalem curiam circumducens, de civitate in civitatem et de castello in castellum, sicut ei placuit, profecta est; et missis legatis per universos comitatus Angliæ, præcepit captivos omnes a carceribus et captionibus liberos reddi pro anima Henrici domini sui: ut a propria persona sua argumentam eliceret, captiones molestas esse hominibus, et jucundissimam anime refoecillationem ab ipsis emergere. Præterea præcepit, ex mandato ducis filii sui, quod omnes qui capti fuerant pro foresta liberarentur quieti, et ut omnes utilegati pro foresta ad pacem redirent de præcedentibus forisfactis forestæ quieti; et ut omnes alii qui capti fuerant, et retenti per voluntatem regis, vel justitiarum ejus, qui non erant retenti per commune rectum comitatus vel hundredi, vel per appellationem, essent quieti; et illi qui per commune rectum sunt retenti, si plegios invenire possunt standi ad rectum, si quis adversus eos loqui voluerit, liberentur; sin autem juramentum præstant standi ad rectum si quis adversus eos loqui voluerit, per tantum liberentur: et illi qui per appellationem sunt retenti pro quacunque turpi causa, si plegios standi ad rectum invenire possunt, ut plenum inde fiat,² liberentur: et illi qui utilegati sunt per commune rectum sine appellatione, per justitias redeant ad pacem, ita quod plegios inveniant standi ad rectum, si quis versus eos loqui voluerit. Si autem per appellationem retenti³ sunt, si fecerint pacem cum adversariis suis, redeant ad pacem: et omnes illi qui retenti sunt

Benedict,
ii. 75.

¹ conventionaverat] concionave-
rat, B. D.

² fiat] et, ins. L.

³ retenti] retati, B. G. I.; utlagati,
Benedict.

Benedict,
l. 75.

per appellationem illorum qui se malefactores esse cognoscunt, liberentur quieti, et illi malefactores, quibus pro suis probationibus concessa sunt membra et vita, abjurent terram domini Ricardi et abscedant: et illi malefactores qui sine concessione vitæ et membrorum alios appellant propria voluntate, in prison¹ custodiantur, donec aliud inde habeatur consilium. Et præcepit, quod unusquisque liberorum hominum totius regni jurasset, quod fidem portabit domino Ricardo regi² Angliæ, filio domini regis Henrici, et dominæ Alienor reginæ, de vita et membris suis, et honore terreno, sicut ligio domino suo, contra omnes homines et fœminas qui vivere possunt et mori, et quod ei justitiabiles erunt, et auxilium ei præstabunt ad pacem et justitiam suam per omnia servandam.

A.D. 1189.
July.
Malefactors admitted approvers, are to abjure the realm; others appealing as approvers, to remain in prison.
Oaths to be taken of all free men.

Præterea idem dux Normanniæ reddidit Roberto comiti Leicestriæ omnes terras suas, quas pater illius ei abstulerat; et omnes, quos pater suus exhæredavit, in pristina jura restituit.

The earl of Leicester restored.

Benedict,
l. 72.

Illos autem omnes, tam clericos quam laicos, qui, relicto patre suo, illi adhæserunt, odio habuit, et a familiaritate sua alienos fecit: illos vero, qui patri suo fideliter servierunt secum retinuit, et multis bonis ditavit.

Richard rewards his father's friends.

Benedict,
l. 75.

Deinde idem dux transfretavit in Angliam apud Barbeflet idus Augusti, die Dominica proxima ante Assumptionem beatæ Dei genitricis Mariæ: et ante eum venerunt in Angliam Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et Henricus Bajocensis et Johannes Ebroicensis episcopi, expectantes in Anglia illius adventum. Veneruntque similiter de Normannia Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Gilbertus Roffensis, et Hugo Lincolnensis, et Hugo Cestrensis episcopi.

Aug. 13.
Richard crosses from Barfleur.

Benedict,
l. 76.

Dux itaque, et Johannes frater suus cum eo, venerunt in Angliam. De quorum adventu gavisæ sunt regna, quia se per illos³ in meliorem statum reformari sperabant. Et quamvis quidam, perpauci tamen, molesti essent de nece domini regis, solatium tamen illis fuit, quod quidam ait: "Mira canam, sol occubuit, nox nulla secuta est."⁴ Vere nulla nox secuta est

Joy at the arrival of Richard and John.

¹ *prisonē*] *prisona*, B. I.

² *regi*] *domino*, Benedict; Richard having not yet been crowned.

³ *quorum . . . illos*] *ducis . . . illum*, Benedict. It would not have occurred to any one writing very early in Richard's reign that the arrival of John would be an occasion of rejoicing.

⁴ MS. G. continues, in the text,

to quote; "Ordinat in Siculo Sol
" novus orbe diem; Sol geminus
" Siculo illuxerat, alter eclipsym
" Passus habet tenebras, alter abesse
" vetat. Sic pater in nato passo
" si passus, utrumvis Aufer, abest
" neuter, alter uterque fuit. Solis
" in occasu sol alter protulit ortum,
" Sol novus in terris oritur, sol
" cujus ad ortum sol vetus occasus

A. D. 1199.
August.
Joy at
Richard's
accession.

post occasum solis. Nam radius solis solum solis tenens, sole suo jubar lucidius ac latius spargit. Cum enim sol a suo solio in solum deciderit, stans tamen ejus radius, occasum vel eclipsim nesciens, de corpore solari repente divisus, et in se solide reverberatus, sol sole, cujus fuit radius, nulla nubium interpolatione vel injuria impediēte, multo major et lucidior est effectus. Et ne scrupulosum quid animum legentis lædat, præsentī plenius perpendere poterit pentametro:

"Sol pater, et radius filius ejus erat."

Filius itaque in immensum crescens, patris sui bona opera ampliavit, mala vero resecauit. Nam quos pater exheredavit, filius in pristina jura restituit; quos pater fugavit, filius revocavit; quos pater in vinculis tenuit, filius illæcos abire permisit; quos pater causa justitiæ diversis pœnis afflixit, filius causa pietatis refocillavit.

Richard bestows several counties and castles on John.

Præfatus igitur dux Normanniæ Ricardus, huius Henrici regis Angliæ proximo defuncti, venit in Angliam, et dedit Johanni¹ fratri suo comitatum Moretoni, et comitatum Cornubiæ, et Dorsete, et Sumerseta, et comitatum de Nottingham, et comitatum de Derebisire, et comitatum de Luncastro,² et castellum de Merlesberge, et de Lutegareshale, cum forestis et omnibus pertinentiis eorum; et honorem de Walingford, et honorem de Tikehil,³ et honorem de Haia;⁴ et comitatum de Gloucestris cum filia comitis, et eam fecit illi desponsari statim; Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo prohibente, quia erant consanguinei in quarto gradu. Præterea dedit ei le Pec et Bollesoveres.⁵ Sed quædam castella prædictorum comitatum et honorum retinuit dux in manu sua. Præterea idem dux dedit Andress de Cha-

Benedict,
ii. 78.

Benedict,
ii. 78, 79.

Benedict,
ii. 78.

Archbishop Baldwin objects to John's marriage with the heiress of Gloucester.

"proprios lugere putetur." MS. A. has the last three lines in the margin. They are perhaps borrowed from some poem on the accession of William I. or II. of Sicily. MS. G. has in the margin, in a very early hand, the following couplets: "Sol speculum solis condet, sol forma remansit In speculo, oblita corporis ire comes;" and "In numero dampnum pateris, fuerant duo penæ; Facta vides nati; nescis abesse patrem."

¹ *Johanni*] Hoveden here masses his information about the provision made for John. According to Benedict (ii. 73) he gave him Mortain

and the heiress of Gloucester, at Rouen, July 20; Marlborough, Ludgershall, the Peak and Bolsover; the honours of Peverell, Nottingham, Lancaster, Wallingford and Tickhill; and Derbyshire; after his landing in England, before the coronation (ii. 78); and the counties of Cornwall, Devon, Dorset and Somerset, in December; ii. 99.

² *Luncastro*] Lencastre, B. I.

³ *Tikehil*] Tikehelle, I.

⁴ *Haia*] Eya, B. G. I. So also A. as a correction.

⁵ *Bollesoveres*] Bolesoveres, G. I.; Bolesoures, B.

Benedict,
ii. 76.

Benedict,
ii. 78.

venni filiam Radulfi de Dols, cum honore castri Radulfi in Berria, quæ fuerat uxor comitis Baldewini de Rivers, et statim fecit eos desponsari apud Saresbiriā in præsentia Alienor reginæ; et Willelmo Marescallo, filiam comitis Ricardi de Striguil, cum comitatu de Striguil; et Gilberto filio Rogeri filii Rainfrāi, filiam Willelmi de Loncastro; et Gaufrido fratri suo notho, qui quondam fuerat Lincolnienſis eccleſiæ electus, archiepiſcopatum Eboraci.

A.D. 1180.
August.
Marriage of
the heiresses
of Châteauroux,
Striguil, and
Lancaster.

De electione Gaufridi, Eboracensis archiepiſcopi.

Benedict,
ii. 77.

Benedict,
ii. 78.

Benedict,
ii. 76.

Quem canonici Eboracensis eccleſiæ ſibi per aſſenſum regis in archiepiſcopum elegerunt. Et quamvis magiſter Bartholomæus, officialis Huberti Walteri, ejuſdem eccleſiæ decani, et ante electionem et poſt, appellasset ad præſentiam ſummi pontificis, eo quod Hugo Dunelmensis¹ epiſcopus, ejuſdem eccleſiæ Eboracensis² filius ſpecialis, et Hubertus Walteri, ejuſdem eccleſiæ decanus, aberant, ad quos prima vox electionis ſpectabat, tamen prædicti canonici ab inceptis deſiſtere noluerunt, ſed ſupradictum elegerunt, et ſigillis ſuis confirmaverunt. ³At epiſcopo Dunelmensi et Huberto Walteri conquerentibus de transgreſſione canonicorum illorum, præcepit dux quod omnia Eboracensis eccleſiæ eſſent in eo ſtatu quo fuerunt die qua rex pater ſuus fuit vivus et mortuus; unde factum eſt, quod jura eccleſiaſtica archiepiſcopatus Eboracensis redierunt in manum Huberti Walteri et officialium ſuorum, ſicut antea fuerant, et ſæcularia beneficia ejuſdem archiepiſcopatus redierunt in cuſtodiam ſervientum ducis.

Election of
Geoffrey to
the ſee of
York.

Appeal of
the Biſhop
of Durham
and the
Dean of
York.

Eodem anno obiit Gaufridus Elyensis epiſcopus apud Wintoniam, duodecimo kalendas Septembris, et delatus ad Ely, ibidem ſepultus eſt, et Ricardus dux cepit omnes theſauros ſuos. Præterea idem dux miſit epiſcopos et

Aug. 21.
Death of
Geoffrey
Ridel.

¹ *Dunelmensis*] eccleſiæ, inſ. Savile.

² *Eboracensis*] om. Savile, I.

³ The correſponding paſſage in Benedict, although drawn up in a different form, preſents little either in language or in matter that accounts

for the fact that Hoveden has choſen here to depart from his uſual plan. The older Chronicle is a little more circumſtantial, mentioning the ſhare taken by Godfrey de Lucy, and the previous election of Hubert Walter.

A. D. 1180.
August.
Richard
takes ac-
count of his
father's
treasures.

comites et barones suos per omnes thesauros regis patris sui, et totum thesaurum qui inventus fuerat, in auro et argento, fecit computari et ponderari, cujus numerum et mensuram longum est enarrare, quia thesaurus ille erat¹ magnus valde, excedens numerum et valentiam centum millia marcarum.² Deinde misit servientes et ballivos suos per universos portus maris Angliæ, et Normanniæ, et Pictaviæ, et aliarum terrarum suarum, et de universis navibus fecit sibi eligi et majores et meliores, quæ aptæ erant ad magnum pondus portandum, et quasdam illarum distribuit familiaribus suis qui crucem Jerosolimitanæ protectionis susceperant, et quasdam illarum ad opus suum retinuit; et fecit illas onerari armis et victualibus.

Benedict,
ii. 77.

He orders a
fleet to be
raised for
the Crusade.

Sept. 3.
Coronation
of Richard,
at Westmin-
ster.

Deinde idem dux venit Landonias, congregatis ibi archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus et baronibus, et copiosa militum multitudine in occursum ejus; quorum consilio et assensu ipse dux tertio nonas Septembris, die Dominica, festo ordinationis beati Gregorii papæ, die quoque Ægyptiaca, consecratus et coronatus est in regem Angliæ, Landoniis apud Westmonasterium, a Baldwino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ministrantibus ei in illa coronatione Waltero Rothomagensi, Johanne Dublicensi, Formale Treverensi³ archiepiscopis, et Hugone Dunelmensi, et Hugone Lincolnensi, et Hugone Cestrensi, et Willelmo Herefordensi, et Willelmo Wigornensi, et Johanne Exoniensi, et Reginaldo Bathoniensi, et Johanne Norewicensi, et Sefrido Cicestrensi, et Gilberto Rosfensi, et Petro de Sancto David, et de Sancto Asaph, et de Pangor, et Albino Fornensi,⁴ et Concorde Hegdunensi⁵ episcopis, et omnibus fere abbatibus et prioribus, et comitibus et baronibus Angliæ astantibus.

Benedict,
ii. 78.

Benedict,
ii. 79.

¹ erat] om. B. I.

² centum millia marcarum] non-genta millia librarum, Benedict; where for *nongenta* perhaps we should read *nonaginta*.

³ Formahs, Formator, or Fulmar, was elected archbishop of Treves in 1184 by a portion of the chapter, and consecrated by Urban III. in

1186: he was deprived by Clement III. in 1189; died in England at Northampton. Benedict, u. 89.

⁴ Albino Fernensi] Bishop 1185-1222.

⁵ Hegdunensi] Heedmens, G. Bishop of Enaghidan in the province of Tuam.

*Incipit ordo coronationis Ricardi regis Angliæ.*¹ A.D. 1189.

In primis venerunt episcopi et abbates, et clerici multi induti cappis sericis, præcedentibus eos cruce, ceroferariis, turribulis cum aqua benedicta, usque ad ostium thalami regis interioris, et ibi receperunt prædictum Ricardum ducem, qui coronandus erat, et duxerunt eum in ecclesiam Westmonasterii, usque ad altare majus, cum ordinata processione, et cantu glorioso; et omnis via, qua gradiebantur ab ostio thalami regis usque ad altare, cooperta erat pannis laneis.

Benedict,
ii. 80.

Sept. 3.
Order of the
Coronation
services.

Ordo autem processionis talis erat. In prima fronte præcedebant clerici induti, portantes aquam benedictam et cruces, et cereos et turribulos. Deinde veniebant priores, deinde abbates, deinde episcopi, et in medio illorum ibant quatuor barones portantes quatuor candelabra aurea.

Procession
of the clergy.

Deinde venerunt Godofridus de Luci portans pilleum regium, et Johannes Marescallus juxta eum portans duo calcaria aurea magna et ponderosa; deinde venerunt Willelmus Marescallus, comes de Striguil, portans sceptrum regale aureum,² in cujus summitate est crux aurea; et Willelmus Patricii, comes de Salesbiri juxta eum, gestans virgam auream habentem in summitate columbam auream. Deinde venerunt David frater regis Scotiæ comes de Huntedun, et Johannes comes Moretonii frater ducis, et Robertus comes Leicestriæ, portantes tres gladios³ regios sumptos de thesauro regis, quorum vaginæ desuper per totum auro contectæ⁴ erant; medius autem illorum ibat comes Moretonii.

Benedict,
i. 81.

The regalia :
spurs, sceptre,
virge,
and swords.

Deinde veniebant sex comites et⁵ barones portantes in humeris suis unum scaccarium magnum valde, super quod posita erant regalia insignia et vestes.

The royal
robes.

¹ Matthew Paris gives a similar account of the coronation, more closely resembling that of Benedict than the text, in the few and unimportant places where the two differ. He indicates the common source of information, the Rolls

(M. Paris, ed. Wats, p. 154) or Consuetudines (*Abbreviatio*, ed. Madden, iii. 209) of the Exchequer.

² aureum] om. I.

³ gladios] aureos, ins. Savile.

⁴ contectæ] contextæ, B. D.

⁵ et] sex, ins. Savile.

- A. D. 1189.
Sept. 3.
Procession
of the crown.
- Deinde venit¹ Willelmus de Mandeville, comes Albemarie, Benedict,
ii. 81. gestans coronam auream magnam et ponderosam, lapidibus pretiosis undique decoratam.
- The duke
under a
canopy.
- Deinde venit Ricardus dux Normanniæ; et Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus ibat a dextris illius, et Reginaldus Bathoniensis episcopus a sinistris illius ibat, et quatuor barones portaverunt supra eos umbraculum sericum super quatuor lanceas proceras, et omnis turba comitum et baronum, et militum, et aliorum, tam clericorum quam laicorum, sequebatur usque in atrium ecclesiæ, et induti introierunt cum duce usque in chorum.
- On the taken
by the duke.
- Cum autem dux ad altare veniret coram archiepiscopis, episcopis, et clero, et populo, flexis genibus ante altare, coram positis sacrosanctis evangelis, et plurimorum sanctorum reliquiis,² juravit quod ipse omnibus diebus vitæ suæ pacem, et honorem, atque reverentiam Deo, et Sanctæ Ecclesiæ, et eius ordinatis portaret. Deinde juravit, quod rectam justitiam et æquitatem exerceret in populo sibi commisso. Deinde juravit, quod malas leges, et consuetudines perversas, si quæ in regno suo inductæ sunt, deleteret, et bonas leges conderet, et sine fraude et malo ingenio eas custodiret.
- He is un-
dressed.
- Deinde denudaverunt eum totum exceptis camisia et braccis. Camisia autem dissuta erat in scapulis.
- The sandals
put on
The amount-
ing.
- Deinde calciaverunt eum sandaliis auro contextis.
- Deinde Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, infundens oleum sanctum super caput ejus, unxit eum in regem in tribus locis, videlicet, in capite, in pectore, in brachiis, quod significat gloriam, fortitudinem, et scientiam, cum orationibus ad hoc constitutis.
- The cap.
- Deinde posuit idem archiepiscopus super caput ejus consecratum pannum lineum, et pilleum desuper, quod Godofridus de Luci portaverat.
- The tunic
and dalmatic.
- Deinde induerunt eum vestimentis regalibus. Primo, videlicet, tunica, deinde dalmatica.
- Deinde tradidit ei idem archiepiscopus gladium regni, ad malefactoros ecclesiæ comprimendos.
- The sword
and spurs.
- Deinde duo comites calciaverunt ei calcaria, quæ Johannes Marescallus portaverat.
- The mantle
- Deinde indutus est mantea.

¹ venit] veniebat, Savile.

² reliquiis] ut moris est, ins. Savile, B. D. I.

Deinde ductus est ad altare, et ibi prædictus archiepiscopus prohibuit ei ex parte Omnipotentis Dei, ne hunc honorem sibi assumeret nisi in mente haberet supradicta sacramenta et vota quæ fecerat inviolabiliter servare; et ipse respondit se per auxilium Dei omnia supradicta servaturum sine fraude.¹

A.D. 1189.
Sept. 8.
The adjuration and answer.

Deinde ipse cepit coronam de altari, et tradidit eam archiepiscopo, et archiepiscopus² posuit eam super caput illius, quam duo comites sustinebant propter ponderositatem ipsius.

The crowning.

Deinde tradidit ei archiepiscopus sceptrum regale in manu dextra, et virgam regalem in sinistra,³ et rex sic coronatus ductus est ad sedem suam a prædictis Dunelmensi et Bathoniensi episcopis, præcedentibus eos ceroferariis, et prædictis tribus gladiis.

The gift of sceptre and virge.

Deinde inchoata est missa Dominicalis. Et cum perveniretur ad offertorium, prædicti episcopi duxerunt eum ad altare, et ipse obtulit unam marcam auri purissimi; talis enim oblatio decet regem in singulis coronationibus suis; et præfati episcopi reduxerunt eum ad sedem suam.

Mass.

The king's oblation.

Celebrata autem missa, et omnibus rite perfectis,⁴ prædicti duo episcopi, unus a dextris, et alter a sinistris, reduxerunt eum coronatum, et portantem sceptrum in dextra, et virgam regalem in sinistra, ab ecclesia usque in thalamum suum, præcedente ordinata processione, ut superius.

Return of the procession to the royal chamber.

Deinde reversa est processio in chorum: et dominus rex deposuit coronam regalem et vestes regales; et leviores coronam et vestes cepit, et sic coronatus venit prandere; et archiepiscopi et episcopi sederunt cum eo in mensa, unusquisque secundum ordinem et dignitatem suam. Comites autem

The king unrobes.

The coronation feast.

¹ *sine fraude*] om. I.

² *et archiepiscopus*] tradidit ei et, ins. Savile, I.

³ The giving of the sceptre and virge are placed by Benedict before the unction: and in this Brompton's version confirms Benedict. The version of Matthew Paris indirectly confirms the former order, for he represents the king as holding the sceptre and virge at the moment of coronation. At the same time,

the king could not have taken the crown from the altar, holding the sceptre and virge. In the Pontifical of Egbert the sceptre and staff were given before the imposition of the cap. The order there is: 1, unction; 2, sceptre; 3, staff; 4, cap. The later usage corroborates Hoveden's account. See Maskell, *Monumenta Ritualia*, vol. iii. pp. 32-35.

⁴ *perfectis*] peractis, Savile, B.D.I.

A D. 1189. et barones serviebant in domo regis prout dignitates Benedict,
ii. 85.
 Sept. 3. eorum exigebant. Cives vero Londonienses servierunt
 The coronation feast. de pincernaria, et cives Wintonienses de coquina.

Dum autem rex in mensa sederet, venerunt principes
 The meal on the Jews. Judaorum deferentes regi munera, sed quia prohibitum
 erat eis die hesternae, quae praeteriit, non ad curiam regis
 die coronationis suae accederent, plebs superbo oculo, et
 insatiabili corde, irruit in Judaeos, et spoliavit eos, et plagis
 impositis ejecerunt eos ab atrio regis. Inter quos erat
 Benedictus Judaeus Eboraci,¹ qui cum a Christianis ita
 persecutus esset, et vulneratus, ut de vita desperaret, bap-
 tizatus est a Wilhelmo, priore ecclesiae Sanctae Mariae Eboraci,
 in ecclesia Innocentium, et vocatus est Willelmus, et sic Benedict,
ii. 84.
 evasit mortis periculum, et manus persequentium. Quod
 cum cives Londonienses audissent, invaserunt Judaeos civi-
 tatis, et domos eorum combusserunt, et illos interfecerunt,
 pauci tamen evaserunt beneficio amicorum suorum Chris-
 tianorum. In crastino autem coronationis regis misit
 Sept. 4. rex servientes suos, et comprehendi fecit malefactores illos,
 Richard pushes the matters. qui civitatem incenderunt, non propter Judaeos, sed
 propter domos et facultates Christianorum quas incen-
 derunt et rapuerunt, et de illis quosdam fecit suspendi.
 Et eodem die fecit rex praefatum Willelmum, qui de
 Judeo factus erat Christianus, sibi praesentari; et ait illi,
 "Tu quis es?" et respondens dixit, "Ego sum Bene-
 dictus Judaeus tuus de Eboraco;" et conversus rex
 [ad] archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et ceteros, qui dixerant
 ei praedictum Benedictum factum fuisse Christianum,
 ait illis; "Nonne dixistis mihi, quod ipse Christianus
 ait illis; "Quid ergo faciemus de eo?" cui archiepiscopus Can-
 tuariensis, minus circumspicte quam esset necesse, respon-
 dit in spiritu furoris sui,² "Ille Christianus esse non vult,
 "homo Diaboli sit." debuerat enim respondisse; "Petimus

Archbishop
 Bekham
 loses his
 temper.

¹ Hoveden's version of this story departs here in arrangement, from that of Benedict, although the wording and the matter are for the most part the same. Here, as in some

other passages he seems to have made it a point of honour to rewrite his Yorkshire news.

² *Illi* } Si, praef., B. D. I

Benedict,
ii. 84.

“ de eo iudicium Christianorum, desicut ipse Christi-
 “ anus sit factus, et modo contradicit.” Sed quia non
 erat qui resisteret, præfatus Willelmus reversus est ad
 Judaicam pravitatem, qui postmodum parvo interlapso
 tempore obiit apud Northamptoniam, et factus est alie-
 nus a communi sepultura Judæorum, similiter et Chris-
 tianorum, tum quia factus fuerat Christianus, tum quia
 ipse, sicut canis reversus ad vomitum, rediit ad Judai-
 cam pravitatem.

A.D. 1189.
Sept. 4.
The end of
the relapsed
Jew.

Secunda autem die post coronationem suam Ricar-
 dus rex Angliæ recepit homagia et fidelitates ab episcopis¹
 et comitibus et baronibus Angliæ : quibus expletis,
 rex exposuit venditioni omnia quæ habuit, scilicet,
 castella, villas et prædia. Unde factum est, quod Hugo Dunel-
 mensis episcopus emit a rege bonum manerium suum de
 Sadberga, cum wapentac et feodis militum, pro sexcentis
 marcis argenti, in puram et perpetuam eleemosynam :
 et hac² carta confirmavit ;

Sept. 5.
Richard re-
ceives the
homages.

Benedict,
ii. 87, 90.

He sells
castles,
towns and
estates.

*Carta regis Ricardi de manerio de Sadbere vendito
 Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo.*³

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aqu-
 “ tanniæ, comes Andegaviæ, archiepiscopis, episcopis, baroni-
 “ bus, vicecomitibus, et omnibus ballivis et ministris totius
 “ Angliæ, salutem. Sciatis nos dedisse et concessisse, et
 “ præsentem carta confirmasse, Deo, et beato Cuthberto, et ec-
 “ clesie Dunelmensi, et Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo, caro
 “ consanguineo nostro, et successoribus ejus, in puram et
 “ perpetuam eleemosynam, pro anima patris nostri et ante-
 “ cessorum nostrorum,⁴ et pro salute nostra et hæredum
 “ nostrorum, et pro stabilitate et incremento regni nostri,
 “ manerium nostrum de Sadberge, cum wapentac ad idem

Sept. 18.
Grant of
Sadberge to
the see of
Durham.

¹ *episcopis*] et abbatibus, ins. B. I.

² *hac*] om. B. D. I.

³ This charter is printed from the original deed in the *Scriptores Dunelmenses Tres* : App. p. lix.

⁴ *et . . . nostrorum*] et ante successorum nostrorum, A. ; et antecessorum et successorum nostrorum, B. D. I. The original deed confirms the text.

(Not in
Benedict.)

A D 1180.
Sept. 18.
Grant of
Sudberge to
the see of
Durham.

“ manerium pertinente, et cum omnibus aliis rebus ad illud (Not in
“ pertinentibus, tam in hominibus, quam in terris¹ cultis et Benedict.)
“ inculis, in viis et semitis, in pratis et pasturis, in stagnis
“ et molendinis, in aquis et piscariis; et servitium Petri
“ Careu et hæredum suorum de feodo unius militis de Se-
“ tune, et de Ovetune; et servitium Thomæ de Amundevile
“ et hæredum suorum de feodo unius militis de Cottona,² et
“ de Treiford; et servitium filii Godefridi Baard et hæredum
“ suorum, de feodo duarum partium unius militis de Midel-
“ tun, et de Herteburne; quas terras de nobis tenebant inter
“ Tinam et Teisam; cum omnibus aliis rebus ad prædicta
“ feoda pertinentibus: in escambium pro servitio feodi trium
“ militum, quod Philippus de Kimba de ipso episcopo in
“ Lincolnshire tenebat, et pro feodo duorum militum, quod
“ Girardus de Camvilla de eodem ibidem tenebat, et pro
“ feodo unius militis, quod Baldewinus Wac, et filius Rogeri
“ de Oseville ibidem de eodem tenebant. Quare volumus et
“ præcipimus, quod prædictus Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus,
“ et successores sui, prædicta duo feoda militum, et duas
“ partes feodi unius militis, cum prædicto manerio de Sad-
“ berge et wapentacco, sicut prædictum est, teneant, habeant,
“ et possideant libere et quiete et honorifice, cum omnibus
“ rebus ad ea pertinentibus in bosco et plano, cum socca et
“ sacca, et tol et them, et infangenthes, et cum omnibus
“ aliis libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus, et cum placitis
“ ad coronam pertinentibus, sicut nos ipsi in propria manu
“ nostra habebamus, et sicut ipse episcopus habet et tenet
“ alias terras suas, et feoda militum in episcopatu suo; et
“ ut tam ipse episcopus quam successores sui disponant de
“ hominibus et terris ad idem manerium pertinentibus, ad
“ libitum suum et voluntatem, sicut de aliis hominibus et
“ terris suis in eodem episcopatu suo faciunt. His testibus:
“ Baldewino Cantuariensi, Waltero Rothomagensi, Johanne
“ Dublinensi archiepiscopis; Reginaldo Bathoniensi, Hugone
“ Lincolnensi, Johanne Norewicensi,³ Hugone Coventrensi,
“ Sefrido Cigestrensi, Gilleberto Refensi, Johanne Exoniensi
“ episcopis; domino Johanne fratre domini regis, Willelmo
“ de Mandevilla comite de Exesse, Roberto comite de Lei-
“ cestria, Hamelno comite de Warerna, Gwularanno comite
“ de Warewic, Willelmo comite de Arundel, Ricardo comite
“ de Clare, Willelmo comite de Saresburi, Rogero Bigoto,

¹ *terris*] ceteris, B. I.

² *Cottona*] Coctona, I.; Coctana,
G.; Cotham, orig.

³ *Norewicensi*] Willelmo Wigor-
nensi, *add. orig.*

(Not in Benedict.) " Willelmo Marescallo domino¹ de Striguil. Datum anno primo regni nostri, xviii^o. die Septembris, apud Gatington, per manum Willelmi de Longo-campo, cancellarii nostri." A. D. 1180. Sept. 18. Bishop Hugh buys the county of Northumberland.

Benedict. ii. 90. Præterea idem episcopus dedit prænominato regi² marcas argenti pro comitatu Northumbrie habendo in vita sua, cum castellis et aliis pertinentiis suis.

Benedict. ii. 95. Deinde venit rex ad abbatiam quæ dicitur Pipewelle, et congregatis ibi Baldewno Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et Waltero Rotomagensi archiepiscopo, et Johanne Dublinensi archiepiscopo, et Formale Treverensi archiepiscopo, et Hugone Dunelmensi episcopo, et Hugone Lincolnensi episcopo, et Hugone Cestrensi episcopo, et Johanne Northwicensi episcopo, et Johanne Ebroicensi episcopo, et Johanne Exoniensi episcopo, et Willelmo Herefordensi episcopo, et Willelmo Wigornensi episcopo, et Reginaldo Batoniensi episcopo, et Gilleberto Rofensi episcopo, et Sefrido Cycestrensi episcopo, et Henrico Bajocensi episcopo, et Petro episcopo de Sancto David in Wallia, et Albino Fernensi episcopo, et Concorde Hegdonensi³ episcopo, et abbatibus et prioribus fere totius Angliæ; idem rex dedit Godefrido de Luci episcopatum Wintoniensem; et Ricardo thesaurario, Eliensi archidiacono, episcopatum Londoniensem; et Willelmo de Lunchamp, cancellario suo, episcopatum Eliensem, et Huberto Walteri, decano Eboraci, episcopatum Salesbiriensem; et abbatiam de Selebi Rogero ejusdem abbatis priori; et abbatiam de Glastingbiri⁴ priori de Bermundesia; et Galfrido fratri suo, quondam Lincolnensi

Sept. 15-16. Richard holds a great council at Pipewell.

He gives the see of Winchester to Godfrey de Lucy: London to Richard Fitz-Neal: Ely to William Lorcham p.; Salisbury to Hubert Walter.

¹ dommo] comite, orig., Strigoil, B

² regi] The number of marks is left blank in the MSS., and the price is not mentioned by Benedict, or in the original grant, *Scr. Dun. Tres*, App. p. lxii Richard of Devizes (p. 8), gives 10,000 marks as the payment made by bishop Hugh for all his honours, 1,000 being given for the justiciarship. Ben. P. ii. 90. The original grant is dated Nov. 25. at Westminster

³ Hegdonensi] Heedonensi, G.

⁴ Glastingbiri] Lincolnensem, D. I., Savile.

⁵ Glastingbiri] Henrico de Soilli, ins. B. D. I., Savile. Henry de Soilli, or de Sull, a descendant probably of count Stephen of Blois, and therefore a kinsman of the king. A. Domesham; *Ang. Sac.* i. 578. The Annals of Bermondsey make the prior, who became abbot of Glastonbury in 1189, a different person from Henry de Soilli, whose appointment to Bermondsey they place in 1186, and his death the same year. But there is no sufficient reason to doubt the identity of the two.

A D. 1189.
Sept. 16.
Other promotions
made at the
council of
Pipewell.

The arch-
bishop of
Canterbury
claims the
right of con-
secrating
the arch-
bishop elect
of York.

Sept 17.
Consecra-
tion of the
bishop of
Waltham.
Richard ap-
points a
bishop of
Durham and
earl of
Hesse, chief
justiciar.

electo, archiepiscopatum Eboracensem; et Henrico, fratri Wil-^{Benedict,}
helmi Marescalli, decanatum Eboracensis ecclesie; et Bucardo^{ii. 85.}
de Puttaco, nepoti Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi, thesaura-
riam Eboracensis ecclesie. Et Willelmo de Chimeli¹ archidiaconatum de Richemund; et Willelmo de Sancte Maria^{Benedict,}
Ecclesia, prebendam quæ fuit Huberti Walteri in ecclesia^{ii. 86.}
Eboraci, et decanatum Sancti Martini Landoniæ.

Cum igitur Baldwinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus videret² archiepiscopatum Eboracensem datum fuisse præfato Galfrido, calumniatus est consecrationem illius, et prohibuit ei ne ipse ab alio quam ab eo consecrationem seu sacerdotalem ordinem susciperet, et super hoc appellavit ad dominum papam; et coram rege, et universis episcopis, et clero et populo, cartam³ Willelmi regis Bastardi, in qua continebatur controversia quæ olim vertebatur inter Cantuariensem et Eboracensem ecclesiam super primatia Angliæ, et quibusdam aliis dignitatibus, protulit. In carta autem illa continebatur, quod Thomas, tunc temporis Eboracensis archiepiscopus, ordinem sacerdotalem, et episcopalem consecrationem, suscepit de manu Lamfranci, tunc temporis Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et totius Angliæ primatis, et ei canonicam obedientiam fecit, et ad concilia sua, cum Lindisfarnensis ecclesie episcopo, et cæteris suffraganeis suis, venit, et ei reverentiam omnem sicut primati suo exhibuit. Carta autem illa testabatur hæc omnia supradicta facta fuisse coram rege Willelmo in generali concilio apud Landonias per definitivam sententiam ab Alexandro papa secundo prolatam.

Insequenti vero die Johannes electus Cantuarie Casæ consecratus est in episcopum a Johanne Dublinensi archiepiscopo,⁴ apud Pipewelle, xv^o, kalendas Octobris, die Dominica.^{Benedict,}^{ii. 87.}

In eodem vero concilio dominus rex constituit Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum, et Willelmum comitem Albemarie, summos justitarios Angliæ, et associavit eis in regimine regni Willelmum Marescallum, et Gaufridum filium Petri, et Willelmum Bruere, et Robertum de Wihthefeld, et Rogerum filium Reinfridi.⁵

¹ Willelmo de Chimeli] He is called William de Chamvil by Benedict; but in this case Hoveden, who is consistent throughout, is probably right.

² videret] vidisset, Savile.

³ This charter may be found in

William of Malmesbury, *G. R.* in, and in many other places.

⁴ Benedict here gives the names of the assistant bishops Formals of Treves and Concord of Enaghdun.

⁵ Wihthefeld . . . Reinfridi] Wihthefeld . . . Refredi, B. The associa-

Benedict,
- 88, 91.

Gaufridus vero Eboracensis electus statim murmuravit contra Henricum fratrem Willelmi Marescaldi, et Bucardum nepotem Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi, et Willelmum de Chimili, et Willelmum de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia, et Rogerum electum abbatiæ Sancti Germani de Selebi, quibus rex supradictos honores dederat, et juravit quod donatio illa regis¹ non staret, nisi de consensu et voluntate illius. Unde rex iratus disseisivit eum de archiepiscopatu Eboraci, et facta est inter regem et illum discordia gravis, adeo quod etiam rex disseisivit eum de omnibus tenementis suis citra mare et ultra. Sed paulo post prædictus Eboracensis electus recepit ordinem sacerdotalem a Johanno episcopo Candidæ Casæ, suffraganeo suo, mense Septembris, sabbato quatuor temporum, apud Snuelle.

A D. 1190.
September.
Geoffrey
elect of
York, ob-
jecting to
some of the
promotions,
is dispossessed of his
estates.

Benedict,
- 88.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ missis nunciis suis ad Clementem papam, obtinuit ab eo litteras patentes, ut quoscunque ipse vellet dimittere ad terras suas custodiendas, essent quieti a captione crucis, et ab itinere Jerosolimitano, unde ipse sibi² inæstimabilem acquisivit pecuniam.

He is or-
dained
priest, Sept.
23, at South-
well.

Henricus autem frater Willelmi Marescalli, cui rex dederat decanatum Eboracensis ecclesie, venit usque Burhtun³ in Lindesia, et ibi suscepit ordinem subdiaconi et diaconi in una die, a Concorde Hegdmensi episcopo. Cumque⁴ idem Henricus Eboracum veniret, cum litteris regis, ad recipiendum decanatum, non invenit qui eam in stallum decani mitteret. Dicebant enim clerici Eboracensis ecclesie, quod nullus præter archiepiscopum debuit mittere eum in stallum decani.

Richard gets
leave from
the pope to
dispense
with the
vow of
pilgrimage.

Henry, dean
of York,
ordained
deacon.

He comes to
York, and is
installed by
the precentor
as a
prebendary
only.

tion of the five last named barons in the commission of the justiceship is not mentioned by Benedict, as part of the business done at Pipewell; but he names Hugh Bardolf and Wilham Bruer as judicial colleagues of the Chancellor and Justiciar in December following, ii. 101, and in the corresponding place Hoveden adds the names of William Marshall and Geoffrey Fitz-Peter. Whether these or any of them re-

ceived a formal commission is a little doubtful; but they were the principal judges of the curia and barons of the Exchequer, and therefore naturally the counsellors of the Great Justiciar.

¹ *regis*] om. D. I.

² *sibi*] om. D. I.

³ *Burhtun*] Burthun, B.G.I. MS. D. omits all from this point to the last line of the next page.

⁴ *Cumque*] Cum, G. I.

A D 1180
September.
The præcentor
refuses
to assist the
treasurer.

Sed Hamo Eboracensis ecclesie præcentor misit eum in stallum præbendæ, quam rex ei dederat. Cum autem¹ Bucardus² de Putcaco, archidiaconus Dunelmensis, cui rex thesaurariam Eboracensis ecclesie dederat, venisset cum litteris regis³ Hamoni præcentori directis, ut prædictum Bucardum in stallum mitteret, noluit mandatis regis obedire. Dicebat enim quod Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus ipsi prædictam thesaurariam dederat, et quod rex Henricus illam ipsi confirmaverat, et super hoc ad sedem apostolicam appellavit, et sic utroque fraudatus a suo desiderio recessit.

Benedict.
ii. 88.

Death of the
archbishop
of Treves.

Eodem anno Formalis,⁴ Treverensis archiepiscopus, obiit in Anglia apud Northampton.

Benedict.
ii. 89.

Capture of
Silvia in
Portugal by
the London
crusaders.

Eodem anno, mense Septembris, homines Londonienses, et cæteri multi, qui de diversis regnis per naves iter Jerosolimitanum arripuerant, obsederunt in Hyspania civitatem quandam Sarracenorum, quæ dicitur Silvia, et ceperunt eam: et deletis inde⁵ Sarracenorum spurciis, legem Christianam ibi in perpetuum tenendam statuerunt, et ecclesiam in honorem Dei, et beatæ Dei genitricis Mariæ fabricaverunt, et a vicinis episcopis dedicari fecerunt, et clericum quandam Flandrensem, qui cum eis⁶ venerat, fecerunt consecrari in episcopum ejusdem civitatis, et tradiderunt eam Sanctio regi Portugalesi⁷.

Benedict.
ii. 90.

The bishop
of Winchester
buys
Wargrave
and Moon,
the abbot of
St Edmund's
Mildenhall.

Eodem anno Godefridus de Luci, Wintoniensis episcopus, emit a Ricardo rege Angliæ⁸ duo maneria optima, videlicet Werregrava et Menes, olim pertinentia ad episcopatum Wintoniensem, ut dicebatur; et Samson abbas de Sancto Edmundo emit ab eo manerium quod dicitur Mildehala,⁹ pro mille marcis, quod de antiquo jure dicebatur pertinere abbatiæ Sancti Edmundi. Cæteri autem, omnes quicumque volebant, emerunt a rege sua et aliena jura, unde rex¹⁰ sibi maximam acquisivit pecuniam.

Benedict.
ii. 91.

Geoffrey
comes to
York.

Galfridus vero Eboracensis electus venit Eboracum, et cum solenni processione receptus est a clero et populo. Venerunt etiam Eboracum Henricus frater Willelmi Marecalli, cui rex

¹ autem] om. I.

² Bucardus] Buccardus, G.; Burgardus, I.

³ regis] om. I.

Formalis] Formator, Savile.

⁵ deletis inde] dejectis, Savile.

⁶ eis] illis, L.

⁷ The dates of this affair are given by Ralph de Diceto: the expedition

sailed from Dartmouth, May 18; reached Lisbon, June 29; besieged Silvia, July 16; took it, Sept. 6. The mosque was consecrated, Sept. 8. R. de Dic. 646.

⁸ Angliæ] om. B. I.

⁹ Mildehala] Mildenhale, I.; Mildenhale, B.; Mildehale, G.

¹⁰ rex] om. B. I.

Benedict,
ii. 91.

decanatum Eboracensis ecclesiam dederat, et Bucardus nepos Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi, cui rex thesaurariam Eboracensis ecclesiam dederat; sed Eboracensis archiepiscopus noluit eos recipere, nec in stallos mittere, dicens quod non mitteret eos in stallos, donec electio sua confirmata esset a summo pontifice.

A.D. 1189.
September.
and refuses to install the dean and treasurer.

Benedict,
ii. 92.

Eodem anno, mense Octobris,¹ Henricus dux Saxonie, gener Henrici regis Angliæ, rediit in Saxoniam, terram suam, et magno congregato exercitu, invasit illos² quibus imperator terram suam dederat, et expugnavit eos,³ et plusquam triginta castella obtinuit.

October.
Henry the Lion recovers Saxony.

Eodem anno, mense Novembris,⁴ Willelmus de Mandevilla, comes Albemariæ, obiit in Normannia apud Rotomagum; et Hugo de Puteaco, nepos Hugonis Danelmensis episcopi, comes de Bahr supra Secanam, obiit apud Acle,⁵ et sepultus est in loco qui dicitur Galtea apud Dunelmum.

November.
Death of William Mardeville and Hugh of Bar.

Eodem mense⁶ Rothrodus comes de Pertico, et alii nuntii Philippi regis Franciæ, venerunt in Angliam ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, dicentes quod rex Franciæ, in generali concilio Parisius, juraverat tactis sacrosanctis evangelis, et omnes principes regni sui, qui crucem⁷ susceperant, quod, Deo volente, immutabiliter erant apud Vizeliacum ad clausum Pascha, inde Jerosolimam ituri; et in testimonium illius sacramenti rex Franciæ misit regi Angliæ cartam suam, petens ab eo, ut ipse et comites et barones sui facerent illi simili modo securum, quod ad eundem terminum essent⁸ apud Vizeliacum. Unde⁹ factum est, quod Ricardus rex Angliæ, et comites et barones sui, qui crucem susceperant, in generali concilio constituti apud Landonias, juraverunt tactis sacrosanctis evangelis, quod per auxilium Dei immutabiliter venirent Vizeliacum in clauso Pascha, parati inde¹⁰ iter Jerosolimitanum arripere; et prædictus comes de Pertico, et cæteri nuntii regis Franciæ, hoc idem

The count of Perche, on the part of the king of France, fixes the day of departure on the crusade for April 1, 1190.

Benedict,
ii. 93.

Richard, in a council at London, undertakes to meet Philip at Vizelai.

¹ mense Octobris] Henry the Lion landed at Stade about Michaelmas; was received by archbishop Hartwig of Bremen, and seized the county of Holstein: he took Bardewic, Oct. 28, and Lubeck and Lauenburg soon after Martinmas. Arn. Lub. ap. Leibnitz, li. 684.

² illos] eos, Savile.

³ eos] om. B. I.

⁴ Novembris] On the 14th: R. de Dic. 650.

⁵ Acle] Aclet, B.; Adet, I.

⁶ mense] anno, B. D. I.; autem mense, G.

⁷ crucem] Domini, ins. Savile from D.

⁸ essent] esset, D. I.

⁹ Unde] Hinc, Savile.

¹⁰ inde] om. B. D. I.

A D 1189.
November.
The ar-
rangement
ratified by
oaths.

juraverunt in animam regis Franciæ, coram rege Angliæ <sup>Benedict,
n. 83.</sup> in concilio illo; et Willelmus Marescallus et quidam alii hoc idem juraverunt in animam regis Angliæ, coram nunciis regis Franciæ in eodem concilio, et misit inde cartam suam regi Franciæ.

De redemptione Gwidonis regis Jerusalem.

Guy of Lu-
signan, on
his release,
is refused
entrance
into Tyre,
by Conrad.

Eodem anno Sibilla regina Jerusalem reddidit Saladino Scalonam pro liberatione Gwidonis de Lezuant, mariti sui, et Saladinus permisit eum liberum et absolutum alire, et invenit ei salvum conductum usque ad civitatem Tyri. Quo cum venisset, Conradus Marchio non permisit illum intrare. Rex itaque ille, non habens in civitate ubi caput suum reclinaret, extra urbem Tyri in tentoriis remansit. Confluebant ergo ad eum Templarii et Hospitalares, et omnes Christiani qui propter metum paganorum dispersi erant in regione illa, et adhererunt illi sicut domino et regi suo.

De obsidione Acon.

Aug. 23.
Opening of
the siege of
Acre by
Guy of Lu-
signan.

Deinde Guido rex per consilium Heraclii Patriarchæ Jerusalem, et illorum qui cum eo erant, profectus est usque ad civitatem Acon,² et obsedit eam in loco qui dicitur le Turun, mense Augusti, in octavis Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, videlicet undecimo kalendas Septembris, et quia rex <sup>Benedict,
n. 84.</sup> modicam habebat exercitum, pagani qui in civitate Acon erant, non clauserunt portas civitatis, neque de die neque de nocte, sed ibant et revertebantur cum camelis suis, attrahentes victualia et alia quæ erant illis necessaria.

Aug. 24.
Arrival of
the French
and German
crusaders.

Tertia autem die sequenti applicuerunt apud Acon Robertus comes de Druces, et³ Belvacensis episcopus frater ejus, et comes Airardus de Breines,⁴ et Jakes de Avennis, et Landegrave de Alemannia,⁵ et alii Christiani peregrini multi, de quorum adventu rex, et omnes qui cum eo erant, gavisii

¹ *Eodem anno*] Hoveden follows the mistake of Benedict. Ascalon had been taken in 1187, and Guy of Lusignan released in May 1188: Jun 20

² *Acon*] Acon, B. I.; Achon, G.

³ *et*] a blank in A. for the Christian name; Philippus, ins. B. I.

⁴ Erard II., count of Brienne. MS. B. has *Ricardus*.

⁵ *Landegrave*] Landegrava, D; Lantegrave, B., corrected to *Lantegrava*, and *Lantegravus*. The Landgrave Lewis of Thuringia, whose title seems sadly to have puzzled our historians.

Benedict,
ii. 94.

sunt gaudio magno valde. Saladinus igitur, magno congregato exercitu, venit prope exercitum Christianorum, et commisit cum eis praelium, feria quarta post festum Sancti Michaelis, in planitie inter Accon et Casale Episcopi, in quo praelio Saladinus confectus fuit et fugatus, ita quod ipse omnia tentoria sua reliquit Christianis, et amisit de melioribus militiae suae partem unam: et Christiani magnam partem suorum perdiderunt. Postmodum Saladinus recuperavit super gentem Christianam, propter peccata eorum, ita quod Christiani usque ad castra sua repulsi sunt; et Girardus de Rideford,¹ summus magister Templi, et marescallus Templi cum fratribus duodeviginti, qui optime se continuerant, ibi interfecti fuerunt; et aliam etiam amiserunt Christiani militiam usque ad milites quadraginta, et centum Turcoplos. Saladinus autem primogenitum suum Mirasalim, et nepotem suum Tekehedin, et Migemal senescallum suum perdidit, et centum de melioribus militiae suae, et multos alios, quorum non erat numerus.

A.D. 1189.
Oct. 4
Battle between Saladin and the crusaders before Acre.

Great losses on both sides.

Et feria quarta sequenti² venit iterum Saladinus cum exercitu suo; et cum Christiani vellent cum eo congregari, velocius retulit pedem; et tertia die³ sequenti castra sua movit, et usque ad locum qui dicitur Saffran⁴ divertit; et exercitus ejus occupaverat omnem locum a Casali Episcopi usque ad Docum, quoniam ex quo Saladinus natus fuit nunquam antea tantum exercitum congregavit. Nam de tota terra sua nullus remansit aptus ad bellum, qui non fuerit in illo exercitu adunatus. Nec credo quod aliquis unquam tantam tamque bonam aliquando alicubi militiam viderit Christianorum, quantam ibi videre posset. Et post peractum bellum venerunt quingenti milites Christiani optimi, et decem millia hominum pugnatorum, et armis omnibus instructorum.

Oct. 11
Retreat of Saladin.

Oct. 12
He takes up a new position.

Assembly of forces on both sides.

Et eodem anno applicuerunt ibi naves et buciae⁵ plusquam quingentae, exceptis galeis et cursariis, quae multae fuerunt, et statim revertebantur in Apuliam, ut plus afferrent, videlicet homines et victualia. Naves autem Teuthonicorum et Dacorum remanserunt apud Accon ad comburendum. Non habebant enim ibi Christiani unde cibos suos coquerent, nisi de navibus, et ex his quae naves attulerant.

Arrival of ships of crusaders.

¹ *Rideford*] Bedeforde, Savile. Benedict has *Ridesfor*; the Author of the *Itinerarium*, *Bidesford*.

² *sequenti*] om. Savile.

³ Saladin moved on Oct. 12 to Cheruba (Bohadin, 109); probably

Khureibeh: the Saffran of the text is probably the place now called Shefa' Amar, near Haifa (*ib.* 144).

⁴ *Saffran*] Safran, Savile.

⁵ *buciae*] buzciae, I.

A.D. 1190.
Arrangement of the
camp of the
besiegers.

Et est notandum, quod civitas Accon obsessa erat in hunc modum. Gwido rex Jerusalem, cum regina uxore sua, et duabus filiabus suis, hospitatus est in Thorono¹ subtus versus mare, versus caput montis, et Eraclius patriarcha, et Gaufridus frater regis erant cum eo; tota vero maritima, qua itur ad² Cayphas, Pisani castrametati sunt, ita quod³ nullus ex illa parte a civitate exire poterat: et ex alia parte Toroni,⁴ ubi sedet Macomatium,⁵ id est, La Mahamarie Sarracenorum, ibi dominus Landigravus, et dominus Jacobus de Avennis, omnesque Teutonici et Jannenses⁶ castra posuerunt. Postea Templum cum gente sua hospitatum est ubi fuerant horti, et cisterna Latinorum. Hospitale cum fratribus et familia sua ibi castra posuit, ubi erat hortus et terra ejusdem Hospitalis. Ex alia parte usque in mare hospitati sunt Conradus Marchio, et multi de ultramontanis, usque ad montem Musardum. Et comes Robertus de Drus, et episcopus Belvacensis, et comes Ahirardus de Brene, et Franci, et Campani cum gentibus regis, morabantur ibi, juxta Toronum prope villam; et archiepiscopus Pisanus, et archiepiscopus de Nazareth, et archiepiscopus de Besenzun, et archiepiscopus de Arleblanc, et archiepiscopus de Monte Regali erant ibi cum eis.⁷

Benedict,
ii. 96.

Benedict,
ii. 96.

The crus-
aders in-
trench their
camp.

Deinde Christiani fecerunt unum fossatum magnum a mari usque in mare, ubi erat fossatum Templi, inter se et exercitum paganorum; et alium fossatum fecerunt inter se et Accon; ita quod nullum, ab eis qui erant in Accon, timebant insultum; et nullus paganorum egredi potuit de Accon, nisi per manus illorum; et ingenia Christianorum et perarum eorum retro fossata erant, ita quod nullus poterat eis nocere ex parte adversa; et Christiani ibi erant expositi ventis et imbris, nullas habentes domos vel tuguria, quibus operirentur. Nec inde si jurassent moveri poterant, sed ibi oportebat eos vivere aut mori. Et, ut dictum est, ita obsederunt Accon ex omni

¹ *Thorono*] Throno, B. I.; Treno, D.; Turono, Savile.

² *ad*] om. B, I.

³ *quod*] om. I.

⁴ *Toroni*] Throni, I

⁵ *Macomatium*] So all the MSS., but the word in A. was originally *Macomarum*, as in Benedict; it has been altered with the knife.

⁶ *Jannenses*] Javennenses, D I.; Genuesenses, G

⁷ The archbishops, of whom all

but the first died on the Crusade, were Ubaldo Lanfranchi, of Pisa, 1174—1209; Letard, of Nazareth, 1158—1190; Thiern of Mart-faucon, of Besançon, 1179—1191; Peter Aynard, of Arles, 1183—1189; and the fifth is probably the archbishop of Petra (Itin R R 29); for the archbishop of Montreal, in Sicily, was at home when Richard visited Sicily in 1190. See below, p 62

Benedict,
ii. 96.

parte, ut nullus omnino posset ab ea exire. Et de die in A.D. 1189.
diem insultum faciebant in eam.

Hæc contra ex una parte Christianorum erat Accon plena The cru-
paganis bellicosus, et ex alia parte eorum erat Saladinus saders beset
cum exercitu suo magno. Et in veritate dico, quod nulli on both
unquam Christiani in tali vel tanta fuerunt expectatione; et sides.

Act. xii. 5.

autem sine intermissione fiebat pro eis ab ecclesia ad
Dominum.

Eodem anno, mense Octobris,¹ Baldewinus Cantuariensis October.
archiepiscopus consecravit Godefridum Wintoniensem, et Consecra-
Willelmum Eliensem, et Hubertum Salesbiriensem, et tion of
Ricardum Londoniensem episcopos. bishops.

Benedict,
ii. 97.

Eodem mense Resus filius Griffini, regulus de Suthwales, Rhys ap
venit in Angliam usque Oxenforde, per conductum Johannis Griffith
comitis Moretonii fratris regis; et quia rex Angliæ noluit comes to
occurrere illi, sicut rex pater suus solebat, indignatus est Oxford to
valde, et reversus est in terram suam sine allocutione meet Ri-
regis. chard, and
returns
home.

Benedict,
ii. 99, 97.

Eodem anno, mense Novembris, Johannes Anagninus November.
cardinalis, missus a latere domini papæ ad dirimendam Arrival of
litem quæ erat inter Baldewinum Cantuariensem archi- the legate,
episcopum et monachos Sanctæ Trinitatis Cantuariæ, John of
applicuit² in Anglia apud Dovre, et prohibitum est ei ne Anagni, at
ipse ulterius procederet, nisi per mandatum regis; et ille Dover.

Interim³ dominus rex venit Cantuariam, et fecit pacem et Richard
finalem concordiam inter Baldewinum Cantuariensem archi- makes peace
episcopum et monachos suos, in hunc modum: videlicet, between the
quod Rogerus le Norreis, quem prædictus archiepiscopus archbishop
contra voluntatem monachorum priorem fecerat in ecclesia and the
Cantuariensi, deponeretur; et capella, quam idem archiepi- monks of
scopus in suburbio contra voluntatem monachorum con- Canterbury.
struxerat, prosterneretur; et prædicti monachi facerent eidem
archiepiscopo obedientiam et professionem, sicut prædeces-

Benedict,
ii. 98.

¹ Hoveden is wrong in placing the four consecrations in October; the bishops of Winchester and Salisbury were consecrated at Westminster, Oct. 22; but those of Ely and London, not until Dec. 31, at Lambeth. R. de Diceto, 649,

651; Gervase, 1550, 1564. Benedict avoids the mistake.

² applicuit] Nov. 20, R. de Dic., 649.

³ Interim] Nov. 27, Gerv., 1558, or the day before, on which an act of the king is dated at Canterbury, Fæd., i. 49.

A.D. 1189.
Dec. 1.
Settlement
of the quar-
rel between
Baldwin
and the
monks of
Canterbury.

scribus suis facere consueverunt. Et factum est ita: et domi-
nus rex, ad petitionem Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, dedit præ-
nominato priori deposito abbatiam de Evesham,¹ et factus
est inde abbas. Archiepiscopus autem alium constituit
priorem in Cantuariensi ecclesia, consilio regis et con-
sensu capituli; sed monachi Cantuarienses deposuerunt
eum post mortem ejusdem archiepiscopi. Archiepiscopus
vero interim construxit ecclesiam apud Lamee,² ex oppo-
sito Westmonasterii, et præbendas, quas assignaverat in
capella quam fecerat in suburbio civitatis Cantuarie,
assignavit in ecclesia illa nova quam construxit apud
Lamee. Huic autem paci et finali concordie inter archi-
episcopum et monachos suos facte, interfuerunt Ricardus
rex Angliæ, et Alienor regina mater ejus; et Walterus
Rotomagensis, et Joannes Dublinensis archiepiscopi; et
Hugo Dunelmensis, et Johannes Northwicensis, et
Hubertus³ Salesbiriensis, et Godefridus Wintoniensis,
et Gillebertus Rosensis, et Reginaldus Batoniensis, et
Hugo Coventrensis, et Hugo Lincolnensis, et Willel-
mus Wigornensis episcopi; et abbas Sancti Augustini
Cantuariensis, et Benedictus abbas de Burgo, et Sampson
abbas de Sancto Edmundo, et abbas de Bello, et abbas
de Westmonasterio, et Guarinus abbas de Sancto
Albano, et alii abbates et priores multi; qui omnes
sigilla sua apposuerunt scripto illi, in quo supradicta con-
tinebatur concordia.⁴ Deinde misit rex pro Johanne Anag-
nino cardinali, qui Cantuarium veniens, et cum solemnibus
processione receptus, moleste tulit quod in absentia illius pax
facta fuit inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et monachos
suos.

Benedict,
ii. 98.

John of
Anagni
visits Can-
terbury.

Benedict,
ii. 99.

November.
William of
Scotland is
conducted to
Canterbury.

Eodem anno, mense Novembris, Gaufridus Eboracensis
electus, una cum baronibus Eboracensis-syræ et vicecomite
Eboraci, per mandatam domini regis perrexit usque ad
aquam de Twede.⁵ Et ibi recepit Willelmum regem Scottorum,
et exhibuit ei honorem debitum, et securum conductum

Benedict,
ii. 98.

¹ *Evesham*] Evesham, G. ; Heve-
sam, D. ; Evesham, I.

² *Lamee*] corrected to Lamhee, in a
later hand, in A. ; Lamhee, B.D.G.I.

³ *Hubertus*] Johannes, A.

⁴ See *Epp. Cantuar.* pp. 322, 323.

⁵ *Twede*] Thwede, B. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 98.

usque ad regem Angliæ. Venit igitur Cantuariam Willelmus rex Scottorum mense Decembris ad regem Angliæ, et fecit ei homagium pro dignitatibus suis habendis in Anglia, sicut Malcolmus¹ frater ejus habuit. Et Ricardus rex Angliæ reddidit ei castellum de Rokesburh et castellum de Berwic² libera et quieta, et eum et omnes hæredes suos clamavit liberos et quietos ab ipso et regibus Angliæ in perpetuum, de omnia ligantia et subjectione de regno Scotiæ; et pro hac redditione castellorum suorum, et pro quietâ clamantia fidelitatis et ligantiæ de regno Scotiæ, et pro carta Ricardi regis Angliæ inde habenda, Willelmus rex Scottorum dedit Ricardo regi Angliæ decem millia marcarum sterlingorum.³ Unde Ricardus rex Angliæ fecit ei cartam suam in hac forma;

A.D. 1189.
December.
Richard restores to William the castles of Roxburgh and Berwick; and releases him from subjection.

*Carta Ricardi regis Angliæ de libertatibus regis Scotiæ adeptis.*⁴

Benedict,
ii. 102.

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, comitibus et baronibus, justitiis et vicecomitibus, et omnibus ministris et fidelibus suis totius Angliæ, salutem. Sciatis nos carissimo consanguineo nostro Willelmo, eadem gratia regi Scottorum, reddidisse castella sua Rokesburh et Berewic, tanquam ejus propria, jure hæreditario ab eo et hæredibus suis in perpetuum possidenda. Præterea quietavimus ei omnes conventiones et pactiones, quas bonæ memoriæ pater noster Henricus rex Angliæ per novas cactas et per captionem suam extorsit, ita videlicet ut nobis faciat integre et plenarie quod rex Scottorum Malcolmus, frater ejus, antecessoribus nostris de jure fecit, et de jure facere debuit; et nos faciamus ei quicquid antecessores nostri prædicto Malcolmus de jure fecerunt et facere debuerunt, scilicet in conductu veniendo ad curiam, et redeundo a curia,

Dec. 5.
Richard's charter of release, granted to William king of Scots.

Benedict,
ii. 103.

¹ *Malcolmus*] Malgolmus, I.
² *Berwic*] Berewic, I.
³ *sterlingorum*] sterlingorum, A.
⁴ This document is printed from the original in the *Fædera*, i. 50, and a collation of that text with that of Benedict will be found in Ben. Pet., ii. 102, 103. The version of Hoveden in one or two

points comes nearer the original than that of Benedict, but in general agrees with the latter. Benedict omits, however, the names of the witnesses, which are supplied by Hoveden, though not in exact accordance with the original, and without the date.

A. D. 1189,
Dec. 6.
Charter of
release
granted by
Richard to
the king of
Scots.

“ et in morando in curia, et in procuracionibus, et in omni-
 “ bus libertatibus et dignitatibus et honoribus eidem jure Benedict,
ii. 103.
 “ debitis, secundum quod recognoscetur a quatuor proceribus
 “ nostris ab ipso Willelmo rege electis, et a quatuor proceribus
 “ illius a nobis electis. Si autem fines sive marchias¹
 “ regni Scotiae aliquis nostrorum hominum, postquam predic-
 “ tus Willelmus rex a patre nostro captus fuit, usurpaverit
 “ absque iudicio, volumus ut integre restituantur, et ad eum
 “ statim reducantur quo erant ante ejus captiorem. Prae-
 “ terea de terris suis quas habet in Anglia, seu dominiciis
 “ seu feodis, scilicet in comitatu Huntendonae² et in omnibus
 “ aliis, in ea libertate et plenitudine possideat, et haeredes
 “ ejus in perpetuum, quia³ Malcolmus possedit vel possidere
 “ debuit, nisi predictus Malcolmus vel haeredes sui aliquid
 “ postea infeodaverint: ita tamen quod si qua postea infeodata
 “ sunt, ipsorum feodorum servitia ad eum vel haeredes ejus
 “ pertineant. Et si quid pater noster predicto Willelmo regi
 “ Scotiae donaverit, ratum et firmum habere volumus: reddi-
 “ dimus etiam ei ligantias hominum suorum, et omnes cartas
 “ quas dominus pater noster de eo habuit per captiorem suam.
 “ Et si aliquae aliae forte per oblivionem retenta aut inventae
 “ fuerint, eas penitus viribus carere praecipimus. Ipse autem
 “ ligius homo noster de omnibus terris de quibus
 “ antecessores sui ligii homines antecessorum nostrorum
 “ fuerunt. Et fidelitatem juravit⁴ nobis et haeredibus nostris.
 “ Testibus his: Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo,⁵ et Wal-
 “ tero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo; et Hugone Dunelmensi, et
 “ Johanne Northvicensi, et Huberto Saresbiriensi, et Hugone
 “ Lincolnensi, et Godefrido Wintoniensi, et Gallebarto Rofensi,
 “ et Reginaldo Batoniensi, et Hugone Coventrensi, et Wil-
 “ lelmo Vigorniensis episcopi; et Alienor matre regis, et
 “ Johanne comite Moretonii fratre regis, et multis aliis.”

(Not in
Benedict.)

¹ *marchias*] marchias, B. D. I.

² *Huntendonae*] de Huntendane,
D. I.; Huntendonie, B.; Huntendonae,
G.

³ *quia*] quoniam, D. I.

⁴ *juravit*] juraverunt, B. D. I.

⁵ Change of hand in A. The
running hand which has once or
twice before annotated on the mar-
gin, now takes up the text. This
may account for the variation of

the text from both Benedict and
the original Act; in the latter of
which the order is,—the archbishops
of Canterbury, Rouen, and Dublin;
the bishops of Durham, Lincoln,
Winchester, Salisbury, and Bath;
earls John, Robert of Leicester, and
Hamelin of Warrene; Hugh Bar-
dolf, Stephen of Longchamp, “ et
“ multis aliis.” The date is also
there given Dec. 5.

Eodem die ibidem, videlicet apud Cantuariam, Hugo Dunelmensis, et Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopi appellaverunt Gaufridum Eboracensem electum ad præsentiam domini papæ, coram prædicto cardinali et supradictis archiepiscopis et episcopis, volentes probare quod illius electio stare non debuit, quia ipsi, ad quos prima vox eligendi spectabat, non interfuerunt electioni illius. Et Bucardus Eboracensis ecclesiæ thesaurarius, et Henricus ejusdem ecclesiæ decanus, appellaverunt eundem Eboracensem electum ad præsentiam domini papæ, dicentes ipsum non fuisse canonice electum, tum quia homicida erat, tum quia erat in adulterio genitus et de scorto natus. Sed quamvis hæc omnia objicerentur illi, tamen prædictus Johannes Anagninus cardinalis, apostolicæ sedis legatus, electionem suam confirmavit.

A.D. 1180.
Dec. 8.
Hugh of Durham and Hubert of Salisbury appeal against Geoffrey's election to York; but it is confirmed by the legate.

Deinde Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Johanni comiti Moretonii fratri suo, in augmentum, comitatum Cornubiæ, et comitatum Devonix, et comitatum de Dorsete, et comitatum de Sumersete.¹ Præterea idem rex Angliæ dedit matri suæ Alienor totum dodarium quod Matildis regina uxor Henrici regis senioris habuit, et totum dodarium quod Alicia regina uxor regis Stephani habuit, et totum dodarium quod Henricus rex Angliæ, filius Matildis imperatricis, maritus ejus ei dedit.

Richard makes additional provision for his mother and brother.

Et ipse rex Ricardus, v^{to}. die Decembris, feria tertia, recessit a civitate Cantuariæ, et perrexit inde usque Dovero ad transfretandum, ubi multæ naves convenerant per mandatum illius de diversis portibus Angliæ.

He goes from Canterbury to Dover.

In crastino autem adventus sui ad Doroberniam, Rogerus electus abbatiæ Sancti Germani de Selebi, recepit apud Doroberniam, die Sancti Nicholai, benedictionem suam ab Hugone Dunelmensi episcopo, per præceptum regis, contra prohibitionem Gaufridi Eboracensis electi.

Dec. 6.
Benediction of Roger, abbot of Selby.

Videns igitur Gaufridus Eboracensis electus quod, nisi mediante pecunia, ipse amorem regis fratris sui nullatenus habere posset, promisit ei tria millia librarum esterlingorum pro amore ejus habendo; et rex reddidit ei archiepiscopatum Eboracensem, et carta sua confirmavit; et reddidit ei omnes laicos feodos quos Henricus rex pater suus illi dederat, citra mare et ultra; scilicet in Anglia villam de Vicumba cum

Geoffrey purchases Richard's good will.

¹ *Sumersete*] The former more formal hand resumes in A

A. D. 1189.
Dec. 8.
Richard grants privileges to the church of York.

pertinentiis suis, et in Normannia comitatum Giffardi, et in Andegavia honorem de Baugi¹ cum pertinentiis suis. Et idem rex clamavit Deo, et Sancto Petro Eboraci, et eidem Gaufrido Eboracensi electo, et omnibus illi successuris in archiepiscopatu Eboracensi, omnes terras suas et canonicorum suorum, in Eboracensi et in Notingham-sira, quietas in perpetuum de reguardo forestæ, et ab omnibus aliis exigentis et gravaminibus forestæ et forestariorum, et liberam potestatem eis dedit, et carta sua confirmavit licentiam capiendi venationes per omnes præbendas suas in Eboracensi² et Notingham siriis.

Benedict.
ii. 100.

Geoffrey is reconciled to the appellants, and confirms the dean and treasurer.

Præterea Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, Hubertus Salesbiriensis episcopus, et Henricus Eboracensis ecclesiæ decanus, et Bucardus ejusdem ecclesiæ thesaurarius, per præceptum regis remiserunt appellationes quas fecerant contra Eboracensem electum; et ipse Eboracensis electus ad petitionem regis confirmavit prædicto Henrico decanatum Eboraci, et Bucardo thesaurariam, et Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo confirmavit omnia privilegia sua, et conventiones quæ fuerunt inter ipsum et Rogerum Eboracensem archiepiscopum, promittens quod hæc omnia confirmaret sigillo consecrationis suæ.

Benedict.
ii. 101.

Dec. 11.
Richard crosses to Canada.

Deiinde Ricardus rex Angliæ, undecimo die Decembris, feria secunda, transfretavit a Dorobernia usque ad Kaleis³ in Flandriam, et venit illic obviam illi Philippus comes Flandriæ, et cum gaudio suscipiens perduxit illum in salvo conductu usque Normanniam. Transfretaverunt etiam cum rege Johannes Anagninus cardinalis, et Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et Henricus Bajocensis, et Johannes Ebroicensis⁴ episcopi: et Hugo Dunelmensis, et Willelmus Ehensis, episcopi, remanserunt in Anglia summi justitarii. Quibus rex associaverat ante recessum suum Hugonem Bardolf, et Willelmum Marscallum, et Gaufridum filium Petri, et Willelmum Brure; et rex tradidit Willelmo Eliensi episcopo cancellario suo unum de sigillis suis, per quod fieri præcepit mandata sua in regno, et tradidit illi in custodia turrim Landoniarum. Et tradidit Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo castellum de Windesovers cum forestis, et comitatu in custodia.

His disposition of the great officers of state.

¹ *Baugi*] Blangi, B. D. G. I. It is altered to Blangi in A., in a later hand.

² *Eboracensi*] Eboraco, B. I.

³ *Kaleis*] Kaley, D. I.

⁴ *Ebroicensis*] Eboracensis, Savile,

Benedict,
ii. 101.

Transfretato itaque rege, statim fit contentio inter prædictos Dunelmensem et Eliensem episcopos, quis eorum major haberetur; nam quod uni placuit, alteri displicuit. Nam omnis potestas

A.D. 1159.
December.
Jealousy
between the
bishops of
Durham and
Ely.

Lucan,
Pharsalia,
i. 92.

“Impatiens consortis erit.”

Et ne longe petatur exemplum,

Ib. i. 95.

“Fraterno primi maduerunt sanguine muri.”

Benedict,
ii. 102.

Eodem anno obiit sine prole Willelmus rex Siciliæ, ducatus Apuliæ, et principatus Capuæ, in Sicilia apud Panormum, mense Novembris. Iste Willelmus rex Siciliæ longe ante obitum suum dederat Constantiam, filiam Rogeri quondam regis Siciliæ, amitam suam, Henrico regi Alemannorum, postea Romanorum imperatori, in uxorem, et constituit eam sibi hæredem in regno Siciliæ successuram, si ipse sine prole decederet; et hoc fecit sacramentis principum regni confirmari. Defuncto itaque rege Willelmo, Thancredus comes de la Liche, consanguineus ejus, usurpavit sibi regnum Siciliæ, contra sacramentum fidelitatis quod fecerat prædictæ Constantiæ.

November.
Death of
William
king of
Sicily.

Benedict,
ii. 140.

Unde Henricus Romanorum imperator misit in Apuliam exercitum magnum, sub principibus Maguntino archiepiscopo¹ et Henrico Teste.² Qui post multarum civitatum combustiones et oppidorum subversiones, imperfecto negotio domum redierunt.

Usurpation
of Tancred:
and war
between
Tancred and
Henry VI.

Benedict,
ii. 141.

Et post eorum recessum, Ricardus comes de Cerne,³ frater reginæ Siciliæ, uxoris Thancredi regis, congressus est in bello cum comite Rogero de Andria, ea ratione, quod ipse auxilium præstiterat regi Alemannorum contra regem Thancredum: et cepit eum, et tradidit regi Thancredo.⁴ Johanna vero, soror Ricardi regis Angliæ, quæ fuerat uxor Willelmi regis Siciliæ ultimo defuncti, remansit in custodia regis Thancredi.⁵

Capture of
the count of
Andria.

¹ Conrad of Wittelsbach.

² Marshall of the Empire. R. de S. Germano.

³ *Cerne*] Richard count of Acerra, brother of Sibylla, Tancred's wife.

⁴ *Thancredo*] Tancredo, B.; Tancredo, I.

⁵ *Thancredi*] Tancredi, B. A sentence of four lines has been erased in A. after this word; but it was probably only the beginning of the next year's annal, for which a new page is taken.

*Primus annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, filii
regis Henrici Secundi.*

A D. 1180.
Dec. 25.
Richard
keeps
Christmas
at Bar.

Anno gratiæ mxc., Ricardus rex Angliæ fuit in Normannia apud Burum die Natalis Domini, quæ feria secunda evenit: et tenuit ibi solenne festum cum primatibus terræ illius; erat enim Nativitas illa Dominica proxima post primam coronationem ejusdem Ricardi. Benedict.
ii. 104.

*Primum colloquium inter Ricardum regem Angliæ
et Philippum regem Franciæ.*

A D. 1190.
Jan. 13.
Renewal of
the treaty
between
Ricard
and Philip.

Et post Natale Domini¹ prædictus Ricardus rex Angliæ, et Philippus rex Franciæ, collocuti sunt ad Vadum Sancti Remigii, ubi pacem firmam statuerunt inter se et regna sua; et ipsi eam, scriptis commendatam, sacramento et sigillis suis confirmaverunt, in festo Sancti Hylarii: et archiepiscopi et episcopi utriusque regni in verbo veritatis dixerunt, et comites et barones regnorum præstito sacramento juraverunt, quod ipsi pacem illam fideliter tenerent, et servarent illibatam. Benedict.
ii. 105.

Terms of
alliance.

Erat itaque talis forma pacis: quod uterque illorum honorem alterius servabit, et fidem ei portabit, de vita et membris et terreno honore suo; et quod neuter illorum alteri deficiet in negotiis suis; sed rex Franciæ ita juvabit regem Angliæ ad terram suam defendendam, ac si ipse vellet civitatem suam Parisius defendere, si esset obsessa; et Ricardus rex Angliæ juvabit regem Franciæ ad terram suam defendendam, ac si ipse vellet civitatem suam Rotomagi defendere, si obsessa esset. Comites autem et barones utriusque regni juraverunt, quod a fidelitate regum non discedent, nec guerram movebunt ullam in terris illorum, quamdiu ipsi fuerint in peregrinatione sua. Et archiepiscopi et episcopi firmiter promiserunt in

¹ *post Natale Domini*] The peace was drawn up at Nonancourt, Dec. 30; and confirmed at Gué S. Remi, about Jan. 13. The conferences held on these two occasions have been confounded with a third

held at the same place, Gué S. Remi, near Nonancourt, on the 13th of March; on which day Phil.p's wife died. See the note on Bened'ct, vol. ii, p. 104.

Benedict,
ii. 105.

verbo veritatis, quod in transgressores hujus pacis et conventionis, sententiam anathematis dabunt.

A.D. 1190.
Jan. 13.

The term of departure postponed to June 24.

Præterea prædicti reges statuerunt, quod si alter illorum decessisset in peregrinatione Jerosolimitana, alter qui vixerit, pecunias defuncti et gentes habebit ad servitium Dei faciendum. Et quia ad præfixum terminum Paschæ parati esse non poterant, iter Jerosolimitanum distulerunt usque ad festum Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ; statuentes quod immutabiliter essent apud Vizeliacum.

Principium discordiæ inter Gaufridum Eboracensem electum et canonicos suos.

Eodem anno, in vigilia Epiphaniæ Domini, orta est gravis dissensio inter Gaufridum, Eboracensem electum,¹ et Henricum, ejusdem ecclesiæ decanum, et Bucardum thesaurarium. Cum enim prædictus electus in tanta solennitate voluisset audire vespervas in metropolitana ecclesia, prædictus Henricus et Bucardus noluerunt expectare eum, sed vespervas inchoaverunt: cumque electus ille venisset in choro, una cum Hamone præcentore, et aliis quibusdam ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicis, vehementer indignatus est, et præcepit ut tacerent: similiter præcepit præcentor. Decanus autem et thesaurarius præceperunt ut cantarent: tamen ad præceptum electi et præcentoris siluerunt omnes; et electus iterum inchoavit vespervas, et thesaurarius præcepit omnes cereos extinguere; quibus extinctis, et vesperis finitis electus conquestus est Deo, et clero et populo, de injuria quam decanus et thesaurarius ei fecerant; et

Jan. 5.

At York the dean and treasurer begin vespers without waiting for the archbishop elect.

He arrives late, and stops the service.

He begins the service over again himself: and the treasurer puts out the lights.

¹ This story, which is not derived from the Chronicle of Benedict, is perhaps a contribution drawn from Hoveden's personal knowledge, to the history of Archbishop Geoffrey. It is a valuable illustration of his character, the more important as

Hoveden was by no means a partizan of his. It is very difficult to conjecture what conduct of his laid him open to the persistent and most vexatious attacks of the clergy of the cathedral, of which this is the first.

AD 1100

Jan 5.
Geoffrey
closes the
church.

illos et ipsam ecclesiam a celebratione Divini officii suspendit, donec ei inde satisfaceret.¹

Jan 6.
The dean
and trea-
surer refuse
to approve.

In crastino autem, cum omnis populus civitatis conveniret more solito ad metropolitanam ecclesiam, ut in ea propter diem solennem commodius audirent Divinum officium, et electus ille, et prædicti decanus et thesaurarius, essent in choro una cum canonicis ejusdem ecclesie, ad pacem et concordiam inter eos faciendam; decanus et thesaurarius noluerunt electo suo aliquam facere satisfactionem de tali et tanta transgressione, sed superbe locuti sunt contra eum. Unde populus adversus eos iratus, cum in illos irruere vellet, electus non permisit eos. Illi autem valde perterriti fugerunt a facie hominum; quorum alter fugit ad tumbam Sancti Willelmi, et alter recepit se in domo decani; et electus excommunicavit eos. Unde factum est quod metropolitana ecclesia, illo die, a Divino cessavit officio.

The people
take the
part of
Geoffrey.There is no
service that
day.

March.

Rienard
summons
his com bel-
lors to Nor-
wandy.

Eodem anno, post Purificationem Sanctæ Mariæ, Alienor regina mater Ricardi regis, et Alays² soror Philippi regis Franciæ, et Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus;³ et Johannes Norwicensis, et Hugo Dunelmensis, et Godefridus Wintoniensis, et Reginaldus Batoniensis, et Willelmus Elyensis, et Hubertus Salesbimensis, et Hugo Cestreusis, episcopi; et Gaufridus Eboracensis electus, et Johannes comes Moretonii frater regis, transfretaverunt de Anglia in Normanniam per mandatum domini regis; et habito cum illis consilio, dominus rex statuit Willelmum Elyensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, summum justitiarium Angliæ; et concessit Hugoni Danelmensi episcopo justitiarum a fluvio Humbri usque ad terram regis Scotiæ; et fecit Gaufridum Eboracensem electum, et Johannem comitem Moretonii, fratres suos, jurare tactis sacrosanctis evangeliiis, quod Angham non intrarent infra tres annos proximo subsequentes, nisi per licentiam illius: tamen deinde relaxavit Johanni fratri suo sacramentum quod fecerat, et dedit ei licentiam redeundi in Angham, præstito sacramento quod fideliter ei serviret.

Benedict,
ii. 105.Benedict,
ii. 106.and makes
the bishops
of Dunelm
and Ely
justiciars.The oaths of
John and
Geoffrey.

¹ *satisfieret*] satisfaceret, Savile,
from D

² *Alays*] Alesia, G.; Alais, B. I.

³ Baldwin sailed on the 6th of
March: Gerv. 1564.

dict,
1.

Et rex misit in Angliam Willelmum Eliensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, ad præparandum sibi et itineri suo necessaria: et volens exaltare eum super omnes tam clericos quam laicos regni sui, misit nuncios suos ad Clementem papam, et effecit adversus eum, quod ille commisit præfato cancellario legatiam totius Angliæ et Scotiæ.

A.D. 1190.
March.
Richard applies for the legation for William Longchamp:

Cumque cancellarius ille¹ in Angliam veniret, fecit Turrim Londoniarum circumdari fossato profundissimo, sperans quod Tamensis fluvius perinde transiret. Deinde idem cancellarius cepit ad opus domini regis de unaquaque civitate Angliæ duos palefridos et duos summarios de auxilio; et de unaquaque abbatia Angliæ² palefridum et unum summarium; et de unoquoque manerio regis unum palefridum et unum summarium.

who makes a ditch round the Tower of London. His exactions.

De interfectione Judæorum Eboraci.

dict,
187.

Eodem anno, mense Martii,³ xvii. kalendas Aprilis, feria sexta ante Dominicam in Ramis Palmarum, Judæi civitatis Eboraci, numero quingenti viri, exceptis mulieribus et parvulis, incluserunt se in turrim Eboraci, consensu et voluntate custodis turris et vicecomitis, propter metum Christianorum: quam cum prædicti vicecomes et constabularius repeterent, Judæi noluerunt illam eis tradere. Unde factum est, quod populus civitatis, et extranei, qui ad comitatum venerant, per exhortationem vicecomitis et constabularii, fecerunt impetum unanimiter in Judæos. Qui cum insultum facerent in turrim die ac nocte, Judæi obtulerunt populo pecuniam magnam pro licentia abeundi cum vita; sed noluit populus accipere. Tunc surrexit quidam legisperitus, et ait: "Viri Israelitæ, audite consilium meum. "Melius est, ut nosmet ipsi⁴ nos mutuo interficiamus, "quam incidamus in manus inimicorum legis nostræ." Omnes igitur Judæi, tam viri quam mulieres, assensum præbuerunt consilio illius, et accedens unusquisque paterfamilias,

March 16.
Five hundred Jews throw themselves into York castle; and are besieged by the sheriff.

They determine on self-destruction.

¹ ille] om. B. D. I.

² abbatia] manerium, ins. Savile, after

G. I.

Benedict, as to the month, and correcting him as to the day of the week, which he gives "Dominica in "Ramis Palmarum."

⁴ ipsi] ipsos, D. G. I.

- A D 1190. March 16
 They destroy themselves.
- incipiens a majoribus domus suae, primo incidit cum novaculo acuto guttura uxorum et filiorum et filiarum suarum, deinde totius familiae suae, et extremo¹ sui ipsius. Quidam autem illorum procecerunt interfectos suos extra murum super populum: quidam vero inclaserunt interfectos suos in domo regia, et imposito igne combusserunt eos et domos regis. Et illi qui caeteros interfecerant a populo interfecti sunt. Benedict, ii. 107.
- The Jews' houses burned.
- Interim quidam Christianorum incendebant domos Judaeorum, et rapinis intendebant, et sic consummati² sunt omnes Judaei qui erant in civitate Eboraca, et cartae universorum debitorum combusta.³
- Death of the queen of France.
- Eodem anno obiit Yeabel regina Franciae, filia comitis de Henou, antequam Philippus rex Franciae, maritus ejus, iter Jerosolimitanam arriperet. Benedict, ii. 108.
- March 25. Easter.
- Eodem anno Annunciatio Domonica evenit in ipso die Paschae, quod a multis retro temporibus non evenit.⁴
- William Longchamp is made legate.
- Interim nuncii regis, quos ipse Romam misit pro legatia Angliae et Scotiae habenda ad opus Willelmi cancellarii sui, redierunt cum litteris domini papae super eodem negotio.⁵ Auctoritate igitur legationis suae praedictus Eliensis episcopus, apostolicae sedis legatus, et domini regis cancellarius, et totius Angliae justitarius, clerum et populum opprimebat, confundens fasque nefasque; nec erat in toto regno qui auderet suae resistere voluntati, nec in verbo.
- April.
- He goes to York to punish the possessors of the Jews.
- Post Pascha praedictus regis cancellarius cum magno exercitu venit Eboracum, ad comprehendendum malefactores illos qui Judaeos civitatis destruxerunt: et cognito quod per praecipuum vicocomitis et custodis turris hoc factum fuisset, utrumque deposuit: et a civibus civitatis cepit centum obsides de fide et pace servanda regi et regno, et quod juri starent in curia domini regis de morte Judaeorum.
- He makes his brother Osbert sheriff, and builds a new castle in York.
- Deinde idem cancellarius tradidit Osherto de Lun-champ, fratri suo, comitatum Eboracensem in custodia, et praecipit firmari castellum in veteri castellario quod rex Willelmus Rufus ibi construxerat. Milites autem

¹ *extremo*] postremo, Savile.

² *consummati*] consumpti, A; consumpti, Savile.

³ *combusta*] sunt, add. G.

⁴ It had last happened in 1117.

⁵ Longchamp's legation dates from June 5, 1190: R. de Diceto, 655.

Benedict,
ii. 108.

provincia, qui ad rectum noluerunt venire, præcepit com-
prehendi.

A.D. 1190.
April.

Deinde præfatus cancellarius, auctoritate legationis
sua, suspendit canonicos et vicarios et clericos ecclesie
Sancti Petri Eboraci, quia noluerunt recipere eum cum pro-
cessione; et ipsam ecclesiam tam diu sub interdicto tenuit,
donec canonici et vicarii et clerici ecclesie Sancti
Petri venirent ad pedem ejus; et campanas ejusdem ecclesie
in terram deponere fecit.

He suspends
the Minster
clergy.

Benedict,
ii. 109.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Hugoni Dunelmensi
episcopo licentiam repatriandi, qui cum obviaret cancellario
in villa de Blie, et offerret ei litteras regis, in quibus con-
cesserat ei rex justitiam a flumine Humbri usque ad terram
regis Scotiæ in longitudine, et latitudine a mari usque ad
mare, respondit ei cancellarius se libenter facturum man-
datum regis: et duxit eum secum usque Suwelle,¹ et ibi
cepit eum et tenuit, donec reddiderat ei castellum de Vindes-
hoveres, et cætera quæ rex illi tradiderat in custodia.

Hugh of
Durham
returns
home, and
meets the
chancellor
at Blythe.

Et insuper episcopus Dunelmensis tradidit cancellario
Henricum de Puteaco, filium suum, et Gillebertum de la Leia,
obsides de fide servanda regi et regno: et sic episcopus
Dunelmensis a captione cancellarii liberatus, venit ad
villam suam, quæ dicitur Hovedene. Ubi cum ipse² per
aliquot dies moram fecisset, venerunt Hovedene Osbertus
de Lungchamp,³ frater cancellarii, et Willelmus de Stute-
villa, cum multa plebe armata, volentes episcopum per
mandatum cancellarii capere; sed idem episcopus securi-
tatem illis dedit, quod inde non recederet, nisi per licen-
tiam regis vel cancellarii. Unde episcopus Dunelmensis
misit nuncios suos ad regem Angliæ, significans illi omnia
quæ ei acciderant per cancellarium.

He is ar-
rested, and
compelled to
surrender
Windsor.

He gives
hostages,
and goes to
Howden.

Benedict,
ii. 110.

Interim rex Angliæ profectus fuit in Gasconiam, et
obsedit castellum Willelmi de Chisi, et cepit; et ipsum
Willelmum, dominum castelli, suspendit, quia ipse pere-
grinos Sancti Jacobi, et alios per terram suam trans-
euntes, spoliaverat. Deinde perrexit rex Angliæ in

He promises
not to stir
them with-
out leave.

Richard
takes the
castle of
William de
Chisi in
Gascony.

¹ *Suwelle*] *Sunuelle*, D.; *Sudwelle*,
G.; *Swwelle*, I.

² *ipse*] episcopus, ins. *Savile*.

³ *Lungchamp*] *Lunchamp*, B. I.;
Nunchamp, A., corrected to *Lung-*
champ; *Lungchamp*, G.; *Lunc-*
champ, D.

A.D. 1100. **Andegaviam ad Chinonem: et ibi constituit Girardum¹ Benedict, ii. 110.**
 June. Auxiensem archiepiscopum, et Bernardum² episcopum de
 Richard **Baonia, et Robertum de Sablun,³ et Ricardum de Camvilla, et**
 appears **Willelmum de Forz de Ulorum,⁴ ductores et constabularios**
 of his fleet. **totius navigii sui, quod in terram Sulisæ iturum erat; et**
tradidit eis cartam suam in hac forma;

*Carta Ricardi regis Angliæ de statutis illorum qui
 per mare ituri erant.*

Hic laws " Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, et dux Normanniæ et
 for the cru- " Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, omnibus hominibus suis
 sader & fleet: " Jerosolimam per mare ituris, salutem. Sciatis nos, de com-
 muni proborum virorum consilio, fecisse has justitias sub-
Against " scriptas. Qui hominem in navi interfecerit, cum mortuo
 murder. " ligatus projiciatur in mari. Si autem eum ad terram in-
 terfecerit, cum mortuo ligatus in terra infodiatur. Si quis
Against vio- " autem per legitimos testes convictus fuerit, quod cultellum
 lence short " ad alium percutiendum extraxerit, aut quod alium ad san-
 of a murder. " guinem percusserit, pagnum perdat. Si autem de palma
Against bad " percusserit sine effusione sanguinis, tribus vicibus mergatur
 law kunge. " in mari. Si quis autem socio opprobrium, aut convicia, aut
 " odium Dei injecerit: quot vicibus conviciatus ei fuerit, tot
 " uncias argenti det. Latro autem de furto convictus, tonde-
Thieves to be " effundatur, et pluma pulvinaris super caput ejus excutia-
 tarred and " tur, ad cognoscendum eum, et in prima terra, qua naves
 feathered. " applicuerint, projiciatur. Teste moipso apud Chinonem."⁵
 Præterea idem rex præcepit in alio brevi suo, ut omnes **Benedict, ii. 111**
 homines sui, qui per mare essent ituri, obedirent dictis
 et præceptis prædictorum justitiariorum navigii sui.
He receives Deinde perrexit rex Turonim, et ibi recepit peram et bacu-
 the scrip " lum peregrinationis suæ, de manu Willelmi Turonensis
 and staff " at Tours.

¹ *Girardum*] Gerard de la Barte, archbishop of Auch.

² *Bernardum*] Bernard de la Carra, bishop of Bayonne.

³ *Sablun*] Sabul, B. I.; Sabul, D.; Sablus, G.; Sablol, Benedict.

⁴ *Ulorum*] Ulerun, I.

⁵ *apud Chinonem*] Richard was at Chinon on the 20th of June; and in the neighbourhood until the 26th, on which day he probably set out for Vezelai. See the note on Benedict, ii. 111.

Benedict, ii. 111. archiepiscopi. Cumque rex se baculo fulciret, fractus est baculus. A.D. 1190. June.

Deinde idem rex et Philippus rex Franciæ convenerunt apud Vizeliacum,¹ ubi requiescit corpus beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ: et facta est ibi mora duarum dierum; in octavis Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ recesserunt inde. July 4. The kings meet at Vezelai.

Benedict, ii. 112. Et cum² venirent ad civitatem Leonum³ supra Rodanum, et ipsi cum majori parte familiarum suarum pontem Rodani præterirent, pons ipse⁴ onustus viris ac mulieribus corruit, non sine multorum læsione. Ibidem vero præfati reges ab invicem divisi⁵ sunt propter multitudinem hominum sequentium illos; unus enim locus illos capere non potuit. Rex autem Franciæ cum suis perrexit usque Je-neues: et rex Angliæ cum suis perrexit usque Marsiliam. They go to Lyons, where the bridge breaks down; and there separate. Richard goes to Marseilles, Philip to Genoa.

*Planctus super itinere versus Jerusalem.*⁶

(Not in Benedict.)

“ Graves nobis admodum dies effluxere,
 “ Qui lapillis candidis digni non fuere.
 “ Nam luctus materiam mala præbuere,
 “ Quæ sanctam Jerusalem constat sustinere.
 “ Quis enim non doleat tot sanctorum cædes,
 “ Tot⁷ sacratas Domino profanatas ædes,
 “ Captivatos principes, et subversas sedes,
 “ Devolutos nobiles ad servorum pedes?
 “ Sed hæc non effugient oculos videntis,
 “ Videns vidit Dominus nostræ mala gentis,
 “ Et audivit gemitum plebis innocentis,
 “ Et caput conterere descendit serpentis.
 “ Suscitavit igitur Deus Hebræorum
 “ Christianos principes, et robur eorum,

Poem on the sorrows of Jerusalem, and on the new Crusade.

¹ *Vizeliacum*] Veziliacum, D.; Vezeliacum, I. The kings met here on the 4th of July: Rigord, 186.

² *Et cum*] The cursive hand resumes, in A.

³ *Leonum*] Richard's march from Vezelai to Lyons occupied probably July 6 to July 14: he stayed three days at Lyons, July 14 to July 17; and marched from Lyons to Marseilles in a fortnight, July 17-

July 31. After spending eight days at Marseilles he embarked, Aug. 7. See note on Ben. Pet. ii. 112.

⁴ *ipse*] Rodani, B. I.; idem, D.

⁵ *divisi*] separati, Savile.

⁶ This poem is not in Benedict. Some remarks on the authorship of it, which can hardly be ascribed to Roger Hoveden, will be found in the Preface.

⁷ *Tot*] Et tot, D. I.

A D 1100.
July.
Hopes for
the new
Crusade.

“ Vindicare scilicet sanguinem sanctorum,
“ Subvenire filiis mortificatorum.
“ Procedunt cum millibus multis armatorum
“ Illustris rex Angliæ, atque rex Francorum.
“ Est videre gloria agmen senatorum
“ Armis justitiæ et cultibus¹ Deorum.
“ Est audire gratius fidei amicum
“ Romani² imperii caput Fredericum
“ Debellantem jugiter crucis inimicum,
“ Ut reformet patriam statum in antiquum.
“ Tendunt cruce prævia versus Orientem,
“ Atque secum contrahunt totam Occidentem:
“ Lingua, ritu, moribus, cultu differentem
“ Producent exercitum, sed fide ferventem.
“ Ut victores redeant, imploremus Deum,
“ Ut tollant de medio terræ Cananæum,³
“ Ingressi Jerusalem pellant Jebusæum,
“ Christianæ gloriæ portantes trophæum.”

(Not in
Benedict)

Richard
orders the
chancellor
to make
amends to
the bishop
of Durham.

Dum autem Ricardus rex Angliæ moram faceret apud Marsiliam, venerunt ad eum nuntii Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi: et audita ab eis injuria quam prædictus cancellarius ei fecerat, præcepit rex comitatum Northimbricæ⁴ et manerium de Sadberga reddi episcopo Dunelmensi. Unde rex iterum fecit illi cartam suam in hac forma:⁵

Benedict,
ii. 110.

Alia carta Ricardi regis de Sadberge reddito domino Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo.⁶

Letter of
Richard
ordering the
restoration
of Sadberge
and its de-
pendences
to the
bishop of
Durham.

“ Ricardus, Dei gratia rex Angliæ, et dux Normanniæ et
“ Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, archiepiscopis, episcopis,
“ abbatibus, comitibus, baronibus, vicecomitibus, et omnibus
“ ministris et fidelibus suis totius Angliæ, salutem. Sciatis
“ nos reddidisse Deo, et beato Cuthberto, et ecclesiæ Dunel-
“ mensi, et Hugoni episcopo, et successoribus ejus in perpetuum,
“ manerium de Sadberga, cum wapentaco et feodis

(Not in
Benedict)

¹ cultibus] cultoribus, Savile.

- Romani] Romanum, B D I.

³ Cananæum] Chananeum, B. D.

I.

⁴ Northimbricæ] Northanhumbriæ,
B. I.

⁵ in hac forma] om. B.

⁶ This charter is omitted in MSS. B. D. I.: and it is not in Benedict. It is found in A. G. It will be seen that it does not mention the county of Northumberland.

(Not in
Benedict.)

“ militum, quæ prius ei in puram et perpetuam eleemosynam
“ dederamus, et carta nostra confirmavimus, pro sexcentis
“ marcis, quas idem nobis donavit. Quare volumus, et præ-
“ cipimus, quod ipse prædictum manerium, cum vapentacco
“ et feodis militum, et cum aliis omnibus pertinentiis suis, in
“ puram et perpetuam eleemosynam, libere et quiete et ho-
“ norifice teneat et habeat, sicut in cartis nostris, quas inde
“ habet, continetur. Et bene volumus et concedimus, quantum
“ ad nos pertinet, quod si quis inde vim ei, vel molestiam
“ contra cartas et confirmationes nostras fecerit, iram et ma-
“ ledictionem Dei et nostram incurrat. Teste meipso apud
“ Marsiliam.”

A.D. 1190.
July.

Benedict,
ii. 112.

Cumque rex Angliæ apud Marsiliam per octo dies¹
[moram] fecisset, expectans et sperans de die in diem adven-
tum navigii sui, fraudatus a desiderio suo conduxit decem
bucias² magnas, et viginti galeas bene armatas, et intravit
cum familiis³ suis, dolens et confusus propter moram na-
vigii sui.

Richard
hires ships,
and sails
from Mar-
seilles.

*De recessu Ricardi regis Angliæ a Marsilia, et itinere
suo versus Jerusalem.*

Journal of
Richard's
voyage.

Septima igitur die Augusti recessit rex Angliæ a Marsilia
in galea Pumbone, et transivit per insulam Sancti Stephani,
et per Aquilam, et per Montem Nigrum, et per insulam
Sancti Honorati, et per civitatem de Nices, et per Vintemile⁴
civitatem.

Aug. 7-13.
Marseilles to
Vintimiglia.

Et est sciendum, quod inter Nices et Vintemile⁴ est divisio
terrarum regis Arragoniæ et Italiæ.⁵

Deinde transivit rex per Sanctam Mariam de Funz, et per
Nole.

Tertia decima die Augusti transivit rex per castellum quod
dicitur Suwene:⁶ et eodem die venit rex ad Geneues, ubi
locutus est cum rege Franciæ, qui ibi infirmabatur in ædi-
bus juxta ecclesiam Sancti Laurentii.

Aug. 13.
Savona to
Genoa.

Quartadecima die Augusti venit rex Angliæ ad portum
Delfini⁷ in vigilia Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, et ibi moram
fecit per quinque dies: et illuc misit ad eum rex Franciæ,

Aug. 14-18.
Portofino.

¹ octo dies] July 31-Aug. 7. See
above, p. 37, note 3.

² bucias] butias, I

³ familiis] famulis, I.

⁴ Vintemile] Wentemile, B.; Win-
temile, I.

⁵ Italiæ] Ytaliæ, B. I.

⁶ Suwene] Swene, G.; Senne,
Benedict.

⁷ Delfini] Delphini, Savile.

Benedict,
ii. 113.

- A. D. 1190. August. rogans ut commodaret ei quinque galeas; et rex Angliæ ob- Benedict, u. 113.
tulit ei tres, quas rex Franciæ refutavit.
- Aug. 19. Nono decimo die Augusti recessit rex Angliæ de portu
Porto Delfini, et venit ad portum Veneris.
- Aug. 20. Et in crastino venit ad portum de Pisa; et illuc venit ad
Venero. eum Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus. Johannes Elroi-
Pisa. censis episcopus infirmabatur in civitate Pisana.
- Aug. 21. Vicesima prima die mensis Augusti transivit rex per insulam
Gorgona. quas dicitur Gurgone.
- Aug. 22. Vicesima secunda die Augusti venit rex ad portum de
Baratto. Barato.
- Aug. 23. Vicesima tertia die Augusti, in vigilia Sancti Bartholo-
maï apostoli, perrexit rex duas leucas per terram, et pauci
He Inuda, milites cum eo super equos conductos, et venerunt ad portum
no d riles to Plumbino. juxta castellum quod dicitur Plumbin,¹ obviam galeis suis:
The ue hu et ibi intravit rex galeam Falconis Rustac, quam prius non
sais to intravit; et vento gaudens optato præterit insulam que dicitur
Talamandby Fernaire, et insulam que dicitur Argenteaire,² et insulam
Argentario qui dicitur Tale-
at il monde.³
Gammuti.
- Aug. 24. Vicesima quarta die Augusti venit rex ad portum qui dici-
Porto Brede. tur Portekere, qui est in medio viæ inter Marsilium et Mes-
sanam. Eodem die rumpebatur velum galeæ in qua rex erat;
Corneto. et iterum intravit rex galeam Pumbone, et præterit Cornet
civitatem, et Senes la veile civitatem, et Launc civitatem, et
Civita locum qui dicitur Le⁴ Far de Rume; et postea intravit
Vecchi a. Tyberim. Ad cujus introitum est turris pulchra, sed solitaria:
Arrot u. et sunt ibi ruinae maximæ antiquorum murorum; et illuc
I tervew at venit ad eum Octavianus Hostiensis episcopus, cardinalis,
Outa with cardinal Octavian. cui rex turpia multa dixit, improbrando Romanis Simoniam,
quod septingentas marcas debuerant habere pro consecratione
episcopi Cenomanensis,⁵ et mille et quingentas marcas pro
legatione Elhensis episcopi; et pecuniam magnam ne depone-
retur Burdegalensis, qui a clericis suis accusabatur in crimine.
- Aug. 25. Vicesima sexta die Augusti transivit rex per quoddam nemus,
The wood of quod dicitur Selvedene;⁶ in quo est via marmorea ad modum
Laurentum. pavimenti facta, et durat via illa marmorea per medium

¹ *Plumbin*] Plumbun, D. I.;
Plumbun, B.

² *Argenteaire*] Argenteaire, B. D. I.

³ *Talemunde*] Talamunde, D. I.

⁴ *Le*] de, B. D. I.

⁵ *Cenomanensis*] Cenomanensis,

G. Hamelin, bishop of Le Mans, was consecrated at Rome by Celestine III. : Mabillon, Anal. 337. The archb. shop of Bourdeaux was Helias de Malemort.

⁶ *Selvedene*] Selvede, G.

Benedict,
ii. 114.

nemus quater viginti¹ milliaria; et nemus illud abundat cervis et capreolis et dammis. Et eodem die transivit rex per castellum quod dicitur Lettun.² Hic est portus qui quondam tegebatur cupro; et erat ibi introitus cryptæ per quam pecunia undique allata ferebatur Romam; et postea transivit rex per castellum quod dicitur Esture.

A. D. 1190.
Aug. 26.

Nettuno.

Astura.

Vicesima septima die Augusti rex præteriit rupem extensam in mari, quæ dicitur Le Cap de Cercel, et insulam quæ dicitur Parmeroles,³ et insulam quæ dicitur Ponce, et insulam quæ dicitur Palmere. In summitate montis de Cap de Cercel est castellum, in quo latrones et piratæ so sæpius abscondunt.

Aug. 27.

Capo Cir-
cello, Palma-
rola, Ponce;

Deinde venit rex ad civitatem quæ dicitur Tharracene, ubi quondam erat portus cupro tectus.

Terracina

Deinde venit ipse ad Garillam: et indo ad castellum quod dicitur⁴ le Cap del Espurun. Hic est divisio terræ Romanorum et terræ regis Siciliae, in illa parte quæ dicitur principatus Capuæ.

Garigliano;

Benedict,
ii. 115.

Deinde præteriit rex insulam quæ dicitur Lapanteo, quæ distat a Gaeta civitate per quadraginta milliaria. Pantee terra fuit Pilati: et ibi erat portus cupro tectus.

Vandotona;

Deinde præteriit rex insulam quæ dicitur Istelo majur,⁵ quæ semper fumat. Hæc insula dicitur accensa fuisse ab insula quæ dicitur⁶ Vulcanus; igne volante, et comburente, ut dicitur, mare et pisces. Ab hac non multum distat insula quæ dicitur Isle de Girun, ubi est castellum bonum et portus.

Ischia;

Deinde præteriit rex insulam quæ dicitur Baterun,⁷ et portum de Baie, ubi sunt balnea Virgiliti: et distat per decem milliaria a Neapolis.

Baie;

Deinde præteriit rex Caprie,⁸ et Cap de Manherbe: quæ est media via inter Neapolim et Salernum.

Capri.

Vicesima octava die Augusti venit rex Neapolim, et perrexit ad abbatiam Sancti Januarii ad videndum filios Naimundi, qui stant ibi in crypta in pellibus et ossibus: et ibidem moram fecit usque ad Nativitatem Sanctæ Mariæ virginis matris Domini. Et eodem die perrexit rex Salernum in equis conductis: et ibidem moram facit magnam.

Aug. 28.

He stays at
Naples until
Sept. 8, and
then goes to
Salerno.

¹ *quater viginti*] 24, Savile.

² *Lettun*] *Lectun*, G.; *Letun*, D. I.; *Leicum*, Bened. Perhaps Nettuno.

³ *Parmeroles*] *Palmerole*, Bened.

⁴ *dicitur*] om. I.

⁵ *Istelo majur*] *Istelo mature*, B. I.; *Istellemanie*, D.; *Iscele majur*, Bened.

⁶ *dicitur*] om. I.

⁷ *Baterun*] *Betterun*, B.

⁸ *Caprie*] *Capue*, D.

A. D. 1180.
Archbishop
Baldwin and
Ralph of
Glauvill
went to Acre.
The bishop
of Norwich
retains
home.

Interim Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Hubertus Salesbiriensis episcopus, et Raulfus de Glauvilla, qui venerant cum rege Angliæ ad Marsiliam, ibidem naves intraverunt. Et fecit illis Dominus prosperam iter, ita quod in brevi perduxit eos sine impedimento per magnum pelagus usque ad obsidionem Accon.¹ Johannes vero Norwicensis episcopus papam adiit, et accepta ab eo licentia redeundi, dimisit crucem, et domum rediit absolutus; quod cum regi domino suo constaret, cepit de illo, per manum Templariorum et Hospitalorum, mille marcas de redemptione.

The fleet
sailed through
the Bay of
Biscay.

Navigium autem regis Angliæ, cui archiepiscopus Auxiensis, et episcopus Baoniensis, et Robertus de Sablul, et Ricardus de Camvilla, et Willelmus de Forz de Uleran præfuerant, iter arripuit Jerosolimitanum statim post Pascha, de diversis portibus Angliæ, et Normanniæ, et Britannia, et Pictaviæ. Cujus navigii² pars quædam convenit in portu de Dertomuc, et post moram aliquot dierum ibidem factam, cum prædictæ naves numero decem velificarent versus Ulixibonam, et præterissent quandam terram protensam in mari, quæ dicitur Godestert; et præterissent Britanniam, habentes Sanctum Mathæum de Finibus terræ, vel de Fine Posternæ, in sinistra navigii parte, et mare magnum, quo itur in Hyberniam, in dextris navigii, dimiserunt totam Pictaviam et Gasconiam et Biskay in sinistra parte navigii.

Quomodo beatus Thomas martyr apparuit peregrinis per mare euntibus versus Jerusalem.

May 6.
Apparition
of St. Thomas
of Canter-
bury to Ed-
mund I, and
St. Nicholas.

Et cum præterirent jam mare Britannicum et mare Pictavicum, et venirent in mare Hispanicum, in sancta die Ascensionis Domini, hora tertia, arripuit illas tempestas valida et horribilis; et ab invicem in momento, in ictu oculi, sunt separate: et dum tempestas sæviret, et omnes clamarent ad Dominum cum tribularentur, Beatus Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et martyr, per tres vices visibiliter apparuit tribus personis qui erant in nave Londoniensi, in qua erant Willelmus filius Osberti, et Gaufridas aurifaber, cives Londonienses, dicens illis: "Nolite terreri; ego Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Beatus Edmundus³ martyr, et Beatus Nicholaus confessor, constituti sumus a Domino custodes hujus navigii regis Angliæ: et si homines hujus

¹ Archbishop Baldwin arrived at Tyre on Sept. 16, and at Acre on Oct. 12. *Epp. Cant.* 328, 329.

² *navigu*] om. B. D. I.

³ *Edmundus*] Eadmundus, I

Benedict,
ii. 116.

“ navigii se a pravis operibus custodierint, et de præteritis
 “ pœnitentiam egerint, Dominus dabit eis prosperum iter, et
 “ in semitis Ejus gressus eorum diriget.” His itaque sub
 trina repetitione dictis, Beatus Thomas ab oculis eorum elap-
 sus est, et statim cessavit tempestas, et facta est in mari
 tranquillitas magna. Et jam navis illa Lundonicensis, in qua
 Beatus Thomas martyr apparuit, præterierat portum
 Ulixisbonæ, et caput Sancti Vincentii, et pervenerat prope
 civitatem Silvæ, quæ in finibus illis tunc temporis ultima
 fuit omnium villarum Christianitatis; et erat adhuc ibi Chris-
 tiana fides novella, utpote quæ in anno proximo præterito
 erepta erat de manibus paganorum, et facta Christicola, ut
 supra dictum est. Ignorantes igitur illi qui in nave illa
 erant, ubi essent, emissa navicula sua navigaverunt ad ter-
 ram, et cognoverunt per indicia quod terra illa terra erat
 Christianorum, et quod non erat eis ulterius via tuta sine
 bono et magno comitatu. Accesserunt ergo ad civitatem: et
 cognita adventus eorum causa, episcopus civitatis Silvæ, et
 clerus et populus, receperunt eos gratanter, gratias Deo
 agentes pro illorum adventu; erant enim in navi illa centum
 juvenes probi, et bene armati.

A.D. 1190.
 May 6.
 Arrival of
 the London
 ship at
 Silvia.

Benedict,
ii. 117.

*De adventu Boiac Almiramimoli, imperatoris Africæ,
 in terram Sanctii regis Portugalensis.*

Interim Boiac Almiramimoli,¹ imperator Africæ et Hispaniæ
 Saracenicæ, magno congregato exercitu, venit in terram Sanctii²
 regis Portugalensis in vindictam imperatoris Africæ patris
 sui, anno sexto³ proximo præterito defuncti in obsidione apud
 Sanctam Erenam, castellum Aldefonsi⁴ regis, patris prædicti
 Sanctii regis Portugalensis. Cives autem Silvæ, timentes ad-
 ventum prædicti imperatoris, non permiserunt juvenes illos
 Lundonienses ab illis recedere; sed et naveni illorum frege-
 runt, et de asscribus illius fecerunt civitatis propugnacula; pro-
 mittentes et omnimodam securitatem facientes, quod rex Portu-
 galensis bene solveret eis moram quam faciebant, et damnum
 quod habebant de amissione navis suæ; et factum est ita.

Invasion of
 Portugal by
 the emperor
 of Morocco.

Benedict,
ii. 118.

The people
 of Silvia
 engage the
 Londoners
 as allies.

¹ *Boiac Almiramimoli*] Boiac Almiramili, B. I. Abou-Yousouf Yacoub Al Mansour Bifadl-Allah, emperor of Morocco, 1184-1199.

² *Sanctii*] Sancho I., 1185-1211.

³ *anno sexto*] Yousouf, father of

Yacoub, or Boiac, died in Portugal, after besieging Santarem, June 18, 1184. *Art de Verif. les Dates*, Ser. iii. vol. iii. pp. 36, 37.

⁴ *Aldefonsi*] Adelfonsi, B. Alfonso I., 1112-1185.

- AD 1100. Rex namque Portugalensis dedit eis navem pro nave, et expensas pro expensis solvit. Benedict.
ii. 118.
 May
- No more ships reach Lisbon.
 June 24. Præterea novem alie naves de navigio regis Angliæ, quæ in eadem tempestate erant, applicuerunt in diversis partibus Hispaniæ; tamen Domino duce tandem pervenerunt ad civitatem Ulixisbonæ, ascendentes per fluvium Thagi.¹ In eadem vero civitate Ulixisbonæ requiescit corpus Sancti Vincentii martyris. Et antequam illuc pervenirent, prædictus imperator Africa, die Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, transivit fluvium Thagi per vadum, et omnis exercitus ejus cum eo; et obsedit castellum Sanctii regis Portugalensis, quod dicitur Turresnoves. Rex vero Portugalensis misit legatos suos ad peregrinos, qui in navibus venerant ad civitatem Ulixisbonæ, et petit ab eis succursum contra Sarracenos. Quingenti igitur viri bene armati, et ex omnibus qui in navibus venerant prælecti, fortiores et animosiores, elegerunt magis mori in bello pro nomine Jesu Christi, quam videre mala gentis suæ, et exterminium; et relictis navibus et sociis suis, perrexerunt ascendentes per fluvium Thagi usque ad Sanctam Hereenam, quæ distat a civitate Ulixisbonæ per duas dietas: et invenerunt ibi Sanctium regem Portugalensem auxilio et consilio destitutum; paucos enim habebat viros bellicosos, et fere omnes ieremes. Et jam prædictus imperator ceperat castellum regis, quod obsederat; et alium castellum quod dicitur Tumar,² castellum Templariorum, obsedit, qui cum audisset adventum peregrinorum timuit valde; et missis legatis ad regem Portugalensem petit ab eo Silviam, et ipse recederet cum exercitu suo, et redderet ei castellum quod ceperat, et pacem haberet cum illo per septem annos. Quod cum rex Portugalensis facere nollit, prædictus imperator mandavit ei, quod in crastino veniret obsessurus Sanctam Hereenam. Benedict.
ii. 119.
- The Crusaders join King Sancho at Santarom.
 They prepare for a siege.
 News of the emperor's death.
- Tunc rex Portugalensis, invito consilio cum peregrinis, qui de navibus venerant, constituit homines suos in turribus, et in fortioribus murorum propugnaculis. Peregrini autem, qui de navibus venerant, debiliores partes civitatis sibi elegerunt, audaciam habentes pro muro.
- In crastino autem, cum omnes essent succincti ad bellum, et clangor esset in foribus "Jamjam veniet, et non tardabit;" repente venit nuncius dicens: "Imperator mortuus est jam triduanus, et exercitus ejus fugit;" et adhuc eo loquente, venerunt duo, deinde tres, deinde plures eandem sermonem

¹ Thagi] Tagi, Savile.² castellum regis . . . Tumar] I.

Castellum quod dicitur Thumar,

I.

Benedict,
li. 119.

dicentes. Crediderunt ergo illis rex et universus populus, et civitas replebatur gaudio et exultatione.

A. D. 1190.
June.

In crastino autem dedit rex viris qui de navibus venerant licentiam redeundi ad naves suas, promittens quod bene recompensaret eis labores suos. Sed antequam illi ad naves suas venissent, Robertus de Sablul et Ricardus de Camvilla venerunt Ulixisbonam, cum sexaginta tribus navibus magnis de storio regis Angliæ: storium idem est quod lavigium. Quidam vero hominum qui in comitatu Roberti de Sablul et Ricardi de Camvilla venerant, malefactores erant et porvorsi; qui exeuntes de navibus in civitatem Ulixisbonæ ascenderant, et per vias et vicos incedentes superbe locuti sunt cum populo civitatis; et cum mulieribus et filiabus civium per vim conquinati sunt; et paganos et Judæos, servos regis, qui in civitate habitabant, fugaverunt, diripientes res et possessiones eorum; et domos eorum combusserunt, et vineas eorum vindemiaverunt, non relinquentes in eis uvam neque racemum.

Sixty-three
ships arrive
at Lisbon.

Misbeha-
viour of the
Crusaders.

Benedict,
li. 120.

Quod cum regi Portugalensi, domino civitatis Ulixisbonæ, constaret, velocius advenit cum manu potenti, et inventis¹ ibi Roberto de Sablul et Ricardo de Camvilla, cum navigio regis Angliæ, faciem hilarem et pacem spondentem eis exhibuit, patienter sustinens injurias sibi et plebi suæ illatas.

Sancho
returns to
Lisbon.

In crastino autem adventus regis, prædicti duces navigii receperunt ab universis hominibus navigii sacramentum, quod fideliter tenerent, et inviolabiliter observarent, prædictas assisas in carta regis Angliæ signatas. Post triduum vero orta est² dissensio inter cives Ulixisbonæ et quosdam illorum qui in navibus venerant, ita quod ex utraque parte multi ceciderunt in bello interfecti: et clamor populi pervenit ad aures regis; et statim clausæ sunt portæ civitatis; et omnes qui de navibus in civitatem ascenderant ad edendum et bibendum, capti sunt et incarcerati, numero viri septingenti. Et antequam illi a captione regis exirent, fecit rex Portugalensis cum Roberto de Sablul et Ricardo de Camvilla pacem qualem voluit; videlicet in hac forma: quod mala præterita ex utraque parte remitterentur, et quod ipsi pacem firmam tenerent regi et regno, ubicunque fuerint in terra sua; et ipse rex similiter et sui pacem servarent peregrinis in tota terra sua, et quod arma et cætera omnia, quæ in prælio illo amissa fuerant ex utraque³ red-derentur.

The jus-
ticears of the
fleet enforce
the king's
ordinances.

Punishment
of the trans-
gressors.

Agreement
with king
Sancho

¹ *inventis*] *inventas*, D. I.

² *est*] *om.* I.

³ *utraque*] *parte*, ins. Sav. l.

- AD 1160. July 21. The ships leave Lisbon and are joined by the rest of the fleet.
- Quod cum factum fuisset, Robertus de Sablul et Ricardus de Camvilla recesserunt a civitate Ulixisbonæ, cum classe regis Angliæ, in vigilia Sancti Jacobi apostoli, feria quarta, et eodem die venerunt ad intronum maris, ubi Tagus cadit in mare. Et eodem die venit illic Willelmus de Forz de Ulerun, cum triginta tribus magnis navibus de navigio regis Angliæ; et erant pariter in eodem loco, de storio regis Angliæ, centum et sex magnæ naves, onustæ viris bellicosis, et victualibus et armis. Benedict, ii. 120.
- July 26. The command fleet sails past Cape Espichel, Azores, Palmela, Cape Sines, Barra de Odiana, Cape S. Vincent, Silva (Sines), and Faro. Miraculous story of an image of the blessed Virgin.
- In crastino autem festi Sancti Jacobi apostoli, feria sexta, Robertus de Sablul, et Ricardus de Camvilla, et Willelmus de Forz de Ulerun, recesserunt a portu Ulixisbonæ cum navigio regis Angliæ, transeuntes per montem magnum protensum in mari, qui dicitur Spichel, et per portum Dalchath, et per Palmel, et per Sinnes, terram quandam arenosam protensam in mari; et per portum Deordimire,¹ et per montem magnum et excelsum, protensum in mari,² qui dicitur Caput Sancti Vincentii; in quo corpus Sancti Vincentii requievit intumulatum per multa tempora, usque dum translatum fuit ad civitatem Ulixisbonæ. Deinde transierunt ante portum Silvia, Benedict, ii. 121. quæ tunc temporis ultima fuerat Christianorum civitas in partibus illis Hyspaniæ.³ Deinde transierunt per civitatem paganorum quæ dicitur Sancta Maria de Hayrun; et est notandum quare civitas illa sic nominatur Sancta Maria de Hayrun. Hayrun dicitur locus in quo civitas illa sita est, et Christiani, qui redificaverunt eam, sic nominaverunt eam; et in memoriam Beatæ Dei genitricis Mariæ yconiam quandam lapideam super murum statuerunt. Deinde cum pagani prævaluissent adversus Christianos, obtinuerunt eam; et cum yconiam illam supra murum stantem invenissent, amputaverunt caput et pedes et brachia illius, in contemptum fidei Christianæ et Beatæ Mariæ, et projecerunt illa longius in

¹ *Deordimire*] *Deordemire*, B; which omits the three following words.

² *qui dicitur . . . in mari*] om. I.

³ Benedict omits the geographical details of the voyage from Silvia to S. Maria de Hayrun. We must conclude either that the two writers had before them some diary of the

voyage, corresponding with that of the fleet which took Lisbon on the second crusade; or else that Hoveden filled in the geography, not very correctly, from some geographical account of the coasts of Spain and Portugal, as he appears to have done further on.

Benedict,
D. 121.

mare. Quo facto, mare et tellus facta sunt sterilia, et fames prevaluit super terram illum, adeo quod omnia fere, homines et animalia, fame interirent. Tunc seniores populi et juvenes omnes, a maximo usque ad minimum, die ac nocte plorantes, et in sacco et cinere penitentiam agentes, recordati sunt yconia, ejus caput et manus et pedes absceiderant; dicentes, "Peccavimus, injuste egimus, iniquitatem fecimus, quando caput et manus et pedes amputavimus. Quid enim mali fecit? Quaramus ergo illa, et apponamus ea in locis suis, ut sic saltem avertat Deus iram Suam a nobis, et a civitate ista." Et miserunt sagenas suas in mare, uli projecerant caput et manus et pedes yconia, et trahentes ea in terram cum sagenis, apposuerunt caput collo, et manus brachiis, et pedes tibis, et solidaverunt ea cum auro et argento primo et purissimo; et deinde statuerunt yconiam illam in loco honorabili, et habetur in magna veneratione usque in hodiernum diem. et statim cessavit fames, et terra dedit fructum suum.

A D 1190
J 15
M rule of
S. Avraam de
Puro.

Deinde transierunt ante castellum quod dicitur Mertel.¹ Deinde ante portum de Hodiene. Deinde ante portum de Calice. Deinde ante montem qui dicitur Muntalve. Deinde ante quandam terram arenosam protensam in mari, quæ dicitur caput Almilan.² Deinde ante castellum et portum qui dicitur Saltis. Deinde ante portum Sibilla, qui dicitur Wudelkebir. Et inter Sibillam et introitus portus, in medio viæ, est castellum quod dicitur Captal. Deinde venerunt ad districtas Affricæ, et transierunt per medium districtarum Affricæ prima die Augusti, festo Sancti Petri ad Vincula, feria quinta, et ibi incipit Mediterraneum mare: et dicitur Mediterraneum mare ideo, quod undique circumcluditur terra, excepto uno introitu et uno exitu; quorum alter dicitur districtæ Affricæ; et alter brachium Sancti Georgii, quod est apud civitatem Constantinopolim. Et est notandum, quod ab introitu districtarum Affricæ usque prope Scalonam, est terra paganorum in dextra parte navigii; et ex opposito, ab introitu districtarum Affricæ usque ad montem magnum qui dicitur Muncian,³ est Hispania Saracenicæ, quæ dimittenda est in sinistra

The fleet
sails by
M. r.ols, the
Gama, and
Hueva;

Saltis,
the port of
Seville at
the mouth
of the Guad-
alquivir;
and enters
the Straits of
Gibraltar,
Aug 1.

Account of
the naviga-
tion of the
Mediterranean.

¹ Mertel] Mereel, I.

² Almilan] Marginal note in A., "Hucusque clerico scriptum."

³ Muncian] Murtian, I.

A D 1100.
August.
Navigation
of the
Straits.

Calpe and
Atlas.

African
cities
Sarta, I.
Tancar Al-
cazar Mas-
nu-la, Velez,
Ceuta.

Spanish
cities:
Rithar,
Algeciras,
Tartifa,
Gebel-el
Khadra,
G'I raitar,
Maaga.

parte navigii. Et est notandum, quod ad aestimationem nautarum, introitus districtarum Affricæ, ab una ripa in alteram, non habet plusquam sex milliaria in latitudine; et ex utraque parte habetur mons magnus, scilicet unus in Hispania, qui dicitur Calpes, et alter in Affrica in opposito, qui dicitur Athlas; et ad introitum districtarum Affricæ sunt in Affrica secus mare civitates, quarum nomina hæc sunt: Esparte, Thange, Cacermin,¹ Mucee, Boloos, et Scep, quæ est nobilissima omnium civitatum Affricæ: et in Hispania quasi ex opposito sunt civitates et castella, quorum nomina hæc sunt: Beche, Dudemarbait,² Leziratarif,³ Gezelacazera, et Jubaltarie insula, Mertel,⁴ Swail castellum Maurorum. Ad pedem montis Jubaltariæ sunt duæ nobiles civitates sitæ, quarum una dicitur Alentia, et altera Jubalar. Deinde est Magga civitas.

Cumque navigium regis Angliæ prope supradictas civitates Hispaniæ præterisset, transivit ante Salamenee⁵ civitatem: deinde ante Vilages, civitatem magnam muro clausam; in cujus⁶ circuitu sunt⁷ centum sexaginta turres lapideæ. Deinde transivit per montem magnum et excelsum, qui dicitur Caput de Melich. Deinde per Munacas castellum. Deinde per nobilem civitatem quæ dicitur Almaria, ubi fit nobile sericum et delicatum, quod dicitur sericum⁸ de Almaria. Deinde per montem magnum et excelsum protensum in mare, qui dicitur Caput de Almaria. Deinde ante Cartaginem, civitatem bonam in littore maris sitam. Deinde ante Penisecle⁹ castellum bonum et pulchrum. Deinde transivit per quandam arenam¹⁰ protensam in mari, quæ dicitur Alascerat; deinde per quandam terram

¹ Cacermin] Catermin, I.; Bethe, Dudenardi, prof. Savile.

² Dudemarbait] Dudemarbare, B.

³ Leziratarif] Lez-matarif, G.

⁴ Mertel] Mercel, I.

⁵ Salamenee] Salamence, B.; Salamence, I.

⁶ cujus] om. I.

⁷ sunt] om. B. I.

⁸ sericum] om. I.

⁹ Penisecle] Penisele, B. I.

¹⁰ arenam] harenosam, I.

protensam in mari, quæ dicitur Caput Martini. Deinde ante civitatem magnam, quæ dicitur Denie. Deinde ante portum Valentia. Et est sciendum quod Valentia civitas bona est, et distat ab introitu portus sui per septem miliaria.

A.D. 1100.
August.
C. S. Martin.
Denia,
Valencia.

Deinde transivit ante Biane¹ castellum. Deinde ante Peniscule, castellum in littore maris situm, et illud est ultimum castellum paganorum in Hispania² supra mare. Deinde transierunt per montem magnum et excelsum protensum in mari, qui dicitur Muscian; et mons ille dividit terram paganorum a terra Christianorum, et ibi incipit terra regis Arragoniæ; et prope montem illum, inter montes longe a mari, sita est bona civitas quæ dicitur Cervere; et ad pedem montis illius, super littus maris, stat castellum quod dicitur Ampost, in terra regis Arragoniæ, quod Hospitales tenent; et ibi est magnus fluvius aquæ dulcis, qui dicitur Ebre; et nobilis civitas quæ dicitur Turtusa stat super fluvium illum, quæ distat ab introitu portus per triginta millaria.

Burriana,
Peniscola,
Monsant;
Amposta;
the mouth
of the Ebro;
Tortosa.

Deinde transierunt per civitatem magnam archiepiscopalem sitam in littore maris, quæ dicitur Taragune; et prope illam est mons magnus protensus in mare, qui dicitur Caput de Salut: et sub monte illo est bonus portus. Deinde ante civitatem magnam episcopalem sitam in littore maris, quæ dicitur Barzelune. Deinde transierunt castellum bonum³ situm in littore maris, quod dicitur Sainte Felice, et ibi est bonus portus.

Tarragona;
Capo Salou.
Barcelona,
S. Felice.

Deinde transierunt terram comitis Pontii,⁴ transeuntes ante civitatem bonam quæ dicitur Empiris, et ibi est bonus portus. Deinde transierunt per montem magnum protensum in mare, qui dicitur Caput de Castilun, et ibi est bonus portus qui dicitur portus de Castilun;

Empurias;
Castollo;

¹ *Biane*] Baiane, G.
² *Hispania*] Hispaniis, B. D. I.
³ *bonum*] om. Savile.
⁴ *comitis Pontii*] Pontius Hugo, count of Empurias, died about 1160. His son Hugo reigned until 1230.

Art. de V. les Dates. If this is right, the details in the text may have been taken from the journal of an earlier voyage.

⁵ *Castilun*] Castellun, B.; Castilun, I.

A D. 1100. et in ascendendo per fluvium illum est castellum bonum,
 August. quod dicitur Castelan.¹ Deinde transierunt ante bo-
 Cadaques; num portum et magnum, qui dicitur Cadakis. Deinde
 transierunt per montem magnum protensum in mari,
 C Crous; qui dicitur Caput de Crous:² et ibi est bonus portus.
 Deinde transierunt per castellum bonum, situm in lit-
 Colhaure, tore maris, quod dicitur Cockeliure; et ibi est portus
 Port Ven- bonus, qui dicitur portus Veneris. Deinde transierunt
 dres; per quandam arenam protensam in mare, quæ dicitur
 Leucate; Caput Leucate, faciens signum magnum, in quo prope
 littus maris est bona civitas episcopalis, quæ dicitur
 Narbonne; Nerbona, et monasterium, quod dicitur Sancta Maria
 de mari. Deinde transierunt per quandam terram
 Breseou. protensam in mare, quæ dicitur Briseou.
 Agde; Deinde intraverunt terram comitis³ de Agda, trans-
 euntes ante civitatem bonam sitam in littore maris,
 que dicitur Agda. Deinde transierunt prope Vile-
 Magalona, nove, episcopatum⁴ de Maggalona: et prope inde est
 Montpellier; portus de Monte Pessolano, qui dicitur Lates. Deinde
 transierunt ante insulam quæ dicitur Oduur, quæ est ad in-
 troitum Rodani, et in ascendendo per Rodanum itur ad Benedict.
ii. 123.
 the mouth of the Rhone. civitatem bonam archiepiscopalem, quæ dicitur Arle le Blanc;
 et in ascendendo superius per eundem fluvium, itur prope
 Sanctum Ægidium,⁵ et in ascendendo superius per eun-
 dem fluvium itur ad bonam civitatem, quæ dicitur
 Liun sur le Rodne.⁶
 They reach Marselices. Deinde pervenerunt usque ad Marsiliam, quæ distat
 per viginti miliaria ab introitu⁷ Rodani. Marsilia est
 civitas episcopalis sub potestate regis Arragoniæ.⁸ Ibi
 sunt reliquie Sancti Lazari, fratris Sanctæ Mariæ Magdalene
 et Marthæ, qui ibidem septem annis episcopatum tenuit,
 postquam Jesus suscitavit eum a mortuis.

¹ *Castelan*] Castellan, G.; Cas-
 tellan, I.

² *Crous*] Trouis, D. I.

³ *comitis*] om. D. I.

⁴ *episcopatum*] episcopatu, B. I.

D. has "*civitatem bonam sitam in*
 "*littore maris.*"

⁵ *et . . . Ægidium*] om. I.

⁶ *Liun sur le Ruene*, corrected to
 Rodne, A.

⁷ *ab introitu*] ad introitum, B. I.

⁸ Provence was held by the king
 of Arragon, Alfonso II., from 1167
 to 1196.

In civitate autem illa est bonus portus multis et magnis navibus, fere circumclusus montibus altis, et ex una parte portus illius est civitas illa episcopalis; et ex altera parte portus ex opposito est abbatia Sancti Victoris, in qua centum nigri monachi Deo serviunt; et ibi, ut dicunt, sunt corpora septies viginti innocentium pro Christo interfectorum, et reliquiae Sancti Victoris, sociorumque ejus; et virgæ quibus flagellatus erat Dominus; et maxilla Sancti Lazari, et una costarum Sancti Laurentii martyris: et inter Marsiliam et abbatiam illam, non longe a via recta, est monasterium in quo habetur brachium Sanctæ Margaretæ virginis: et juxta abbatiam Sancti Victoris sunt duo alti montes, quorum unus dicitur mons Rollandi, et alter mons Hospinelli.

A D. 1180.
Rehearsal
Marselles
and in the
abbey of
S. Victor.

Et est sciendum, quod a Marsilia usque Accon non sunt nisi quindecim dierum et noctium siglaturæ ad bonum ventum. Sed tunc itur per magnum pelagus, ita quod, postquam montes de Marsilia desierint videri, non videbitur terra neque a dextris neque a sinistris, si rectus cursus tenetur, donec videatur terra Suliæ; et si forte aliqua terra videtur in dextra parte navigii, terra paganorum est; et si terra videtur in sinistra parte navigii, terra Christianorum est. Præterea sciendum est, quod multæ insule Saracenicæ¹ sunt inter districtas Affricæ et Marsiliam; quarum una dicitur Majorca, et altera dicitur Eniuce;² et utraque illarum tributaria est sub rege Arragoniæ; et insula de³ Majorca reddit ei trecentos pannos sericos de Almaria per annum de tributo; et insula de Eniuce reddit ei per annum de tributo ducentos pannos de serico de Almaria.

Voyage from
Marselles
to Acce.

Benedict,
l. 122.

Yvica and
Majorca.

Divisio regnorum secus mare.

Sciendum est, quod tota terra quæ est ab⁴ Anglia usque in Hispaniam, secus mare, videlicet Normannia, Britannia,

Description
of the shore
of the con-
tinent.

¹ Saracenicæ] Sarracena, B. I.

³ de] que, I.

² Eniuce] Eniuce, B.G. here and below.

⁴ ab] sub, I.

A D. 1100. The coast of Europe, ac- cording to kingdoms.	Pictavia, est de dominio regis Angliæ; et protenditur usque ad portum qui dicitur Huarz, ¹ qui dividit terram comitis de Baonia a terra regis Navarræ. Et terra regis Navarræ incipit a porta de Huarz, ² et protenditur usque ad aquam que dicitur Castre, quæ dividit terram regis Navarræ a terra regis Castellæ. Et terra regis Castellæ incipit ab aqua de Castre, et protenditur usque ad montes de Sore, qui dividunt terram regis Castellæ a terra regis de Sancto Jacobo; et terra regis de Sancto Jacobo incipit a montibus de Sore, et protenditur usque ad aquam de Mine, quæ dividit terram regis de Sancto Jacobo a terra regis Portugalensis; et terra regis Portugalensis incipit ab aqua que dicitur Mine, et protenditur ultra civitatem de Silves. Et post civitatem de Silves, incipit terra paganorum, qui sunt in Hispania secus mare, sub dominio imperatoris Africa, quæ protenditur usque ad montem magnum qui dicitur Muncian. Et in Hispania illa Saracenicæ sunt quatuor reges principales: quorum unus dicitur rex de Cordres, id est Corduba. Unde Lucanus:	Benedict. ii. 122.
Castile;		Benedict. ii. 123.
Leon,		
Portugal.		
The posses- sions of the Moors the king- doms of Cordova;		
	" Corduba me genuit, rapuit Nero, prælia dixi, " Quo gessere pares, hinc socer, inde gener."	
Jaen;	Alter rex dicitur Gant; tertius dicitur rex de Murcia; quartus dicitur rex de Valencia. Et terra illius protenditur usque ad montem qui dicitur Muncian; ³ et mons ille dividit terram paganorum a terra Christianorum, scilicet terra regis Arragoniæ; et terra regis Arragoniæ incipit a monte illo qui dicitur Muncian, et protenditur ultra civitatem de Nice. Et a civitate de Nice incipit terra imperatoris Romanorum; et est ibi bona civitas, que dicitur Vintemile ⁴	
Murcia; Valencia.		
The king- dom of Arragon.		
The imperial dominion. The king- dom of Apulia.	Et terra imperatoris protenditur inde secus mare usque ad Gaetam, que est in Appulia, terra regis Siciliæ; et terra illa dicitur principatus Capuæ. Et est sciendum, quod in medio viæ inter Marsiliam et Siciliam sunt duæ insulæ magnæ; quarum major dicitur Sardena, et altera dicitur Corzege; et multæ insulæ sunt in circuitu Siciliæ, quarum quo-	
Sardinia and Corsica.		

¹ Huarz] Thuarz, I.
² Huarz] Uhuarz, B. I.

³ Muncian] Muntian, I.
⁴ Vintemile] Wintemile, B. I.

Benedict,
ii. 123.

dam sunt ardentes: et in mari illo circa Sardenam et Corzhege¹ sunt pisces similes siccis, qui volant in aera exeuntes a mari; et cum volaverint quasi per unum stadium, iterum descendunt in mare; et sunt ibi falcones multi volantes post pisces illos, et insequentes, ut rapiant ex illis escam sibi. Et qui hoc vidit² testimonium perhibet, et verum est testimonium ejus: quia cum ipse in mensa sedisset, in alta navi, quidam ex piscibus illis volantibus cecidit ante illum super mensam.

A D. 1190.
Flying fish
in the neigh-
bourhood of
Sardina
and Corsica.

Benedict,
ii. 124.

Et est notandum, quod una insularum illarum, quæ sunt in circuitu Siciliæ, major cæteris, dicitur Muntgibel, qui ita vehementer ardere solebat, quod magnam partem maris in circuitu ejus desiccabat, et pisces comburebat; sed jam diu ardere cessavit, meritis et precibus beatæ Agathæ, virginis et martyris. Quadam enim die, cum ignis vehementius solito exiret a fornace montis Gibel, et appropinquasset civitati Cathanensium, ubi sanctum corpus beatæ Agathæ requiescit, paganorum multitudo fugiens ad sepulcrum ejus, tulerunt velum ejus contra incendium; et ignis reversus est in mare, et comburens desiccavit mare fere per unum milliare, et pisces combussit, de quibus multi evaserunt semiusti; et ex genere illorum sunt ibi usque in hodiernum diem pisces semiusti, qui dicuntur pisces Sanctæ Agathæ. Et si contigerit quod aliquis illorum piscium captus fuerit ab aliquo piscatore, statim dimittitur abire propter reverentiam Beatæ Agathæ, ad laudem et gloriam Domini nostri Jesu Christi, Qui semper est mirabilis, et gloriosus in sanctis Suis.

Mount
Ætna.

The fishes of
S. Agatha.

Robertus itaque de Sublul, et Ricardus de Camvilla, et Willelmus de Forz de Ulerun, transeuntes cum navigio Ricardi regis Angliæ inter Africam et Hispaniam, post tempestates plurimas quas in itinere illo perpassi sunt, per-

Progress of
the Fleet.

¹ Corzhege] Corzege, B. I.

² qui hoc vidit] As the whole of these geographical details are clearly taken from some independent authority, we cannot venture to identify Hoveden with the man who saw the flying fish. The marvellous story

about the fishes of S Agatha is retained in the Chronicle of Bened. et, which, however, rejects the last clause, *Si contigerit*, &c, the truth of which is perhaps the only indisputable part of the legend.

- A. D. 1169.
Aug. 22.
Arrival of
the fleet at
Marsolias.
- venerunt Marsiliam, in octavis Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, Benedict,
ii. 129. feria quarta, cum toto navigio illis commisso; et non invento ibi rege Angliæ domino suo, per octo dies fecerunt ibi moram, propter quosdam necessarios navium apparatus.
- Aug. 30.
They pro-
ceed to
Messina,
arriving
Sept. 14.
Philip
arrives
Sept. 16.
- Deinde secuti sunt regem; et in festo Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis venerunt Messanam in Sicilia, feria sexta; et die Dominica sequenti venit illuc Philippus rex Franciæ, xvi^o. kalendas Octobris; et Margaritus admiralis, et Jordanus del Pin, et cæteri civitatis custodes honorifice susceperunt eum, et tradiderunt ei palatium Tancredi regis Siciliæ ad hospitandum ibi.
- Sept. 13.
Richard
moves from
Salerno,
passes Am-
-li.
- Cum ergo Ricardus rex audisset quod navigium suum Messanam veniret, xiii^o. die Septembris a Salerno recessit, et transiens ante civitatem archiepiscopalem quæ Melfe dicitur, et ante civitatem archiepiscopalem quæ Conze dicitur, xviii^o. die Septembris, venit ad civitatem et castellam quæ dicuntur Escalce.¹ Juxta hoc castellum est insula parva, ubi dicuntur fuisse scholæ Lucani; et adhuc est ibi camera pulchra sub terra, in qua Lucanus studere consueverat. Nocte sequenti jacuit rex in villa quæ dicitur Lacetrar,² in prioratu Montis Cassine.
- Sept. 18.
Scalca.
- Sept. 19.
Cetraro.
- Nono decimo die Septembris transiens rex per prioratum qui dicitur Sanctus Michael de Josaphat, venit ad alium prioratum ejusdem ordinis, qui dicitur Sancta Maria des Foses, et ibi est castellum quod dicitur Sancte Luchee.
- Sept. 20.
S. Eufemia.
- Vicesima die Septembris transiens rex per castellum quod dicitur Lamantee, venit ad villam quæ dicitur Sancta Eufemia.
- Sept. 21.
Melito.
- Vicesima prima die Septembris venit rex ad Melide, et ibi honorifice susceptus fuit et procuratus in abbacia Sanctæ Trinitatis. Ibi est turris lignea juxta abbatiam, per quam Robertus Viscardus expugnavit et obtinuit castellam et villam de Melide.
- Sept. 22.
Richard is
attacked by
rustics.
- Vicesima secunda die Septembris, rex Angliæ recedens de Melida cum uno solo milite, transivit per villam quandam parvam; et cum transisset, vertit se ad domum quandam, in in qua audivit accipitrem, et intrans domum cepit illum; quem cum dimittere nolisset, rustici multi undique adcurrentes

¹ Escalce] Escalce, I; Escalce, | ² Lacetrar] Lacetrar, G; iacetrar.
Benedict. | I.; Lacetar, Benedict.

Benedict,
ii. 125.

impetum fecerunt in eum cum lapidibus et fustibus; et cum unus illorum cultellum suum in regem extraxisset; rex eum cum lato gladii sui verberans, gladium suum fregit, et alios lapidibus obruit, et sic vix¹ evadens a manibus eorum, venit ad prioratum qui dicitur Labaniare, et nullam ibi moram faciens, transivit fluvium magnum qui dicitur le Far de Meschines. Et juxta turrim lapideam, quæ est ad introitum del Far in Sicilia, jacuit nocte illa in tentorio. Fluvius autem ille del Far dividit Calabriam et Siciliam. Et ad introitum del Far, prope Labaniare, est periculum illud marinum quod dicitur Silla, et in exitu ejusdem fluvii est aliud periculum maris, quod dicitur Caribdis.

A.D. 1190.
Sept. 22.
He crosses the straits of Messina, and sleeps that night in a tent.

De adventu regis Angliæ ad Messanam.

Benedict,
ii. 126.

Vicesima tertia die Septembris, Ricardus rex Angliæ venit Messanam in Sicilia, cum buciis multis, et aliis magnis navibus, et galeis, in tanta gloria, et sonitu tubarum et buccinum, quod tremor apprehendit eos qui in civitate erant. Rex vero Franciæ et sui, et omnes principes civitatis Messanæ, et clerus et populus, stabant in littore admirantes super his quæ videbant et audierant de rege Angliæ, et de potestate ejus; qui cum applicuisset, statim locutus est cum Philippo rege Franciæ. Et post colloquium istud rex Franciæ statim eodem die intravit naves suas, volens procedere versus terram Jerosolimitanam; sed cum a portu exisset, statim illo die vento sibi in contrarium mutato, dolens et invitus Messanam reversus est. Rex vero Angliæ intravit domum Reginaldi de Muhec, ubi hospitium suum præparabatur in suburbio extra civitatem infra vineas.

Sept. 23.
Triumphant reception of Richard at Messina.

Vicesima quarta et vicesima quinta die Septembris, venit rex Angliæ ad hospitium regis Franciæ loqui cum eo, et e converso.

Sept. 24, 25.
Interviews with Philip.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ misit nuncios suos ad Tancredum regem Siciliæ, et liberavit de custodia ejus Johannam sororem suam, quondam reginam Siciliæ.

Tancred releases queen Johanna.

Vicesima octava die Septembris exivit rex Angliæ obviam Johannæ sorori suæ, quæ² eodem die venit Messanam de Panormo per galeas, missa a rege Thancredo.

Sept. 28.
She arrives at Messina.

¹ vix] om. D. I.

| ² quæ] quod, B. I.

A.D. 1190. Vicesima nona die Septembris, scilicet die Sancti Michaelis, ^{Benedict,}
 Sept. 20. venit rex Franciæ ad hospitium sororis regis Angliæ, et vidit ^{li. 126.}
 Philipp. visits eam, et gavisus est.
 Joannas.

*Principium discordiæ inter cives Messanæ et
 Ricardum regem Angliæ.*

Sept. 30. Tricesima die Septembris rex Angliæ transivit fluvium del ^{Benedict,}
 Richard takes La ^{li. 127.}
 Bagnara. Far; et cepit locum munitissimum qui dicitur la Baignare; et
 prima die Octobris introduxit Johannam sororem suam in

Oct. 1. locum illum munitissimum, et dimittens eam ibi cum militibus
 He takes Johannam there.
 there. et multis servientibus, Messanam rediit.

Oct. 2. Secunda vero die Octobris cepit rex Angliæ monasterium
 He occupies and fortifies a monastery of the Greeks. Griffonum, videlicet locum munitissimum quod est in medio
 fluminis del Far, inter Messanam et Calabriam, et posuit in eo
 victualia sua, quæ de Anglia et aliis terris suis venerant, et
 expulsis inde monachis et servientibus eorum, munivit
 illud militibus et aliis custodibus.

Jealousy of the people of Messina. Cum autem cives Messanæ vidissent, quod rex Angliæ in
 castello de la Baignare, cum sorore sua, milites et servientes
 posuisset, et quod ipse monasterium Griffonum occupasset,
 habuerunt eum¹ suspectam, conjicientes quod totam occuparet
 insulam si posset; et inde de facili poterant contra eum com-
 moveri.

Oct. 3. Unde contigit, quod tertia die Octobris discordia emerit
 Quarrel between them and the crusaders. inter exercitum regis Angliæ et cives Messanæ; et in tan-
 tum excrevit ex utraque parte indignatio, quod cives clausu-
 runt portas civitatis, et armati ascenderunt muros. Cumque
 exercitus regis hoc vidisset, venerunt cum impetu magno
 ad portas civitatis, et dominus rex in equo velocissimo per
 exercitum cursabat, baculo verberans quoscunque ex suis
 attingebat, volens illos ab insultu cohibere, sed nequivit;
 tandem redit ad hospitium suum, et cum se armasset, iterum
 exivit ad extinguendam malitiam, si posset. Postea intravit
 cumbam unam, et ivit ad palatium regis Thancredi,² ad con-
 sultendum regem Franciæ super his quæ acciderant.

Interim, per consilium seniorum civitatis, discordia illa qui-
 evit; et depositis ex utraque parte³ armis, reversus est unus-
 quisque in domum suam.

Oct. 4. Quarto die Octobris venerunt ad regem Angliæ, Ricardus⁴
 Richard tries in vain to pacify them.

¹ eum] om B. I.

² Thancredi] Thancredi, B. I.

³ parte] om. I.

⁴ Ricardus] Palmer, an English-
 man, archbishop, 1183-1195.

archiepiscopus Messanæ, et Willelmus archiepiscopus de Monte Regali,¹ et Willelmus archiepiscopus de Risa,² et Margaritus Admiralis, et Jordanus de Pino,³ et alii multi familiares regis Siciliæ; et adduxerunt secum Philippum regem Franciæ, et Reginaldum Carnotensem, et Manasser de Lengris episcopos, et Hugonem ducem Burgundiæ, et Petrum de Neverz,⁴ et Gaufridum de Pertico,⁵ comites, et de familia regis Angliæ Walterum Rotomagensem, et Girardum Auxiensem archiepiscopos, et Johannem Ebroicensem, et Bernardum Baoniensem episcopos,⁶ et alios multos, in quibus habebant fiduciam, ad pacem faciendam inter ipsos et regem Angliæ. Et cum illi de pace facienda diu tractassent, et eam pene reformassent, cives Messanæ processerunt in magna multitudine congregati super montes, et expectaverunt quidam prompti et parati proditiose in regem Angliæ irruere; et quidam fecerunt insultum in hospitium Hugonis le Brun,⁷ et clamor illorum non modicus venit ad aures regis⁸ Angliæ; qui statim relicto colloquio regis Franciæ, et prædictorum omnium, præcepit omnes suos armari: et ipse cum paucis ascendit montem arduum, quod nemo putaret ullo modo posse contingere; et cum ad summitatem montis cum magno labore pervenisset, quotquot in monte fuerant, cum fuga celerrima civitatem intraverunt; et rex secutus est eos in ore gladii. Milites autem et servientes regis Angliæ ad portas et muros civitatis cum civibus fortiter congressi sunt, et multos et duros lapidum ictus sustinentes, aliquando portas intraverunt, aliquando vi expulsi sunt. Et occisi sunt ibi ex hominibus regis Angliæ quinque milites, et viginti servientes, vidente rege Franciæ, et nullum auxilium eis faciente, quamvis ipsi essent confratres in illa peregrinatione. Rex vero Franciæ et sui civitatem sunt ingressi, et⁹ per medium illorum ibant tutissime.

A.D. 1190.
Oct. 4.
Deputation
of the nobles
to Richard.

During the
negotiation
the riot
breaks out
again.

A general
struggle
between the
citizens and
Richard's
forces.

¹ *Willelmus . . . Regali*] om. I. William, archbishop of Montreal, 1183–1190; Richard's candidate for the see of Canterbury.

² *Risa*] William, archbishop of Reggio, d. 1197.

³ *Pino*] Primo, B. I.

⁴ *Neverz*] Peter of Courtenay.

⁵ *Pertico*] Geoffrey, son of Rotrou count of Perche.

⁶ *et Johannem . . . episcopos*] om. Savile.

⁷ *Hugonis le Brun*] of Lusignan, count of la Marche.

⁸ *regis*] om. A.; Ricardi regis, B.

⁹ *et*] om. B. I.

A.D. 1190.

De captione Messanae.

Oct. 4.
Messana
taken by
Richard's
men.

Homines autem regis Angliæ tandem post maximos labores in tantas vires excreverunt, quod per vim portas civitatis fregerunt, et murum undique ascenderunt, et ita ingredientiæ civitatem obtinuerunt, et statim signa regis Angliæ in munitioibus per circuitum murorum posuerunt. Unde rex Franciæ plurimum indignatus est, et postulavit ut signa regis Angliæ deponerentur, et ut signa sua imponerentur; sed rex Angliæ hoc permittere noluit: sed tamen, ut voluntas regis Franciæ impleretur, rex Angliæ signa sua deposuit, et tradidit civitatem in custodia Hospitalorum et Templariorum, donec perficerentur ei omnia quæ ipse exigebat a Tancredo rege Siciliæ.

Benedict.
ii. 129.

The city entrusted to
the Templars and
Hospitaliers.

*De concordia facta et sacramentis confirmata, inter
Philippum regem Franciæ et Ricardum regem
Angliæ, apud Messanam.*

Oct. 8
Renewal of
sacrament
between
Richard and
Philip,
and new re-
gulations for
the army.

Octava die Octobris¹ rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ, coram comitibus et baronibus suis, et clero et populo, juraverunt super reliquiis sanctorum, quod alter alterum et exercitum ejus in peregrinatione illa, in eundo et redeundo, bona fide custodiret, et comites et barones hoc idem juraverunt se firmiter et² inconcusso servaturos. Deinde prædicti reges, per voluntatem et consilium totius exercitus peregrinorum, statuerunt, "quod omnes peregrini, qui in via hujus peregrinationis morientur, de omnibus armaturis et equitaturis suis, et vestibus, quibus usuri erant, pro voluntate sua disponent, et de medietate³ possessionum suarum, quas secum habent in via, similiter pro arbitrio suo facient, dammodo nihil in patriam suam remittant; et clerici de capellis, et omnibus utensilibus ad capellam pertinentibus, et de omnibus libris suis, pro voto suo ordinabunt. Altera medietas in manus Walteri Rotomagensis archiepiscopi, et Manasser Lingonum episcopi, et Magistri domus militum Templi, et Magistri Hospitalis, et Hugonis ducis Burgundiæ, et Radulphi de Choci,⁴ et Drogonis de Merlou, et Roberti

Benedict.
ii. 130.

¹ Octobris] Septembris, I.

et] om. B. I.

² medietate] sua, add. B. I.

⁴ Choci] Chuci, B. I., Chouci,

G.

Benedict,
i. 130.

“ de Sablul, et Andreæ de Chaveni, et Gilberti de
 “ Wascuil¹ tradetur; qui ad subvectionem terræ Jerosolimi-
 “ tanæ, ubi viderint magis necessarium, prædictam pecuniam
 “ impendent. Hoc autem reges in propriis personis affidave-
 “ runt firmiter et fideliter servandum in omni via, tam citra
 “ mare quam ultra, de omnibus peregrinis utriusque regni,
 “ tam de illis qui venturi sunt, quam de illis qui jam vene-
 “ runt. Archiepiscopi et episcopi id idem in verbo veritatis
 “ servandum promiserunt. Magistri Templi et Hospitalis super
 “ ordinem suum id idem servandum concesserunt: comites
 “ et barones in propriis personis id idem servandum jurave-
 “ runt.

A.D. 1190.
 Oct. 8.
 New regula-
 tions about
 the money
 of the cru-
 saders.

All degrees
 adhere to
 these rules.

“ Præterea nemo in toto exercitu ludat ad aliquod genus
 “ ludi pro lucro, exceptis militibus et clericis, qui in tota
 “ nocte et die non nisi viginti solidos amittent. Si autem
 “ milites aut clerici plusquam ad viginti solidos in die natu-
 “ rali luserint, quotiescunque viginti solidos excesserint, cen-
 “ tum solidos prædictis archiepiscopo et episcopo, et comi-
 “ tibus et baronibus, qui prædictam servabunt pecuniam,
 “ dabunt prædictæ pecuniæ admiscendos. Reges autem pro
 “ beneplacito suo ludent. Et in hospitio duorum regum pos-
 “ sunt servientes præcepto regum usque ad viginti solidos
 “ ludere. Et coram archiepiscopis et episcopis, et comi-
 “ tibus et baronibus, præcepto eorum possunt servientes
 “ ludere usque ad viginti solidos.²

Regulations
 about
 gaming.

Benedict,
i. 131.

“ Si autem servientes aut marinarii aut alii ministri per se
 “ inventi fuerint ludentes, servientes tribus diebus nudi per
 “ exercitum vapulabunt, nisi se voluerint redimere arbitrio
 “ prædictorum; et alii ministri similiter. Marinarii vero si
 “ luserint, tribus diebus a summo mane in mare demergentur
 “ more marinariorum, quotidie semel, nisi se voluerint arbi-
 “ trio prædictorum redimere.

Punishment
 of transgres-
 sors.

“ Si autem peregrinus aliquis postquam iter arripuerit ab
 “ aliquo homine in via aliquid mutuo acceperit, mutuum solvet.
 “ De eo autem quod ante iter accepit, non tenetur respondere
 “ in via.

Debts of
 pilgrims.

“ Si autem marinarius aliquis conductitius, vel serviens ali-
 “ quis, vel quicumque fuerit, exceptis clericis et militibus, a
 “ domino suo in via hujus peregrinationis recesserit, nemo
 “ alius eum recipiet, nisi de voluntate domini sui fuerit.

Serving men
 not to desert
 their
 masters.

¹ *Wascuil*] Wascle, D.; Was-
 chuil, I.

² *Et coram solidos*] om I.

The words are not found in Bene-
 dict.

A. D. 1100. Oct. 8. Penalty of transgressing those statutes.	<p>“ Et si aliquis eum invito priori domino suo receperit, pro arbitrio prædictorum virorum punietur. Et si quis contra statuta ista, ita solemniter facta, aliquid temere attentaverit, sciatur se excommunicationi archiepiscoporum et episcoporum totius exercitus subjacere; et omnes transgressores pœnis supradictis secundum singulorum condiciones pro arbitrio prædictorum virorum punientur.</p>	Benedict. u. 131.
Regulation of the sale of bread and of corn and flour.	<p>“ Præterea statutum est a prædictis regibus, quod mercator, de quacunq[ue] mercatione sit mercator, non potest emere in exercitu panem ad revendendum, nec farinam, nisi aliquis alienigena illam addaxerit, et qui de illa panem fecerit; nec bladum, nisi de eo similiter panem fecerit, vel ad secum transfretandum detinuerit. Pasta verò omnino vetatur, ne ematur; et omnia vetentur emenda in villa, et infra leucatan villam.</p>	
Profits to be moderate	<p>“ Si aliquis autem bladum emerit, et de eo panem fecerit, tenetur lucrari in salma unum terrin¹ tantum, et bren. Alii vero mercatores, de quacunq[ue] mercatione sint mercatores, in decem denarios tenentur lucrari unum denarium.</p>	Benedict. u. 132.
None to sound the King's coin.	<p>“ Et ne aliquis sonet monetam domini regis, in qua moneta apparebit, nisi fracta fuerit infra circulum.</p>	
Sale of meat	<p>“ Et ne aliquis carnem mortuam emat ad revendendam, nec bestiam vivam, nisi eam occiderit in exercitu.</p>	
and wine,	<p>“ Et ne aliquis vinum suum post primam conclamationem carius vendat.</p>	
and bread.	<p>“ Et ne aliquis faciat panem ad vendendum, nisi ad unum denarium; et omnes mercatores sciatur quod totum Far² est infra leucatan villam. Et ut³ de moneta Angliæ unus denarius detur in omnibus mercaturis pro quatuor denariis Andegavensis monete. Et est sciendum, quod omnia supradicta constituta sunt consilio et voluntate regis Franciæ, et regis Angliæ, et regis Siciliae.”</p>	
Oct. 6. The citizens give hostages to Richard.	<p>Tertia vero die post captionem civitatis Messanæ, principes civitatis Messanæ, et totius provincie, dederunt regi Angliæ obsides de pace sibi et suis servanda, et quod in manu ejus civitatem Messanæ liberam tradent, nisi Tancredus rex Siciliae,</p>	

¹ *terrin*] Savile has printed this word generally *teruncium*.

² *totum Far*] This words seems to have puzzled both transcribers and editors. The Chronicle of Benedict has *fas*, and this is copied by Brompton. But *Far* is the proper reading, as Hoveden has it,

and the reference is not to *far*, the Latin word for *corn*; but to *le Far* the Faro of Messina, which for the purpose of the Act was to be considered within the ban-lieu of Messina.

³ *ut*] om. Savile.

Benedict,
ii. 133.

dominus eorum, celerius pacem fecerit cum illo de omnibus exigentiis quas ab eo exigebat. Ipse enim a rege Tancredo exigebat Montem Sancti Angeli, cum toto comitatu et aliis pertinentiis suis, ad opus Johanne sororis sue, quem Willelmus quondam rex Siciliae, maritus ejus, dedit ei in dodarium; et cathedram auream ad opus ejusdem Johanne de consuetudine reginarum illius regni; et ad opus sui ipsius mensam auream de longitudine duodecim pedum, et de latitudine unius pedis et semis; et quoddam tentorium de serico magnum adeo quod ducenti milites in eo possint simul manducare: et duo¹ tripodes aureos ad predictam mensam auream sustinendam, et viginti quatuor cuppas argenteas, et totidem discos argenteos, et sexaginta millia salmes de frumento, et totidem de hordeo, et totidem de vino, et centum galeas armatas cum toto apparatu, et cum victu galiotarum ad duos annos. Hac omnia petebat rex Angliæ ad opus sui ipsius sicut hæres regis Henrici, cui supradictus Willelmus rex Siciliae omnia supradicta præparaverat, et diviserat quando in extremis laboravit.

Benedict,
ii. 133.

Cui Tancredus rex Siciliae in hæc verba respondit: "Ego dedi Johanne sorori vestræ decies centena millia de terris,² pro quieta clamantia dodarii sui, antequam a me recederet, et de reliquis exigentiis vestris faciam quicquid facere debuero secundum consuetudinem regni hujus." Unde factum est quod, per consilium sapientium virorum, rex Siciliae dedit regi Angliæ viginti millia unciarum auri pro quieta clamantia dodarii sororis sue; et alia viginti millia unciarum auri pro omnium supradictorum quieta clamantia, quæ in jure petebat de divisa Willelmi regis Siciliae defuncti, et pro matrimonio contrahendo inter Arthurum ducem Britanniae, nepotem suum, et filiam regis Thancredi. Quibus ex utraque parte concessis, Ricardus rex Angliæ in hæc forma scripsit Thancredo regi Siciliae.

A D 1190,
October.
Claims made
on king
Tancred by
Richard, on
account of
Johanna's
dowry and
king Wil-
lam's be-
quest.

Tancred's
reply.

He negoti-
ates a mar-
riage for his
daughter
with Arthur
of Brittany.

Carta pacis factæ inter Ricardum regem Angliæ et Tancredum regem Siciliae. November.

"Thancredo Dei gratia illustri Siciliae regi, et ducatus Apulie, et principatus Capue, Ricardus eadem gratia rex Angliæ, et dux Northmanniæ et Aquitaniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, salutem in Eo Qui dat salutem regibus. Cum pro

Richard
makes peace
with Tan-
cred.

¹ duo] duos, Savile, with G.D. | ² terris] om. G.; terris, Savile.

A. D. 1100. " subvectione terræ Jerosolimitanæ, quam, peccatis exigentibus, Benedict, u. 133.
 November. " ex majore parte paganorum incursus obtinuit, et inimicorum
 After recording the " crucis Christi gladius devastavit, susceptum, inspirante Do-
 disturbances at " mino, peregrinationis iter ageremus per terram vestram,
 Messina. " transitum facientes apud Messanai civitatem vestram, mo-
 " ram facere compulsi sumus, ventorum et maris et temporis
 " inclementia navigationis nostræ propositum detinente, Benedict, u. 134.
 " inter populum nostrum et cives præfatæ urbis seditione
 " casu exorta, damnum hinc et inde contigit rerum et viro-
 " rum. Unde visum est pluribus, ut ea occasione fraterna
 " inter nos caritas et dilectio turbaretur. Curavimus itaque,
 " ut decebat peregrinationis nostræ propositum, tum per nos
 " et dilectos ac fideles familiares nostros, tum per venerabiles
 and the pres- " archiepiscopos vestros, scilicet Ricardum archiepiscopum de
 sidents of " Messana, et Willelmum archiepiscopum de Monte Regali,
 the names, " et Willelmum archiepiscopum de Risa, et Ricardum filium
 " venerabilis viri Walteri cancellarii vestri,¹ et alios viros
 " egregios missos a latere vestro, statuimus ut illibatæ pacis
 he gives the " inter nos ætius fœdera firmentur.² Cujus formam in ævum
 form of " duraturam scripturæ memoria³ contineret. Promisimus ergo
 peace and " vobis et regno vestro, et toti terræ dominationis vestræ,
 treaty. " per nos et nostros, terra et mari pacem perpetuam nos
 " fideliter servaturos, sopitis omnibus quæstionibus, quas tum
 " de dotalio sororis nostræ reginæ, tum de rebus aliis per
 " nostros vobis nuncios feceramus; hoc nihilominus addito, ut
 " quamdiu in regno vestro moram fecerimus, ad defensionem
 " terræ vestræ ubicunque præsentem fuerimus, vobis auxilium
 " præbeamus, quicumque vellet eam invadere, aut vobis bellum
 " inferre. Hujus autem pacis tenorem et formam, quam in
 Names of " voto habemus, et in proposito gerimus, vobis et vestris,
 the signet " illa fide servare, per Walterum Rotomagensem et Girar-
 on Richard's " dum Auxiensem archiepiscopos, et per Johannem Ebroicem-
 side. " sem⁴ et Bernardum Baoniensem episcopos, et per⁵ Jorda-
 " num de Humez constabularium nostrum, et per Willelmum
 " de Curci, et per Ricardum de Camvilla, et per Girardum
 " Talehot, et per Robertum de Sablul,⁶ et per Guidonem de
 " Croum⁷ et per Guarinum filium Geroldi, et per Bertram-
 " nam de Verdun, et per Willelmum Chamberlangum de

¹ et Willelmum . . . cancellarij vestri;] omitted in Benedict, and likewise in Brompton.

² firmentur] firmantur, A. B. D. G.

³ memoria] om. B. I.

⁴ Ebroicensem] Eboracensem, D.,

which reads *Eroniensem* for *Baoniensem* and omits the names after Jordan de Humez.

⁵ per] om. I.

⁶ Sablul] Sablot, I.; Sablud, B.

⁷ Croum] Cron, B. I.

Benedict,
ii. 134.

“ Tancervile,¹ et per Robertum de Novo Burgo, et per Hugo-
 “ nem Bardolf, et per Wigain de Cheresburg,² et per Gille-
 “ bertum de Wascuil, et per Hugonem le Bruin, et per Jo-
 “ hannem de Pratellis, et per Amauri³ de Muntfort, et per
 “ Andream de Chavenni,⁴ et per Willelmum de Forz de Ule-
 “ run, et per Gaufridum de Rancune, et per Amauri Torel,⁵
 “ et per multos alios de familia nostra, fecimus juramentis
 “ præstitis, coram prædictis archiepiscopis ad hoc ipsum effi-
 “ ciendum a vobis destinatis, et viris illustribus vestris, in
 “ animam meam firmari, sicut capitularis forma continet. Ut
 “ autem pax ista, et fraterna dilectio, tam multiplici quam
 “ arctiori vinculo connectatur, prædictis curiæ vestræ magna-
 “ tibus id ex parte vestra tractantibus, Domino disponente,
 “ condiximus inter Arthurum egregium ducem Britanniæ,
 “ nepotem nostrum, et hæredem si forte sine prole nos obire
 “ contigerit, et filiam vestram, matrimonium in Christi nomine
 “ contrahendum: ut cum illa, Deo propitio, ad nubiles annos
 “ pervenerit, et vos eam mittatis ad locum ubi pars utraque
 “ consenserit, prædictus nepos noster eam, infra quindecim dies
 “ postquam ad eum venerit, debeat in uxorem legitimam de-
 “ sponsare; aut si celsitudini vestræ placuerit eam infra
 “ annos nubiles desponsari, prædictus nepos noster juxta bene-
 “ placitum vestrum id faciet, si summus pontifex dispensabit.
 “ Volentes autem ei tanquam illustri dominæ, et magnifici regis
 “ filiæ, dodarium quod conveniat designari, de ducatu nepotis
 “ nostri tale dodarium ei pro parte ipsius nepotis nostri paci-
 “ scimur, et quod ad præsens per præfatos fideles nostros
 “ jurari fecimus, et ab ipso nepote nostro concedi, et a mag-
 “ nificencia vestra pro matrimonio isto, scilicet viginti millia
 “ uncias auri nos recepisse ad opus nepotis nostri fatemur.
 “ Hoc in pacto veniente, ut si (quod absit), morte alterius
 “ interveniente, aut culpa nostri nepotis, aut nostra, vel partis
 “ ipsius, matrimonium ipsum non fieret, nos aut hæredes
 “ nostri, vobis aut vestris hæredibus, supradictam pecuniam
 “ integram, sine difficultate, restituemus. Super his autem,
 “ videlicet, et de pace quam vobiscum firmavimus, et de
 “ matrimonio contrahendo, et de pecunia restituenda, si forte,
 “ prædictis causis accidentibus, matrimonium non extaret,
 “ dominum papam, et Romanam ecclesiam, in fidejussione
 “ ponimus; ut si forte, quod Deus avertat, ex parte nostra

A.D. 1190.
November.
Richard's
pledges.

Agreement
and terms of
marriage
between
Arthur of
Brittany
and a
daughter of
Tancred.

Acknow-
ledgment
of receipt
of 20,000
ounces of
gold.

¹ *Tancervile*] Tankarwille, B. I.

² *Cheresburg*] Chereburc, B. I.

³ *Amauri*] Aumarie, I.; Aumari,
B.

⁴ *Chavenni*] Chaveni, B. I.

⁵ *et per Guidonem de Croum . . .*
per Amauri Torel] omitted in Bene-
dict, and likewise in Brompton.

A D 1199.
November.
The pope is
to enforce
the execu-
tion of the
agreement.

" pacis integritas frangeretur, potestatem habeat Romana ec-
 " clesia nos et terram nostram districtius coercere; similiter Benedict.
ii. 135.
 " et ad matrimonium contrahendum potestatem habeat nos et
 " partem nepotis nostri constringere; vel, si propter causas
 " prædictas non fieret matrimonium, ad restituendam pecu-
 " niam nos aut hæredes nostros aut terram nostram cogere
 " habeat potestatem. Id quoque de fidejussione Romanæ
 " ecclesiæ nos ita facturos, prædictorum virorum nos obliga-
 " vimus juramentis, sicut capitularis forma continet, quod
 " vobis misimus sigilli nostri appositione signatum. Si autem,
 " nobis sine hæredibus decedentibus, ipse ad regnum nostrum
 " hæreditario jure pervenerit, de regno nostro tale illi dodar-
 " rium designamus, videlicet antiquum et consuetum dodarium
 " reginarum Angliæ."

*Hæc est capitularis forma quæ facta est inter Ricardum
 regem Angliæ et Tancredum regem Siciliae.*

Oath to be
taken by
Richard's
representa-
tives, for the
mainten-
ance of the
treaty.

¹ " Ego N. juro super hæc sancta Dei evangelia, quod dominus Benedict.
ii. 136.
 " meus Ricardus, rex Angliæ, ab hac hora in antea servabit
 " domino Tancredo regi Siciliae, ducatus Apuliæ, principatus
 " Capuæ, et regno ejus, et toti terræ dominationis suæ, pacem
 " perpetuam per se et per suos, terra et mari: et quamdiu
 " ipse dominus meus erit in regno regis Tancredi, dabit ei
 " auxilium ad defendendum terram suam, ubicunque ipse fuerit
 " in terra domini Tancredi regis Siciliae, quicumque vellet
 " eum invadere, aut ei facere guerram: et quod dominus meus
 " pacem istam manu sua jurabit, si dominus rex Tancredus
 " similiter pacem manu sua juraverit. Et si aliquando (quod
 " absit) dominus meus vellet pacem istam infringere, ego
 " ponam me in captione ipsius domini regis Tancredi, ubi
 " ipse voluerit. Et hæc omnia dominus Ricardus rex Angliæ,
 " et ego, bona fide, et sine fraude, et sine malo ingenio tene-
 " bimus: sic Deus nos adjuvet, et hæc sancta Dei evangelia,
 " et sanctorum reliquiæ. Amen."

Et est sciendum, quod in eadem forma juraverunt archi-
 episcopi et episcopi, et cæteri homines regis Tancredi, in
 animam ipsius, se et suos pacem servaturos Ricardo regi
 Angliæ et suis, in mari et terra, quamdiu ipsi fuerint in terra

¹ *Ego N. juro . . . summo ponti-*
 { omitted in B. D. I., which have,
 however, the rubric. It is in MSS.
 C and G, and is found in Benedict
 and Brompton. MS. D. has *Hæc*

*est formalis concordia facta inter
 Ricardum regem Angliæ et Tancre-
 dum regem Siciliae; proceeding with
 the letter to the Pope.*

Benedict,
ii. 136.

sua. Et si ipse Tancredus rex Siciliae et sui pacem non servaverint, praedicti archiepiscopi, et caeteri qui sacramentum illud ex parte regis Tancredi juraverunt, ponent se in captione Ricardi regis Angliae, ubi ipse voluerit.

A D 1190.
November.
Exchange of
oaths.

Et est sciendum, quod rex Tancredus dedit Ricardo regi Angliae alia viginti millia unciarum auri pro quieta clamantia omnium quaestionum quas fecerat, tam de dotalio sororis suae reginae quam de omnibus aliis exigentis suis. Et ut Tancredus rex Siciliae securior esset de omnibus supradictis conventionibus, Ricardus rex Angliae in hac forma scripsit summo pontifici:

Further
payment
of 20,000
ounces by
Tancred.

*Epistola Ricardi regis Anglice ad Clementem papam,
super pace facta inter ipsum et Tancredum regem.*

“ Reverentissimo domino ac beatissimo patri Clementi, Dei
“ gratia sanctae sedis apostolicae summo pontifici, Ricardus
“ eadem gratia rex Angliae, et dux Normanniae et Aquitaniae,
“ et comes Andegaviae, salutem, et sinceram in Domino devo-
“ tionis affectum. Justiore exitum facta principum sortiuntur,
“ cum a sede apostolica robur et favorem accipiunt, et sanctae
“ Romanae ecclesiae colloquio diriguntur. Proinde dignum
“ duximus ad notitiam beatitudinis vestrae transmitters, quae
“ inter nos et dominum Tancredum, illustrem Siciliae regem,
“ publico nuper et admodum necessario sunt celebrata con-
“ tractu. Sane dilectionem fraternam et pacem perpetuam
“ cum eo firmavimus, quam magnatum nostrorum, archiepi-
“ scoporum, episcoporum, et plurimorum virorum illustrium
“ juramentis, ei et suis, et regno suo, et toti terrae dominationis
“ suae, nos illibata fide promisimus servaturos. Cum eo¹ etiam
“ pacis et amicitiae foedus aeterni adhuc vinculo astringentes,
“ inter Arturum egregium ducem Britanniae, carissimum nepo-
“ tem nostrum et heredem (si nos decedere sine prole conti-
“ gerit), et illustrem filiam ejus, matrimonium, volente Domino,
“ condiximus contrahendum: ² quod Domino largiente debitam
“ consummationem accipiet, cum illustris puella nobiles annos
“ attigerit, aut praedicto domino Tancredo regi placuerit, ut
“ infra nobiles annos illa in uxorem nepoti nostro desponsanda
“ tradatur, nos ipsum nepotem nostrum hoc facturum concessi-

Nov 11.
Richard
writes a re-
port of the
proceedings
to the pope.

Benedict,
ii. 137.

¹ eo] om. A. B. D. I.; supplied from G. Brompton has ipso.

² condiximus contrahendum] con- duximus trahendum, B. D. L.; con-

duximus contrahendum, G. An attempt has been made to turn con- duximus into conduximus in A.

A D. 1109.
Nov. 11.
Richard's
report to the
pope of his
treaty with
Tancred.

“ mus, si sancta Romana ecclesia decreverit super¹ dispensare. Benedict.
n. 137.
“ Pecuniam vero quam pro matrimonio ipso, ad opus nepotis
“ nostri, ab eodem domino rege Tancredo recepimus, scilicet
“ viginti millia unciarum auri, si forte, quod absit, morte
“ interveniente alterius, aut culpa nostra aut nostri nepotis,
“ aut partis ipsius, matrimonium non stare; nos aut hæredes
“ nostri ipsi domino regi Tancredo, aut hæredibus ejus, ex
“ integro restituere, præstitis super hoc sacramentis, ex parte
“ nostra tenemur. Ut igitur tenor pacis iustæ, et initiati
“ matrimonii fides, cum integritate debita ex parte nostra et
“ nepotis nostri servetur, sicut ipsi domino Tancredo, inter-
“ posita jurisjurandi religione, firmavimus, sanctitatem vestram
“ et sanctam Romanam ecclesiam obnixe rogamus, quatenus et
“ firmiter pacis servandæ perpetuo, et matrimonii consum-
“ mandi, vel, si ex prædictis causis matrimonium ipsum non
“ fieret, restituendæ pecuniæ, sancta sedes apostolica fide-
“ jussionem pro nobis suscipiat erga dominum nostrum regem
“ Tancredam et hæredes ipsius: cujus fidejussionis onus ut
“ confidenter vobiscum Romana ecclesia suscipiat, præsentiam
“ litterarum testimonio vobis et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesie
“ liberam concedimus potestatem, nos et hæredes nostros et
“ terram nostram districtius coercere, si vel contra pacem
“ præfatam venerimus, vel, prædictis causis matrimonio non
“ secuto, nos aut hæredes nostri solutionem pecuniæ negare-
“ mus. ad honorem utriusque nostri vestra novit beatitudo
“ spectare, si, mediante Romana ecclesia, pacis pariter et
“ matrimonii bonum ad congruum finem deveniat, unde multi-
“ plex in futurum utilitas consequatur. Testibus nobis ipsis, Benedict.
n. 138.
“ xi. die Novembris, apud Messanam.”

Fight of
Margaret
and Jordan
del Pin.

Sed antequam pax ista esset concessa et confirmata inter regem Angliæ et regem Siciliæ, Margaritus admiralis et Jordanus del Pin, familiares regis Tancredi, quibus ipse civitatem Messanam tradiderat custodiendam, de nocte abierunt, adducentes secum familias suas, et substantias quas habebant in auro et argento; domos vero et galeas et alias possessiones illorum saisivit² rex Angliæ in manu sua, illis aboutibus. Deinde rex Angliæ fecit fieri fossatum unum latum et profundum per medium insulæ quæ est in flumine del Far, in qua est monasterium Griffonum, ubi thesauri et victualia ejus custodiebantur: cujus fossati longitudo totius insulæ continet latitudinem, ab una ripa in alteram; et finis ejus terminatur in

Richard
fortified the
monastery
of the
Gricks.

¹ *super*] similiter, Benedict; *super* | ² *saisivit*] saisiviit, B. D. I.
hoc, Brompton and MS. B.

Benedict,
ii. 139.

Caribdim. Et est sciendum, quod in fluvio illo del Far de Meschines sunt illa duo pericula maris maxima, scilicet, Silla et Caribdis; quorum unam, scilicet Silla,¹ est ad introitum del Far prope prioratum de la Bangnare, et alterum, scilicet Caribdis, est prope exitum del Far: ad cujus cognitionem facta est turris lapidea in prædicta insula juxta fossatum regis Anglie.

A. D. 1160
Scylla and
Clarybd.a.

Et est sciendum, quod Silla¹ semper evomit et in altum jactat undas, et ideo necesse est ut transeuntes elongent se ab ea, ne² insanis obruantur.³ Caribdis vero indesinenter attrahit et absorbet aquas; et ideo caveant sibi transeuntes, ne absorbeantur ab ea. Quidam tamen incauti, vitare Sillam volentes, cadunt in Caribdim.

Deinde rex Angliæ, dum pax inter illum et regem Tancredum facienda moraretur, firmavit sibi castellum forte in supercilio montis ardui extra muros civitatis Messanæ, quod Mategriffun vocaverunt. Griffones vero ante adventum regis Angliæ erant potentiores omnibus regionem illam inhabitantibus, et odio habebant omnes homines ultramontanos; adeo quod pro minimo habebant illos⁴ interficere, nec erat qui adjuvaret. Sed ex quo rex Angliæ illuc venit, malitia illorum quievit, et potestas eorum minuta est, et facti sunt viliores omnibus inhabitantibus terram illam; et sperantes se posse contra regem Angliæ, sicut potuerunt contra cæteros in diebus antiqua, inciderunt in foveam quam fecerunt, et facti sunt profugi in terra. Gens autem Anglicana in maxima habebatur reverentia in regno Siciliæ.

Richard
fortifies
Mategriffun

Benedict,
ii. 139.

Humiliation
of the
Griffons.

Tunc impletum est propheticum illud, quod antiquitus scriptum inveniebatur in tabulis lapideis prope villam regis Angliæ quæ dicitur Here, quam Henricus rex Angliæ dederat Willelmo⁵ filio Stephani. In qua idem Willelmus⁵

Fulfillment
of an ancient
prophecy.

¹ *Silla*] Scylla, B. G. L.

² *ne*] om. L.

³ *obruantur*] aqua, ins. Savile.
MSS. D. and G. omit *insanus*.

⁴ *illos*] om. L.

⁵ *Willelmo . . . Willelmo*] Ranulfo . . . Ranulfus, Benedict. Wilham Fitz-Stephen was one of the Justices Itinerant in 1176 and 1178. Ranulf

filled the same office in the 23rd, 24th, and 25th years of Henry II. Harford, in Devonshire, belonged to the family, and may have been the *Here* of which the legend is told. It is also referred to Hever, in Kent, but I know of nothing that connects Hever with the Fitz-Stephens.

A.D. 1190. domum novam constraxit, in cujus pinnaulo effigiem cervi Benedict.
 Curious old statant, quod factum fuisse creditur ut adimpleretur vaticinium ii. 139.
 prophecy. illud, quo dicitur,

“ þan þu seches in Here hert yreret :

“ þan sulen Engles in þre be ydeled.

“ þat an sal into Yrlande altolate waie,

“ þat oher into Puille mid prude bileve,

“ þe thridde into airhahen herd alle wreke ydrehegen.¹

October.
 Richard
 renounces
 the royal
 right of
 wreck in
 favour of the
 saved and of
 the heirs of
 the lost.

Deinde rex Angliæ, pro amore Dei, et salute animæ suæ et parentum suorum, quietum clamavit in perpetuum Wrec² per totam terram suam, citra mare et ultra: statuens quod omnis naufragus, qui ad terram vivus pervenerit,³ omnes res suas liberas et quietas habeat; si autem in navi mortuus fuerit, Benedict.
 filii vel filie, fratres vel sorores ejus habeant res suas, ii. 140. secundum quod ostendere poterunt se esse propinquiores illius hæredes. Vel si defunctus nec filios nec filias nec fratres nec sorores habuerit, rex catalla sua habeat. Hanc autem quietam clamantiam de Wrec⁴ fecit Ricardus rex Angliæ, et carta sua confirmavit, anno secundo regni sui, mense Octobris, apud Messanam, coram Waltero Rothomagensi et Girardo Auxiensis archiepiscopis, et Johanne Ebroicensi et Bernardo Baoniensi episcopis, et multis aliis tam clericis quam laicis de familia regia Angliæ; et carta illa tradita fuit per manum magistri Rogeri Mali Catuli, vicecancellarii regis.

¹ “ þan þu seches in here hert yreret,

“ þan sulen Engles in þre be ydeled

“ þat an sal into Yrlande altolate waie,

“ þat oher into Puille mid prude bileve,

“ þe thridde into her hahen herd alle wreke ydrehegan.”

MSS. I.

Airhahen, B; wreke, B; þeu ydeled, G.; þan san, G.; Yrlonde, G.; ydreghen, G.

The modern English of the prophecy is,—

When thou seest in Here hart reared,

Then shall English in three be dealed.

The one shall into Ireland all-to lead way,

The other into Apulia with pride, in speed,

The third in their own heart all sorrow endure (dree).

Whether there was, in the historian's mind, any connexion between wreke in the fifth line and the enactment of Richard which follows, is not quite clear.

² Wrec] Werc, B. I.

³ pervenerit] perveniat, I.

⁴ Wrec] Werc, B. I.

Benedict,
ii. 141.

Eodem anno plus quam centum millia paganorum, qui erant in regno Siciliae, servi regis Willelmi, post mortem ejus indignati sunt servire regi Tancredo; tum quia Henricus rex Alamannorum calumniatus erat regnum Siciliae, tum quia Ricardus rex Angliae, regnum Siciliae ingressus, magnam illius partem occupaverat. Et abierunt in montana cum mulieribus, filiis et filiabus, et pecoribus suis, et habitaverunt ibi, opprimentes Christianos, et multa mala eis facientes. Sed audito quod pax et finalis concordia esset inter regem Angliae et regem Tancredum, redierunt in servitutem regis Tancredi; et datis ei obsidibus de pace servanda, reversi sunt in domos suas, colentes terram sicut coluerunt eam tempore regis Willelmi, et servi facti sunt sub rege Tancredo.

A.D. 1190.
The Saracen dependents of king William revolt from Tancred; but on the news of the treaty return to allegiance.

De fame quae fuit apud Accon in exercitu Christianorum propter adventum Alemannorum.

Benedict,
ii. 142.

Eodem anno Conradus¹ dux Suaviae, post submersionem patris sui Frederici Romanorum imperatoris, factus est princeps Teutonicorum et Alemannorum, et caeterorum qui patrem suum sequebantur; et venit ad obsidionem Accon cum exercitu magno. Et statim² facta est fames magna in obsidione Accon, et in tantum excrevit, quod panis qui ante adventum eorum pro uno solo vendebatur denario, pro sexaginta solidis vendebatur postmodum. Tunc fame perierunt plurimi in exercitu, quia summa unius equi de frumento vendebatur pro sexaginta quinque marcis Anglicanae monetae. Tunc principes, qui in obsidione erant, pascebantur carne equina, edentes eam pro deliciis.

October.
Arrival of the German crusaders at Acre.

Benedict,
ii. 144, 145.

Cumque fames superexcrevisset, venit clamor populi ad Hubertum Walteri Salesbiriensem³ episcopum, et ad caeteros

December.
Famine among the besiegers.

¹ The name of the duke of Swabia who succeeded his father, the emperor Frederick, in the command of the German crusaders, was not Conrad, but Frederick. The emperor was drowned, June 10, 1190. Duke Frederick arrived at Acre, Oct. 3, 1190 (Bohad. p. 140); and died there, Jan. 20, 1191. On his

death, Conrad his younger brother succeeded to the duchy, but he did not accompany the Crusade.

² *statim*] Between S. Andrew's day and Christmas; see below, p. 73.

³ *Salesbiriensem*] Rothomagensis, Savile.

- A. D. 1100. December. Collection for the starving. Arrival of provisions. July 25. Defeat of a band of volunteers by Saadin.
- episcopos exercitus, et fecerunt collectam denariorum per exercitum ad opus pauperum; et tantum incrementum dedit Dominus collectæ illi, quod sufficiebat omnium sustentationi indigentium, donec largitor omnium honorum Deus, ex alto prospiciens, misit eis abundantiam frumenti, vini et olei. Tertia enim die post collectam pauperibus distributam, venerunt ad Accon naves onustæ frumento, vino et oleo, et fecerunt forum bonum, ita quod mensura frumenti, quæ prius vendebatur pro ducentis bisantiis, data fuit postmodum pro sex bisantiis. Benedict, ii. 145.
- Eodem anno, die Sancti Jacobi apostoli, decem millia proborum juvenum et bene armatorum exierunt de obsidione Accon, contra prohibitionem regis et patriarchæ et principum exercitus, volentes congregari cum Saladino et exercitu ejus.¹ Saladinus autem videns eos venientes, retraxit se cum exercitu suo, dimissis tentoriis suis et victualibus. Ingressi sunt juvenes illi tentoria paganorum, edentes et bibentes quæ apud illos erant. Deinde sumpserunt secum pretiosa quæque, et oneraverunt se; et cum redirent versus obsidionem Accon, Saladinus et exercitus ejus secuti sunt eos in ore gladii, et fere omnes perempti sunt a paganis. Pauci tamen illorum evaserunt auxilio Radulfi de Halterive² archidiaconi Colecestria, relictis oneribus suis. Benedict, ii. 142.
- Eodem anno³ Sibilla regina Jerusalem, uxor Gwidonis de Lezinant, et duæ filiæ ejus, obierunt in obsidione Accon; quibus defunctis, Conradus Marchio de Munferrat, dominus Tyri, videns quod non esset propinquior hæres in regno Jerosolimitano, quam Milisant⁴ uxor Amfridi del Turun, Benedict, ii. 141.

Conrad of
Munferrat
aspires to
the crown of
Jerusalem.

¹ The details of this event are more fully given here than in Benedict; and agree generally with the account in the *Itinerarium*, p. 89.

² *Halterive*] *Halterive*, B. D. I.

³ *Eodem anno*] Queen Sibylla and her children died before the 21st of October 1190. *Epp. Cantuar.* 329.

⁴ *Milisant*] Properly Isabella, the daughter of king Amalric, by his wife Mary of Antioch. She was

married to Henfrid III. of Toron. The divorce was strongly opposed by archbishop Baldwin of Canterbury, but after his death, which occurred on the 19th of November, it was very hastily pronounced, and the marriage with Conrad performed on the same day that the Butler of Senlis was taken prisoner, that is, according to the poem of Monachus Florentinus, Nov. 24. See note on Ben. Pet. ii. 141.

Benedict,
ii. 141.

soror prædictæ Sibillæ, convenit prædictum patriarcham Heraclium, et matrem prædictæ mulieris, et omnes principes exercitus Christianorum, et petiit sibi donari in uxorem illam reginæ defunctæ sororem; promittens quod ipse de cætero fideliter et efficaciter promoveret negotia exercitus Christianorum, et quod nullam deinceps haberet cum Saladino familiaritatem. Mater igitur mulieris, et patriarcha, et principes exercitus quamplures, præbuerunt assensum petitioni illius; et fecerunt divortium inter prædictam mulierem et Amfridum del¹ Turun maritum suum, et tradiderunt eam Conrado in uxorem; qui statim calumniatus est regnum Jerosolimitanum, de jure uxoris suæ, adversus Gwidonem. Gwido vero obtulit se juri stare in curia regum² Franciæ et Angliæ, qui in proximo venturi erant; sed Conradus tamdiu expectare nolens, omnia jura regni sibi usurpavit, et Gwidonem regem expulit.

A.D. 1190.
November.
He procures a divorce between the heiress and her husband; and marries her himself, and claims the crown.

Opposition of Guy of Lusignan.

Benedict,
ii. 142.

Eodem anno, Philippo rege Francorum, et Ricardo rege Anglorum, moram facientibus apud Messanam in Sicilia, mense Decembris, decimo quarto kalendas Januarii, feria quarta, audita sunt tonitrua magna apud Messanam, et visa sunt fulgura multa et terribilia discurrere, et unus ictus fulminis cecidit in una galearum regis Angliæ, et demersit eam in profundum, percussitque murum civitatis Messanæ, et magnam illius partem contrivit. Milites autem et servientes regis Angliæ, qui custodiebant monasterium Griffonum, in quo erant thesauri regis Angliæ, dixerunt pro certo, se vidisse globum igneum super pinnaculum monasterii illius, qui non erat comburens, sed illuminans, et ibidem moram fecit quamdiu tempestas sæviit, et cessante tempestate recessit globus ille igneus. Admirantibus illis, et diligenter requirentibus, quid hoc esset, Griffones ibidem Deo jugiter servientes responderunt, quod sic semper evenit, quodocunque tempestas sit.

Dec. 19.

Great thunderstorm at Messina.

Benedict,
ii. 143.

Rex vero Angliæ interim, dum moram fecit apud Messanam, fecit omnes navigii sui naves duci in ter-

Repairs of the ships.

¹ del] de, B. D. I.

| ² regum] regis, B. D. I.

A D. 1180.
December.
Richard
tries to
secure his
ship against
worms.

ram, et eas refici; nam multæ earum per corrosionem vermium deterioratæ erant. Sunt enim in fluvio del Far vermes graciles qui in lingua illa¹ vocantur Brom, quorum cibus est omne genus ligni: qui cum alicui ligno adhæserint, nunquam nisi per vim inde recedent, donec perforaverint illud; foramina autem faciunt stricta cum intrans, et ex corrosione ligni adeo crescunt et pinguescunt, quod exeuntes faciunt foramina lata.

He prepares
his engines.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ fecit parari perarias, et alias machinas suas bellicas, quas secum in terram Jerosolimitanam laturus erat.

Arrogance
of the
bishop of
Ely.

Eodem anno Willelmus Elicensis episcopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, domini regis cancellarius, et totius Angliæ justitarius, plebem Angliæ sibi commissam gravibus exactionibus premebat. In primis nanque omnes socios, quos rex sibi in regimine regni associaverat, spernebat, et eorum consilia. Socium aut parem sibi neminem putabat in regno, nec etiam Johannem fratrem regis, comitem Moretonii. Ipse quidem castella, prædia, abbatias, ecclesias, et omnia jura regis sibi vendicabat. Auctoritate quidem legationis suæ ad episcopatus, et abbatias, et prioratus, et ad alias religiosorum domos hospitaturus veniebat, in tanta superfluitate hominum et equorum, et canum et avium, quod domus in qua ipse per unam noctem hospitabatur, vix infra tres annos subsequentes in pristinum statum redire posset. Clericis vero et laicis, ecclesiæ, prædia, terras et possessiones suas abstulit, quæ aut nepotibus suis et clericis et servientibus erogabat, aut damnabiliter sibi retinebat, aut in usus extraordinarios dilapidabat.² Nonne considerabat infelix ille quod moriturus esset? Nonne cogitabat quod Dominus ab unoquoque suæ villicationis rationem, aut sui principatus honorem requiret? Sed bene de talibus dicitur:

Benedict,
ii, 143.

His exac-
tions and ex-
travagance.

“Asperius humili nihil est cum surgit in altum.
“Cuncta ferit, dum cuncta timet, desævit in omnes,
“Ut se posse putent, nec belua³ tetrior ulla,
“Quam servi rabies in libera terga⁴ furentis.”

Claudian,
In Eutrapi-
um, 151-154.

¹ illa] sua, B. D. I.

² dilapidabat] Change of hand in

³ belua] bellua, B.

⁴ terga] jura, B. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 143.

Eodem anno, tertia die post festum Sancti Michaelis, exierunt Saraceni a civitate Accon circiter quatuor millia armati, et combusserunt quatuor hurdicios per ignem Græcum; sed viriliter retrusi sunt per milites exercitus armatos, et amiserunt viginti Turcos occisos, præter multos vulneratos.

A.D. 1190.
Oct. 1

Unsuccessful sally of the Saracens from Acre.

Benedict,
ii. 144.

Deinde ad festum Sancti Martini¹ iterum exierunt Saraceni a civitate Accon, et impetum fecerunt in Christianos, qui viriliter restiterunt eis; et Baldewinus de Carun, et Walters de Oyri, et Baldewinus de Dargus bene sustinuerunt eorum impetum, donec comes Henricus² et Gaufridus de Lezinnant³ cum Templariis supervenirent; qui cum tanto impetu coegerunt paganos retroire, quod pagani amiserunt in illa fuga quadraginta Turcos occisos, et multos vulneratos.

Nov. 11.

A second sally defeated.

Deinde, inter festum Sancti Andreae et Natale Domini, fuit totus exercitus Christianorum armatus, ut insultum faceret in civitatem Accon: et Alemanni et Angli traxerunt scalas suas ad fossata, ut muro apponerent eas; et exierunt per posternas civitatis pagani, et abstulerunt Alemannis scalas suas, et Anglos fugaverunt a fossato, et funes ligaverunt super scalam Anglorum, volentes eam infra muros civitatis trahere; sed Radulfus de Tilli,⁴ et Humfridus de Velli,⁵ et Robertus de Lalande, et Rogerus de Glamvilla,⁶ ascenderunt super scalam Anglorum, et quater extinxerunt ignem Græcum superinjectum; et Radulfus de Thulli, cæteris propius accedens, abscidit cum gladio suo funes, et sic⁷ liberavit scalam illam a manibus paganorum.

December.

The besiegers attempted an escalade.

The Germans lost theiradders.

Deinde, inter festum Sancti Andreae et Natale Domini, incepit supradicta fames in exercitu Christianorum, et duravit usque ad Purificationem Sanctæ Mariæ.

Famine from November to February.

Benedict,
ii. 146.

Eodem anno Henricus rex Alemannorum, audita morte Frederici Romanorum imperatoris, patris sui, reddidit Henrico duci Saxonæ universa quæ pater suus ei abstulerat, et in incrementum dedit ei decem castella optima.⁸ Similiter fecit

Restoration of Henry the Lion.

¹ *ad festum S. Martini*] The battle described in the Itinerarium, 115; and by Bohadin, 148: after it Saladin retired from Tel Ajadiah to Tel Chisan.

² *Henricus*] count of Champagne, and afterwards third husband of queen Isabella, and king of Jerusalem.

³ *Lezinnant*] Liznant, B. I.

⁴ *Tilli*] Radulf de Tih, constable to archbishop Roger of York in 1174. Vol. ii. 60.

⁵ *Velli*] Velli, B. G. I., corrected to Velli in A, in a later hand MS. D. omits the names.

⁶ *Glamvilla*] Roger de Glamvill, sheriff of Cumberland in 1189.

⁷ *sic*] om. B. D. I.

⁸ The peace of Fulda was con-

- A. D. 1100. Henry VI. appears for the imperial crown.
- He is bidden to appear at Rome at Easter.
- Marriage of David of Scotland.
- Bucard the treasurer impedes the consecration of Godfrey of York.
- Privileges granted by the pope to Hugh of Durham.
- Penitence of king Richard.
- cæteris omnibus a quibuscunque pater suus aliquid abstulerat, reddens unicuique quod suum erat. Reconciliatis itaque sibi omnibus hominibus suis, misit nuncios suos ad Clementem papam, et ad cardinales, et senatores urbis, petens Romanum imperium, et promittens se in omnibus leges et dignitates Romanas servaturam illæsas. Clemens vero papa, habito cum cardinalibus et senatoribus et populo Romano, super petitionibus regis Alemannorum, cum deliberatione consilio, concessit regi Alemannorum quod petebat, salvis dignitatibus et consuetudinibus Romanorum; et statuerunt ei terminum veniendi Romam proximum Pascha sequens; sed antequam illuc venisset, Clemens papa obiit.¹
- Eodem anno David, frater Willelmi regis Scotiæ, duxit in uxorem [Matildam,]² sororem Ranulfi comitis Cestrie.
- Eodem anno iterum orta est dissensio inter Gaufridum, Eboracensem electum, et Bucardam, ejusdem ecclesiæ thesaurarium, ita quod electus ille excommunicavit prædictum Bucardum; qui Clementem papam adiit, et ab eo absolvi meruit; et adeo impedivit adversus summum pontificem negotium Eboracensis electi, quod summus pontifex nec electionem illius confirmare voluit, nec eum consecrari permisit. Præterea idem summus pontifex privilegiavit Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum, ne ipse professionem aut subjectionem aliquam faceret in tota vita sua Gaufrido Eboracensi electo, nec etiam si ipse fuerit in archiepiscopum consecratus, ea ratione, quod idem Dunelmensis episcopus semel fecerat professionem suam Eboracensi ecclesiæ, et beato Willelmo, tunc temporis Eboracensis ecclesiæ archiepiscopo, et ejus catholicis successoribus.
- Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ, Divina inspirante gratia, recordatus foeditatis vite suæ, post contritionem cordis, convocatis in unum, in capella Reginaldi de Moyac,³ universis archiepiscopis et episcopis suis, qui cum eo erant apud Messanam, nudus prociens ad pedes eorum, vite suæ foeditatem coram illis Deo confiteri non erubuit. Vepres

Benedict.
ii. 146.Benedict.
ii. 146.

cluded about July; too soon for Henry to have heard of his father's death, which he learned probably in November: v. Godefr. Mon. (ap. Freher, i. 354.)

¹ *obit*] April 10, 1101.

² *Matildam*] blank in A; om. G.; Matildem, I; Matildam, B.

³ *Reginaldi de Moyac*] called Mahec, p. 55 above. Walter de Moyac was admiral of king William's fleet. See vol. ii. p. 97.

Benedict,
ii. 146.

Benedict,
ii. 147.

enim libidinum excesserant caput illius, et non erat eradicantis manus; sed pater misericordiarum Deus, Qui non vult mortem peccatoris, sed ut convertatur et vivat, respexit eum oculis misericordiæ Suæ, et dedit ei cor pœnitens, et ad pœnitentiam vocavit. Ipse enim a prædictis episcopis pœnitentiam recepit; et ab illa hora deinceps factus est vir timens Deum, et recedens a malo, et faciens bonum. O felicem illum, qui sic cadit ut fortior resurgat! O felicem illum, qui post pœnitentiam non est relapsus in¹ culpam.

A.D. 1100.

He does penance, receives absolution, and sins no more.

De Joachim abbate de Curacio.

Benedict,
ii. 151.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ, audiens per communem famam, et multorum relationem, quod quidam vir religiosus erat in Calabria, dictus Johachim,² abbas de Curacio,³ de ordine Cistrensi, habens spiritum propheticum, et ventura populo prædicebat, misit pro eo, et libenter audiebat verba prophetiæ illius, et sapientiam et doctrinam. Eruditus enim⁴ erat in Divinis scripturis, et interpretabatur visiones Beati Johannis Evangelistæ, quas ipse Johannes narrat in Apocalypsi, quam ipse manu sua scripsit.

Richard hears abbot Joachim explaining the Apocalypse.

In quibus audiendis, rex Angliæ et sui plurimum delectabantur. Erat autem hæc visio Beati Johannis Evangelistæ: “Reges septem sunt, quinque ceciderunt, et unus est, et unus⁵ nondum venit.” Et alibi in Apocalypsi, visio ejusdem; “Mulier amicta Sole, et Luna sub pedibus ejus,⁶ et in capite ejus corona stellarum duodecim, et pariens cruciabatur ut pareret: et ecce Draco magnus ruffus, habens capita septem et cornua decem, et in capitibus ejus septem diademata, et cauda ejus trahebat tertiam partem stellarum cœli, et misit eas in terram; qui stetit ante mulierem, quæ paritura erat, ut cum peperisset, filium suum devoraret. Mulier autem peperit filium masculinum, qui rectorus erat omnes gentes in virga ferrea, et raptus est filius ejus ad Deum, et ad thronum Ejus. Mulier autem fugit in solitudinem Ægypti, ubi habet locum

The passage explained (Rev. xvii. 9, and xii. 1, &c.)

¹ in] ruinam et, ins. Savile, from D.

² *Johachim*] Joachim, I.; abbot of the Cistercian monastery of Corazzo, who in 1189 founded the order of Fiore, and died, aged 90, in 1202.

³ *Curacio*] Curatio, I.

⁴ *enim*] vir, ins. Savile.

⁵ *unus*] septimus, Savile; vii^{us}., B. D.

⁶ *ejus*] significat sanctam ecclesiam, solem justitiæ. Item mulier amicta sole, et luna sub pedibus ejus,—ins. Savile.

A.D. 1190. "paratum a Deo, ut ibi pascant eam diebus mille ducentis Benedict.
 "et sexaginta." ii. 151.
 Abbot Joachimi's ex-
 position.

Hujus igitur visionis interpretatio talis est, secundum Joachim abbatem de Curacio: "Muller amicta sole, et luna sub pedibus ejus," significat sanctam ecclesiam, sole justitiæ, Qui est Christus Deus noster, obumbratam et amictum; sub cujus pedibus mundus iste, cura vitas et concupiscentis suis, est semper concealandus: "et in capite ejus corona¹ stellarum "duodecim;" caput ecclesiæ Christus est; corona ejus fides catholica, quam duodecim prædicaverunt apostoli: "et pariens "cruciabatur ut pareret;" ecclesia itaque sancta, quæ semper novo gaudet fortu, cruciatur de die in diem, et animas Iustificat Deo; quas diabolus conatur eripere, et secum trahere in Gehenna.² "Et ecce Draco magnus rufus, "labens capita septem, et cornua decem;" Draco iste diabolum significat, qui bene dicitur habere capita septem; caput enim diaboli omnis iniquus est: septem ponit, quasi finitum pro infinito. Infinita enim sunt capita diaboli, id est, persecutores ecclesiæ, et iniqui. De quibus licet infiniti sunt, tamen idem Joachim in expositione sua ponit septem principes ecclesie persecutores, quorum nomina hæc sunt: Herodes, Nero, Constantius, Mauret, Molemutus, Saladinus, Antichristus. Dicit quoque Beatus Johannes in Apocalypsi: "Reges septem sunt: quinque ceciderunt, et unus est, et "unus nondum venit;" quod idem Joachim ita exponit;³

¹ *corona*] coronam, B. I

² *Gehenna*] Gehennam, B. I

³ Abbot Joachim's Commentary on the Revelation, *Expositio magni prophetae abbatis Joachim in Apocalypsim*, was printed at Venice in 1527. His explanation there of the passages in the text is not in close agreement with the account given in Benedict and Hoveden, but is not sufficiently inconsistent with it to prove the latter to be a fabrication. The Bollandists contended that the whole account is a forgery, but this is extremely improbable; the inconsistencies between the two explanations are not greater than will commonly be found in the opinions taken at different times of any exponent of unfulfilled pro-

phesy. It is extremely curious to mark the identification of the five kings who have fallen and the one already come; which is determined by the date, not of the prophecy, but of the interpreter. On this abbot Joachim, in the introduction to his commentary (fo. 10), after making the first four Herod, Nero, Constantius, and Chosroes, proceeds. "Quintum caput draconis fuit unus "de regibus Babylonia Nova, qui "volens sedere super montem Testamenti, et apparere similis Altissimo, multas super hoc ecclesie "persecutiones ingressit. Sextum "caput draconis ille est de quo "dicitur in Daniele, 'Alius rex "surgit post eos, et ipse potentior "erit prioribus,' quamvis iusti in

Benedict,
ii. 153.

“ Reges septem sunt, scilicet, Herodes, Nero, Constantius, A.D. 1100.
 “ Maumet, Melsemutus,¹ Saladinus, Antichristus. Ex his Abbot Joachin's ex-
 “ quinque ceciderunt, scilicet, Herodes, Nero, Constantius, position.
 “ Maumet, Melsemutus; et unus est, scilicet Saladinus, qui
 “ in præsentī opprimit ecclesiam Dei, et eam cum sepulero
 “ Domini, et sancta civitate Jerusalem, et cum terra in qua
 “ steterunt pedes Domini, occupatam detinet; sed ipse in
 “ proximo perdet illam.”

Tunc interrogavit eum rex² Angliæ, “ Quando erit
 “ hoc?” Cui Johachim respondit, “ Quando septem anni
 “ elapsi erunt a die captivnis Jerusalem.” Tunc ait rex Richard
 asks the
 the
 fulfillment.
 Joachim
 fixes A.D.
 1194.

“ sexti capitis a rege into Turcho-
 rum Saladino nomine sumptum
 “ putem, qui nuper calcare cepit
 “ sanctam civitatem, quique peccatis
 “ nostris exigentibus in cervicibus
 “ Christianorum supra quam puta-
 “ vimus crassatus est.” At the be-
 ginning of the volume is a picture
 of the dragon with seven heads, and
 the following explanation professing
 to be by the same author: “ Primum
 “ caput draconis cepit ab Herode
 “ proselito, et perseveravit ad Ne-
 “ ronem impium (2); et ab eo
 “ usque ad Constantium Arma-
 “ num (3); et ab eo usque ad Cos-
 “ droem regem Persarum, sub quo
 “ perditus Maometus revaluit (4);
 “ sub illo usque ad Henricum pri-
 “ mum regem Alemannorum (5);
 “ et ab ipso usque ad Saladinum
 “ Soldanum Babylonis (6); ab eo
 “ usque ad Federicum primum, et
 “ ab eo usque ad Antichristum cum
 “ successione sua.” But this was
 probably written after the quarrel
 of Frederick II. with the papacy;
 as on another explanation in the
 same page the heads are made
 Herod, Nero, Constantius, Cosdroes,
 Henricus Primus, and “ Fredericus
 “ II. venit in proximo cornutus, et
 “ alius nondum venit.”

¹ Melsemutus] Mausamuz (*R. de Monte*, 927); or Macemut (*R. de Diceto*, 624); Youssouf-abu-Yacoub, the second monarch of the Almohad dynasty. The name of Masmud; or Massamuti is given to that race generally.

² Although the inconsistencies of the interpretation of the prophecy are not sufficient to disprove the historical character of the interview between Richard and Joachim, the treatment of the following conversation by the two authors who give it throws great doubt on the details. In the Chronicle of Benedict, the abbot boldly promises that Saladin will shortly lose the kingdom of Jerusalem, and be put to death; and that victory is reserved for Richard, with the complete restoration of Palestine. This could not have been written after the comparative failure and return of Richard. Hoveden's version, by giving a margin of seven years from 1187, shows that it was written indeed before 1194; but the fact of it being thought necessary to alter the terms of the prophecy shows that it was written after the success of the crusade had become problematical, and perhaps after Richard's departure.

A. D. 1130.
Richard's
cur's arrival
necessity.

Angliam, "Ergo quare venimus huc tam cito?" Cui
Johachim respondit; "Adventus tuus valde necessarius
" est, quia Dominus dabit tibi victoriam de inimicis
" Suis, et exaltabit nomen tuum super omnes principes
" terræ."

Johachim's
views of
Antichrist.

Sequitur, "et unus illorum nondum venit, scilicet Antichris-
" tus." De isto Antichristo dicit idem Johachim, quod jam
natus est in civitate Romana, et in sede apostolica sublima-
bitur, et de isto Antichristo dicit apostolus; "extollitur et
" adversatur super omne quod dicitur Deus. Et tunc revelabitur
" ille iniquus, quem Dominus Jesus interficiet spiritu oris Sui,
" et destruct illustratione adventus Sui." Et conversus ad

Benedict,
ii. 153.

2 Thes. ii. 4

Benedict,
ii. 154.

Richard's
views on the
same.

eum rex ait: "Putabam, quod Antichristus nasceretur in
Antiochia sive in Babylonia, de progenie Dan, et regnaret
" in templo Domini quod est in Jerusalem, et in terra illa
" ambularet in qua Christus ambulavit, et regnaret in
" ea per tres annos et dimidium anni, et disputaret contra
" Elyam et Enoche, et eos interficeret, et postea moreretur;
" et post mortem illius daret Deus sexaginta dies penitendi,
" in quibus penitentiam possint agere illi qui a via veri-
" tatis erraverint, et seducti fuerint per prædicationem Anti-
" christi et pseudoprophetarum ejus."

Continuation
of Joha-
chim's ex-
position.

Sequitur, "et cornua decem;" decem cornua diaboli sunt
hæreses et schismata, quæ hæretici et schismatici opponunt
contra decem præcepta legis, et mandata Dei.

"Et in capitibus ejus septem diademata." Per diademata
significantur reges et principes hujus sæculi, qui in Anti-
christo credituri sunt.¹

"Et cauda ejus trahebat tertiam partem stellarum cæli,²
" et misit eas in terram." Stellas vocat minores homines
qui in Antichristo credituri sunt, et ideo dicit tertiam
partem stellarum cæli, propter nimiam multitudinem
hominum credentium in eo. "Et misit eas in terram," id
est, in Gehennam mittet omnes qui perseverantes crediderint³
in illo.

"Qui stetit ante mulierem, quæ paritura erat, ut eum
" peperisset, filium devoraret." Diabolus semper insidatur

¹ credituri sunt] First hand re-
simes, A.

² cæli] propter nimiam multi-

tudinem hominum credentium in
eam, ins. Savile.

³ crediderint] crediderunt, B. I.

Benedict,
ii. 154.

Benedict,
ii. 155.

ecclesiæ, ut partum ejus rapiat, et raptum devoret: qui bene dicitur stare, quia nunquam declinat a malo, sed semper stat rigidus in malitia, et inflexibilis in versutia suæ fraudis. Vel aliter, cauda ejus significat finem sæculi hujus, in qua surgent quædam gentes iniquæ, quæ dicuntur Gog Magog, et destruent ecclesiam Dei, et subvertent gentem Christianam, et ex tunc erit dies judicii. Sed in tempore hujus Antichristi multi Christianorum in cavernis terræ et in solitudinibus petrarum morantes, fidem Christianam in timore Domini servabunt, usque ad consummationem Antichristi; et hoc est quod dicit: "Mulier fugit in solitudinem¹ Ægypti, ubi habet locum paratum a Deo, ut ibi pascant eam diebus mille et ducentis et sexaginta." Filius autem ejus masculus, "qui rectorus erat omnes gentes in virga ferrea," est præcipue Dominus noster Jesus Christus, Qui post passionem et resurrectionem Suam ascendit in cælum, sedetque ad dextram Dei Patris, et venturus est judicare vivos et mortuos, et sæculum per ignem. Cujus sequaces si fuerimus, et in mandatis Ejus perseveraverimus, rapiemur in aera obviam Illi, et cum Illo semper erimus.

A.D. 1190.
Abbot Joachim's exposition of Rev. xii.

Et licet prædictus abbas de Curacio hanc sententiam de adventu Antichristi proferret, tamen Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et archiepiscopus de Appamia, et Girardus Auxiensis archiepiscopus, et Johannes Ebroicensis, et Bernardus Baoniensis episcopi, et alii viri ecclesiastici, in Divinis scripturis bene eruditi, nitebantur probare in contrarium, et quamvis multa argumenta verisimilia hinc et inde proferrent, tamen adhuc sub judice lis est.² Nam antiqui in scripturis suis, mentionem facientes de Antichristo, in hunc modum scripserunt;

Conflicting views on these points.

¹ *solitudinem*] solitudine, B. D. I. | of Joachim in MSS. B. D. I. MS.
² *lis est.*] Here end the conversations and extracts from the prophecy | G. has the additions; as also, curiously enough, MS. C.

A. D. 1190.

*Alia opinio de adventu Antichristi.*¹(Not in
Benedict.)Description
of Anti-
christ.

" Ergo de Antichristo scire volentes, primo notabitis quare
 " sic vocatus sit. Ideo scilicet, quia Christo in cunctis con-
 " trarius erit, et Christo contraria faciet. Christus venit humi-
 " liter, ille venturus est superbus. Christus venit humiles
 " erigere, peccatores justificare: Antichristus e contra humiles
 " dejiciet, peccatores magnificabit, impios exaltabit, semperque
 " vitia, quæ sunt contraria virtutibus, docebit; legem evan-
 " gelicam dissipabit, dæmonum culturam in mundo revocabit,
 " gloriam propriam quæret, et Omnipotentem Deam se nomi-
 " nabit. Hic itaque Antichristus multos habebit suæ maligni-
 " tatis ministros, ex quibus in mundo jam multi præcesserunt.
 " Qualis fuit Antiochus, Nero, Domitianus; nunc quoque nostro
 " tempore Antichristos novimus esse multos. Quicumque, sive
 " laicus, sive monachus, sive canonicus, contra justitiam vivit,
 " et ordinis sui regulam impugnat, et quod bonum est blas-
 " phemat, Antichristus et minister Sathanæ est. Sed jam de
 " exordio Antichristi. Non autem quod dico ex proprio sensu
 " fingo vel excogito; in libris enim diligenter rehendo hæc
 " scripta invenio.

He is to be
born of the
tribe of Dan.

" Sicut ergo auctores nostri dicunt, Antichristus exemplo
 " Judæorum nascetur, de tribu scilicet Dan, secundam prop-
 " hetiam dicentem: 'Fiat Dan coluber in via, cerastes in Gen. xlix. 17
 " 'semita.' Sicut enim serpens in via sedebit, et in semita
 " erit, ut eos qui per semitam justitiæ ambulant, feriat, et
 " veneno suæ malitiæ occidat. Nascetur autem ex patris et

¹ This is the famous description of Antichrist, written originally by Adso, to Gerberga, queen of Lewis "Outremer," shortly before the year 954. Adso was afterwards abbot of Der. It has been at different times attributed to Augustine, among whose spurious works it is printed in the Benedictine edition, vol. vi., app. p. 243, to Alcuin, on whose work de Trinitate, lib. iii. c. 13, Opp., ed. Froben, i. 734, it is partly founded; to Rabanus Maurus, Opp. vi. 177; under these names it appears in various forms and with different titles; as also in the shape of a

letter to archbishop Herebert of Cologne, from Albinus or Albainus, cir. 999 A.D. It may be found in the works of Alcuin, ed. Froben, ii. 528; ed. Quercetan., 1209; ed. Migne, ii. 1289 et seqq. The form in which it is given by Hoveden closely resembles that in which it appears in Rabanus Maurus, and very closely the version of the MS. quoted by Froben on Alcuin, as "Cod. Vat. 6444, perg. in 4^{to}." See the learned account of it by that famous scholar in his edition of Alcuin.

(Not in
Benedict.)

“ matris copulatione, sicut et alii homines, non, ut quidam
“ dicunt, de sola virgine. Sed tamen in peccatis totus concipi-
“ pietur, in peccato generabitur, et in peccato nascetur. In
“ ipso suæ conceptionis initio diabolus simul introibit in
“ uterum matris, et ex virtute diaboli confovebitur, et contue-
“ litur in ventre matris, et virtus diaboli erit semper cum
“ illa. Et sicut in matrem Domini nostri Spiritus Sanctus
“ supervenit, et eam Sua virtute obumbravit, et Divinitate re-
“ plevit, ut de Spiritu Sancto conciperet, et quod nasceretur
“ Divinum esset et sanctum: ita quoque diabolus in matrem
“ Antichristi descendet, totamque eam replebit, totam circum-
“ dabit, totam tenebit, totam interius et exterius possidebit,
“ ut diabolo per hominem cooperante, concipiat, et quod
“ natum fuerit, totum sit nocivum, totum malum, totum per-
“ ditum. Unde et ille homo filius perditionis appellatur, quia,
“ in quantum poterit, genus humanum perdet, et ipse in novis-
“ simo perdetur.

A.D. 1190.
Conception
and birth of
Antichrist.

“ Ecce audistis qualiter nascetur, audite etiam locum ubi
“ nascetur. Nam sicut Dominus et Redemptor noster Beth-
“ leem Sibi prævidit, ut ibi pro nobis humanitatem assumere,
“ et nasci dignaretur: sic diabolus illi homini perditio, qui
“ Antichristus dicitur, locum novit aptum, unde radix omnium
“ malorum oriri debeat, scilicet civitatem Babiloniæ. In hac
“ enim civitate, quæ quondam fuit inclita et gloriosa urbs
“ gentilium, et caput regni Persarum, Antichristus nascetur,
“ et in civitatibus Bethsayda et Corozaim nutrirî et conversari
“ dicitur. Quibus civitatibus Dominus in Evangelio impro-
“ perat, dicens, 'Væ tibi Bessayda, væ tibi Corozaim.'

He is to be
born at
Babylon,
and to live
at Bethsada
and Chora-
sam.

8 Matt.
xx. 21.

“ Habebit autem Antichristus magos, maleficos, divinos et
“ cantores: qui eum, diabolo inspirante, nutriant, et doceant
“ cum in omni iniquitate et falsitate et nefaria arte; et ma-
“ ligni spiritus erunt duces ejus et socii, et comites individui.
“ Deinde Jerosolimam veniet,² et omnes Christianos quos ad
“ se convertero non poterit, per varia tormenta jugulabit: et
“ suam sedem in sancto templo parabit. Templum etiam
“ destructum, quod Salomon Deo dicavit, in statum suum
“ restaurabit, et circumcidet se, et filium Dei Omnipotentis se
“ esse mentietur. Reges autem et principes primum ad se
“ convertet; deinde per illos ceteros populos: loca vero per
“ quæ Christus Dominus ambulavit, peragrabit, et prius de-
“ struet quod Dominus illustravit. Deinde per universum
“ mundum mittet nuncios et prædicatores suos. Prædicatio
“ autem ejus et potestas tenebit a mari usque ad mare, ab

He will have
magicians to
nurse him: he
will come to
Jerusalem
and persecute
Christians.

He will have
his apostles.

¹ improperat] improprnat, Savile. | ² veniet] venient, Savile.

- AD 1100. " oriente usque ad occidentem, ab aquilone usque ad septen- (Not in
 Kingdom of " trionem. Beredict.)
 Antichrist.
- His miracles. " Faciet ergo signa multa, miracula magna et inaudita :
 " faciet de cœlo ignem terribiliter venire, arbores subito flo-
 " rere et arescere, mare turbari, et subito tranquillari; i.a-
 " turas in diversas figuras mutari; aquarum cursus et ordines
 " converti; aera ventis et commotionibus agitari; et cætera in-
 " numerabilia et stupenda; mortuos etiam in conspectu homi-
 " num suscitari: ita ut in errorem inducantur, si fieri potest,
 " etiam electi. Nam quando tanta et tanta signa viderint,
 " etiam illi qui perfecti et electi Dei sunt, dubitabant utrum
 " ipse sit Christus, Qui in fine mundi secundum scripturas
 " venturus est, an non. Excitabit enim persecutionem sub
 " omni cœlo supra Christianos et omnes electos. Eriget ita-
 " que se contra fideles tribus modis: id est, terrore, et mu-
 " neribus, et miraculis. Dabit in se credentibus auri et
 " argenti copias. Quos enim muneribus corrumpere non
 " poterit, terrore superabit. Quos autem terrore non poterit,
 " signis et miraculis seducere tentabit. Quos nec signis nec
 " miraculis, in conspectu omnium mirabili morte cruciatus
 " crudeliter necabit.
- His arts and " Tunc erit talis tribulatio, qualis non fuit super terram 8 Mult
 terrors. " ex tempore quo gentes esse cœperunt usque ad tempus illud; ^{xxiv 21.}
 " tunc qui in agro erunt, fugient ad montes; et qui supra,
 " non descendet in domum suam, ut tollat aliquid de ea
 " Tunc omnis fidelis Christianus, qui inventus fuerit, aut Deum
 " negabit, aut per ferrum, sive per ignem fornacis, seu per
 " serpentes, sive per bestias, sive per aliud quodlibet tormenti
 " genus interibit, si in fide permanserit. Hæc autem tam
 " terribilis et timenda tribulatio, tribus annis et dimidio in
 " toto mundo manebit. Tunc breviantur dies propter elec-
 " tos; quis nisi Dominus abbreviasset dies, non fuisset salva
 " omnis caro.
- Great tribu- " Tempus siquidem quando idem Antichristus veniet, vel
 lation. " quando dies iudicii apparere incipiet, Paulus apostolus
 " in epistola ad Thessalonicenses designat, dicens: 'Roga- 2 Thess. i. 4.
 " mus vos per adventum Domini nostri Jesu Christi;
 " manifestat etiam eo loco ubi ait, 'Quoniam nisi veniat dis-
 " sensio primum, et revelatus fuerit homo peccati, et filius
 " perditionis.' Scimus enim quod post regnum Græcorum,
 " sive etiam post regnum Persarum, ex quibus unumquodque
 " suo tempore magna gloria ingruit, et magna potentia floruit;
 " ad ultimum quoque post cætera regna regnum Romanorum
 " cœpit, et quod fortissimum omnium regnorum superiorum
 " fuit, et omnia regna terrarum sub dominatione sua habuit,
- Signs of his " coming.

(Not in
Benedict)

“ omnesque populorum nationes Romanis subjacebant sub tri- A D. 1100.
 “ buto Inde ergo dicit Paulus apostolus, ‘ Antichristum non Signs pre-
 “ ‘antea in mundum esse venturum, nisi venerit dissensio ceeding the
 “ ‘ primum.’ Id est, nisi prius dissenserint omnia regni mundi coming of
 “ a Romano imperio, cui pridem subdita erant. Hoc autem Antichrist.
 “ tempus nondum venit, quia licet videamus Romanum im-
 “ perium ex magna parte destructum, tamen quamdiu reges
 “ Francorum domuaverint, qui Romanum imperium tenere
 “ debent, Romæ dignitas ex toto non peribit, quia in regibus
 “ suis stabit. Quidam vero doctores nostri dicunt, quod unus
 “ ex regibus Francorum Romanum imperium ex toto et in-
 “ tagro tenebit: qui in novissimo tempore erit, et ipse erit
 “ maximus, et omnium regum ultimus, qui postquam regnum End of the
 “ suum feliciter gubernaverit, ad ultimum Jerosolimam veniet, Roman
 “ et in monte Oliveti sceptrum et coronam deponet. Hic erit empire.
 “ finis et consummatio Romanorum Christianorumque imperii.
 “ Statimque, secundum prædictam Pauli apostoli sententiam,
 “ Antichristum dicunt esse affuturum, et tunc revelabitur qui-
 “ dem homo peccati, Antichristus videlicet, qui licet homo sit, Revelation
 “ fors tamen erit omnium peccaminum, et filius perditionis, id of the man
 “ est, filius diaboli, non per naturam, sed per imitationem, quia of sin.
 “ per omnia adimplebit diaboli voluntatem; quia plenitudo dia-
 “ bolicæ potestatis, et totius mali ingenii, corporaliter habitabit
 “ in illo, in quo erunt omnes thesauri malitiæ et iniquitatis
 “ absconditi. ‘ Qui adversatur,’ id est, contrarius est Christo,
 “ et omnibus ejus membris: ‘ et extollitur,’ id est, in super-
 “ biam erigitur; ‘ supra omne quod dicitur Deus,’ id est, super
 “ omnes deos gentium; Herculem videlicet, et Apollinem, et
 “ Jovem, et Mercurium, quos pagani deos esse existimant;
 “ super omnes deos istos extolletur Antichristus, quia majore
 “ rem et fortiozem se his omnibus faciet; et non solum supra
 “ hos, sed et supra omne quod colitur: id est, supra Sanctam
 “ Trinitatem, Quæ solummodo colenda et adoranda est ab
 “ omni creatura, ita se extollet, ut in templo Dei sedeat,
 “ ‘ ostendens se tanquam sit Deus.’ Nam, sicut supra dixi-
 “ mus, in civitate Babiloniæ natus, Jerosolimam veniens,
 “ circumcidet se, dicens Judæis: ‘ Ego sum Christus vobis
 “ ‘ repromissus, qui ad vestram salutem veni, ut vos, qui dis-
 “ ‘ persi estis, congregem, et defendam.’
 “ Tunc confluent ad eum omnes Judæi, existimantes se The Jews
 “ Deum suscipere; sed suscipient diabolum.¹ Sive etiam ‘ in will flow to
 “ him.

2 Thess. ii. 3.

¹ In the version which was as-
cribed to Augustin or to other
writers earlier than the author,

there is here interpolated a pro-
phecy of Charles the Great and the
Frank empire.

- AD 1190. " ' templo Dei sedebit ' Antichristus; id est, in sancta eccle- (Not in
He will fulfil prophesy. sia, omnes Christianos faciens martyres; et elevabitur et Benedict.)
" magnificabitur, quia in ipso erit omnium malorum caput
" diabolus, qui est ' rex super omnes filios superbiæ.' Job. xl. 25.
" Sed ne subito et improvise Antichristus veniat, et totum
" simul humanum genus suo errore decipiat et perdat, ante
" ejus ortum duo magni prophete mittentur in mundam, Enoc
" et Helias, qui contra impetum Antichristi fideles Dei Divinis
" armis præmuniunt, et instruant eos, et confortabunt, et præ-
" parabunt electos ad bellum, docentes et prædicantes tribus
" annis et dimidio. Filios autem Israel, quicumque eo tem-
" pore fuerint inventi, hi duo magni prophete et doctores ad
" fidei gratiam convertent, et a pressura tanti turbinis in
" parte electorum insuperabiles reddent.
" Tunc implebitur quod scriptura ait; ' Si numerus filiorum Rom. ix. 27.
" ' Israel sicut arena maris fuerit, reliquias salvæ fient.'
" Postquam ergo per tres annos et dimidium prædicationem
" suam impleverint, mox incipiet exardescere Antichristi perse-
" cutio, et contra eos primum arma sua Antichristus arripiet,
" eosque interficiet, sicut in Apocalypsi legitur: ' Et cum Apoc. xii. 7.
" ' finietur (inquit) testimonium suum, bestia quæ ascendet
" ' de abyssu faciet adversus eos bellum, et vincet eos, et
" ' occidet eos.' Postquam ergo isti duo interfecit fuerint,
" inde cæteros fideles persequetur, ut eos aut martyres glo-
" riosos faciat, aut apostatas reddat; et tum qui in eum cre-
" diderint, signum characteris ejus in fronte accipient.
" Sed quia de principio ejus diximus, quem finem habeat
" inde dicamus. Hic itaque Antichristus, diaboli filius, et
" totius malitiæ artifex pessimus, per tres annos et dimidium,
" sicut prædictum est, magna persecutione totum mundam
" vexabit, et omnem populum Dei variis pœnis cruciabit; et
" postquam Heliam et Enoc interfecerit, et cæteros in fide
" permanentes coronaverit martyrio, ad ultimum veniet judi-
" cium Dei super eum, sicut Beatus Paulus scribit, dicens:
" ' Quem Dominus Jesus interficiet spiritu oris Sui.' Sive
" Dominus Jesus interfecerit illum potentia jussionis, sive
" archangelus Michael interfecerit illum, per virtutem Do-
" mini nostri occidetur, non per virtutem cujuslibet angeli
" aut archangeli. Tradunt autem, quod in monte Antichristus
" occidetur in Babylone in solo suo, in illo loco contra quem
" ascendit Dominus ad cœlos.
" Debetis autem scire, quia postquam Antichristus fuerit
" occisus, non statim veniet dies judicii, nec statim veniet
" Dominus ad judicandum, sed sicut ex libro Danielis intel-
" ligimus, Dominus concedet diem electis, ut agant peniten-

Enoch and
Elias will
come first
for three
years, and
a half.

Antichrist
will slay
them.

The end of
Antichrist.

(Not in Benedict)

“ tiam, propterea quia ab Antichristo seducti sunt. Post- A.D. 1100.
 “ quam vero hanc pœnitentiam expleverint, quantum temporis After his death there will be a time of repentance before the last Judgment.
 “ spatium fiet, quousque Dominus ad judicandum veniat, nul-
 “ lus est qui sciat; sed in dispositione Dei manet, qua hora
 “ Dominus sæculum judicabit, quia ante sæcula judicandum
 “ esse præfixit.”

Item alia opinio de adventu Antichristi, quæ dicitur inventa fuisse in codicibus Beati Gregorii papæ.¹

“ Johannes apostolus et evangelista, virgo electus a Domino, Another account of Antichrist.
 “ et inter cæteros magis dilectus, interrogabat Dominum de
 “ fine sæculi, et respondit Dominus; ‘Sol convertetur in
 “ tenebras, et luna in sanguinem, et de arboribus stillabit
 “ sanguis, lapides dabunt voces, populi movebuntur; Anti-
 “ christus, id est, diabolus, regnabit, et faciet prodigia, et
 “ signa magna in populo. Nemo poterit se ab illo. De mu-
 “ liere meretrice nascetur ex tribu Dan in Israel. Omnes
 “ qui credunt in eum signabit uno caractere in fronte, et
 “ nemo poterit delere illius artificium. Nutrietur in Coro-
 “ zain, post morabitur in Bethsayda civitate; sed paucis die-
 “ bus, et omnes quos ille occidet, vel qui mortui fuerint sub
 “ ejus potestate fame et siti, ipsi electi Dei erunt: suscitabit
 “ falsos mortuos, convertet flumina retrorsum, eradicabit
 “ arbores, et convertet ramos in terram, et radices earum
 “ sursum, et florere faciet per suas diabolicas artes. Sedu-

¹ Of this curious document I am able to give no other account than Hoveden has done in the rubric. It is not found in any of the apocryphal writings of early date, nor was it known to Malvenda, who in his learned work *De Antichristo* has collected all the legends and traditionary interpretations of scripture touching Antichrist. At first sight it may seem to be a mere abridgement of the principal features of Adso's letter, but the reference to the death of Antichrist looks a little more ancient. Hoveden does not say to which of the Gregories it was attributed, but it was probably

to S. Gregory the Great, with whose doctrine on the subject in the *Morals on Job*, it may be compared; and who is quoted in one version of Adso's letter as authority for the statement that S. Michael will kill Antichrist. On the whole it cannot, without further information, be determined whether it is an apocryphal work of the tenth century, or a still more audacious fabrication of the twelfth, like that of the divine letter on the observance of Sunday, which is given by Hoveden, under the year 1201, on the authority of abbot Eustace of Flay.

A.D. 1100.
A second
account of
Antichrist.

“ ‘cet multos. In die quando nascetur, omnes qui habitant in
 “ ‘quatuor partibus mundi, cognoscent ipsum esse natum :
 “ ‘testante scriptura, quæ ait: ‘In quacunq[ue] domo cadaver
 “ ‘unius domus hominis mortui erit signum.’ Tunc in
 “ ‘tempore illius occidet pater filium, et filius patrem, et
 “ ‘frater fratrem, et fideles deficient in omni re. Mulieres
 “ ‘menstruationes suas accipient, et non abscondent se ab
 “ ‘hominibus; ecclesiæ destruentur, sacerdotes plorabunt.
 “ ‘Nulla memoria habebitur de locis ubi corpora sanctorum
 “ ‘quieverunt: adorabunt profana idola, sicut pagani et Judæi
 “ ‘et Saraceni. Surret gens contra gentem, et regnum ad-
 “ ‘versus alterum, et terræ motus magni erunt per loca, et
 “ ‘pestilentia et fames, et stellæ cadent in terra; fluvia con-
 “ ‘vertentur in sanguinem, et omnes aquæ quæ sub cælo
 “ ‘sunt. Regnante illo, erigent bellum contra illum duo pro-
 “ ‘phetae, scilicet Enoc et Helyas, qui modo tristantur in
 “ ‘Paradiso pro respectatione mortis; et interficiet eos Anti-
 “ ‘christus, et in platea civitatis jacebunt mortui tribus diebus
 “ ‘et tribus noctibus, et in quarta die resurgent in vitam
 “ ‘æternam. In ultimo Deus Omnipotens, Qui omnes vult
 “ ‘salvos fieri, transmittet Michaëlem archangelum rumpasam
 “ ‘acutam in manu tenentem (id est, gladium Spiritus Sancti),
 “ ‘et interficiet eum, et secabit eum in duas partes a summo
 “ ‘usque deorsum, ut non destruat mundus, sed renovetur
 “ ‘in melius: tribus annis et sex mensibus erit ita in con-
 “ ‘summatjone sæculi.’ ”

Ricard
gives to
Otho of
Saxony first
the county
of York,
then that of
Berkou.

Eodem¹ anno Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Othoni²
 nepoti suo, filio Matildis sororis suæ, quondam ducissæ
 Saxonie, comitatum Eboraci, et quamvis multi recep-
 sent eum, et fecissent ei homagia et fidelitates, multi
 tamen ei³ resistebant, dicentes quod a fidelitate regis
 non recederent, priusquam cum eo ore ad os loqueren-
 tur. Unde factum est, quod dominus rex dedit eidem
 Othoni comitatum Pietavis in commutationem comitatus
 Eboraci.

¹ *Eodem*] Here MSS B. D. I. re- | and afterwards emperor as Otho
sume. | IV

² *Othoni*] son of Henry the Lion, | ³ *ei*] om. D. I

*Nomina quorundam magnorum virorum qui eodem A.D. 1190.
anno obierunt in obsidione Accon.¹*

Benedict,
ii. 147.

Sibilla regina, uxor Gwidonis regis Jerusalem, et duæ filiæ
ejus,
Heraclius patriarcha Jerusalem,
Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus,
Archiepiscopus de Nazaret,
Archiepiscopus de Bezenzun,
Archiepiscopus de Arleleblanc,
Archiepiscopus de Monte Regali.
Episcopus de Sydoni, id est, de Saeta,
Novus episcopus de Acra,
Episcopus de Baruth,
Episcopus de Sancto Georgio,
Episcopus de Sancto Habraham,
Episcopus de Tabaria,
Abbas de Templo Domini,
Abbas de Monte Syon,
Abbas de Monte Oliveti,
Abbas de Forde,
Prior Sancti Sepulcri,
Radulfus de Alta Ripa, Archidiaconus Colecestriæ,
Rogerus le Abbe.

List of the
dead at
Acre.

Benedict,
ii. 148.

Fredericus Romanorum imperator obiit in eundo versus
terram Jerusalem, submersus in fluvio qui dicitur
Salef;

¹ The following list contains the names of most of the noble personages who died at Acre, or in Palestine during the siege of Acre: the majority belong to the years 1190 and 1191, but a few belong to 1192 and later. Queen Sibylla and her children were dead before Oct. 21, 1190 (*Epp. Cantuar.*, 329); the archbishop of Canterbury died Nov. 19 or 20, 1190; Thierris of Montfaucon, archbishop of Besançon, died Nov. 23, 1191 (*Gall. Chr.* i. 127); Letard, archbishop of Nazareth, in 1190; Peter Aynard, archbishop

of Arles, in 1189 or 1190; and the death of the abbot of Ford belongs to the latter year. The archbishop of Montreal, if it was William archbishop of Montreal in Sicily, was alive late in 1191; but probably it was the metropolitan of Petra, who bore the same title. The dates of the deaths of the inferior ecclesiastics would be difficult to determine certainly, nor are they of much importance, except to fix the time at which the list in the text was drawn up. MS. D. omits nearly the whole list.

A D. 1190.
List of the
nobles who
died on the
Crusade.

Et Conradus filius ejus, dux Suavia, obiit in obsidione Benedict,
n. 148.
Accon.
Et Robertus comes Leicestriae obiit in Romania in eundo
versus terram Jerusalem;
Et Landegravus de Alemannia obiit in Rumania in red-
eundo versus domum;
Et Johannes constabularius Cestriae obiit in terra Jeru-
salem apud Tyrum.
Rotrodus comes de Pertico obiit in obsidione Accon,
Et —¹ comes de Puntif,
Et Theobaldus comes de Blais,
Et Stephanus comes de Saunais,² frater ejus;
Et Willelmus comes de Ferreres,
Et dux Bertoldus de Alemannia,³
Et Rogernus comes⁴ de Apulia,
Et Jocellinus comes de Apulia,
Et —⁵ comes de Brenes,
Et Andrens frater ejus occisus,
Et Ingeram de Fenes occisus,
Et Lodowicus de Arseles occisus,
Et Hugo de Hoyri occisus,
Et Walterus de Moy occisus,
Et Gwido de Danzey occisus,
Et Ode de Gunesse occisus,
Et Pincerna de Sainzliz,⁶ captus a paganis,

¹ Et . . . } blank for the count of Ponthieu's Christian name in A.

² *Saunais*] Sancere, G The emperor Frederick was drowned in the Salef, June 10, 1190; Frederick of Swabia, his son, here called Conrad, died Jan 20, 1191 (*Chron. Recherches*, ed. Ludwig, p. 343); earl Robert of Leicester in 1190; the landgrave Lewis III of Thuringia, Oct. 16, 1190 (*Wilken*, iv. 287); John de Lacy, constable of Chester, Oct. 11 (*Mon. Angl.* v. 233); count Rotrou III of Perche, and John I. of Ponthieu, in 1190; Theobald of Blois, died the same day as Frederick of Swabia, Jan 20, 1191 (*Bohaden*, 157); and count Stephen of Sancere, and William of Ferreres,

were both dead before Oct. 21, 1190 (*Epp. Cant.* 329).

³ *Bertoldus de Alemannia*] Berthold V. of Zähringen, and Berthold V. of Meran, both returned in safety from the crusade.

⁴ *comes*] om. G.

⁵ Blank for the name of the count of Brienne, A.; Erard II. His brother Andrew d. Oct. 4, 1189. *Itin. R. R.* p. 71. MS. G. omits the count of Brienne, and proceeds, "et Andreas frater comitis de Brennes occisus." B. reads "et Jocelinus comes de Brenes."

⁶ *Sainzliz*] William of Sensis, the Great Butler, was taken prisoner on the day of the wedding of Conrad and Isabella, Nov. 21, 1190 (*Itin R.* p. 122; *Mon. Florent.*) and with

Benedict,
ii. 148.

Benedict,
ii. 149.

Et Marescallus comitis Henrici, captus a paganis;
Et Reginaldus de Magni occisus.
Præterea eodem anno obierunt in obsidione Accon
Vicecomes de Turonia,
Et dominus de Wanci,
Et Gilbertus de Tileres,
Et Florentius de Angest,
Et Jocellinus de Munmorenci,
Vicecomes de castello Heraldii,
Et Anselmus de Monte Regali, et tota familia ejus,
Et vicecomes de Castellun, et mater ejus,
Et Johannes comes de Vendome,
Et Castellanus de Ypre,
Et Gaufridus de la Bruiere,¹
Et Robertus de Boiues,²
Et Adam Camberlangus³ regis Franciæ,
Et Adam de Leume,⁴
Et Boues de Juvenni,
Et Willelmus de Pinkinni,⁵
Et Rogerus de Polebaro,⁶
Et Robertus Constabularius,⁷ senescallus comitis Wil-
helmi de Mandevilla.
⁸Ranulfus de Glamvilla, justitiarius Angliæ, obiit in obsi-
dione Accon,
Et Bernardus de Sancto Valerico, junior,
Et Ricardus de Clare,
Et Gwido de Castellun,
Et Walterus de Kime, filius Philippi de Kime,
Et Johannes de Lamburne,
Et Walterus de Ros, frater Petri de Ros.

A.D. 1190.
List of those
who died on
the Crusade.

him the marshall of count Henry of Champagne, who probably was William of Villehardouin. See Du Cange's *Villehardouin*, p. 236.

¹ *Bruiere*] Bruere, B. I.

² *Boiues*] Bonures, B.; Boinires, I.; Boïces, A.; Boires, G.

³ *Camberlangus*] Chamberlangus, B. I. Adam de Villebeon.

⁴ *Leun*] Loum, B. I.; Leun, G.

⁵ *Pinkinni*] Pinkeni, B.; Pinkenni, I. The viscount died in July 1192.

⁶ *Polebaro*] Polebar, B. I.

⁷ Robert Constable, probably one of the Holderness family, and so connected with the count of Aumâle.

⁸ *Et*, ins. I. Ranulf Glanvill, Bernard of S. Valery, and Richard of Clare, died before Oct. 21, 1190. Epp. Cantuar. 329. The list given in Benedict's Chronicle is much longer than this, although Hoveden's contains a few names that are wanting in it.

A D 1191-
1193.

Alfonso of
Leon sepa-
rated from
his wife by
Celestino
III and
Alfonso of
Castile.
(A. D. 1192.)

De regibus Hispaniæ.

Eodem anno Sanctius rex Portugalsis dedit Tarsiam¹ filiam suam Aldefonso regi de Sancto Jacobo, nepoti suo, in uxorem; de qua ipse genuit tres filias: et licet Cælestinus papa multum laborasset ut separarentur, tamen tenuit eam contra Deum et prohibitionem domini papæ per quinque annos: et dominus papa Cælestinus præfatum regem de Sancto Jacobo, et totam terram suam, sub interdicto posuit, et ita permansit per quinque annos. Interim surrexit in prædictum regem de Sancto Jacobo, Aldefonsus rex Castellæ, et coegit eum relinquere uxorem suam, filiam regis Portugalsis, et dedit ei propriam filiam suam in uxorem, permissione domini papæ Cælestini, pro bono pacis.

De filia imperatoris Affricæ.

The
daughter of
the emperor
of the
Moors falls
in love with
Sancho king
of Navarre.

Processu vero temporis filia Boyac Almiraminoli, imperatoris Africanorum, audita per communem fumam probitate Sanctii regis Navarræ,² fratris Berengeræ reginæ Angliæ, dilexit eum in tantum, quod vehementer adoptavit eum sibi in maritum. Et cum ipsa propositum suum diutius celare non posset, indicavit patri suo imperatori quod ipsa seipsum laqueo suspenderet, nisi Sanctius rex Navarræ eam sibi in uxorem duceret. Cui pater respondit, "Quo modo potest hoc fieri, cum tu sis pagana, et ille Christianus?" Cui filia respondit, Parata siquidem sum fidem Christianorum suscipere, et secundum legem illorum vivere, dummodo

¹ *Tarsiam* Tarsiam, D. Afr. r. v. oris known as S. Tharisa.

² Sancho VII, king of Navarre, 1194-1234. The alliance of Sancho with the emperor of Morocco is attributed by the Spanish historians

to his jealousy of the kings of Leon and Castile. The story of the loves of Sancho and the Moorish princess receives some little illustration from Roderick of Toledo ap. Baum vol. 1. p. 265.

“ prædictum regem Navarræ in maritum habeam; quod
 “ per te, pater mi, de facili potest fieri. Nam omnia
 “ te metuunt, et ad te sua brachia tendunt; blanditiis
 “ tamen opus est, terror furorque absint: preces et
 “ munera mitte viro, ut sic eum mihi compares.

A.D. 1191-1199.

Story of Sancho of Navarre and the Moorish princess.

Ovid.
Amores,
 i. 2. 83.

i. 8. 62.

“ Crede mihi, res est ingeniosa dare.

“ Mitte etiam matri et sorori, et aliis familiaribus suis,
 “ munera larga manu, ut ipsi eum in tuos conatus
 “ alliciant. Fit cito per multas præda petita manus.”

i. 8. 92.

Cui pater respondit

i. 10. 14.

“ Donec eras simplex, animum cum corpore amavi,
 “ Nunc mentis vitio læsa figura tua est.

“ Nescio quid faciam, angustiae enim mihi sunt¹ undi-
 “ que, quia nisi rex ille Navarræ in amorem tuum
 “ conversus fuerit, tu te laqueo suspendes; illum
 “ ergo precibus variisque muneribus aggrediar tentans,
 “ si eum modo quolibet tibi in maritum acquirere
 “ possim. Mallem tamen, ut tibi virum de gente nostra
 “ sumeres.” Cui puella respondit:

Heroides,
 iii. 63.

“ Devorer ante precor subito telluris hiatu,

“ Aut rutilo missi fulminis igne cremer,

“ quam aliquem habeam virum præter illum regem
 “ Navarræ.” Imperator igitur Africanorum misit nuncios
 suos ad Sanctium regem Navarræ, per quos mandavit
 illi, ut ipse veniret ad eum filiam suam in uxorem
 ducturus, et ille daret ei tantam pecuniam quantam
 vellet, et insuper totam terram quæ dicitur Hispania
 Saracenicæ, videlicet, totam terram quæ est a finibus
 terræ regis Portugalensis usque ad montem de Muncian,²
 qui dividit terras paganorum, qui sunt in Hispania, a
 terra regis Arragoniæ.

Dum autem rex Navarræ iret ad eum, mortuus est
 ille Boiac Almiramumoli,³ Africanorum imperator. Cum-

Death of the Moorish emperor.

¹ *mihi sunt*] circumstant, Savile.

² *Muncian*] Muncian, B. G. I.

³ *Almiramumoli*] Almirammoli,

I. Yacoub died May 19, 1199; and this episode, which it may be observed is added by Hoveden at the

A D. 1101-
1109
Humiliation
of Sancho of
Navarre at
the Moorish
court.

que præfatus rex Navarræ venisset in Africam, invenit imperatorem mortuum, et filius imperatoris defuncti adhuc minimus erat, et nondum aptus ad regni gubernationem, et erant ei in imperio multi adversantes. Cum autem rex Navarræ ad eum venisset sperans se accepturum sibi in conjugem præfatam¹ puellam, dixit ei puer qui regnaturus erat, quod si vellet juvare eum, et servire ei ad terram suam obtinendam, ipse daret ei sororem suam cum promissis patris sui, sin autem, poneret eum in captionem, de qua nunquam exiret. Ipse autem videns se in arcto positum, elegit magis servire ei quam poni in captione, juxta illud Augustini, "Qui murorum ambitu, ne fugiat, clauditur, ibi se præcipitet ubi murus brevior ingeritur." Domino igitur concedente, et Sanctio rege Navarræ laborante, filius Almiranimoli² subjugavit sibi infra triennium omnes adversarios suos; et factus est imperator. Interim Aldefonsus rex Castellæ, et rex Aragoniæ, invaserunt terram dicti regis Navarræ, unus illorum³ una parte, et alter illorum altera parte, ita quod Aldefonsus rex Castellæ cepit super eum viginti-quatuor oppida, et prædictus rex Aragoniæ⁴ cepit super eum octodecim oppida.

Secundus annus regni regis Ricardi, filii Henrici regis Secundi.

A D. 1190.
Dec 23.
Richard
King's
Christmas
at Messina.

Anno gratiæ m^o.cxc^o.i., qui erat annus secundus regni regis Ricardi, idem rex Ricardus et Philippus rex Francorum fuerunt simul in Sicilia apud Messanam, die Natalis Domini, que feria tertia venit.

Benedict,
ii. 158.

end of the year 1190 on a spare leaf, and is not of course found in Benedict, must have been one of the latest additions of the compiler. See the preface to vol. ii p. x, note 2

¹ præfatam] sibi. ins. Savile.

² Almiranimoli] Almiramonib, I

The new emperor's name is Mohammed abou Abdalla, surnamed Alnassir. He reigned from 1199 to 1213.

³ illorum] eorum, I.

⁴ Aragoniæ] Navarræ, A.; corrected by G

Benedict,
ii. 150.

Eodem die post prandium, Pisani et Januenses¹ scditiose fecerunt impetum in galiotas regis Angliæ, et mutuo se interfecerunt. Venit ergo² clamor inde ad aures regis Angliæ, qui adhuc sedebat ad mensam in Mategriffun castello suo: et epulabantur cum illo die illa Reginaldus Carnotensis episcopus, et Hugo dux Burgundiæ, et Willelmus comes de Neverz,³ et Willelmus comes de Juvenni, et Gaufridus comes de Pertico, et alii multi de familia regis Franciæ. Et velociter remota mensa, surrexerunt omnes viri illi, et processerunt omnes cum rege armati ad pugnam illam dirimendam: nec poterant: sed nocte superveniente, separati sunt ab invicem usque mane. In crastino, cum populus convenisset in ecclesia Sancti Johannis Hospitalis ad audiendum in ea⁴ Divinum officium, quidam Pisanus, extracto cultello suo, quendam galiotarum regis interfecit in ecclesia; et sic iterum congressi sunt Pisani et galiotæ, et multi ceciderunt ex utraque parte interfecti. Venerunt ergo rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ cum multa plebe⁵ armata, et pacem fecerunt inter illos.

A.D. 1190.
Dec. 25.
Tumult
amongst the
sailors.

Dec. 26.
The tumult
renewed.

Benedict,
ii. 151.

De discordia inter Ricardum regem Angliæ et Willelmum des Barres apud Messanam.

Deinde mense Februarii, die Purificationis Beatæ Mariæ semper virginis, Sabbato post prandium, Ricardus rex Angliæ, et multi de familia ejus, et quamplures⁶ de familia regis Franciæ, convenerunt more solito extra civitatem Messanam pluribus⁷ jocis intenti; et cum domum redissent, transeuntes per medium civitatis, obviaverunt cuidam rustico venienti de villa cum asino onusto arundinibus, quas cannas vocant; de quibus rex Angliæ, et cæteri qui cum illo erant, ceperunt, et unusquisque illorum cum altero congressus est: et contigit quod rex Angliæ et Willelmus de Barres, quidam miles optimus de familia regis Franciæ, congressi sunt alter adversus alterum, et confregerunt arundines suas, et fracta est cappa regis Angliæ ex percussione Willelmi de Barres; unde rex iratus impetum fecit in illum, ita quod illum et equum suum

A.D. 1191.
Feb. 2.
The nobles
tilt with
reeds.

Richard en-
gages with
William des
Barres.

Benedict,
ii. 155.

Benedict,
ii. 156.

¹ *Januenses*] Javennes, B. I.
² *ergo*] igitur, B. I.
³ *comes de Neverz*] Peter of Courtenay; *Willelmus* is a mistake.
⁴ *in ea*] om. B. D. I.

⁵ *plebe*] om. I.; armatura, D.
⁶ *quamplures*] quidam populares, Savile.
⁷ *pluribus*] popularibus, Savile.

A. D. 1149. titulare fecit. Et dum rex intenderet dejicere eum in terram, Benedict.
 Feb. 2. subversa est sella regis, et rex celerius descendit, et n. 156.
 Quarrel between Richard and Willem des Barres. conductus est ei alius equus fortior priore, et ascendens in eo iterum fecit impetum in Willelmum de Barres, tentans dejicere eum, et non potuit. Ipse enim adhasit collo equi sui, et comminatus est ei rex. Et cum Robertus de Bretuil, filius Roberti comitis Leicostriæ, quem rex die præcedenti accinxerat gladio comitatus patris sui, injecisset manum in Willelmum de Barres, ut dominum suum regem juvaret, dixit ei rex; "Sustine, et dimitte me et illum solum." Et cum du rex et Willelmus contendissent, et dictus et factis, dixit illi rex, "Fuge hinc, et cavo tibi ne amplius coram me compareas, quia amodo² et usque in sempiternum ego ero tibi et tuis inimicus." Discessit itaque Willelmus des Barres a facie regis, dolens et confusus propter indignationem regis; et abiit ad regem Franciæ dominum suum, consilium et auxilium ab eo postulans super his quæ acciderant in via. In crastino venit rex Franciæ ad regem Angliæ ex parte Willelmi des Barres, cum humili deprecatione pacem et misericordiam postulans, et noluit rex audire eum. In sequenti die venerunt ad regem Angliæ episcopus Carnotensis,³ et dux Burgundiæ, et comes de Nevers, et multi de proceribus regni Francorum, cum humillimis supplicationibus ad genua ejus provoluti, pacem et misericordiam postulantes pro Willelmo des Barres; et noluit rex audire eos.

Feb. 4. Tertiam autem die sequenti Willelmus des Barres recessit a Benedict.
 Interecession of Bishop. civitate Messana. Dominus enim suus rex Franciæ noluit n. 157.
 Feb. 4. Interecession of the knights. retinere illum diutius contra voluntatem et prohibitionem regis Angliæ. Post multum vero temporis, cum tempus transfretandi appropinquasset, venerunt iterum ad regem Angliæ rex Franciæ, et omnes archiepiscopi et episcopi, et comites et barones, et principes totius exercitus, et provoluti ad pedes ejus, pacem et misericordiam postulaverunt pro Willelmo des Barres, ostendentes ei damna et inopportunitates quæ accidere possent de absentia talis tantique⁴ militis: et cum magna difficultate obtinuerunt adversus regem Angliæ quod prædictus Willelmus in pace rediret, et quod rex Angliæ

Richard at last returns from.

¹ *il i*] ei, D. I.

² *amodo*] animo, Savile.

³ *episcopus Carnotensis*] archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, Savile.

Benedict has, also by mistake, *comes Carnotensis*.

⁴ *tantique*] et tanti, B. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 157.

nec illi nec suis malum vel damnum faceret, vel inquireret, quamdiu ipsi fuerint in servitio Dei.

A.D. 1191.
February.

De donis quæ Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit apud Messanam.

Deinde rex Angliæ dedit multas naves regi Franciæ et suis. Deinde rex Angliæ ita profuse distribuit thesauros suos universis militibus et servientibus totius exercitus, quod a multis dicebatur, quod nunquam aliquis prædecessorum suorum tantum dedit in uno anno quantum ipse dederat in illo mense. Et pro certo credendum est, quod in distributione illa promeruit ipse favorem Tonantis,¹ cum scriptum sit, "Hilarem datorem diligit Deus."

Profuse
liberality of
Richard.

2 Cor. ix. 7.

Eodem mense Februarii rex Angliæ misit galeas suas Neapolim, contra reginam Alienor matrem suam, et contra Berengeram filiam Sanctii² regis Navarræ, quam ipse in uxorem ducturus erat, et contra Philippum comitem Flandriæ, qui cum illis veniebat. Prædicta autem mater regis, et filia regis Navarræ, perrexerunt Brundusium; ubi Margaritus admiralis, et alii homines regis Tancredi, honorifice susceperunt eas, et omnem exhibuerunt illis honorem et reverentiam. Comes vero Flandriæ venit Neapolim, et inventis ibi galeis regis Angliæ, intravit et venit Messanam, et in multis adhæsit consilio et voluntati regis Angliæ. Unde rex Franciæ iratus adversus comitem, effecit quod ipse, relicto rege Angliæ, ad illum rediit.

Arrival of
queen
Eleanor and
Berengaria
of Navarre
at Brundusium.

Philip of
Flanders
arrives at
Messina.

De discordia inter cancellarium et Johannem comitem Moretonii.

Interim gravis dissensio orta est in Anglia inter cancellarium regis, et Johannem comitem Moretonii fratrem regis, et alios principes regni; et ita in immensum excrevit, quod illi universaliter scripserunt regi

Quarrels in
England
between
John and
the Chan-
cellor.

¹ *Tonantis*] donantis, Benedict. | ² *Sanctii*] Sancho V.

Benedict,
ii. 158.

A D 1191.
February.
Richard
sends the
archbishop
of Rouen
and William
Marshall to
England.

de statu regni sui, et de gravaminibus quæ idem cancellarius populo regni faciebat. Cum igitur rex audisset excessus et inopportunitates quas cancellarius sans populo faciebat, misit a Messana in Angliam Walterum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum, et Willelmum Marecallum comitem de Strigul,¹ mandans cancellario, ut in omnibus agendis regni haberet ipse prædictum Rotomagensem archiepiscopum, et Willelmum Marecallum, et Gaufridum

Benedict.
ii 168.

¹ Ralph de Diceto, c. 659, gives a letter of Richard dated at Messina, Feb. 23, and brought to England by the archbishop of Rouen; addressed to the chancellor, Geoffrey fitz-Peter, Wiman Marshall, Hugh Bardulf and Wilham Briwer; associating the archbishop with them in the government of the country. He also, in the same column, gives an extract from another letter addressed to the same persons, the chancellor excepted, in which he directs that, if the chancellor shall not have managed the government according to the advice of the recipients, they are to take charge of it, and exercise the supreme power. The letter from which this is taken is given in full by Giraldus Cambrensis, with the date, February 20; (*Ang. Sac.* n. 396); it contains an order that nothing is to be done without the assent and counsel of the archbishop of Rouen; and instead of lodging the supreme power in the hands of the recipients, *secundum dispositionem vestram*, he says, *secundum prædicti archiepiscopi dispositionem*: so that either Giraldus has interpolated the letter; or Ralph de Diceto, who, however, was an intimate friend of the archbishop, has garbled it; or, as is most probable, Richard furnished the archbishop with a whole pack of

letters, to be played as circumstances might make it expedient. The archbishop of Rouen landed at Shoreham on the 27th of April. It is not improbable that he was anxious to be elected to Canterbury. There were at the time no less than five personal factions in the kingdom. 1. That of John, who was anxious to get the government into his hands. 2. That of the chancellor, who wanted to retain the government as the king's representative, against John, but wished probably for the primacy for himself. 3. That of the archbishop of Rouen, who, as against John, was loyal to Richard; but was active against the chancellor, whom he regarded as an unpopular if not a treacherous minister, and as a dangerous rival for the see of Canterbury. 4. The party of the justiciars, who represented the baronage generally, and were faithful to the king, but were only strong enough to play off John, the chancellor, and the archbishop against each other. 5. Geoffrey of York had also a small party, but was doubted, and I think persecuted, more or less by all the four others. Under these circumstances if Richard showed some little duplicity in uttering provisional or contradictory instructions, the statecraft or kingcraft was perhaps excusable.

filiū Petri, et Willelmum Bruere, et Hugonem Bardolf, socios et testes. Qui cum in Angliam venissent, litteras regis tradere cancellario ausi non fuerant, timentes quod magis incurrerent odium illius, quam honorem inde reciperent. Cancellarius namque omnia mandata regis spernebat, et nullum habere voluit parem sibi aut socium in regno.

A.D. 1191.
April.

They are afraid to present their commissions to the Chancellor.

De colloquio inter Ricardum regem Angliæ et Tancredum regem Siciliae.

Prima autem die mensis Martii, Ricardus rex Angliæ recessit a Messana, et perrexit inde usque ad civitatem Cathinensium (ubi requiescit sanctissimum corpus Beatæ Agathæ, virginis et martyris), ad loquendum cum Tancredo rege Siciliae, qui illuc obviam illi venerat. Cum ergo rex Tancredus audisset adventum regis Angliæ, exivit obviam illi, et cum summa reverentia, et honore regiæ excellentiæ debito, suscepit eum, et introduxit in civitatem.

March 1.
Richard goes to Catania to meet Tancred.

Et simul euntibus illis ad tumbam Beatæ Agathæ martyris, ante ingressum templi occurrerunt eis clerus et populus, laudantes et benedicentes Dominum. Qui eos in tantæ dilectionis foedera associavit. Facta igitur oratione ad sepulcrum Beatæ Agathæ, rex Angliæ ingressus est palatium regis Tancredi cum illo, et habitaverunt ibi simul tribus diebus, et tribus noctibus. Quarta autem die rex Siciliae dona multa et magna, in auro et argento, et equis, et pannis sericis, misit regi Angliæ; sed ipse nihil inde recepit præter anulum quendam parvulum, quem in signum mutuæ dilectionis accepit. Hæc contra rex Angliæ dedit regi Tancredo gladium illum optimum quem Brittones Caliburne vocant, qui fuerat gladius Arturi, quondam nobilis regis Angliæ. Præterea rex Tancredus dedit regi Angliæ quatuor magnas naves, quas vocant Ursers,¹ et xv. galeas: et cum rex Angliæ recessisset ab eo, ipse in propria persona sua reduxit eum usque ad Tavermin, per duas dietas magnas a civitate Cathinensium.

March 3-6.
He stays with him three days.

They exchange presents.

Tancred accompanies Richard to Taormina.

¹ *Ursers*] *Ufers*, Benedict.

Benedict, ii. 158.

Benedict, ii. 159.

A.D. 1191. *Item causa discordia inter regem Angliæ et regem Franciæ.*

March 7
Tancred re-
veals to
Richard the
treachery of
Philip.

Et in crastino cum rex Angliæ recedere vellet, rex Tancredus tradidit ei quoddam breve, quod rex Franciæ miserat illi per ducem Burgundiæ, et mandaverat per breve illud, quod rex Angliæ proditor erat, et pacem, quam cum illo fecerat, non servaret;¹ et si ipse rex Tancredus vellet cum rege Angliæ in bello congredi, vel de nocte invadere, ille et gens sua auxiliarentur ei, ad regem Angliæ et exercitum suum destruendum. Et respondit illi rex Angliæ: "Proditor non sum, nec fui, nec ero; et pacem, quam vobiscum feci, in nullo sum transgressus, nec transgrediar quamdiu vixero: et de facili credere non possum, quod rex Franciæ hac de me vobis mandaverit, cum ipse dominus meus sit, et socius adjuratus in illa peregrinatione." Cui rex Tancredus respondens ait: "Ego trado vobis litteras quas ipse mihi misit per ducem Burgundiæ, et si dux Burgundiæ negaverit quod ipse has litteras mihi ex parte domini sui regis Franciæ attulisset, ego id dirationare² adversus eum paratus sum per unum de ducibus meis." Et sic cum litteris illis de manu regis Tancredi receptis, rex Angliæ Messanam reversus est.³

Benedict,
ii. 159.

Benedict,
ii. 159.

He gives
him Philip's
treacherous
letters.

De colloquio inter regem Franciæ et regem Tancredum.

March 7-8.
Philip visits
Tancred at
Taormina.

Coolness be-
tween
Richard and
Philip.

Et eodem die rex Franciæ venit Tavermin, et locutus est cum rege Tancredo, et cum illo moram fecit ibi per unam noctem, et in crastino rediit Messanam. Rex vero Angliæ in iram commotus adversus regem Franciæ, nec faciem hilarem nec pacem spondentem ei præstendebat, sed opportunitatem quærebat, ut ab eo cum suis recederet. Inquirente igitur rege Franciæ cur hoc esset, mandavit illi rex Angliæ, per Philippum comitem Flandriæ, omnia verba quæ rex Siciliæ dixerat ei de illo, et in testimonium facti

¹ *servaret*] servavit, Savile.

² *dirationare*] dirationare, B. D. I.

³ *reversus est*] This conversation

is given in different language by
Benedict.

Benedict,
ii. 160.

ostendit ei prædictas litteras. Quod cum regi Franciæ A.D. 1191. March. constaret, male sibi conscius obmutuit, ignorans quid contra Philip disowns the letters. hæc diceret. Tandem tamen ad se reversus ait: "Nunc
" scio vere quod rex Angliæ quærit causas malignandi
" adversus me, quia hæc verba ficta sunt et mendacia:
" sed credo quod ipse cogitavit hæc mala adversum
" me, ut Alesiam sororem meam dimittat, quam ipse sibi
" desponsandam juravit: sed pro certo sciat, quod si ille
" dimiserit eam, et aliam duxerit in uxorem, ero illi
" et suis inimicus quamdiu vixero." His auditis rex Richard refuses to marry Alais Angliæ respondit, quod ¹ sororem illius sibi in uxorem ducere nulla ratione posset, quia rex Angliæ pater suus eam cognoverat, et filium ex ea genuerat, et ad hoc probandum multos produxit testes, qui parati erant modis omnibus hoc probare.

De concordia facta inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ apud Messanam.

Benedict,
ii. 161.

Quod cum regi Franciæ per multorum assertiones inno- The count of Flanders mediates. tuit, consilio comitis Flandriæ et aliorum fidelium suorum adquievit; et ut omnia mala, tam de his quam de aliis, inter ipsum et regem Angliæ remitterentur, ipse quietum clamavit regem a fide et sacramentis, et omni conventionem quam cum illo fecerat super matrimonio contrahendo inter illum et Alesiam sororem Richard pays a large sum to Philip to break off the marriage and obtain the homage of Brittany. suam; et pro hac conventionem rex Angliæ spondit se daturum regi Franciæ per quinquennium, singulis annis, duo millia marcarum sterlingorum, de quibus ipse in principio hujus conventionis tradidit regi Franciæ duo millia marcarum. Et cum ipsi in terras suas redirent, rex Angliæ traderet regi Franciæ Alesiam sororem suam liberam, et Gysortium, et cætera omnia quæ rex Franciæ cum sorore sua ei in matrimonio concesserat. Et sub hac conventionem rex Franciæ dedit regi Angliæ licentiam ducendi in ² uxorem quamcunque vellet: et insuper concessit ei, et carta sua confirmavit, quod ducatus Britanniæ in

¹ quod] quidem, I.; om. D | ² in] om. D. I.

A. D. 1191. *perpetuum pertineat ad dominium ducis Normanniæ, Benedict.*
 March. *et ut dux Britannię semper sit homo ducis Normanniæ, il. 161.*
 Agreement *et ei respondeat sicut ligio domino suo; et dux Nor-*
 between *manniæ respondeat regi Franciæ tam de ducatu Bri-*
 Richard and *tanniæ, quam de ducatu Normanniæ. Et sic in illa die*
 Philip. *facti sunt amici rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ, et omnes con-*
ventiones illas fide et sacramentis, sub sigillorum suorum
testimonio, confirmaverunt.

De recessu regis Franciæ a Messana versus Accaron.

March 30. *Et eodem mense Martii, tertio kalendas Aprilis, Sabbato,*
 Philipp sails *Philippus rex Franciæ recessit a portu Messanæ cum toto*
 to Acro, *navigio suo, et vicesimo secundo die sequenti, scilicet, die*
 where he *Sabbati in hebdomada Paschæ, venit ipso cum exercitu suo*
 arrives *ad obsidionem Accon.*
 April 20.

Rex vero Angliæ, et exercitus ejus, remanserunt apud Messanam post recessum regis Franciæ.

De adventu Alienor reginæ ad Messanam.

March 30. *Et eodem die quo rex Franciæ recessit a Messana, venit*
 Arrival of *illuc regina Alienor, mater Ricardi regis Angliæ, et adduxit*
 Eleanor and *secum Berengeram filiam Sanctii regis Navarræ,¹ quam idem*
 Berengaria. *rex Angliæ in uxorem erat daturus. Et quarta die sequenti²*
prædicta regina Alienor inde recessit versus Angliam,
 April 2. *per Romam transitura propter negotium Gaufridi Ebo-*
 Eleanor goes *racensis electi: per illam enim mandavit rex Angliæ*
 home by *summo pontifici, et humiliter postulavit, ut ipse elec-*
 way of *tionem prædicti Gaufridi confirmaret, et eum in archi-*
 Rome. *episcopum Eboracensem consecraret, vel ab alio conse-*
crari permetteret. Abeunte itaque regina Alienor, filia
regis Navarræ remansit in custodia regis Angliæ, cum
sorore ejusdem regis, Johanna regina Siciliæ.

¹ Sancho VI., 1150-1194.

² *quarta die sequenti*] April 2. The queen had come from England through France, by the Great S. Bernard, and through the plains of Lombardy. R. de Dic. 662. That she should return by Rome is very probable. If she did she must have

been there about the time of pope Clement's death, and her business must have been transacted with Celestine III. The author of the *Itinerarium* merely says that she went from Messina to Salerno by barge, and thence to Normandy.

Clemens papa obiit : Cælestinus papa efficitur. A.D. 1191.

Benedict,
n. 161.

Mense Aprilis, quarto idus ejusdem mensis, feria quarta, obiit Clemens papa tertius, cui successit Jacinctus,¹ diaconus cardinalis Sanctæ Mariæ in Cosmedin, et in ipsa vigilia Paschæ ordinatus est in sacerdotem; et in die Paschæ, qui in xviii^o kalendas Maii evenit, in Romanum pontificem consecratus est, ab Octoviano Hostiensi episcopo, et vocatus est Cælestinus papa tertius.

April 10.
Clement III.
d. es.

April 14.
Celestine
III consecrated.

Benedict,
n. 162.

*Cælestinus papa coronavit Henricum Romanorum imperatorem, et Constanciam uxorem suam in imperatricem.*²

In crastino autem consecrationis suæ dominus papa transiit se a Laterano usque ad ecclesiam Beati Petri, et venit ibi obviam ei Henricus Alemannorum rex, cum Constantia uxore sua, et cum copiosa plebe armata. Romani vero clauserunt portas urbis, et custodierunt eas in manu forti et armata, non permittentes eos intrare. Dominus vero papa ante ostium ecclesiæ Beati Petri, supra gradus, recepit sacramentum a prædicto Alemannorum rege, quod ipse ecclesiam Dei et jura ecclesiastica fideliter servaret illibata, et quod

April 15.
Celestine
III. receives
Henry VI.
at St.
Peter's.

¹ *Jacinctus*] cardinal deacon of S. Mary in Cosmedin, 1144-1191.

² Hoveden is the only authority for the story, that Celestine kicked the crown from the emperor's head; which is commonly regarded as apocryphal. There is, however, nothing improbable in such an event; and if Eleanor were at Rome at the time, Hoveden's authority is good. The whole thing may have been accidental, for Celestine was an infirm old man; and it may have been interpreted as illustrating the well known imperious character of the pontiff. But it is

quite as likely to have been intentional on the part of the pope, who was an uncompromising maintainer of his own supremacy, and whose temper at this advanced age was uncontrollable. On the whole I am inclined to think that Hoveden's credibility would not have been doubted, notwithstanding his being the sole authority, if it had not been for the controversial questions affected by the story. But as some doubt hangs over Eleanor's visit to Rome, I cannot venture to assert the truth of it.

A D. 1101.
April 15.
Coronation
of Henry VI.
and Con-
stantia.

rectam justitiam teneret, et quod patrimonium Beati Petri, si quid inde ablatum esset, in integrum restitueret, et quod Tusculanum ei redderet. Deinde introduxit eos dominus papa in ecclesiam, et unxit eum in imperatorem, et uxorem suam in imperatricem. Sedebat autem dominus papa in cathedra pontificali, tenens coronam auream imperialem inter pedes suos, et imperator inclinatus capite recepit coronam, et imperatrix similiter, de pedibus domini papæ. Dominus autem papa statim percussit eum pede suo¹ coronam imperatoris, et dejecit eam in terra, significans quod ipse potestatem ejiciendi eum ab imperio habet, si ille demeruerit: sed cardinales statim arripientes coronam imposuerunt eam capiti imperatoris.

Benedict,
n. 163.

The pope
kicks the
crown from
the em-
peror's head.

*Causa quare Celestinus papa tradiderit Romanis
civitatem suam Tusculanum.*

The history
of the dis-
pute be-
tween the
Romans and
the pope
about Tus-
culum.

Ut autem sciatur causa, quare dominus papa Celestinus reddiderit Romanis Tusculanum civitatem suam, pauca repetamus, quæ prius gesta sunt. Electo et consecrato in summum pontificem Clemente (videlicet, ut moris est, Pisis,² ubi bonæ memoriæ Gregorius VIII. migrarat ad Dominum ex hac luce), domino Prænestino episcopo, misit idem dominus Clemens absque ulla mora legatos suos ad cives Romanos, ut inter se et illos pax deberet firmissima reformari. Discordia siquidem concepta est occasione Tusculani, civitatis scilicet propriæ domini papæ, per x. millia distantis ab urbe, quam Romani gwerra insatiabili, ut eam sibi subjicerent, impugnabant: et etiam occasione conflictus qui fuerat inter Romam et Tusculanum, per quem plusquam quinque millia Romanorum eadem die gladio

¹ suo] sua, B. I.

² Clement III., Paul Scolaro, | previously bishop of Palestrina, was

| elected pope at Pisa, Dec. 19, 1187.

perierunt, a tempore Alexandri papæ usque ad tempora prædicti Clementis, inter ecclesiam duraverat et Romanos. Legati autem cum venissent ad urbem, induxerunt Romanos ut tanquam filii benigni ad patrem suum spirituales corda sua converterent, ipsumque ut pium patrem redeuntem ad eos devotissime curarent recipere, ac fierent unum de cætero sicut condecebat. Quibus responderunt in hæc verba Romani: "Hoc, quia sanctum et dignum est, ardenti desiderio, etiam plus quam dominus et pater noster, sicut veri et humiles filii, omni mora sublata, fieri peroptamus; ita tamen si damna nobis emendare, et injuriam simul, et verecundiam, quam occasione guerræ Tusculani sustinimus olim cum patribus nostris, et adhuc sustinemus, nobiscum pariter voluerit vindicare; et ad impugnandum Tusculanum, si necesse fuerit, milites suos in expensis propriis mittere, si pax ad honorem urbis, per subjectionem, et tributum annuum in scriptis redactum a Tusculano solvendum urbi, non poterit inter nos reformari. Si etiam Tusculanum ad voluntatem nostram faciendam tradere nobis promiserit, si post refutationem ineundæ pacis secundum antedictum tenorem inter nos et Tusculanum, aliquo dierum poterit Tusculanum habere." His itaque et quibusdam aliis libertatibus tandem a suprascripto Clemente papa Romanis concessis, idem Clemens accessit ad urbem, de qua extiterat oriundus, unde secundum conventionem dictam, Tusculanum et cives ipsius,¹ cum juxta petitionem suprascriptam a Romanis factam, non posset idem dominus Clemens Tusculanum Romanis subdicere, ex tunc eos Romanis exponens, durius impugnabat. Et licet per quatuor fere annos vixerit in papatu, guerram tamen ipsam cum Romanis nullatenus ad finem perduxit; quanvis majorem fere partem Tusculanensium, quos

A.D. 1191.
Clement III.
fals. 26. sett. a
luc. quarrel.

¹ secundum . . . ipsius] om. Savile.

A D. 1101.
Cruelty of
the Romans
to the men
of Tusculum.

Their pro-
posals to
Celestine
III.

Celestine de-
mands Tus-
culum of
the emperor,
who gives
it up to him.

extra munitionem suam capiebant Romani positi in insidiis, diversis penis et cruciatibus interfecissent. Quosdam enim ex illis, quos capiebant, morti tradebant omnino, quosdam mutilatos pedibus, quosdam orbatos oculis, quosdam truncatis manibus collo suspensis, ad propria remittebant. Quæ omnia se malle pati constantissime affirmabant, quam severitati subijci Romanorum. Mortuo vero Clemente, et domino Jacincto, tunc¹ diacono cardinali Sanctæ Mariæ in Cosmedin, in summum pontificem Cœlestino postmodum substituto, et Henrico tunc rege ad coronam imperii recipiendam, qui ad hoc a domino Clemente vocatus fuerat, festinante; Romani, antequam idem rex accessisset ad urbem, supplicarunt domino Cœlestino, ut antequam prædictum regem in imperatorem ungeret, obtineret ab ipso,² ut civitatem Tusculanensem sibi redderet, quæ in ipsius posita erat potestate. Ad ipsum enim se converterant, et ipsius patrocinium invocant, ex quo supra nominatus Clemens exposuit, ut dictum est, illos Romanis; eidem domino Cœlestino instantissime proponentes, quod hæc erat via qua Tusculanum ad eorum manus rediret, et quod ad faciendum hoc tenebatur ex conventiono prædicta.

Quod ita concessum est illis. Euntes autem nuncii domini papæ ad regem, firmiter proposuerunt eidem, quod de Tusculano antedicta facta erat conventio inter summum pontificem et Romanos, et ut ideo domino papæ Tusculanum redderetur, necessitas exigebat. Quod cum intellexisset rex, et advertisset quod aliter coronationi suæ de facili posset impedimentum præstari, petitioni domini papæ, super Tusculanum³ reddendo, liberaliter⁴ adquievit; factumque est ita, quod coronato rege in imperatorem, altera die traditum est Tusculanum ab eodem imperatore domino papæ; et a domino

¹ tunc] om. D. I.

² ipso] isto, B. I.

³ Tusculanum] eum, ms. B. I.;
ei, ins. D.

⁴ liberaliter] om. D. I.

papa sequente tertia¹ die Romanis, atque a Romanis destructum ita, quod lapis super lapidem non remansit.

A.D. 1191.
April.
It is destroyed by the Romans.

De recessu Ricardi regis Angliæ a Messana.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ, mense Aprilis, fregit et comminuit castellum suum, quod dicebatur Mategriffun, ante regressum suum a Messana, sicut promiserat regi Tancredo. Et feria quarta ante Cœnam Domini, ipse cum toto exercitu suo et navigio suo recessit a portu Messanæ, cum centum quinquaginta magnis navibus, et cum quinquaginta tribus galeis bene armatis; et in die Parasceuæ Domini, circa horam diei nonam, venit ventus horribilis ab austro, et navigium ejus dissipavit. Rex vero, cum parte navigii sui, applicuit in insula de Crete,² deinde in insula de Rodes. Buscia autem magna, in qua erant regina Siciliæ et filia regis Navarræ, cum multis de familiaribus regis, et duæ aliæ busciæ cum illa, tempestate adhuc sæviente, pervenerunt ad insulam de Cypro; rege nesciente quo busciæ illæ devenissent.

Richard demolishes Mategriffon.

April 10.
He sails from Messina.

April 12.
Great storm at sea.

Benedict, ii. 162.

Causa quare rex Angliæ invasit Cyprum.

Post tempestatem misit rex galeas quærere busciam illam, in qua regina soror ejus, et filia regis Navarræ erant, et invenerunt eas extra portum de Limeszun.³ Aliæ duæ busciæ, quæ cum illis venerunt ante portum de Limeszun, perierunt, in quibus multi milites et servientes de familia regis submersi sunt: inter quos, proh dolor, magister Rogerus Malus Catulus, vicecancellarius regis, submersus est, et sigillum regis, quod gestabat in collo

The ship of Berengaria driven to Cyprus.

The vice-chancellor drowned.

¹ tertia] om. D. I.

² in insula de Crete] April 17. On the following day he re-embarked; and on the 22nd landed in Rhodes. There he stayed ten days, and re-

embarked on the 1st of May. Itiner. 177, et seqq.

³ Limeszun] Limesun, D. I.; Lineszun, G.

A.D. 1101. ^{May.} ^{The emperor of Cyprus captures the shipwrecked people.} ejus susponsum, inveniebatur.¹ Catalla autem submersorum thesaurizavit sibi Ysacius imperator de Cypro; et omnes qui naufragium illud evaserunt, cepit et incarceravit, et pecunias eorum eis abstulit. Qui etiam plusquam furiali crudelitate debacchatus, busciam illam in qua regina Siciliæ et filia regis Navarrae erant, non permisit portum intrare. Benedict, ii. 162, 163.

Quod cum regi Angliæ nunciatum esset, festinanter ad earum præsidium venit, cum galeis multis, et cum magno storio navium; et invenit eas extra portum de Limeszun, ventis et mari expositas. Et iratus² inde valde, misit nuncios suos ad imperatorem de Cypro, semel, secundo, tertio,³ petens et cum humili deprecatione postulans, quatenus intuitu Divini amoris, et propter reverentiam vivificæ crucis, peregrinos suos, quos in vinculis tenebat captivos, permetteret abire illæsos, et ut catalla eorum eis restitueret, et ut redderet illi catalla hominum suorum submersorum, ad faciendum inde servitium Dei pro animabus illorum.

^{Richard de ma de reddes.} Quibus imperator ille superbe locutus est, dicens quod ipse neque peregrinos redderet, neque catalla submersorum. The emperor refuses.

Audiens itaque rex quod nefandus ille imperator nihil pro illo faceret, nisi per vim, præcepit universo exercitui suo ut arma sua caperent, et armati sequerentur eum. Et ait illis; "Sequimini me, et⁴ vindicemus " injurias quas perfidus ille imperator Deo et nobis fecit, " qui peregrinos nostros contra Dei justitiam et æquitatem in vinculis tenet. Et nolite timere eos, quia " inermes sunt, fugæ potius quam bello parati; nos " vero bene sumus armati, et

" Arma tenenti

" Omnia dat, qui justa negat.

" Et oportet ut viriliter pugnemus ad liberandum " populum Dei a perditione; scientes quod aut oportet " nos vincere aut mori. Sed certam habeo in Domino

Lucan, Phars. i. 340

¹ *inveniebatur*] inventum est, B D. I; *inveniebatur* is corrected to *inventum* est in A. in a later hand; G. has *inventum* est. Roger had been vice-chancellor in attendance on the king since he left Normandy,

John of Alençon being left behind in the same capacity in France Roger was drowned April 24.

² *iratus*] *juratus*, Savile.

³ *tertio*] om. D. I.; et *tertio*, B.

⁴ *et*] *ut*, Savile.

Benedict.
l. 163.

“fiduciam, quod Ipse dabit nobis hodie victoriam de isto perfido imperatore, et de gente sua.” Interim imperator illo occupaverat littora maris undique, cum gente sua; et pauci illorum erant armati, et fere omnes indocti ad praelium; tamen stabant in littore, cum gladiis et lanceis et fustibus, habentes asseres et ligna, et sedilia, et arcas, ante illos pro muro. Cum autem rex Angliæ et sui essent armati, exierunt de magnis navibus in naviculas et galeas, et remigando venerunt ad terram cum magno impetu; et sagittarii praibant, facientes cæteris viam perviam.¹ Et cum applicuissent, rege prævio, impetum fecerunt unanimiter in imperatorem et Griffones suos; et quasi imber super gramina, ita cecidere sagittæ super pugnantes.

A. D. 1191.
May 6.
Defence of
the shore.

Benedict.
d. 164.

Ysakius imperator Cypri versus est in fugam.

Et cum diu pugnassent, imperator cum suis versus est in fugam: quos rex Angliæ secutus est in ore gladii, et stragem magnam ex obstantibus faciens, vivos cepit multos, et nisi nox celerius superveniret, forsitan rex illo die² cepisset imperatorem. Sed quia rex et gens sua pedites erant, et vias montium, per quos imperator et sui fugiebant, ignorabant, cum præda magna redierunt ad villam de Limeszun, quam Griffones reliquerant: et invenerunt in ea abundantiam frumenti, et vini, et olei, et carniæ.

Flight of the
emperor.

Desertion
and capture
of Limesol.

Eodem die,³ post victoriam regis Angliæ, soror ejus regina Sicilia, et filia regis Navarræ, intraverunt portum de Limeszun cum cætero navigio regis. Imperator vero, religatis hominibus suis sibi, qui dispersi erant per dumos in convallibus, eadem nocte castra sua metatus est quasi per quinque miliaria ab exercitu regis Angliæ, sub juramento affirmans quod in crastino dimicaret cum rege Angliæ. Quod cum rex audisset per exploratores suos, longe ante lucem se et exercitum suum armari fecit, et sine tumultu procedens, venit ad exercitum imperatoris, et invenit eos dormientes. Et cum magna et horribili exclamatione intravit tentoria eorum, et excitati a somno facti sunt velut mortui, nescientes quid face-

May 7.

Richard
attacks
Isaac's
camp.

¹ perviam] om. Savile
² illo die] May 6, Itiner. 191.

³ Eodem die] die crastino, Itiner.
192: May 7.

A.D. 1101. rent aut quo fugerent, quia invadebat eos exercitus regis Benedict,
ii. 164.
 May. Angliæ velut lupi rapaces, et fecerunt ex illis stragem
 magnam.

Ysaius imperator iterum fugit victus.

Narrow
escape of the
emperor.

Imperator vero cum paucis suorum nudus evasit, relin-
 quens post se thesauros et equos et arma, et tentoria sua
 pulcherrima, et vexillum suum imperiale per totum auro de-
 super contextum, quod rex Angliæ statim destinavit¹ Berto
 Edmundo, regi et martyri glorioso. Et sic rex Angliæ
 summa potitus victoria rediit ad Limeszun, hostium
 suorum magnificus triumphator.

May 11.
Arrival of
Guy of
Lusignan.

Tertia die sequenti² venerunt ad regem Angliæ in insula de Benedict,
ii. 165.
 Cypre Gwido rex Jerusalem, et Gaufridus de Lezinan frater
 ejus, et Amfridus Del Turun, et Raimundus princeps Antio-
 chie, et Boimundus filius ejus, comes Tripolis, et Leo frater
 Rupini de la Muntaino,³ et obtulerunt regi servitia sua,
 et homines sui devenerunt, et fidelitates ei juraverunt contra
 omnes homines.

Ysaius imperator fecit pacem cum Ricardo rege.

Isaac offers
peace.

Eodem die imperator de Cypre, videns se omnino destitui
 virtute et auxilio suorum, supplices legationes⁴ misit ad regem
 Angliæ, et obtulit ei pacem in hac forma, scilicet, quod ipse

¹ *destinavit*] om. I.; consult. D.;
destinaverat, Savile.

² *Tertia*] vero, ins. D. Sabbato
 sequenti, Itiner. 197. May 11.

³ These are Guy and Geoffrey of
 Lusignan; Henfrid III. of Toron,
 the divorced husband of queen Isa-
 bella of Jerusalem; Bohemond III.
 (not Raymond), prince of Antioch;
 Raymond III. (not Bohemond),
 count of Tripoli, his son; and Leo
 or Livo, a kinsman of Rupin of the
 Mountain, who succeeded him and
 became king of Armenia in 1197.
 These nobles were the party in op-
 position to Conrad of Montferrat.

Guy had lost his kingdom through
 him, as Henfrid had lost both king-
 dom and wife. Rupin had married
 Henfrid's sister, and Raymond of
 Tripoli was his son-in-law. Bohe-
 mond was closely connected with
 Richard—his father was Raymond
 of Poitiers, queen Eleanor's uncle.
 His mother, Constance of Antioch,
 was grand-daughter of king Bald-
 win II. Bohemond stood next in
 succession to the crown of Palestine
 in case of the extinction of queen
 Melicent's descendants.

⁴ *supplices legationes*] supplica-
 tiones, B. D. I.

Et ei viginti millia marcarum auri in recompensationem uniarum submersorum; et illos qui capti fuerant post ifragium, cum catalis suis liberos¹ redderet; et ipse in pria persona sua cum illo in terram Jerosolimitanam, et moram cum illo faceret in servitio Dei et suo, cum tum militibus, et quadringentis Turcoplis equitibus, et cum igitis peditibus bene armatis; et insuper daret ei filiam in obsidem,² quam unicam habebat sibi hæredem; et leret ei castella sua in pignore; et fidelitatem sibi et s in perpetuum servandam juraret, et imperium aum illo teneret. His igitur ex utraque parte concessis, venit perator ad regem Angliæ; et coram rege Jerosolimitano, et principe Antiochiæ, et cæteris baronibus suis, homo regis Angliæ devenit, et fidelitatem ei juravit. Juravit nam quod ab eo non recederet, donec omnia impleentur quæ conventionaverat. Rex vero tradidit imeratori tentoria sibi et suis, et assignavit ei milites et servientes, qui custodirent eos.

A. D. 1191.
May 11.
Submission
of Isaac.

Iterum Ysakius imperator fugit.

Eodem autem³ die post prandium penituit imperatorem fecisse talem finem cum rege Angliæ; et dum milites, qui eum custodire deberent, somnum meridianum caperent, furtive ab eis recessit, et mandavit regi quod nullam de cætero cum illo pacem vel concordiam custodiret. Quod, ut videbatur, satis placuit regi. Ipse enim, sicut vir prudens et circumspectus, statim tradidit magnam exercitus sui partem Gwidoni regi, et principi Antiochiæ, et cæteris qui ad eum venerant, et præcepit eis ut sequerentur imperatorem, et caperent, si possent; et ipse rex divisit galeis suis in duas partes, medietatem illarum tradidit Roberto de Turnelam,⁴ et præcepit ut ille circumdasset insulam ex una parte, et si quas invenisset naves vel galeas, cepisset eas; et factum est ita. Rex vero cum reliqua parte galearum suarum circumivit alteram partem insulæ, et

The same
day the em-
peror fled,
and de fled
Richard.

Richard
orders Guy
to pursue
the emperor.

He and
Robert
Turnham
sail round
Cyprus.

¹ *liberos*] liberis, B. D. I.

² *obsidem*] obsidione, B. D. I.

³ *autem*] *ins.* as a correction in A.

⁴ *Turneham*] Turnham, B. I.;
Turnam, D.

A.D. 1191. ipse et Robertus ceperunt naves et galeas quotquot in- Benedict. ii. 166.
 May. venerunt in circuitu insulæ. Custodes autem civitatum,
 The castles are surrendered to Richard. et castellorum, et portuum, reliquerunt ea vacua in omni loco ubi rex et prædictus Robertus venerunt; et fugientes alierunt in montana. Quibus expletis, rex et Robertus redierunt ad Limeszun. Gwido autem rex, et qui cum eo missi fuerant, nihil proficientes, ad regem redierunt.

The Cy priots accept Richard as lord. Interim homines imperatoris confluebant ad regem Angliæ, et homines sui devenerunt, et terras suas de illo tenuerunt. Quadam vero die, cum supradictus imperator ad prandium suum sedisset, et comites sui cum eo, quidam illorum ait illi: "Domine, consulimus vobis
 Isaac alienates his followers. " ut pacem faciatis cum rege Angliæ, ne tota gens vestra pereat." Iratus vero imperator propter hunc sermonem, percussit eum cum cultello quem tenebat, et amputavit nasum ejus qui consilium illud dederat: post prandium ille, qui percussus fuerat, abiit ad regem Angliæ, et adhæsit ei.

Berengera, filia Sanctii regis Navarra, desponsata est regi Angliæ Ricardo.

May 12. Mense vero Maii, iv^{to}. idus ejusdem mensis, die Dominica, festo Sanctorum Nerei et Achillei atque Pancratii martyrum; Marriage of Richard and Berengaria. Berengera, filia regis Navarra, desponsata est Ricardo regi Anglie in insula de Cypre apud Limeszun, Nicholao regis capellano¹ officium sacramenti illius perficiente: et eodem die fecit illam rex coronari et consecrari in reginam Anglie, a Johanne Ebroicense episcopo, administrantibus illi in officio illo archiepiscopis de Appamia et de Auxia, et episcopo de Baonia. Benedict. ii. 167.

Richard takes Nicosa and other strongholds. Deinde post celebrationem nuptiarum suarum rex Angliæ promovit exercitum suum, et reddita est ei nobilis civitas quæ vocatur Nichosie; et cum venisset rex cum exercitu suo ad fortissimum castellam quod dicitur Cberin, in quo erat filia imperatoris, exivit illa obviam regi, et cecidit prona in terram ante pedes regis, et

¹ Nicolas, dean of S. Julian's, and afterwards bishop of Le Mans.

Benedict,
ii. 167.

tradidit ei castellum illud, misericordiam postulans. Et rex misertus illius misit illam ad reginam; et cum processisset rex, reddita sunt ei castellum quod dicitur Baffes, et castellum quod dicitur Buffevent, et castellum quod dicitur Deudeamar, et castellum quod dicitur Candare.¹ Deinde redditæ sunt ei omnes civitates et munitiones imperii.

A. D. 1191.
May.
Surrender of
castles to
Richard.

Infelix autem imperator ille latitabat in quadam abbazia fortissima, quæ dicitur Caput Sancti Andrea. Quo cum rex venisset, ut illum comprehenderet, imperator exivit obviam ei, et ad pedes ejus provolutus, posuit se in misericordia illius de vita et membris, nulla mentione facta de regno. Sciebat enim quod omnia jam erant in manu et potestate regis, sed solum hoc petiit, ne ipse mitteretur in compedibus et manicis ferreis. Et audivit rex petitionem illius, et tradidit illum Radulfo filio Godefridi, camerario suo, in custodia,² et præcepit sibi fieri compedes et manicas de argento et auro, et ut ipse in illis mitteretur. Perfecta autem sunt omnia hæc in insula de Cypro mense Junii,³ prima

The emperor himself surrenders.

He is bound in chains of gold and silver.

June 1.

Benedict,
ii. 167, 168.

die ejusdem mensis, Sabbato in vigilia Pentecosten. Perfectis igitur omnibus, misit rex Angliæ imperatorem cum custodibus suis usque ad civitatem Tripolis, et tradidit insulam de Cypro Ricardo de Camvilla et Roberto de Turneham in custodia.

Isaac sent to Tripoli.

Benedict,
ii. 168.

Eodem die, scilicet in vigilia Pentecosten, obiit Philippus comes Flandriæ in obsidione Accon; et rex Franciæ dominus suus saisivit omnes thesauros et possessiones illius in manu sua: et ab illa hora quærebat opportunitatem recedendi ab obsidione Accon, et revertendi in regionem suam, ut comitatum Flandriæ sibi subjugasset.

Philip of Flanders dies at Acce.

Benedict,
ii. 168.

Et⁴ eodem die, scilicet in vigilia Pentecosten, regina Angliæ, et regina Sicilia, soror regis Angliæ, et filia imperatoris de Cypro, applicuerunt apud Accon cum majori parte storii regis Angliæ.

Arrival of the queens at Acce.

Interim rex Angliæ accepit ab universis hominibus insulæ medietatem omnium mobilium suorum, et confirma-

Richard takes Cyprus.

¹ *Candare*] Candaira seems to be the same place as Caput Sancti Andrea; so that Hoveden has erred here in going beyond his authority.

² *custodia*] custodium, D. I.

³ *Junii*] Junii, corrected to Junii, in I.; Juli, A. B. G. The Itinerarium places the surrender a day earlier, Friday, May 31 (p. 203).

⁴ *Et*] em. B. D. G. I.

A D. 1191.
June 6.

Richard
leaves
Cyprus, and
is refused
admission
into Tyre.

vit illis leges, et institutiones, quas habebant tempore Ma-
nuelis¹ imperatoris Constantinopolitani. Benedict,
ii. 168.

Deinde feria quarta in hebdomada Pentecosten, recessit
rex Anglie ab insula de Cypro cum galeis suis, et in cras-
tino applicuit in terra Sulie apud Tyrum. Sed custodes
Tyri non permiserunt eum intrare Tyrum, dicentes quod
rex Francie, et Conradus Marchio, prohibuerunt ne ipse
Tyrum intraret. Et ideo oportebat eum nocte illa jacere
in tentoriis extra murum Tyri.

June 7.
He en-
counters a
great ship
of the Sara-
cens, under
French
colours:

Et crastino, scilicet feria sexta in hebdomada Pentecosten,
cum ipse iter ageret versus Accon, vidit in mari ante se bus-
ciam quandam magnam, onustam viris bellicosis, et ornatam
vexillis regis Francie et sociorum suorum. Et mittens ad
eos duas galeas, interrogavit cujus esset navis, et unde
venisset: et responderunt se esse homines regis Francie, et
venisse de Antiochia, volentes ad obsidionem Accon ire. Et
qui missi fuerant, cum tali responso redierunt ad
regem Anglie. Quibus ipse dixit, "Si homines regis

"Francie sunt, ite, et dicite illis ut expectent, et loquantur
"mecum." Et dum irent, homines buscite male sibi
conscii, quia omnes pagani erant, armaverunt se, et pessime
recepunt nuncios regis, mittentes in eos sagittas et ignem
Græcum. Quod cum rex vidisset,² accessit propius, et
dixit universis qui cum eo venerant, "Persequimini eos,
"et comprehendite: si enim abierint, amorem meum perdetis
"in perpetuum; et si eos comprehenderitis, omnia catalla
"eorum vestra sint." Tunc omnes unanimitè impetum fece-
runt in busciam illam, et cum rostris galearum perforaverunt
eam undique, et aqua intrans per foramina traxit illam in
profundum. Et cum pagani cœpissent mergi, projecerunt arma
sua in mare, et fractis vasis suis fuderunt ignem Græcum, et
relicta nave, nudi prosilierunt in mare. Sed galiota regis
interfecerunt eos, et vivos retinuerunt multos. Erant
autem in buscia illa pagani numero mille et quingenti, quos
Saladinus collegerat³ ex omnibus paganis, ut mitteret eos in
civitatem Accon. Quibus devictis et interfectis, rex distribuit
omnia catalla illorum⁴ galiotis suis.

and takes it.

June 8.
He arrives
at Accon.

In crastino, scilicet die Sabbati in hebdomada Pentecosten,
venit ad obsidionem Accon; et de paganis, quos in navi cepit,
distribuit regi Francie et comitibus exercitus. Benedict,
ii. 169.

¹ *Manuelis*] Manuelis, D. I.

² *vidisset*] audisset, D. I.

³ *collegerat*] legaverat, Savile.

⁴ *illorum*] eorum, B. D. G. I.

Benedict,
ii. 169.

Cum autem pagani qui in civitate Accon erant, audissent quod pagani qui in buscia erant, in quibus habebant fiduciam, submersi essent, et quod rex Angliæ magnificus triumphator ad obsidionem venisset, timuerunt eum valde, et de die in diem querebant opportunitatem, ut civitatem ei traderent pro licentia abeundi cum vita et membris. Rex vero Franciæ, qui Sabbato in hebdomada Paschæ ad obsidionem venerat, jam ante adventum regis Angliæ domum lapideam turratam fecit sibi, et perrarias suas, et hurdicios suos, et alias machinas suas bellicas paraverat, et in locis congruis locaverat. Sed nihil in eis operatus est; expectabat enim adventum regis Angliæ. Qui cum venisset, statim erexit machinas suas bellicas. Pisani vero et Janucenses venerunt ad eum, et obtulerunt ei servitia sua; et ipse Pisanos recepit, et Januenses refutavit, quia ipsi fidelitatem juraverant regi Franciæ, et Conrado Marchioni. Pisani vero fecerunt regi Angliæ homagium et fidelitates: et rex Angliæ confirmavit illis carta sua libertates et consuetudines quas habere solebant in terra Jerusalemiana.

A. D. 1191.
June 8.
The Saracens deliberate on surrender.

Benedict,
ii. 170.

Tertia autem die post adventum regis Angliæ, rex Franciæ dimisit omnes servientes quos prius habebat ad machinas suas bellicas custodiendas; et rex Angliæ retinuit ad servitium suum, quos rex Franciæ dimiserat. Unde factum est, quod pagani qui erant in civitate, invenientes machinas regis Franciæ sine custode, combusserunt eas.

Richard sets up his engines.
He accepts the fealty of the Pisans, not of the Genoese.

Deinde uterque rex incidit in ægritudinem, quam Arnaldiam vocant; in qua ipsi fere usque ad mortem laborantes capillos suos deposuerunt. Sed hoc Dei fit misericordia, quod ambo convalescerunt de infirmitate illa, et facti sunt robustiores, et animosiores in servitio Dei.

June 10.
He hires Philip's engineers.

Sickness of both the kings.

Et quia Gwido rex conquestus fuerat illis, quod Conradus Marchio vi et injuste ei abstulerat redditus et jura regni, tradiderunt redditus fori rerum venalium et redditus portus Accon in manu Templariorum et Hospitalorum colligendos, et custodiendos, donec provisum esset quia illorum de jure illos habere deberet.

Quarrel of Guy and Conrad.

Et Gaufridus de Lezinant, frater Gwidonis regis, appellavit Conradum Marchionem de fide lapsa, et de perjurio, et de prodicione facta adversus regem fratrem suum, et adversus exercitum Christianorum; et de proseguenda appellatione sua pignus dedit. Conradus vero male sibi conscius juri stare noluisset, sed declinavit a turba, et exivit foras, omnibus post illum clamantibus, et dicentibus, "Proditor est, qui juri stare recu-

Geoffrey of Lusignan challenges Conrad, who flies.

Benedict,
ii. 171.

¹ juri] jure, I.

A D. 1191. "sat." Nemo tamen misit in eum manum, ne forte tumultus fieret in populo. S. Mark. xiv. 2.

Inter reges propter illos, quia rex Francie, in quantum potuit, fovebat partem Conradi, et rex Anglie partem Gwidonis regis. Unde inter reges sepius oriebantur rixae et contentiones. Post multum vero temporis misit rex Francie pro Conrado, et constituit eum principem domus suae, et suum familiarem consiliarium, per cujus consilium et admonitionem rex Francie multa operatus est contra Deum et salutem animae suae. Ipse enim munera Saladini accepit, et factus est ei amicus. Benedict. ii. 171.

Much vigorous influence of Conrad on Philip.

Philip demands half Cyprus. Richard replies demands half Flanders.

Deinde petiit rex Francie medietatem insulae de Cypro, et omnium quae rex Anglie per viam adquisierat. Haec contra, rex Anglie petiit a rege Francie medietatem Flandriae, et medietatem omnium mobilium comitis Flandriae et aliorum hominum suorum qui obierant in obsidione Accon, et medietatem Tyri, quam Conradus illi donaverat. Sed utriusque petitio vana fuit et invidiosa; quia conventio facta fuit inter illos tantummodo quod dimidiarent inter se omnes questus quos facerent in terra Jerosolimitana. Et iterum hoc idem renovaverunt coram ducibus et principibus exercitus, et¹ cartis et sacramentis confirmaverunt. Et statuerunt Templarios et Hospitalares,² et alios viros sapientes in quibus confidebant, ad recipiendum et dimidiandum inter eos acquisitiones suas; et sic facti sunt amici.

Renewal of agreement between the kings.

Saladin's presents and proposals for peace.

Interim Saladinus, princeps exercitus paganorum, misit frequenter regi Francie et regi Anglie pyra Damascena, et aliorum fructuum suorum copiam, et alia munuscula, ut sic saltem converteret animos eorum ad pacem cum illo faciendam. Ipse enim sepius obtulit eis pacem et concordiam, tum propter metum filiorum Noradini,³ qui calumniati sunt super eum totam terram patris eorum, quam Saladinus occupatam tenebat; illi etiam jam cum magno exercitu, per auxilium domini Musse,⁴ avun-

¹ et] om. B. D. I.

² Hospitalares] Hospitalarios, B. D. I.

³ filiorum Noradini] Noureddin Zeugli.

⁴ domini Musse] The lord of Mosul at this time was Ezzeddin Ma'oud, the fourth atabek of Irak, 1181-1193, son of Kothbeddin Modoud, the brother of the Great Nouredin

culi eorum, intraverunt terram Saladini, et occupaverunt eam totam usque ad magnum fluvium Eufraten; tum ut gentem suam, quae in civitate fuerat obsessa, liberaret. Sed ad plenum noluit componere cum regibus. Voluit namque retinere in manu sua civitatem Jerusalem, et Craggum de Monte Regali; et noluerunt reges cum illo sub hac componere forma. Unde factum est, quod perrariae¹ regum et aliorum virorum non cessabant jactare lapides in murum civitatis et ejus munitiones; neque fossores regum cessabant die ac nocte suffodere murum civitatis.

Benedict,
ii. 172.

A. D. 1191.
June.
The kings decline Saladin's offers, and continue the siege.

Mense Junii,² die Dominica in vigilia Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistae, nono kalendas Julii, luna xxvii., hora diei nona, sol passus est eclipsim, et duravit per tres horas; ita quod obscuratus est sol, et tenebrae factae sunt super terram, et apparuerunt stellae in caelo; et cum eclipsis recessisset, sol rediit in pristinum decorem suum.

June 23.
Eclipse of the Sun.

In civitate autem Accon erat quidam homo Deo devotus, occultus tamen propter metum paganorum, qui frequenter litteras suas foras misit usque in³ exercitum Christianorum, Hebraice, Graece, et Latine scriptas, et per illas totum statum et propositum paganorum significavit Christianis. Unde Christiani sapientius praemuniti insidias paganorum vitabant. Sed valde erat molestum Christianis, quod non noverant virum illum, neque nomen ejus: ipse enim nunquam voluit nominare nomen suum, sed in omnibus litteris, quas foras misit, confessus est se esse⁴ Christianum; et in scriptis suis semper praeponebat, "In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti, Amen." Sed hoc mirandum est,

The unknown Christian in Acre.

Zenghi. Ezzeddin was not now at war with Saladin, his son Aluddin being present with the Mosul contingent in Saladin's army; as were his brother Amadoddin Zenghi, lord of Sinsjar, and Moezzoddin, lord of Mesopotamia. *Bekhadin*, 148, 170. Wilken (iv. 358) identifies the "do-minus Musce" with Kothbeddin Sokuan, son of Noureddin, son of Kara Arslan, lord of Diarbekr, who

was at this time at war with Saladin's nephew Takieddin Omar, lord of Hamah. Probably the author of the statement in the text confounded the two Noureddins. See note 3 on Ben. Pet. ii. 175.

¹ perraria] peraria, B. D. I.

² Junii] Julii, B. D; corrected in the margin, I.

³ in] om. B. I.; ad, D.

⁴ esse] om. B. G. I.; fore, D.

A. D. 1191.
June

The bo-
sengers pre-
pare for an
escaade.
The Sara-
cens offer to
surrender,
but the
kings refuse.

quod ipse neque ante captionem civitatis, neque post illius Benedict.
ii. 172.
captionem, voluit se manifestare Christianis.

Eodem vero¹ mense Junii, Christiani impleverunt magnam partem fossati, ut scalas suas muro apponerent. Quod cum vidissent pagani qui fuerant obsessi, obtulerunt regibus civitatem, cum armis et victualibus eorum, pro vita et membris et licentia abundi. Sed noluerunt reges hoc modo recipere eam, sed petierunt ab eis crucem sanctam, et totam terram Jerosolimitanam, et omnes captivos qui in captione Saladini² et suorum erant; et ut Saladinus restaurasset terram Jerosolimitanam in eum statum quo fuit ante captionem Guidonis regis. At Saladinus hoc nullo modo concedere voluit.

Robert
Tarnham
puts down
a revolution
in Cyprus,
after the
death of
Richard
Camvil.

Eodem mense Junii, Ricardus de Camvilla, quem rex Angliæ constituerat unum de justitiariis suis in insula de Cypro, infirmabatur, et sine licentia regis venit ad obsidionem Accon, et ibi mortuus est. Quo defuncto, Griffones et Erminii, qui ad pacem regis nondum venerant, constituerunt sibi novum imperatorem, scilicet quendam monachum de progenie Ysakhii imperatoris. Sed Robertus de Tarnham, qui solus remansit, post mortem Ricardi de Camvilla, justitiarius regis in insula de Cypro, magnum congregavit exercitum, et commisit prælium cum illo novo imperatore, et illum et gentem suam vicit, et cepit, et suspendit in patibulo.

Death of
Raynfr Fitz-
Gissey.

Isaac im-
prisoned at
Merkob.

Eodem mense Junii obiit Radulfus filius Godofridi, quem Benedict.
ii. 173.
rex statuerat custodem imperatoris de Cypro, et sepultus est apud Tripolim. Quo defuncto rex tradidit imperatorem in custodia Hospitalorum, qui duxerunt eum usque ad Margant castellum, et ibi posuerunt eum in custodia.

Attack on
the Curved
Tower by
the French

Eodem mense Junii fossores regis Angliæ federunt fundamentum murorum civitatis Accon, nescientibus paganis qui intus erant; et subpositis lignis apposuerunt ignem, et cecidit magna pars murorum. Interim perrariæ regis Franciæ, et Templariorum et Pisanorum, fecerant foramen magnum in muro, juxta turrim quæ dicitur Maledicta, et ad foramen illud cucurrerunt homines regis Franciæ, sperantes perinde intrare in civitatem. Sed occurrerunt illis pagani

¹ vero] om. G.

² Quod] Qui, D. I.

³ Saladin] om. G.; Accon, D.

⁴ et] om. B. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 173.

in manu forti, et restiterunt illis; et quia via illa ardua fuit et stricta, multi de hominibus regis Francie ibidem interfecti sunt. Rex vero Angliæ et homines sui interim custodebant fossata exteriora, quæ erant inter exercitum Christianorum et exercitum Saladini. Conventio enim facta fuit inter reges, quod quancumque unus illorum insultam faceret in civitatem, alter illorum custodiret interim fossata exteriora, ne exercitus Saladini posset insultantibus a tergo nocere. Hæc autem conventio inter reges ideo facta fuit, quia in omni negotio, in quo prædicti reges et gentes eorum convenerunt, minus profecerunt quam fecissent si essent divisi. Rex enim Franciæ et gens sua parvipendebant regem Angliæ et gentem suam: et e converso.

A. D. 1191.
June.

Richard keeps the trenches whilst the French assault.

Mense Julii, tertia die ejusdem mensis, feria quarta, cecidit magna pars murorum civitatis Acon juxta supradictam turrim. Cucurrit ergo Albericus Clement,¹ marescallus regis Franciæ, cum copiosa armatorum multitudine, ad murum cum vexillo regis Franciæ; et Conradus Marchio cucurrit cum cæteris ad prædictum murum, et apposuerunt scalas ut ascenderent. Et cum prædictus Aubericus ascendisset scalam, pagani, injecto in illum unco ferreo, traxerunt infra muros, et occiderunt, et alios quadraginta obruerunt lapidibus. Conradus vero retraxit se cum gente sua. Ipse enim et sui noluerunt neque lapides neque sagittas in paganos mittere; neque pagani in eum vel in suos. Præterea pagani, qui ad defensionem murorum venerant, vexillum ipsius Conradi, quod ipse eis in signam pacis dederat, in sublime, cunctis videntibus et admirantibus, tenebant immobile.

July 3.
French near the Cursed Tower

Death of
Alberic
Clement.

Cowardice of
Conrad.

Benedict,
ii. 174.

In crastino principes paganorum qui in civitate erant, videlicet Mestoko et Karakoy.² venerunt ad regem Franciæ et ad regem Angliæ, et obtulerunt eis civitatem, et arma, et

July 4.
New proposals.

¹ Alberic Clement, of Metz, son of Robert Clement, the person appointed by Lewis VII. to be Philip's adviser during his minority. Alberic is one of the first persons called Marshall of France.

² *Mestoko et Karakoy*] Mestoch Karkois, B. L. Seifeddin-al-Mesch-

toub and Bohaeddin-Karakoosh, Boh. 174. "Caracos quem Corbo-ram fecit militem ad obsidionem Antiochiæ; ille nutriti Saladinum." R. de Dic. 654. The siege of Antioch was 93 years before this.

A D. 1191. aurum et argentum eorum, et cæterorum omnium qui ^{Benedict.}
 July 4. intus erant, pro licentia abeundi cum vita et membris. Sed ^{ii. 174.}
 Proposals of nolu-erunt reges hoc recipere. At exigebant, pro redemptione
 surrender. eorum, totam terram quam Saladinus et cæteri pagani occupa-
 Terms verant super Christianos ab illo tempore quo Lodowicus
 offered by the kings; rex Francorum fuit Jerosolimis; et insuper Crucem sanctam,
 et omnes Christianos quos captivos tenebant. Quibus
 Mestoke et Karakoys¹ responderunt; "Nos petitiones
 " vestras² facere non possumus, nisi de consensu et
 " voluntate domini nostri Saladini, et aliorum principum
 " nostrorum. Sed date nobis inducias triduanas, et
 " permittite nos ire ad principes nostros, ut cum illis
 " loquamur super his que petitis." Qui, datis obsidibus
 proposed to de redeundo, perrexerunt ad Saladinum, et ostensis illi peti-
 Saladin and tionibus Christianorum, non potuerunt efficere versus illum,
 refused. quod ille aliquam daret pro eis redemptionem; et ita confusi
 redierunt, et civitatem ingressi sunt.

Attack by
 Saladin's
 army re-
 pulsed.

Nocte sequenti circa horam noctis mediam, exercitus Saladini
 insultum fecerunt in custodes fossatorum exteriorum, ea scilicet
 intentione, ut dum Christiani intenderent defensionem fossa-
 torum, pagani qui in civitate erant, facilius possent per fugam
 evadere. Sed reges inde præmuniti per mandatam prædicti
 viri Dei qui in civitate erat, custodes per circuitum murorum
 posuerunt, ita quod nulli paganorum securus patebat egres-
 sus.³ Factus est ergo clamor magnus per exercitum Christia-
 norum, qui a somno excitati, et arma sua velociter sumentes,
 accesserunt ad fossata, et impetum fecerunt in paganos, et
 multos ex illis interfecerunt, cæteros autem fugaverunt.

July 5.
 Another
 great breach

Quinta die mensis Julii, feria sexta, iterum appositus est
 ignis incisioni murorum quam homines regis Angliæ fecerant;
 et nocte sequenti ceciderunt turres, et magna pars murorum,
 et fecerunt introitum magnum.

July 6.
 Attack by
 the English.

Et in crastino rex Angliæ et exercitus ejus accesserunt ^{Benedict.}
 armati, ut insultum facerent in civitatem; et pagani statim ^{ii. 175.}
 dederunt signum quod pacem cum illis facerent; et sic
 depositis armis Christiani redierunt in castris, et Mestokoc,
 et Karrakoys, et Hesselin Jordich⁴ exierunt loqui cum regi-

¹ Mestoke et Karakoys] Mestoch
 et Karkois, B. I.; Mestok et Kar
 koes, D.

² vestras] nunnas, Savile

³ egressus] ingressus, D. I.

⁴ Hesselin Jordich] Hessedin et
 Ordich, Savile.

Benedict,
II. 175.

bus, et obtulerunt eis civitatem cum omnibus supradictis. Et cum reges et ipsi diu inde tractassent, data est eis licentia eundi ad Saladinum, et redeundi. Et abierunt, et effecerunt quod Saladinus obtulit regibus civitatem Jerosolimam, et Crucem sanctam, et omnes civitates et castella que ipse post captionem Gwidonis regis ceperat, et reedificare ea in eum statum in quo tunc fuerunt; tali conditione, ut prædicti reges venirent cum illo, vel mitterent cum illo decem¹ millia militum et viginti millia pedum, ad terram suam defendendam contra dominum Musso et filios Noradim, qui Thekedinum avunculum suum vicerant in prælio, et totam terram illius occupaverant, et si ipsi permisissent illos abire illæsos.² Sed reges id facere noluerunt. Et prædicti Mestokoc, et Karrakoys et Hessedin Jordich,³ tristes et confusi⁴ civitatem intraverunt; amici vero illorum, relicto Saladino, infestaverunt eum.

A. D. 1191.
July 6.
The besieged again offer to surrender.

Saladin offers impossible terms.

Benedict,
II. 176.

Septima die mensis Julii, die Dominica, rex Franciæ et exercitus ejus fecerunt insultum in civitatem juxta turrin Maledictam, in eo loco quo prius fecerant; sed nihil proficientes, quadraginta homines perdiderunt.

July 7.
Attack by the French.

Benedict,
II. 177.

Octava die mensis Julii Saladinus combussit Chayphas; et vineas in circuitu ejus destruxit.

July 8.

Saladin destroys Chayphas.

S. Matt.
xxviii. 4.

In nocte sequenti, dum milites et servientes multi de exercitu Christianorum vigilassent ante turrin Maledictam, circumfulsit eos lux de cælo, in qua apparuit eis Beata Virgo Maria, mater Christi. "Pro timore autem exterriti sunt custodes, et facti sunt velut mortui." At Beata Virgo blande consolabatur eos dicens: "Nolite terreri; propter salutem enim vestram misit me huc Dominus. Et cum crastina illuxerit dies, ite, et dicite regibus vestris ex parte Jesu Christi, Filii et Domini mei, et ex parte mea, ut cessent a prosteruatione murorum civitatis hujus, quia quarto die post istum dabit eam Dominus in manu illorum." Eadem vero hora, qua mater Christi loquebatur cum custodibus, terræ motus magnus factus

Vision of the Blessed Virgin.

Earthquake.

¹ decem] sex, Savile.

² illæsos] This speech is given at greater length and in direct narration in Benedict.

³ Mestokoc et Karrakoys et Hessedin Jordich] pagani, Savile, after MS. D

⁴ confusi] in, ms. B. D. I

- A D 1191. est in civitate, et paganos ita terruit, quod maluerunt mori ^{Benedict.}
 July 6. quam vivere. Sic Dominus cum ad iudicandum¹ venerit, ^{ii. 177.}
 blandus justis, et terribilis apparebit injustis. Beata
 vero Virgo Maria postquam sic locuta est, avulsa est ab
 oculis eorum, et simul cum illa recessit lumen quod
 circumfulserat illos.
- July 9. Mane autem facto, prædicti custodes narraverunt regibus
 The army is et principibus exercitus visionem quam viderant, et verba
 checked by the vis. c. q. quæ dixerat illis mater Domini; et statim divulgata sunt
 omnia verba hæc per exercitum, et facta est lætitia magna
 in populo Dei
- July 9, 10. Nono vero et decimo die mensis Julii, Saladinus fecit
 Saladin de- extirpare omnes vineas et arbores fructiferas quæ erant in
 stroyed the vineyards. circuiu Accon; et civitates et castella, in quibus resistendi
 Christianis fiduciam non habebat, subvertit.
- July 11. Undecima die mensis Julii, Pisani et exercitus regis Angliæ ^{Benedict.}
 The English and Pisans make the attack. insultum fecerunt in civitatem Accon; et cum ascendissent ^{ii. 178.}
 murum, unus Pisanus, nomine Leonardus, interfectus est; et
 statim pagani dederunt signum quod civitatem redderent,
 et pacem cum regibus ad voluntatem eorum facerent. Et
 sic supradicti paganorum principes venerunt loqui cum
 regibus de pace facienda, et statim post colloquium
 redierunt in civitatem.

*Civitas Accon reddita est regi Franciæ et regi
 Angliæ.*

- July 12. Duodecima die mensis Julii, feria sexta, Philippus rex
 Surrender of Franciæ, et Ricardus rex Angliæ, et omnes principes Christiano-
 Acro. norum, mane convenerunt ad tentorium Templariorum; et
 principes paganorum qui in civitate erant obsessi conve-
 nerunt illuc: et per consilium exercitus Christianorum
 prædicti reges pacem fecerunt cum paganis in hac forma.
- Terms of " Pagani tradiderunt supradictis regibus civitatem Accon
 surrender. " cum omnibus quæ in ea erant; et quingentos² Christianos
 " captivos, qui in ea erant, reddiderunt quietos: et con-

¹ iudicandum] iudicium, Savile.

² quingentos] trecentos, Benedict.

The authorities as to the terms of the capitulation differ considerably

in other respects. Benedict fixes the number of captives to be released at 1,500, besides 200 knights; and the ransom at 200,000 bizants:

Benedict,
ii. 179.

“ventionaverunt regibus, quod traderent eis crucem sanctam,
“et mille¹ Christianos captivos, et ducentos milites Christianos captivos, quoscumque prædicti reges elegerint
“de omnibus captivis qui fuerint inventi in potestate
“Saladini; et ad opus regum darent ducenta milia
“bizantium, et quod ipsi remanerent obsides in custodia
“regum, ita quod si ipsi infra quadraginta dies proximo
“subsequentes supradicta non perfecissent, essent in
“misericordia regum de vita et membris.”

A.D. 1191.
July 12.
Terms of the
surrender of
Acre.

Benedict,
ii. 179.

His itaque² conventionibus hinc et inde concessis, et sacramento confirmatis, reges miserunt milites et sorvientes suos in civitatem, et elegerunt centum de ditioribus et nobilioribus paganis, et posuerunt eos in turribus³ sub bona custodia; cæteros autem fecerunt custodiri per domos et plateas civitatis, et administraverunt eis necessaria, statuentes quod omnes qui baptismum et legem Christianam recipere vellent, essent liberi. Unde factum est quod multi paganorum propter metum mortis receperunt baptismum; sed quam citius potuerunt, abierunt ad Saladinum, relicta lege Christiana. Et ex tunc præceperunt reges, ne aliquis paganorum amplius reciperetur ad baptismum. Cumque Saladinus audisset pacem quam sui cum Christianis fecerant, dissimulavit hoc factum fuisse per illum.

The Christians occupy the city.

Civitas Acon partita est inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ.

Tertiadecima die mensis Julii, rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ partiti sunt inter eos civitatem Acon, et omnia quæ in ea erant, tam paganos, quam aurum et argentum, et cætera omnia. Drogo vero de Merlou, et centum milites cum illo,

July 13.
The kings div. de Acon between them.

the term of performance to be in 40 days. Hoveden agrees in all these points. The *Itinerarium* gives 500 inferior captives and 200 knights; the ransom 200,000 Saracenic talents: the term to be the end of the month. Bohadin says 1,500 inferior captives and 100 knights; the ransom 200,000 aurei to be paid in three monthly instalments.

The forty days of Benedict and the text are perhaps accounted for as having elapsed actually before the hostages were sacrificed, ten days after the first instalment fell due and was not paid.

¹ mille] MM. the first M is erased, A.

² itaque] convenientibus et, ins. D. Savile.

³ turribus] turrim, D. Savile.

A. D. 1191. July 13. Division of the spoil. Benedict, ii. 180.
constituti sunt ex parte regis Franciæ ad partem illius recipiendam. Et Hugo de Gurnay, et centum milites cum eo, constituti sunt ex parte regis Angliæ ad partem suam recipiendam.

July 14. Saladin demands, and makes new proposals of aid and, which are declined.
Quartadecima die mensis Julii, Saladinus retraxit se et exercitum suum, et fixit tentoria sua in loco qui dicitur Saphoria; et nunci ei ibant et revertebantur ad reges cum fructibus et aliis muneribus: et Saladinus obtulit regibus totam terram Sulie, excepto Cragh de Monte Regali,¹ quod est ultra fluvium Jordanis; tali conditione, quod illi commodassent ei duo milia militum, et quinque milia servientium, in servitio suo per unum annum, ad defensionem terræ suæ contra dominum Musse et filios Noradini. Sed reges noluerunt audire illum in sermone illo.²

July 15. The engines dismantled.
Quintadecima die mensis Julii, fecerunt reges perraras et alias machinas suas bellicas deponere.

July 16. The proposals from Mesopotamia.
Sextadecima die mensis Julii, venerant ad reges nunci ex parte domini Musse et filiorum Noradini, qui multa et magna obtulerant illis pro auxilio hominum contra Saladinum.

De dedicatione ecclesiarum Accaron.

Rededication of the churches of Aera. Benedict, ii. 181.
Eodem die Alardus Veronensis³ episcopus, cardinalis, et apostolice sedis legatus; et Tyronensis,⁴ et Pisanus, et Auxienensis⁵ archiepiscopi; et Hubertus Saresbiriensis, et Johannes Ebroicensis, et Bernardus Baoniensis, et Tripolitanus, et Reginaldus⁶ Carnotensis, et⁷ Belvacensis episcopi; et ceteri ecclesiarum principes, ecclesias civitatis Accon dedicaverunt,

¹ *Mente Regali*] et, ins. B. D. I.

² Hoveden here omits two particulars given in Benedict, which are not without interest as affecting his plan of abridgment. "Eodem die rex Angliæ misit Saladino leparios et brascetos, id est odant-sequos, et accipitres. Sexto decimo die mensis Julii Saladinus misit regi Angliæ munera magna et valde pretiosa per Atta nuncium suum."

³ *Veronensis*] *Veruacensis*, A. B.

G. I. Adlard, bishop of Verona, 1188-1211; cardinal priest of Marcellus, 1185.

⁴ *Tyronensis*] Perhaps we should read *Tyrenensis*.

⁵ *Auxienensis*] *Ariensis*, A. Savie; *Anxienensis*, B. I.

⁶ *Reginaldus*] referred to Philip in A., Philippus et, B. I., Philippus, G. The bishop of Chartres was Reginald; the bishop of Beauvais was Philip.

⁷ *et*] Robertus, A., crossed out

Benedict,
ii. 181.

quas pagani polluerant; et ædificaverunt altaria Domino, et in eis celebraverunt missas. Interim reges et populus intendebant reparationi murorum.

A.D. 1191.
July 16.

De foro rerum venalium.

Septimadecima et octavadeccima die mensis Julii, Pisani et nummularii et cæteri mercatores receperunt infra civitatem mansiones, per distributionem servientium regum, in foro rerum venalium, reddituri inde singulis annis solitos et debitos redditus.

July 17 & 18.
Restoration
of trade.

Nonodecimo die mensis Julii, cum comites et barones, qui jam fere per biennium moram fecerant in obsidione Accon, vidissent quod reges omnia, quæ ceperant in captione civitatis, propriis inclusissent marsupiis, et quod nullam partem illis facere voluissent, convenerunt extra fossata exteriora, et habito ibi colloquio, mandaverunt regibus quod ipsi cum illis diutius moram non facerent, nisi fuerint participes lucri, sicut extiterunt laboris; quibus reges responderunt se satisfacturos voluntati eorum: sed quia reges id facere distulerunt, multi paupertate coacti ab eis recesserunt.

July 19.
The nobles
demand
their share
of the spoil.

The kings
delay in
granting
this.

Vicesima die mensis Julii, festo Sanctæ Margaretæ virginis, Ricardus rex Angliæ petiit a rege Franciæ, ut ipsi duo jurassent¹ se moram facturos cum exercitibus suis in terra Jerosolimitana per tres annos, ad subventionem² terræ illius: cui rex Franciæ respondit, quod ipse nullum faceret sacramentum inde.

July 20.
Richard
proposes to
Philip to
stay in
Palestine.
He refuses
to swear.

Benedict,
ii. 182.

Vicesima prima die mensis Julii, rex Angliæ primo intravit in civitatem Accon; et in palatio regis ipse et uxor ejus et soror ejus³ hospitati sunt; et rex Franciæ hospitatus est in domibus Templariorum.

July 21.
Richard
enters Acre.

Vicesima secunda die mensis Julii, festo Sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, rex Franciæ misit ad regem Angliæ⁴ Belvacensem episcopum, et Hugonem ducem Burgundiæ, et Drogonem de Amiens, et Willelmum de Merlou; et per illos petiit ab eo licentiam redeundi in regionem suam. Quibus rex Angliæ respondit: "Dedecus erit et opprobrium domino meo, si

July 22.
Philip asks
leave to go
home.

¹ *jurassent*] jurarent, Savile.

² *subventionem*] subjectionem, D.

³ *ejus*] regis, B. D. I.

⁴ *Angliæ*] Robertum, om. B. D. I.;

crossed out in A. It should be *Philippum*; but Benedict had Robertum, and from him Hoveden was now clearly abridging.

A. D. 1191. " ipse, imperfecto negotio propter quod huc venit, recesserit. Benedict.
 July 22. " Attamen si ipse senserit se infirmum aut debilem, et ii. 182.
 Richard's re- " timuerit hic mori, fiat voluntas sua."

July 23. Vicesima tertia die mensis Julii, cum divulgatum esset per Benedict.
 Philip's de- exercitum quod rex Franciæ recederet, venerunt ad eum ii. 183.
 parture an- principes exercitus sui, et cum lacrymis petierunt, ne ipse
 nounced. a servitio Dei ita impudenter recessisset.

*Pax facta est inter regem Gwidonem et Conradum
 Marchionem.*

July 26. Vicesima sexta die mensis Julii, per consilium regis Franciæ
 Richard perdonis Conrad. venit Conradus ad regem Angliæ, et procidens ad pedes ejus
 veniam postulavit: et rex Angliæ perdonavit illi iram
 suam et malivolentiam.

July 27. Et in crastino convenerunt rex Franciæ et omnes
 The princes all to hear the claims of Guy and Conrad. principes exercitus, ad audiendas controversias quæ
 vertebantur inter Gwidonem regem et Conradum Marchio-
 nem. Quibus considentibus, Conradus Marchio surrexit, et
 stans in medio illorum, petiit sibi regnum Jerosolimitanum
 de jure uxoris suæ: et Gwido de Lizilant, qui rex inde
 exstiterat ante captionem, et, postquam a captione illa
 evasit, obsidionem Acon inceperat, petiit sibi fieri
 restitutionem inde, ostendens quod ipse in nullo deliquit,
 quare debuisset amittere regnum suum. Et post multas
 tergiversationes verborum hinc et inde diductas, uterque
 illorum posuit se in judicio curiæ regum.

July 28. Quorum consilio et judicio, pax et finalis concordia facta est Benedict.
 Determina- inter illos in hunc modum. Imprimis juraverunt illi duo, scilicet ii. 184.
 tion of the quarrel. Gwido rex et Conradus Marchio, quod ipsi judicium
 regum susciperent, et fideliter servarent. Deinde prædicti
 reges et totus exercitus adjudicaverunt Gwidoni regi prædicto
 regnum Jerosolimitanum in vita sua; ita quod si ipse uxo-
 rem duxerit, et filios vel filius genuerit, nihil tamen pote-
 runt hæreditarium petere in regno illo per successionem;
 sed si Conradus Marchio, et uxor ejus, soror Sibille reginæ,
 supervixerit eum, succedent ei in regnum, et hæredes eorum
 sequentur sceptrum, et jure hæreditario possidebunt illud.
 Et interim omnes redditus regni dimidiabantur inter illos,
 excepta regia dignitate, quæ pertinebit ad solum Gwi-

Benedict,
ii. 184.

donem quamdiu ipse vixerit. Et Conradus habebit Tyrum et Sidonem et Barruth,¹ et jure hæreditario possidebit ea; et ipse et hæredes sui facient semper inde servitium semper regi Jerosolimitano solitum et debitum. Et Gaufridus de Lezinnan, frater regis, habebit comitatum de Jopen, et Cæsariam, et possidebit ea jure hæreditario: et ipse et hæredes sui facient inde servitium semper regi Jerosolimitano solitum et debitum.

A.D. 1191.
July 28.
Settlement
of the king-
dom on Guy
for life.

Vicesima nona die mensis Julii, Philippus rex Franciæ dedit Conrado Marchioni medietatem civitatis Accon, quæ illum² contingebat. Eodem die rex Franciæ petiit iterum a rege Angliæ licentiam repatriandi; sed ipse nullo modo licentiam habere potuit recedendi, nisi prius jurasset super sacrosancta evangelia, quod ipse fideliter et bene custodiret terras et homines regis Angliæ usque ad reditum illius, et quod nullum damnum vel gravamen eis faceret, nec ab aliis fieri permetteret. Deinde rex Franciæ constituit ducem Burgundiæ principem exercitus sui, tradita illi magna parte thesauri sui.

July 29.
Philip gives
his share of
Acre to
Conrad, and
asks leave to
go home.
His oath to
Richard.

De auxilio quod prædicti reges fecerunt principi Antiochiæ ad defensionem terræ suæ contra paganos.

Benedict,
ii. 185.

Et ante recessum suum tradidit ipse Raimundo³ principi Antiochiæ centum milites et quingentos servientes, ad defensionem terræ suæ contra paganos. Similiter rex Angliæ tradidit eidem principi centum milites et quingentos servientes, ad defensionem terræ suæ contra paganos;⁴ et dedit unicuique militi quadraginta marcas argenti de præmio a festo Sancti Michaelis usque ad Pascha; et constituit Robertum de Quinci custodem illorum et ducem. Præterea rex Angliæ dedit eodem die principi Antiochiæ quinque naves magnas, onustas equis et armis et victualibus.

The kings
send aid to
the prince of
Antioch.

Tricesima die mensis Julii, rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ partiti sunt inter eos omnes paganos qui capti erant in Accon.

July 30.
Division of
the pri-
soners.

¹ *Barruth*] Baruth, B. D. G. I.

² *illum*] illi, B. D. I.

³ *Raimundo*] Properly *Boimundo*,

but the mistake is common to Benedict and Hoveden.

⁴ *Similiter paganos*] om. Savile.

A.D. 1191

De recessu regis Franciæ ab Accon.

July 31. Tricesima prima die mensis Julii, scilicet ultima die ejusdem mensis, festo Sancti Germani, rex Franciæ recessit ab Accon, et assumpsit secum Reginaldum Carnotensem episcopum, et Petrum comitem de Neverz, et abiit Tyrum, et duxit secum Karrachboys,¹ et omnes alios paganos qui eum contingebant, et ibidem moram fecit per duos dies.

Philip leaves
Acre and
goes to Tyre.

Benedict,
ii. 185.

August 3. Tertia vero die mensis Augusti, rex Franciæ a Tyro recessit, tradens Conrado Marchioni omnes paganos suos in custodia. Eodem die rex Angliæ onerari fecit naves suas, dicens quod ipse iret ad Scalonam ad obsidendum eam, et præcepit ut omnes sequerentur eum.

August 3.
He leaves
Tyre.

August 5. Quinta die mensis Augusti, rex Angliæ misit Tyrum Hubertum Walteri, episcopum Saresbiriensem, propter paganos quos rex Franciæ adduxerat, ut ipse eos reduceret; sed Conradus noluit dimittere eos. Qui cum rediisset, et regi narrasset responsum Conradi, iratus est rex, et juravit quod ipse Tyrum iret in propria persona ad eos per viam reducendos, nisi Conradus dimiserit illos celerius. Ad hoc respondit regi dux Burgundiæ dicens: "Domine

Richard
sends to
Tyre for the
prisoners.

Benedict,
ii. 186.

After some
time they
are given up.
"dimitte me illuc ire, et ego reducam illos." Et abiit et reduxit illos.² Dies namque preceptorius³ instabat, in quo pagani illi conventionem suam perficerent, et liberi abirent. Sed ad diem illum pagani neque protulerunt crucem

¹ *Karrachboys*] *Karrakois*, D. I.; *Karachois*, B.; *Karakoys*, G.

² The details of the negotiation for the surrender of Philip's half of the hostages are given much more fully in Benedict, and with still more detail by the author of the *Itinerarium*. The mission of the bishop of Salisbury, who was accompanied by count Robert of Dreux and Peter des Préaux, took place on the 5th of August. He returned to Acre on the 7th. On the 8th the duke, with the bishop of Beauvais, Guy Dampierre, William de Merlou and Robert de Quincy,

or, according to the *Itinerarium*, Drogo de Amiens and Robert de Quincy, went to Tyre. The 9th of August was the first day for the performance of the capitulation, but it was delayed until the eleventh day after, to give time for the hostages to be brought from Tyre. The 10th and 11th were spent by the duke at Tyre; and on the 12th he returned to Acre. *Ben. Pet.* ii. 186, 187. *Itiner. R. R.* 242.

³ *Dies preceptorius*] According to Benedict, Aug. 9, i.e. four weeks from July 12. See the last note, and above, p. 120, note 2.

Benedict,
ii. 188.

sanctam, neque Christianos captivos, neque pecuniam quam promiserant pro vita et membris suis. Et pro hujusmodi defectu adjudicati sunt omnes pagani illi capitalem subire sententiam. Quod cum Saladino nunciatum esset, mandavit regi Angliæ, et universo exercitui Christianorum, quod si ipsi amputassent capita paganorum suorum, ipse amputaret capita Christianorum omnium quos in captione sua habebat.¹

A. D. 1191.
August 9.
The Saracens fail to fulfil their obligations.

Quartadecima die mensis Augusti, feria quarta, in vigilia Assumptionis Beatae Dei genitricis semperque Virginis Mariæ, rex Angliæ exivit fossata exteriora, et fixit tentoria sua prope exercitum paganorum, et ibi mansit per aliquot dies, præcipiens ut omnis exercitus sequeretur eum. Sed pauci secuti sunt, propter defectum equorum et armorum.

August 14.
Richard encamps outside Acre.

Benedict,
ii. 189.

Eodem die Saladinus misit regi Angliæ munera pretiosa, et petiit ut ipse prolongasset diem quem statuerat amputare capita paganorum; et noluit rex diem illum diutius differre, nec munera Saladini recipere. Quod cum Saladinus vidisset et audisset, fecit amputari capita omnium Christianorum quos in captione sua habuit, scilicet xviii^a. die mensis Augusti, die Dominica.

He refuses to prolong the term granted to the Saracens; and Saladin beheads his prisoners.

Eodem die rex Angliæ movit exercitum suum, et appropiavit exercitui Saladini, et congressum fecit cum exercitu illius, et multi ceciderunt ex utraque parte vulnerati et mortui. Inter quos Petrus Mignot, quidam familiaris regis Angliæ, interfectus est; et rex Angliæ, quamvis audisset necem Christianorum interfectorum, tamen noluit anticipare terminum quem statuerat amputare capita paganorum.

August 18.
Skirmish with Saladin's troops.

De interfectione paganorum qui fuerunt in Accon.

Vicesima igitur die mensis Augusti, feria tertia, decimo tertio kalendas Septembris, rex Angliæ fecit ducere omnes paganos, qui eum contingebant in captione Accon, ante exercitum Saladini, et in conspectu omnium fecit amputare capita illorum. Dux vero Burgundiæ fecit amputare capita paganorum qui regem Franciæ contingebant, infra civitatem et extra, prope

August 20.
Massacre of the Saracen prisoners.

¹ This negotiation took place on the 13th of August: Ben. Pet. ii. 188.

A D. 1191.
August 20.
The more
valuable
prisoners
spared.

mauros civitatis. Sed rex Anglæ et dux Burgundiæ servaverunt quosdam de paganis ad redemptionem, quorum nomina hæc sunt: Mestokc,¹ Karrakoys, et Hessedin, filius Caulini, et Hessedin Jordic, et Passelari, et Kamardoli, et Kaedin. Numerus² autem interfectorum erat quinque millia paganorum: quos omnes Christiani evisceraverunt; et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum; et fel eorum ceperunt, et usui medicinali servaverunt.

Benedict.
ii. 189, 190.

August 21.
Bertram de
Verdun put
in charge of
Acre.

Vicesima prima die mensis Augusti, post interfectionem paganorum, rex Anglæ tradidit Bertramno de Verdun³ civitatem Accon, et reginam Angliæ, et reginam Siciliae, et filium imperatoris de Cypre in custodia.

Benedict.
ii. 190.

De itinere regis Angliæ versus Jopen.

August 22.
Richard en-
camps be-
tween Acre
and Haifa;
and, August
25, proceeds
towards
Joppa.

Vicesima secunda die mensis Augusti, feria quinta, rex Angliæ transiit fluvium Accon cum exercitu suo; et inter fluvium illum et mare fixit tentoria sua, super litus maris inter Accon⁴ et Cayphas: et ibi moram fecit per quatuor⁵ dies. Deinde porrexit secus litus maris versus Jopen: et naves suæ juxta eum in mari velificabant, cum victualibus et machinis suis bellicis; ita quod, si necesse esset illi, posset ad naves suas recuperare. Saladinus vero et exercitus ejus ibant per montana non longo ab exercitu regis, ut vias ejus impediret.

Tertia autem die⁶ post Exaltationem Sanctæ Crucis, infra men-

Benedict.
ii. 191.

¹ Mestoch is described by Benedict as "admiralis de Roais," emir of Edessa; and constable of Jerusalem and Ascalon; Karrakoys as Saladin's chief counsellor; Hessedin Jordich, emir of Aleppo; Passelari, constable of Concon (?); Kamardoli, treasurer of arms at Acre; and Kubedia, a writer in Acre.

² Numerus] Benedict does not fix this. Richard himself names 2,600. The *Itinerarium* gives 2,700. Bohadin, 3,000.

³ Bertramno de Verdun] Bene-

dict adds "et Stephano de Nunchams, fratri Eliensis episcopi."

⁴ Accon] et marc, ins. D. I.

⁵ quatuor] tres, Bened. According to the *Itinerarium* the army crossed the Belus on Aug. 22, and started on their march towards the coast on the 25th.

⁶ Tertia autem die] The battle of Arsouf was fought, not on the 17th, but on the 7th of September, a week before the festival. See the *Itinerarium*, Bohadin, and the two letters of Richard below. A confusion

Benedict,
ii. 191.

sem Septembris, cum rex Angliæ et exercitus ejus transissent districtas del Merle, et dux Burgundiæ cum Templariis et Francis custodiret extremam cohortem, et rex Angliæ fixisset signum suum in medio, et tradidisset draconem suum Petro de Pratellis¹ ad portandum, contra calumniam Roberti Trusselut, qui illum portare calumniatus fuit de jure prædecessorum suorum: Saladinus fecit impetum magnum in ducem Burgundiæ, et in illos qui cum eo erant.

A.D. 1191
September.
Attack by
Saladin on
the Crusaders on
their march.

De interfectione Jakes de Avennis.

Benedict,
ii. 192.

Sed nullus Christianorum ibi interfectus fuit præter solum Jakes de Avennis,² qui cum paucis resistebat Saladino et exercitui suo;³ dux enim Burgundiæ fugit. Sed rex Angliæ, cum audisset a tergo clamorem illum, regressus est, et congressus viriliter cum exercitu Saladini; et victoriam obtinuit; et interfecit ex paganis tria millia: et ibi mansit rex per tres dies. Deinde idem rex in hac forma scripsit baillivis et amicis suis;

Sept. 7.
Battle of
Arsouf.
Death of
James
Avennes.

Great victory of
Richard.

*Epistola Ricardi regis Angliæ de recessu regis
Franciæ de Accon.⁴*

(Not in
Benedict.)

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, et dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, N., dilecto et fideli suo, salutem. Scias quod post captionem Accon, et post recessum domini regis Franciæ a nobis apud Accon, qui ita turpiter peregrinationis suæ propositum et votum, contra voluntatem Dei dereliquit, in opprobrium æternum sui et

Oct. 1.
Richard's
announcement of his
victory.

between 7 and 17 is perhaps the origin of the mistake; which is shared by Benedict, although his account of the battle is different from Hoveden's. In both chronicles we here lose the guidance of the original diarist whose memoranda have been so valuable on Richard's move-

ments up to this time. The march can be traced with exactness both in the Itinerarium and in Bohadin.

¹ *Petro de Pratellis*] Willelmo de Pratellis, B. D. I.

² *Avennis*] Avennes, B. D. I.

³ *suo*] ejus, B. D. G. I.

⁴ This letter is not in Benedict.

A D 1191.
Oct 1.
Richard's
account of
the battle of
Arsouf,
which was
fought
Sept. 7.

“ regni ipsius, iter arripuimus versus¹ Jopen. Et dum prope (Not in
Benedict.)
“ Arsurum accederemus, Saladinus cum vehementi Sarraceno-
“ rum incursum obviam nobis occurrens, insultum fecit contra
“ nos. Sed Deo miserante, nullam amisimus die illo, nisi
“ virum optimum, et suis meritis universo exercitui carissimum,
“ Jacobum de Avenas, qui in exercitu Christiano per plures
“ annos ad serviendum Deo, quasi columna exercitus in omni
“ sanctitate et sinceritate fidei promptus existit et devotus.
“ Deinde Jopen Deo volente pervenimus; eandemque villam
“ fossatis et muro firmavimus, in proposito habentes ubique
“ Christianitatis negotium pro posse nostro promovere. Ipso
“ autem die, scilicet vigilia Nativitatis Beate Mariæ, ipse Sa-
“ ladinus infinitos de magnatibus viris suis amisit; et in fugam
“ conversus, quasi consilii et auxilii beneficio destitutus, to-
“ tam terram Sulie destruxit. Tertia autem die ante ipsius
“ Saladini confusionem, in sinistro latere cum quodam pilo vul-
“ nerati fuimus; sed gratia Dei jam ad sanitatem pervenimus.
“ Scias etiam, quod per Dei gratiam infra viginti dies post
“ Natalo Domini speramus recuperare sanctam civitatem Jeru-
“ salem, et sepulcrum Domini, et deinde ad partes nostras
“ revertemur. Teste nobismetipsis, apud Jopen, prima die
“ Octobris.”

*Epistola regis Angliæ ad abbatem de Claravalle de
eodem.²*

Oct. 1.
Richard
writes to the
abbot of
Clairvaux in
a spirit of
thankful-
ness.

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitan- (Not in
Benedict.)
“ niæ, et comes Andegaviæ, viro venerabili, et amico in Christo
“ carissimo, abbati de Claravalle³ salutem, et continuas felici-
“ tatis successum. Post lacrymabilem, et in commune ploran-
“ dam, civitatis sanctæ Jerusalem destructionem, civitatem Dei
“ viventis, super quam invocatum est nomen Ejus, commota
“ est et contremuit terra, quia Rex cœli perdidit terram Suam,
“ ubi steterunt pedes Ejus. Sed a sede apostolica diffusa Dei
“ benedictione per universam terram, amici crucis Christi ad
“ suscipiendum signum salutis in frontibus et in humeris eorum,
“ et ad ulciscendas Sanctæ Crucis injurias, sicut vestram non
“ latet sanctitatem, certatim evolabant. Inter quos et nos ad
“ serviendum Deo viventi, signo crucis accepto, ad defendenda

¹ versus] usque, Savile.

² This letter is not in Benedict.
The abbot of Clairvaux was Garnier

de Rochefort, ninth abbot, after-
wards bishop of Langres

³ Claravalle] Clarevalle, L.

(Not in
Benedict)

“ loca mortis Ejus, pretioso Suo Sanguine dedicata, que inimici
 “ crucis Christi hactenus ignominiose profanabant, tanti et
 “ tam sancti laboris in nos onus suscepimus, et intra breve
 “ temporis spatium post adventum domini regis Francorum
 “ ad Acon, ibidem Domino duce prospere apprehimus. Ubi
 “ non multo temporis tractu elapso,¹ reddita est domino regi
 “ Francorum et nobis civitas Acon, salva vita Sarracenorum
 “ qui ad eam custodiendam et defendendam intus missi fuerant;
 “ pactione etiam ex parte Saladini plenius firmata, quod nobis
 “ Crucem Sanctam et mille et quingentos captivos vivos re-
 “ signaret, diemque ad hæc omnia persolvenda nobis constituit.
 “ Sed eodem termino expirato, et pactione quam pepigerat
 “ penitus infirmata, de Sarracenis, quos in custodia habuimus,
 “ circa duo millia et sexcentos, sicut deceat, fecimus expirare;
 “ paucis tamen de nobilioribus retentis, pro quibus Sanctam
 “ Crucem et quosdam captivos Christianos sperabamus re-
 “ cuperaturos. Domino autem rege Francorum ad propria
 “ remeato, et ruinis et scissuris murorum civitatis Acon
 “ reparatis, ipsaque civitate fossatis et muro plenius firmata,
 “ ad promovendum Christianitatis negotium, et prosequendum
 “ nostri voti propositum, apud Joppen proposuimus, et nobis-
 “ cum dux Burgundiæ cum Francigenis sibi subditis, comes
 “ Henricus² cum suis, et multi alii comites et barones, et
 “ populus innumerabilis, ire. Cumque inter Acon et Joppen
 “ plurimum esset spatium, et tractus viarum prolixior, apud
 “ Cæsaream tandem, cum multo sudore gravique jactura nos-
 “ trorum, descendimus: et ipse Saladinus in eodem³ itinere
 “ de suis quamplurimos amisit. Cumque populus Dei ibidem
 “ aliquantulum respiraret, ad Joppen propositum iter sumus
 “ prosecuti. Et nostra anteriore custodia procedente, et castra
 “ apud Assur jam metante, Saladinus cum vehementi Sarrace-
 “ norum incurso super ultimam custodiam nostram impetum
 “ faciens, Divinæ miserationis favente gratia, a quatuor solum-
 “ modo turmis, quæ ei⁴ in fronte oppositæ fuerant, compulsus
 “ est in fugam: ipsumque fugientem per unam leucam tarmæ
 “ Christianorum plene sunt prosecutæ; tantamque stragem de
 “ nobilioribus Sarracenis quos Saladinus habebat, die illa,
 “ Sabbato videlicet, vigilia Nativitatis Sanctæ Mariæ virginis,
 “ prope Assur fecerunt, quantam Saladinus quadraginta annis
 “ transactis antea, una die non sustinuit. Nos vero de nostris,

A. D. 1191
Oct. 1.
The sur-
render of
Acre.

The mas-
sacre of the
Saracens.

The march
to Joppa.

The victory
at Arsouf.

on the 7th of
September.

¹ *elapso*] tracto, I.; spatio, D.

² *comes Henricus*] of Cham-
page.

³ *eadem*] eo, D. I.

⁴ *ei*] eum, B. I.; cum, D.

A D 1191.
Oct. 1
The arrival
at Joppa.

“ gratia Dei, nullum amisimus die illa, nisi virum optimum, (Not in
“ et suis meritis universo exercitui carum, Jacobum de Avennis, Benedet.)
“ qui in exercitu Christiano per plures annos ad serviendum
“ Deo viventi, quasi columna exercitus in omni sanctitate et
“ sinceritate fidei, promptus existit et devotus. Deinde Joppen,
“ Domino ducente, pervenimus, villamque illam¹ fossatis et
“ muro firmavimus, in proposito habentes ubique Christiani-
“ tatis negotium pro posse nostro efficaciter promovere.

Saladin has
dismantled
Ascalon.

“ Post diem prædictum confusionis Saladini, non est ausus
“ Saladinus cum Christianis congregari, sed ad trucidandos
“ amicos crucis, sicut oves occisionis, insidiatur eminus in
“ abscondito, quasi leo in spelunca sua. Audito itaque quod
“ nos apud Ascalon maturo gressu tenderemus, Ascalon ever-
“ tit, et ad terram prostravit, totamque terram Syriæ, quasi
“ totius consilii et auxilii beneficio destitutus, jam dese-
“ rit et contemnit. Unde bonæ spei sumimus argumen-
“ tum, quod in brevi, Domino dante, plenius recuperabitur

Richard
hopes to be
out of Syria
by Easter.

“ hæreditas Domini. Et quoniam hæreditas Domini jam in
“ parte recuperata est, et ad eam recuperandam omne dici
“ pondus sustinimus et æstus, totamque pecuniam nostram,
“ et non solum pecuniam, sed et vires et corpus, jam exhau-
“ simus, fraternitati vestræ notificamus quod ultra solemni-
“ tatem Paschalem in partibus Syriæ nequaquam poterimus
“ commorari. Dux Burgundia, cum Francigenis sibi subditis,
“ et comes Henricus cum suis, et cæteri comites et barones
“ et milites, qui in servitio Dei sua jam expenderunt pro
“ Deo, ad propria remeabunt, nisi per vestræ prædicationis
“ sollertiam eis, in populo, unde terra possit populari et
“ muniri, et in pecunia quam in servitio Dei uberius ex-
“ pendant, circumspetto provideatur. Unde vestræ sanctitatis

He asks the
nobles to
urge the
princes and
people to the
defence of
Palestine
after his own
departure.

“ genibus provoluti, et profusis lacrymis, preces affectuosas
“ porrigimus, rogantes attentius quatenus, sicut officio vestro
“ congruit et honori, principes et viros nobiles per universum
“ Christianismum constitutos, aliumque populum Dei, ad ser-
“ viendum Deo viventi inducere, et ad hoc provocare sata-
“ gatus, ut post prædictam Paschalem solemnitatem hæredi-
“ tatem Domini, quam nos, Deo propitio, ad idem Pascha
“ plenus obtinebimus, tueantur et defendant. Tantumque
“ faciat in hac parte vestræ sedulitatis vigilantia,² ne ex vestro
“ neglectu depereat, quod utilitas totius Christianitatis ex-
“ pectat. Ideo sanctitati vestræ super negotio Christianitatis
“ litteras nostras tam mature dirigimus, ne forte torporis
“ arguamur et negligentis, si tantum et tam sanctum virum

¹ illam] om. B. D. I.

| ² vigilantia] diligentia, Savile.

“ super instantibus Christianitatis negotiis aliquo modo præ-
 “ termiserimus præmunire. Vos igitur, sicut nos et alium
 “ populum Dei ad serviendum Deo, ad restituendam hæredi-
 “ tatem Suam Sibi, ante itineris arreptionem animastis;¹ ita
 “ et nunc plurimus instat articulus, ut populum Dei ad hoc
 “ idem faciendum fortius excitetis. Teste nobismetipsis, apud
 “ Joppen, prima die Octobris.”

A.D. 1191.
 Oct. 1.

Benedict,
 ii. 192.

Et est notandum, quod statim post confusionem Richard
 Saladini, pagani qui erant in Scalona et in Jopen reli- found both
 querunt eas, non audentes expectare adventum regis Ascalon and
 Angliæ; et ita rex Angliæ invenit utramque vacuam, Joppa de-
 et utramque firmavit muris et fossatis. serted.

Deinde quadam die, dum rex Angliæ quasi per Richard has
 unum milliare perrexisset² longe a Jopen per hortos a narrow
 ad spatiandum, et ibi dormisset, supervenit multitudo escape at
 paganorum et excitaverunt regem a somno; qui statim Joppa.
 ascendit equum suum, et viriliter restitit Saracenis. (Sept. 20.)
 Sed Willelmus de Pratellis, quidam familiaris suus,
 ibidem captus fuit, et Reginaldus socius ejus inter-
 fectus est, et unus destrariorum regis ibidem captus
 fuit, et ductor illius interfectus, et rex per vim evasit:
 et cum rex ascenderet in equum suum, cecidit ab eo
 zona ejus pretiosa auro et gemmis, quam Willelmus
 de Corneburc invenit, et illa postmodum reddita fuit
 regi. Et Saffadin, frater Saladini, remisit regi equum
 suum: et rex Angliæ rediit inde³ Jopen.

Deinde firmavit rex castellum des Plains, et casellum He fortifies
 Maen: et moram fecit apud Jopen fere usque ad Natale the Castle of
 Domini. the Plains
 and the vil-
 lage of Maen.

¹ *animastis*] *amastis*, B. D. I.
² *perrexisset*] *perrexit*, B. D. I.
 This event is described at length in
 the *Itinerarium*, pp. 286, 287; and

the date is given by Bohadin in his
 life of Saladin, p. 203, as Sept. 29.

³ *inde*] *om.* D. I.

A.D. 1191. *De discordia inter cancellarium regis et Johannem fratrem regis.*

The chancellor expels Gerard Camvill from the sheriffdom of Lincolnshire, and besieges the castle of Lincoln.

John takes the castles of Nottingham and Tickhill.

A peace is made.

Interim orta est gravis discordia in Anglia inter cancellarium regis et Johannem comitem Moretonii, fratrem regis propter castellum Lincolnie, quod cancellarius obsederat, expulso Girardo de Camvilla a baillia vicecomitatus Lincolnie, quam cancellarius tradidit Wilhelmo de Statevilla, et constituit eum inde vicecomitem. Dum autem predictus cancellarius obsideret castellum Lincolnie, castellum de Nothinham et castellum de Tikehal regis, reddita sunt comiti Johanni, qui statim mandavit cancellario, quod nisi celerius recessisset ab obsidione castelli Lincolnie, visitaret eum in virga ferrea. Exterritus itaque cancellarius mandatis Johannis comitis Moretonii, recessit ab obsidione illa; et mediantibus episcopis multis et aliis fidelibus domini regis, diem colloquii statuerunt, in quo inter illos convenit in hunc modum;⁹

Benedict, ii. 207.

¹ *Tikehal*] Tikeilla, I.; Tykehille, B.; Tikeill, D.; Tikehill, G.

² The very scanty accounts of these proceedings given by Hoveden, Benedict, William of Newburgh, and Richard of Devizes, are unintelligible without some attempt to harmonize them. (1) Benedict's account is very short, and gives only one date and no documents. (2) Hoveden is very brief and undated, but does give a copy of the final agreement between John and the justiciars. (3) Richard of Devizes is fuller, but his dates are, as they stand, inconsistent; the document which he gives as the final agreement made on the 26th of July being actually dated April 25, and making no mention of the archbishop of Rouen, who was one of the principal parties to the final concord. (4) William of Newburgh

gives a consecutive account of the affair, but places the events in the spring, instead of the summer or autumn, as they are placed in Richard of Devizes. It would appear that this divergency arises from the fact of the struggle falling into two campaigns, in which certain details are repeated. There were three conferences at Winchester, two attempts on the chancellor's part to seize the castle of Lincoln, and two settlements, one given by Richard of Devizes, and containing no mention of the archbishop of Rouen; and the other given by Hoveden. At the risk of a long note, I will give the harmonized dates, on this hypothesis.

(1.) First conference at Winchester, in which John and the chancellor quarrel about the custody of the castles. March 4, 1191. R. Deviz. 26.

*Cyrogaphum inter comitem Moretonii et regis
cancellarium.*

A. D. 1191.
July 28.

(Not in
Benedict.)

" Notum sit omnibus ad quos præsens scriptum pervenerit,
" controversiam illam inter comitem Moretonii et dominum
" cancellarium exortam, sic, domino Rothomageusi archiepi-
" scopo, et Dunelmensi, Landoniensi, Winthoniensi, Batho-
" niensi, Refensi, Coventrensi, episcopis, et aliis fidelibus
" domini regis mediantibus, esse sopitam: scilicet, quod comes
" Moretonii castella de Tikehal¹ et de Nottingham, quæ ceperat,

Peace is
made be-
tween John
of Mortain
and the
chancellor.

(2.) The chancellor's first attempt on Lincoln, early in the spring, before the arrival of the news of pope Clement's death, or the return of the archbishop of Rouen. W. Newb., l.b. iv. c. 16.

(3.) Pope Clement dies, April 10; the news would reach England in a fortnight, or perhaps less. The chancellor trembling for his legation makes a hasty peace with John, the form of which is given by R. Devizes, p. 33; at Winchester, April 25.

(4.) The archbishop of Rouen arrives, April 27. The chancellor takes courage and renews hostilities. After Midsummer (Ben. Pet. ii. 207) the chancellor besieges Lincoln. The struggle closes with a second agreement, given in the text, in which the archbishop of Rouen is clearly recognized. This may be safely dated on the 28th of July, according to Richard of Devizes, although he gives, instead of the final agreement, that of the 25th of April.

The following are the points which prove the agreement given in the text to be a different act, and drawn up on a different occasion, from that given by R. Devizes, as against Sir Francis Palgrave: (*Introd. to Rot. Cur. Reg.*, vol. I. p. lv.)

(1.) In the April agreement each party chooses eleven commissioners; in the text each chooses seven: of

the chancellor's eleven, one, the earl of Warren, does not appear among the seven. Of John's eleven, Reginald Wasseville does not appear among the seven: only three of the eleven are named by R. Devizes. Hoveden gives all the names of the seven. (2.) In R. Devizes there is no mention of the archbishop of Rouen; in Hoveden he is one of the chief negotiators: this can only be accounted for on the supposition that he was absent at the time of the transaction of the former act. (3.) In R. Devizes, the castle of Nottingham is entrusted to William de Wendeval, and that of Tickhill to Reginald de Wasseville: in Hoveden, Nottingham is given to William Marshall, and Tickhill to William de Wendeval. (4.) The Act of April 25 does not extend to the guardianship of the other castles; that given in the text does. (5.) The Act of April 25 engages the chancellor to support John's claim to the crown in case of Richard's death; but there is nothing about this in Hoveden. (6.) The treaty given in R. Devizes is provisional, that in Hoveden is final. There are some other points of interest in these chronological details for which I must refer to the preface to the present volume

¹ Tikehal] Tikel, I. Tikel, D.

A D 1191. " reddidit domino regi per manum domini Rothomagensis, (Not in
 July 28. " tradenda custodine Willelmi Marescalli, et Willelmi de Benedict.)
 John gives " Wenneval: scilicet, Willelmo Marescallo castellum de Not-
 up the " ingeham, et Willelmo de Wenneval¹ castellum de Tikchil.
 castles of " Qui prædicta castella ad honorem et fidelitatem domini
 of " regis, usque ad reditum ejus, præstito juramento, custo-
 Netto chan " dient: et cum redierit, ad suam inde voluntatem opera-
 and Tickmil " buntur. Et si forte dominus rex, quod absit, in hac pere-
 to be held " grinatione sua decesserit, prædicta castella prædicto comiti
 for the king: " sino ulla detentione et dilatione reddent. Et si forte
 " dominus cancellarius interim erga prædictum comitem præ-
 " cesserit, et excessum ad consilium et considerationem præ-
 " dicti domini Rothomagensis, et aliorum familiarium domini
 " regis et curiæ suæ, requisitus emendare sine dilatione
 " noluerit, prædicta castella prædicto comiti reddent et resti-
 " tuent. Sed et alia castra de honoribus a domino rege sibi
 " datis, quæ fidelibus domini regis tradita sunt custodienda,
 " scilicet domino Rothomagensi castrum de Wallingford;
 and the " domino Londoniensi castrum de Briston; domino Coven-
 other castles " trensi castrum del Pec; Ricardo dei Pec castrum de Bolles-
 of his hon- " hovers,² et si Ricardus recipere noluerit, dominus Coven-
 ours. Wall- " trensis recipiet; Waltero filio Rolerti castellam de Eya;
 ington, the " comiti Rogero Bigot castellum de Hereford; Ricardo
 Bristol, the " Reuel castellum de Exonia, et de Laustaventun; qui simi-
 Peas, Beles- " liter fidelitatem domini regis de ipsis ad opus ipsius fide-
 over, Eye, " liter custodiendis, et si forte decesserit (quod Deus avertat)
 Hereford, " domino Johanni reddendis, juraverunt. Sed et tria castella
 and Launceston. " ad coronam domini regis pertinentia, scilicet castellum de
 Also the " Windeshovers³ comiti de Arundel; castellum de Wintonia
 royal castles " Gilleberto de Lasci;⁴ castellum de Northamtun Simoni de
 are provided " Pateshille⁵ tradita sunt custodienda; qui fidelitatem domini
 for. " regis de ipsis ad opus ipsius fideliter custodiendis jura-
 " verunt. Sed et concessum est quod episcopi et abbates,
 " comites et barones, vavassores et libere tenentes, non ad
 " voluntatem justitiarum vel ministrorum domini regis de
 " terris vel catallis suis dissnisientur, sed judicio curiæ
 " domini regis secundum legitimas consuetudines et assisas
 " regni tractabuntur, vel per mandatam domini regis. Et
 " similiter dominus Johannes in sua terra faciet observari.
 " Et si quis aliter facere præsumpserit, ad petitionem prædicti

and the other castles of his honours. Wallington, Bristol, the Peas, Belesover, Eye, Hereford, and Launceston. Also the royal castles are provided for.

The king's servants are no more to disseize men without process of law, nor is John.

¹ *Wenneval*] Wendewal, B. I.; Wendiwall, D.

² *Bolleshovors*] Bollesofres, B. G.; Bollisovers, D.; Bollesoures, I.

³ *Windeshovers*] Windesoures, B.; Windeshoures, I.

⁴ *Lasci*] Laci, D. I.

⁵ *Pateshulle*] Pateshull, D. I.

(Not in Benedict.)

“ comitis, per dominum Rothomagensem, si in Anglia fuerit, A. D. 1181.
 “ et per justitias domini regis, et per eos qui pacem jura- July 28.
 “ verunt, emendabitur: et similiter dominus Johannes ad The arch-
 “ petitionem eorundem emendabit. Nova castella, post trans- bishop of
 “ fretationem domini regis ad peregrinationem suam facienda, Rouen or the
 “ vel inchoata vel perfecta, debebuntur, nec alia usque ad king's jus-
 “ reditum domini regis nova firmabuntur, nisi in dominicis tices will
 “ maneriis domini regis, si opus fuerit; vel ad opus alienjus remedy com-
 “ nominatæ personæ per præceptum domini regis factum per plaints, and
 “ litteras, vel per certum nuncium. Resaisina vicecomitatus so will John
 “ Lincolnis fiet Girardo¹ de Camvilla: et eadem die dies ei New castles
 “ conveniens præfigetur standi in curia domini regis ad judi- are to be
 “ cium. Quod si contra eum monstrari poterit quod judicio dismantled.
 “ curiæ domini regis vicecomitatum vel castellum Lincolnie Gerard Cam-
 “ perdere debuerit, perdat; sin minus, retineat: nisi interim vill is to be
 “ alio modo pax inde fieri poterit. Nec dominus Johannes replaced in
 “ ipsum contra judicium curiæ domini regis manutenebit his sheriff-
 “ nec utlagos, vel inimicos domini regis, qui ei² fuerint dom, and his
 “ nominati, receptabit, nec in terris suis receptari permittet. case he tried
 “ Sed si quis retatus fuerit de aliquo forisfacto domino regi regularly.
 “ facto, bene licebit comiti ipsum in terris suis receptare, John is not
 “ quamdiu ipse obtulerit se staturum ad rectum in curia do- to oppos-
 “ mini regis. Hanc ergo pacem bona fide, sine malo ingenio, the judg-
 “ tenendam et servandam, propriis manibus affidaverunt, ment of the
 “ manu domini Rothomagensis prædicti, comes et cancellarius, court.
 “ et quatuordecim barones ex utraque parte juraverunt: Sureties on
 “ scilicet, ex parte cancellarii comes de Arundel, comes de each side.
 “ Salesbiri, comes Rogerus Bigot, comes de Clare, Walterus
 “ filius Roberti, Willelmus de Braosa, Rogerus filius Rainfray,³
 “ et ex parte comitis Stephanus Ridel cancellarius, Willelmus
 “ de Wenneval,⁴ Robertus de Mara, Philippus de Virecestre,⁵
 “ Willelmus de Kahannes,⁶ Gillebertus Basset, Willelmus de
 “ Monte Acuto. Et si quid infra treugas captum fuerit aut
 “ interceptum ab utraque parte, legitime reddetur et emen- John is to
 “ dabitur. Et hæc facta sunt salva in omnibus auctoritate et have his two
 “ mandato domini regis; ita tamen, quod si dominus rex ante castles at ad
 “ reditum suum hanc concordiam teneri noluerit, prædicta cast- events.
 “ tella de Nothinham et de Tikehil domino Johanni reddentur,
 “ quicquid dominus rex inde præceperit.”

¹ Girardo] correction for Ricardo in A.

² et] om. B. D. J.

³ Rainfray] Rainfrei, B. I.

⁴ Wenneval] Wendewal, B.; Wendewalle, I.

⁵ Virecestre] Wirecestre, B.; Wrescestre, I.; Tulescestre, G.

⁶ Kahannes] Cannes, B.; Kannes, I. The names are abridged in D.

A. D. 1191. *De consecratione et de adventu Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi in Angliam.*

Geoffrey of York after his consecration, returns to England.

Eodem anno, paulo post supradictam pacem inter cancellarium et comitem factam, Gaufridus,¹ Eboracensis electus, consecratus est a Willelmo² Turonensi archiepiscopo per mandatum Coelestini summi pontificis: qui statim post consecrationem suam, immemor sacramenti, quod fecerat domino regi fratri suo, scilicet quod non rediret in Angliam antequam tres anni fuissent elapsi postquam rex ab Anglia recesserat, in Angliam venire festinavit.

Benedict, ii. 200.

He is forbidden by the chancellor to land; but persists.

Cumque ipse venisset ad Wissand in Flandria ad transfretandum in Angliam, prohibitum est ei ex parte cancellarii, ne in Angliam, contra sacramentum quod ipse regi fecerat, venire præsumeret; sed Eboracensis archiepiscopus a proposito suo propter mandatum illius desistere noluit. Unde idem cancellarius præcepit illum comprehendere, si in Angliam venisset.

Benedict, ii. 210.

He lands at Dover in September, and goes to the monastery of St. Martin.

Archiepiscopus itaque Eboracensis venit in Angliam, et applicuit apud Doroberniam mense Septembris,³ et servientes cancellarii stabant in littore, ut eum comprehenderent. Sed ille inde præmunitus antequam de navi exiret, mutavit vestes suas, et equo ascenso in cujus velocitate confidebat, ad monachorum cœnobium ejusdem villæ confugit. Et erat quasi hora diei sexta, et monachi missam inchoaverant; et eum legeretur epistola, et perventum esset ad locum ubi per Beatum Apostolum dicitur, "Qui conturbat vos, portabit iudicium, quicumque est ille;" et alibi in eadem epistola, "Uti-
"nam abscedantur qui vos conturbant," intravit archiepiscopus Eboracensis ecclesiam, confidens in Domino, et pro munere gratum habuit prænosticum,⁴ referens illud ad perpetuam beatitudinis suæ quietem, et ad cancellarii venturam confusionem. Ministri autem cancellarii, quos ipse misit comprehendere eum, obsederunt ecclesiam per circuitum, ita quod ille exire non potuit, nisi per manus illorum.

Gal. v. 10, 12.

¹ Gaufridus] om. B. D. L.

² Willelmo] The usual mistake for Bartholomew. Geoffrey was consecrated at S. Martin's, Tours, Aug. 18, 1191, by the archbishop, Henry 1. shop of Bayeux, and six

or seven others. R. de Diceto, 603.

³ Septembris] Sept. 14. R. de Diceto, 633. Gerv. 1576.

⁴ prænosticum] pronosticum, B. D. L.

Benedict,
D. 211.

Quadam vero die,¹ post celebrationem missæ, dum adhuc idem archiepiscopus indutus vestimentis sacerdotibus staret ad altare, funesti satellites illi intraverunt ecclesiam, et manus violentas iniecerunt in illum, et traxerunt extra ecclesiam; et sic extractum, immo distractum, viliter et ignominiose duxerunt per lutum platearum et per vicos; populus autem stabat clamans post illos, "O ignavi, quare ita ducitis illum? quid mali fecit? Archiepiscopus est, et regis filius, regisque frater." Sed illi non exaudientes vocem populi, duxerunt eum in castellum Doroberniæ, et tradiderunt eum Mathæo de Clere constabulario custodiendum.

A.D. 1161.
September.
He is arrested by the officers of the chancellor.

Quod cum comiti Johanni fratri ejusdem archiepiscopi nunciatum esset, quæsit a cancellario si per eum hæc facta fuissent; et confessus est, et non negavit: et præcepit comes ut archiepiscopus liberaretur, et liberatus est.²

John insists on his release.

De dejectione cancellarii de regimine regni.

Qui³ cum Londonias venisset, conquestus est comiti Johanni, et episcopis, et aliis magnatibus regni, de injuria sibi⁴ a cancellario et suis illata. Et præcepit comes ut cancellarius juri staret in curia regis super injuria illa quam archiepiscopo Eboracensi fratri suo fecerat, et Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo. Quod cum ipse cancellarius facere de die in diem distulit, comes Johannes, et archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, et episcopi, et principes regni, statuerunt illi diem peremptorium⁵ apud Redinges. Ad diem autem illum venerunt illic comes Moretonii, et fere omnes episcopi et comites et barones regni. Et post diem peremptorium moram fecerunt ibi expectantes adventum cancellarii; sed ipse venire noluit, nec nuncium mittere.

He complains to the barons against the chancellor.

They summoned the chancellor to Reading, but he does not come.

Benedict,
D. 212.

¹ *Quadam vero die*] Sept. 18. R. de Diceto, 663; Gerv. 1576.

² *liberatus est*] Geoffrey was led back to S. Martin's, Dover, where he had been arrested, on the eighth day after his capture, that is, Sept. 26 (R. de Dic. , 663), and on the third day after, Sept. 28, set out for London (Gerv. 1577), on the 2nd of October he was received at

London, in S. Paul's, by the bishop. R. de Diceto, 663; Ric. Dev. z, p. 37.

³ *Qui*] om. B. D. I.

⁴ *sibi*] om. B. D. I.

⁵ *diem peremptorium*] The day fixed was Oct. 5; and the place the bridge of Lodeve near Reading. R. de Dic. 663.

A D 1101.
October.
Both parties
hasten to
London.

Deinde comes Johannes, et episcopi qui cum eo erant, paraverunt se Londonias ire, ut ibi in majori audientia Landoniensium fruerentur consilio, quid eis faciendum esset de cancellario illo, qui sic conturbaverat regnum, et juri stare noluit.

Benedict.
ii. 212.

Skirmish
between the
retinues on
the way

Quod cum cancellarius audisset, recessit a Vindeshoveres, et Londonias ire properavit; et dum iter faceret, contigit quod familia et milites illius, et milites comitis Johannis, obviaverunt sibi et acriter congressi sunt.¹ Et in illo congressu unus de militibus Johannis comitis, nomine Rogerus de Planis,² interfectus est: tamen comes prævaluit, et cancellarius cum suis in fugam conversus Londonias ingressus est, et recepit se et suos infra turrum Landoniarum.

Oct. 7.
John
reaches
London.

Et comes Johannes, et fere omnes episcopi et comites Angliæ, eadem die, scilicet tertia die post octavas Sancti Michaelis, intraverunt Londonias, et in crastino³ prædictus Johannes, frater regis, et archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, et omnes episcopi et comites et barones, et cives Landonienses cum illis, convenerunt in atrio ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli. Et accusabant prædictum cancellarium in multis, et præcipue in injuriis quas fecit domino Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et domino Dunelmensi episcopo. Socii autem prædicti cancellari, quos rex associaverat illi in regimine regni, accusabant eum in multis; dicentes quod ipse, spretis illorum consiliis, omnia negotia regni cum impetu et voluntaria dispositione faciebat.

Benedict.
ii. 213.

Oct. 8.
Meeting at
St. Paul's.

The arch-
bishop of
Rouen and
William
Marshall
produce
their com-
mission, and
the barons
determine to
depose the
chancellor
from the jus-
ticiarship.

Archiepiscopus vero Rothomagensis, et Wilhelmus Marescallus, comes de Striguil, tunc primo ostenderunt coram populo literas domini regis sigillatas: per quas dominus rex mandavit a Messana, quod ipsi associarentur cancellario in regimine regni, et ut cancellarius sine illorum consilio, et aliorum assignatorum, nihil de negotio regis et regni tractasset, et ut prædictus cancellarius, si ipse quicquam in detrimentum regni, vel sine consilio prædictorum fecisset, deponeretur, et loco illius institueretur Rothomagensis archiepiscopus.

Placuit ergo Johanni fratri regis, et omnibus episcopis, et comitibus et baronibus regni, et civibus Landoniarum, quod

¹ John went on Monday, Oct. 7, to Staines, to meet the chancellor, who fled then to London. Gir. Camb. V. Galfr., *Ang. Sac.* ii. 394, 395.

² *Planis*] Planes, B. D. L.

³ *crastino*] Tuesday, Oct. 8. R. de Diceto, 664; Gir. Camb., *Ang. Sac.* ii. 398.

Benedict,
ii. 213.

cancellarius ille deponeretur; et deposuerunt eum: et in loco illius instituerunt Rothomagensem archiepiscopum, qui nihil operari voluit in regimine regni, nisi per voluntatem et consensum sociorum suorum assignatorum, et per consilium baronum scaccarii.

A. D. 1191.
Oct. 8.
Their decision.

Benedict,
ii. 214.

Et eodem die¹ comes Moretonii, et archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, et alii regis justitiiarii, concesserunt civibus Londoniensium habere communam suam. Et² comes Moretonii et archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, et fere omnes episcopi et comites et barones regni, juraverunt communam illam firmiter et inconcusse se servaturos, quamdiu domino regi placuerit: et cives Londoniensium juraverunt fidele servitium domino regi Ricardo, et hæredi suo; et si ipse sine prole decessisset, reciperent comitem Johannem, fratrem Ricardi regis, in regem et dominum; et juraverunt ei fidelitatem contra omnes homines, salva fidelitate regis Ricardi fratris sui.

The council confirms the privileges of the city of London.

The Londoners take oaths to Richard and John.

Cancellarius itaque depositus juravit quod redderet castella Angliæ; et statim³ reddidit illi turrinam Londoniensium; et ipse tradidit archiepiscopo Rothomagensi eam, et Vindeshoveres, et alia quædam, sed non omnia. Unde Hugo de Nunant, Coventrensis episcopus, in hac forma scripsit;

The chancellor surrenders the Tower and Windsor.

Epistola Hugonis Coventrensis episcopi, de dejectione Willelmi Eliensis episcopi, regis cancellarii.

Benedict,
ii. 215.

“ Quæ litterarum apicibus adnotantur, posteritati⁴ profecto signantur, ut pagina paucorum testatione roborata, multorum consulat salutem, vel proficiat indemnitate. Quod hic proponitur, fit quasi in exemplum. Multa enim scribuntur ad cautelam, ut fiant; et multa ne fieri debeant, ut ecclesia

Letter of Hugh of Nunant against the chancellor,

¹ *eodem die*] If Richard of Devizes is right, the institution of the Communa of the Londoners should be dated somewhat earlier. He places it on the same day that Philip of France left Acre on his return, viz. July 31. If this be so, the act of the justices and barons on this occasion was simply to confirm and signify their adherence to the new

institution. R. Dev. 53; R. Dic. 664.

² *Et*] eodem anno, ins. Savile.

³ *statim*] The chancellor had to swear on the Wednesday to surrender the castles. On the Thursday, the 10th, he was deposed from the justiciarship. Gir. Camb., A. S. ii. 398; R. Devizes, p. 42.

⁴ *posteritati*] *prospertati*, A. B. D. G. I.

A D 1191.
October.
The fall of
the Empire
of Byz.

His arrange-
ments and
luxury.

His grand-
father was a
herf.

He arran-
dizes his
family by
marriages.

His con-
tempt for
the English.

“ Christi in utroque proficiat, et cum appetenda inquit, et Benedict.
“ cum fugienda declinat. Casum itaque Elyensis episcopi ad 11 213
“ notitiam omnium litteris extantibus volumus in perpetuum¹
“ consignari, ut in hoc exemplari semper inveniat et humili-
“ tas quod prosporet, et superbia quod formidet. Erat enim
“ ille vir magnus inter omnes occidentales, utpote qui regni
“ potestatem, et sedis apostolicæ auctoritatem, quasi ambi-
“ dexter habebat, et regis sigillum super omnem terram ges-
“ tabat, ut pro sua voluntate posset imperare, et de potestate
“ valeret omnia effectui mancipare, ut pariter rex et sacerdos
“ haberetur et esset: nec inveniri posset qui suæ auderet
“ resistere voluntati. Quoniam ipse dixit, et facta sunt; man-
“ davit, et inventa sunt universa. Hujus erant regim gazæ, Benedict,
“ thesaurus totus et fiscus generaliter omnis, ut jam non regis 11 214
“ sed sua diceretur res quælibet quæ sub climate nostro na-
“ taret. Quia nec venatio in terris, nec piscatio in aquis, nec
“ volatus erat in aere, qui suæ non cogeretur mensæ scribere:
“ ut partitus videretur fuisse elementa² cum Deo, cœlum
“ tantum cœli Domino relinquens; cætera tria suis usibus,
“ immo abusibus, et lusibus profutura reservans. Huic omnes
“ filii nobilium serviebant vultu demisso,³ nec in cœlum aspi-
“ cere audebant, nisi forte vocati ab eo; et si aliter atten-
“ tassent, aculco pungebantur, quem dominus præ manibus
“ habebat, memor piæ recordationis avi sui, qui, servilis con-
“ ditionis in paga Belvacensi, et aratrum ducere et boves
“ castigare consueverat; qui tandem ad remedium libertatis
“ ad fines Normannorum transvolavit. Hujus nepotes et con-
“ sanguineas, sive quascunq; propinquas, de paupere tugurio
“ procreatas, comites et barones regniq; magnates sibi summa
“ aviditate in matrimonium copulare ardebant; gloriosum repu-
“ tantes quocunq; titulo familiaritatis ejus gratiam adquisis-
“ sent; nec erat rusticus qui agrum, nec civis qui fundum,
“ nec miles qui prædium, nec clericus qui ecclesiam, nec
“ monachus qui abbatiam affectaret, quem in jus et potesta-
“ tem ejus transire non oporteret.
“ Licet igitur⁴ flexo genu tota Anglia ei deserviret, ad Fran-
“ corum tamen libertatem semper aspirans, apud Oximum⁵ mili-
“ tes deservientes omnemq; suam familiam abstrahabat; et
“ spreta in omnibus gente Anglorum, stipatus agmine Franco-
“ rum et Flandrensium pompaticè incedebat, subsannationem
“ in naribus, cachinnum in ore, derisum in oculis, supercilium

¹ in perpetuum] impetratum, A.

² fuisse elementa] esse, D. I.

³ demisso] dimisso, A.

⁴ igitur] ergo, B. D. G. I.

⁵ Oximum] Oxonium, B. D. G.,

corrected in A.

Benedict,
n. 216.

“ in fronte gestans pro lamina sacerdotis. Hic ad augmentum
 “ et famam sui nominis, emendicata carmina et rhythmos
 “ adulatorios comparabat, et de regno Francorum cantores et
 “ joculatores muneribus allexerat, ut de illo canerent in pla-
 “ teis: et jam dicebatur ubique, quod non erat talis in orbe.
 “ Et revera si tempus Cæsaris fuisset, se Deum vivum cum
 “ Tiberio¹ appellari fecisset. Cum autem rex ei comites ad-
 “ didisset, ut communi consilio saltem majora ordinaret regni,
 “ consortem nequaquam habere sustulit, quod gloriæ suæ
 “ plurimum crederet dedecorari, si cujusquam² mortalis in-
 “ digeret consilio. Solus ergo regnabat, et solus imperabat,
 “ et a mari usque ad mare timebatur ut Deus, et si plus
 “ dicerem, non mentirer; quia Deus longanimis est et mise-
 “ ricors, ipse autem in impetu male cuncta ministrans, nec in
 “ faciendo justitiam habere, nec in sustinendo moram potuit
 “ expectare. Hinc etiam domini sui litteras omnes et man-
 “ data spernebat, ne dominum habere videretur, nec cuiquam
 “ subesse crederetur, qui omnes quasi servos suæ effecerat
 “ voluntatis.

A. D. 3401
October.
His dat-
ters.

He despised
his col-
leagues and
the ki'g's
commands.

g. Luke,
l. 78.

“ Cum igitur Anglia sub tam gravi onere et jugo im-
 “ portabili diutius laborasset, ingeniseens tandem propter
 “ opera clamavit in fortitudine, et ascendit clamor ejus ad
 “ Dominum, et respexit eam Oriens ex alto, Qui superborum
 “ et sublimium colla propria virtute calcat, et humiles exaltat
 “ in magnitudine brachii Sui. Sol nempè justitiæ, licet bonis
 “ et malis luceat, tamen alta sapientium oculos excæcet, et
 “ mentes humilium sui luminis illustratione fecundat. Licet
 “ igitur cancellarius ille fortiter legisset ‘Suramis stare diu
 “ negatum,’ et ‘Qui stat vident ne cadat,’ et ‘Qui se exal-
 “ tat humiliabitur,’ et ‘Quia ante ruinam cor exaltatur;’
 “ tamen humilium conditionis, quæ nunquam in eodem statu
 “ permanet, et oblitus volubilitatis rotæ, quæ infimum erigit,
 “ et elevatum deprimere consuevit, nunquam tamen voluit
 “ intelligere, ut bene ageret; sed iniquitatem meditans in
 “ cubili suo, ubi cum ministris nequitæ et pueris suis dor-
 “ miebat in conclavi, apposuit iniquitatem super iniquitatem,
 “ ut propter superbiam et abusiones suas digno Dei judicio
 “ seipsum præcipitaret in potentias Domini, ut jam non esset
 “ locus misericordiæ, sed soli potestati; nec esset tempus
 “ miserendi ejus vel parcendi. Ipse enim dictavit sententiam
 “ adversum se, exasperavit vindictam, qui tantum facinus
 “ affectavit, in quo non hominis tantum, sed Dei magis ira-
 “ cundiam provocavit. Licet enim Dominus omnia possit,

His pride
provoked
the ven-
geance of
God.

Lucan,
l. vii. 70.

1 Cor. x. 12.

S. Luke,
xiv. 11.

Prov. xvi. 18.

P's. xxxvi. 5.

¹ Tiberio] Libero, A. B. D. G. I. | ² cujusquam] cujuslibet, D. I.

A D. 1191
October.
God gave
the country
deliverance
from him.

“ innocentem tamen condemnare¹ non potest, nec nocentem Benedict.
ll. 217
“ salvare, nisi pareat, si forte nocens fuerit obstinatus. Menti
“ enim obstinate et fronti meretricis durities opponitur veri
“ adamantis, ut conterat.² Quia nihil tam forte est, quod
“ fortiori non cedat. Cum igitur homo tantus superari ab
“ homine non posset, Pater misericordiarum, et Deus totius 2 Cor. i. 3.
“ consolationis, venit in adiutorium populo Dei supplicanti, et
“ in affectum Ejus manum misericordie supponens, deiecit
“ illum a potestate; et accusatorem, immo destructorem, in
“ eum spiritum vertiginis induxit, a quo reverti non posset
“ vel resurgere; sed ita induravit cor, excœcavit mentem, infa-
“ tuavit consilium illius, quod archiepiscopum Eboracensem in
“ ecclesia prius obsedit, postmodum cepit, captum violenter
“ extraxit, extractum fortiter vinxit, vinctum turpiter traxit,
“ tractum incarcerationis. Et licet concursus fieret populorum
“ dicentium, ‘ Justus homo et amicus Dei quid fecit, ut ducatur
“ ‘ ad carcerem? Innocens sanguis ejus sine causa damnatur;’ Benedict.
ll. 213.
“ tamen non potuit audiri pietas, ubi superbia regnabat; nec
“ auditus est Deus, ubi imperabat tyrannus.

He arrested
the arch-
bishop of
York in
church.

“ Veniebat enim a partibus Normanniæ archiepiscopus ille
“ præfatus, cum baculo pastorali, cum mitra et annulo, et
“ superhumerali, quod novis temporibus pallium nuncupatur.
“ Et cum esset filius regis Henrici bonæ recordationis, et
“ frater Ricardi regis modo regnantis, frater quoque comitis
“ Johannis Moretonii, nihil tamen potuit ei prodesse regius
“ sanguis; cumque esset noviter consecratus, nihil eum potuit
“ juvare novitas sacramenti. Ergo per totam insulam a laicis
“ publice proclamatur: ‘ Pereat, qui perdere cuncta festinat;
“ ‘ opprimatur ne omnes opprimat: Quia si in viridi hoc
“ ‘ fecit,³ in arido quid faceret?’ Et ecce Spiritu Sancto da-
“ cente, ab aquilone et mari, et ex omni parte totius insulæ,
“ concurrunt et confluunt universi, ut archiepiscopus ille
“ posset liberari.

The chun-
celor fled to
London
(Oct. 7.)

“ Verum funiculis peccatorum suorum ipsam constringenti-
“ bus cancellarium, et conscientia sua eum vehementius accu-
“ sante, fugit loricatus a facie hominum, et se abscondit et
“ inclusit cum suis hominibus in turre Lundoniæ. Nobis
“ autem introeuntibus civitatem in sero, plures de familia ejus
“ armati cum gladiis exsertis nos invaserunt, et nobilem virum
“ de nostris militem interfecerunt, et plures vulneraverunt.

Oct. 8
Council
against him.

“ Mane ergo habito consilio cum omnibus fere magnatibus
“ regni, præseunte domino Johanne fratre regis, et Rothoma-

¹ condemnare] damnare, D. I.

³ fecit] facit, B. D. I.

² conterat] convertat, D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 219.

“ gensi et Eboracensi archiepiscopis, episcopis etiam præsentibus Dunelmensi, Landoniensi, Vintoniensi, Batoniensi, Rofensi, Norwicensi, Lincolnensi, Herefordensi, Menevensi, Coventrensi; factoque concilio coram omni populo totius civitatis, præsentibusque justitiariis domini regis, et approbantibus, de consilio universorum statuimus, ne talis de cætero in regno Angliæ dominetur, per quem ecclesia Dei ad ignominiam, et populus ad inopiam erat redactus: ut enim cætera omittam, ipse et garciones¹ sui totum regnum exhauserant, nec viro balteus, nec fœminæ monile remansit, nec annulus nobili, nec quodlibet pretiosum etiam alicui Judæo. Thosaurum quoque regis exinaniverat prorsus, ut in omnibus scriniis vel sacellis nihil, præter claves, de toto isto biennio posset inveniri.

A.D. 1191
October.
Charges of extortion made against him.

“ Tertia autem die² promisit firmiter, et per quandam de suis fidem dedit corporaliter, cunctis videntibus, quod insulam non exiret, donec castella quædam, quæ in manu sua habebat, et advenis, et ignotis personis, et obscuris traderat, quæ ibi nominata fuerunt, libera penitus resignasset, et personis nominatis tradi fecisset. Super quo et fratres suos et camerarium suum obsides dedit: et Cantuariam properavit,³ ut ibi, sicut decebat, crucem acciperet peregrinationis, et deponeret crucem legationis, quam per annum et dimidium anni,⁴ post mortem papæ Clementis, in præjudicium Romanæ ecclesiæ et detrimentum Anglicanæ portaverat. Omnes enim ecclesias Angliæ crux illa redemit, id est ad redemptionem coegit, nec fuit aliquis immunis, qui crucis illius stigmata⁵ non sentiret. Et si forte alicujus episcopi domum intravit, ab eo scire poteritis, quod centum vel ducentarum marcarum pretio sua constitit procuratio. Cum autem in castello Doroberniæ aliquot diebus⁶ commoratus fuisset, immemor suæ professionis, et fidei obligationis quam fecerat: oblitus etiam fratrum suorum, quos obsides datos morti turpiter exponerat, navigare proposuit:

On the third day, Oct. 10, he promised to surrender the castles: and went to Canterbury.

After spending some days at Dover he determined to fly.

Benedict,
ii. 219.

¹ *garciones*] ganeones, Savile.

² *Tertia autem die*] Thursday, Oct. 10.

³ He left the Tower on Friday, Oct. 11, R. de Dic. 665; and went to Bermondsey; thence on the Saturday he proceeded to Dover (*Ibid.*).

⁴ *per annum et dimidium anni*] This is an extraordinary misstate-

ment; for pope Clement III. died only the preceding April.

⁵ *stigmata*] signata, ins. B. D. L.; signata is corrected to stigmata in A., and does not appear in G.

⁶ *aliquot diebus*] He attempted to escape on the Thursday, Oct. 17: R. de Dic. 665. Graldus places his capture on the Saturday, Oct. 12, p. 398.

A D 1191. " et cum hoc aperte non auderet, novum genus fraudis invenit, Benedict.
ii. 219.
 October. " et sese foeminam simulavit, cujus sexum semper odivit;¹
 He dis- " vestem quoque sacerdotis in habitum convertit meretricis.
 guised " Proh dolor! vir factus est foemina; cancellarius cancellaria;
 himself as a " sacerdos meretrix; episcopus scurra. Ergo de castello su-
 woman " periori, licet claudus esset, pedibus praelegit properare ad
 " littus, tunica foeminea viridi et enormiter longa, pro tunica
 " sacerdotis jacinthina indutus, capam habens ejusdem coloris
 " deformiter manicatam pro planeta; peplum in capite pro
 " mitra; pannum lineum in manu sinistra, quasi ad vendendum,
 " pro manipulo; virgam venditoris in dextra, pro baculo
 " pastorali. Talibus ornatus antistes descendit ad mare, et
 " qui lorica militis saepius gestare solebat, mira res, quod tam
 " effoeminati animi factus, foemineum animum praelegit. Cum
 " enim seeret in littore supra petram, piscator quidam² depu-
 " tans seortum, propius accessit, et qui quasi nudus de mari
 " descenderat, calefieri forte cupiens, cucurrit ad monstrum,
 " et manu sinistra collum complectens, dextera partes inferi-
 " ores rimatur. Cumque tunicam subito sublevasset, et nimis
 " inverecunde ad partes verecundas manum³ extendisset au-
 " dacter, femoralia sensit, et virum in foemina certis indicis
 " agnovit, et vehementer admirans et retro prosiliens, totus
 " attonitus, voce magna proclamat; 'Venite et videte omnes
 " 'mirabilia, quod virum in foemina inveni.' Protinus servi-
 " entes ejus, et non, qui stabant a longe, accesserunt, et
 " modesta quadam violentia eum⁴ repulerunt, et increpaverunt
 " ut taceret. Tacuit ergo piscator, et clamor ille quievit, et
 " sedebat Hermaphroditus⁵ expectans. Interim mulier quaedam
 " exiens de villa, videns pannum lineum, quem ille vel illa
 " gestabat, expositum venditioni, et procedens coepit inqui-
 " rere quanti esset pretii, et pro quanto ulnam daret. Ille
 " vero non respondebat, quia linguam Anglicanam prorsus
 " ignorabat, et illa magis instabat; et continuo supervenit Benedict.
ii. 220.
 " alia mulier, illud idem instanter inquirens, et plurimum
 " instans ut pretiam venditionis ei aperiret. Cumque ille⁶
 " nihil responderet, sed magis subrideret, coeperunt inter se
 " fabulari, et querere quidnam esset. Et dolum arbitantes,
 " projecerunt manus ad peplum, quo facies tegebatur, et sub-
 " mittentes a naso usque deorsum, viderunt faciem hominis

¹ *odivit*] So all the MSS.³ *manum*] manus, D. I.² *quidam*] qui statim, ina. Savile; om. B. D. I. It is so written in A., and marked for erasure. Benedict has *qui statim*.⁴ *eum*] om. D. I.⁵ *Hermaphroditus*] Hermofroditus, A. B. D. I.⁶ *ille*] om. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 220.

“ nigram, et noviter rasam, et stupescere ultra modum cœpe-
 runt. Et corruentes ad¹ terram, voces ad sidera tollunt,
 dicentes; ‘ Venite, lapidemus hoc monstrum, quod deforma-
 vit utrumque sexum.’ Et facta est statim multitudo viro-
 rum ac mulierum, extrahentium de capite peplum, et tra-
 hentium eum prostratum in terram per manicas, et per
 caputium, per arenam ignominiose, et per saxa non sine
 læsione. Servientes autem bis aut ter impetum fecerunt in
 turbam, ut eum liberarent, sed non potuerunt, quia populus
 totus eum insatiabili corde persequens, et verbis et alapis
 et sputis, pluribusque modis turpiter tractavit per totam
 villam, et sic tractatum, immo distractum, in quodam cellario
 tenebroso eum quasi sub carcerali custodia inclusit.

A.D. 1191.
October.
His dis-
covery and
discomfi-
ture.

“ Tractus igitur est qui traxerat, captus qui ceperat, liga-
 tus qui ligaverat, incarceratus qui incarceraverat, ut se-
 cundum quantitatem culpæ, commensurabilis videretur quan-
 titas pœnæ. Factus est² enim opprobrium vicinis suis valde,
 et timor notis suis, et datus est in derisum omni populo.
 Utinam se solum sacerdotem, et non ipsum sacerdotium
 inquinasset. Provideat ergo Romana ecclesia, ut tantus
 excessus taliter puniatur, ne³ delictum unius contamine-
 omnes, et sacerdotalis auctoritas non vilescat. Et rex Angliæ
 nihilominus prospiciat, ut talem regno suo personam præ-
 ficiat, per quem regalis dignitas honoris servetur, et juris
 sui detrimenta non sentiat, sed de ejus regimine clerns et
 populus merito debeant⁴ gloriari.”

He was im-
prisoned by
the mob.

A warning
to the pope
and king.

¹ *ad*] in, B. I.; interim, ins. D.
² *est*] om. D. I.

³ *ne*] neque, B. I.; et ne, D.
⁴ *debeant*] debeat, B. D. I.

A. D. 1191. *Epistola magistri Petri Blesensis pro Wilhelmo
Elyensi episcopo.*¹

Peter of
Bleis re-
monstrates
with the
bishop of
Coventry
about the
treatment
of the chan-
cellor

“ Quondam domino et amico Hugoni, Coventrensi et Ces- (Not in
trensi dicto episcopo, Petrus Blesensis, Bathoniensis archi- Benedict)
“ diaconus, Dei memoriam cum timore. Livor quo tendat,
“ invidia quo feratur, proditorne factionis hodie patefecit im-
“ manitas. Dilectus Deo et hominibus episcopus Elyensis,
“ vir sapiens, amabilis, generosus, benignus, et mitis, et in
“ omnes liberalitates effusus, juxta Divinam gratiæ dispo-
“ sitionem, et suorum exigentiam² meritorum, reipublicæ
“ administrationem et summam rerum fuerat assecutus. Vi-
“ disti et invidisti; ex tunc ira tua. Ibi invidia concepit
“ dolorem, et peperit iniquitatem; ipse autem ambulans sim-
“ pliciter te in suæ familiaritatis sacrarium, atque in³ unani-
“ mitatem amicitiae, et vinculum⁴ fœderis accersivit. Totus
“ requiescebat super te spiritus ejus, et erant adversus eum
“ omnes cogitationes tuæ in malum. ‘Væ,’ dicit Ecclesiasticus,
“ ‘duplici cordi, atque labiis scelestis, et peccatori ingredienti Ecclus.
“ ‘terram⁵ duabus viis.’⁶ Interioris conscientiae malum quodi- il. 14.
“ dam prætextu amicitiae facies hypocrita palliabat, et tu exer-
“ cebas occulte in hominem innocentem linguæ seditioriae et
“ procacis injurias. ‘Maledictus,’ inquit Salomon, ‘susurro,
“ ‘et bilinguis in populis, turbat enim pacificos.’ Omnem Ex lina.
“ conscientiam suam effundebat in sinu tuo. Te enim quasi xxvii. 15
“ se alterum reputabat; tu vero eum, in occasionem præcipitii,
“ proditoris⁷ adulationibus impingebas. O detestanda proditi-
“ tio! Judas osculo tradidit, et tu⁸ verbo; exhibebas exterius
“ diligentis officium, et lingua tua concinnabat dolos. ‘Sedens Ps. l. 20
“ ‘adversus fratrem tuum loquebaris, et adversus filium matris
“ ‘tuæ ponebas scandalum.’ ‘Væ homini illi per quem scan- S. Matt
“ ‘dalum venit.’ Hoc equidem facinus interminabilem tibi xvij. 7.
“ maculam sinistrae opinionis inussit, et si quid commenda-
“ bile de beneficio naturæ perceperas, culpa hæc perenniter
“ abolevit. Nimirum Job multa fortiter fecerat, sed proditio

He accuses
him of
treachery
and in-
fratitudo.

The base-
ness of this
treachery

¹ This letter is not in MSS. A. C. or G. It appears first in MS. B. on an interleaf, and has been received into the text of MSS. D and I. by the transcribers. It is given here as placed by Savile, but it was never a part of the original MS. In fact, Peter of Bleis probably published

his letters first after the close of Hoveden's work.

² *exigentiam*] morum et, ins. D.

³ *in*] om. D.

⁴ *et vinculum*] vinculum et, D.

⁵ *terram*] om. D.

⁶ *duabus viis*] duas vias, D.

⁷ *proditoris*] proditoris, D.

⁸ *tu*] in, ins. D. I.

- (Not in Benedict.) " in Amasam et Abner omnes in eo virtutum titulos deni- A D. 1191.
 " gravit. O labia detractoria! O lingua maledica et dolosa!
 Ps. cxx. 3. " Quid apponetur, Domine, ad hanc linguam dolosam? Utinam
 " apponantur sagittæ, quæ eam transfodiant, et carbones de-
 " solatoriû hanc incendant; utinam tu, Scraphin, qui cœlesti
 " carbone prophetæ labia emundasti, gehonnali flamma totum
 " os et linguam ejus emundando destrueres, ut possemus
 Ps. lxxxix. " cantare et dicere: 'Destruixisti eum ab emundatione.' Labia
 43. " evangelio consecrata nunquam desinunt effutire ventum in
 " verba mendacii. Totum vanitati datur, quod erat debitum
 Ps. cxl. 11. " veritati; porro 'vir linguosus non dirigetur in terra;' ergo
 1 Cor. x. 12. " 'qui stat, videat ne cadat;' 'aute ruinam exaltatur cor.'
 Prov. xvi. 18. " Exultas in infelix, et jactitas, quod supplantaveris innocentem? Words of
 S. Luke, " sed certe positus est 'in ruinam resurrectionemque mul- warling:
 II. 34. " torum;' in suam scilicet et suorum restitutionem; in tuam
 " vero tuorumque ruinam complicitium. Faba¹ hæc recndetur
 " in caput tuum. 'Omnis enim fraus in se reversa colliditur;'
 " de dolo non colliges, nisi fructum doloris; et orditus es
 Isa. lxxx. 1. " telam, ut diploide vestiarius. Verbum Ysaie est, 'Qui or-
 " dimini telam, et in umbra Egypti confiditis, diem amari-
 " tudinis expectate.' Publice gloriaris et jactitas, quod
 " hanc turbam moveris, quod incantum deceperis, et indux-
 " eris plebem, ut armis incremem, et insidiis appeterent in- and re-
 " nocentem. Quid gloriaris in malitia, qui potens es in ini- proach.
 " quitate? Quid prædicas malitiam tuam, quæ in pluribus
 " provinciis, tua discurrente infamia, jam plebescit? Sed de
 Prov. II. 14. " te, consimilibusque tuis dici potest; 'Lætantur cum male-
 " fecerint, et exultant in rebus pessimis.' Porro verbum
 Prov. xvii. 3. " Sapientis est, 'Qui lætatur in ruina alterius, punietur.' Salo-
 Prov. " mon, 'Cum ceciderit inimicus tuus, ne gaudeas, ne videat
 xxiv. 17. " Deus, et in te iracundiam suam vertat.' Salc semper
 " familiare et proprium tuæ prosapue² fuit dissensionum mate-
 " riam seminarè; rursusque pestilens malitiam suam de malæ
 " arboris radice contraxit. O generatio prava! O domus exas- He comes
 " perans! O genimen viperarum! Quis te docuit fugere a of a con-
 " ventura ira? putas quod non videat et requirat hæc Do- tentious
 " minus? Præter hoc irritavit impius Dominum. 'Dixit enim family.
 Ps. x. 12. " in corde suo, non requiret.' Sed certe requiret Dominus,
 " requiret etiam ille de cujus nunc angustia gloriaris; quan-
 Wisd. in. 6. " doque dante Domino respirabit. Sapientia enim justum
 " venditum non derelinquet, et in tempore erit respectus
 " illius. Decebat tui ordinis gravitatem pacem conciliare in

¹ Faba] See Terence, *Eunuchus*, | ² A reference probably to Arnulf
 line 981. | of Lisieux, the uncle of Hugh.

A.D. 1191.
His duty is
to appease
the people,
not to pro-
voke them.

"populis, sedare seditiones maxime in Anglia, quæ te satis (Not in
Benedict.)
"pauperem suscipiens magnificis honoribus amplavit. Jere-
"mias¹ loquens ad eos qui in transmigracione Babilonica
"erant, 'Querite,' inquit, 'pacem civitatis ad quam migrare Jerem.
"fecit vos Dominus, quia in pace illius erit pax vestra.' xxxi. 7.
"Vice alia tibi scripsi, et ut cessares a talibus monitis salu-
"taribus supplicavi. Veruntamen cithara David nunquam
"Saulis vesaniam sedavit ad plenum; et ad hæc manus tua
"extenta est. Memento igitur, homo, si tamen homo," me-
"mento, inquam, tui conditionis, memento hujus vitæ bre-
"vis; memor esto districti et horrendi Judicis; memor esto
"pœnæ terribilis, horribilis, interminabilis, et intolerabilis,
"quæ tibi in æternum parata est, si a tali maleficio non de-
"sistis."

De liberatione cancellarii.

Oct. 24.
After eight
days of im-
prisonment
the chan-
cellor is re-
leased, and
goes to
Flanders.

Thence to
Paris and so
to Nor-
mandy,
where he is
treated as
excommuni-
cated.

He com-
pains to the
king.

Deinde post octo dies Johannes frater regis, comes More- Benedict,
tonii, præcepit ut cancellarius liberaretur a carcere, et ii. 220.
et abiret. Et abiens transfretavit, et applicuit in Flandria
apud Wissand.² Et cum iter ageret, quidam viri nobiles
de terra illa, quibus ipse forisfecerat in Anglia, injecerunt
manum in eum, et tenuerunt eum, donec ipse satisfacit
illis. Et procedens inde venit Parisius, et dedit Mauricio⁴
episcopo lx. marcas argenti tali conditione, ut ipse receptus Benedict,
esset ibi cum processione, et factum est ita. Deinde rediit ii. 221.
in Normanniam; sed per mandatum Rothomagensis archiepi-
scopi habebatur ibi pro excommunicato, et omnis locus in
quo ipse venit,³ in toto archiepiscopatu Rothomagensi, cessa-
bat a Divino officio, quamdiu ipse ibi moram fecit. At ille
nuncios suos misit ad Cœlestinum papam, et ad dominum
suum regem Angliæ, significans eis qualiter Johannes comes
Moretonii, et complices illius, ejecerant eum a regno; et
conquerens sibi de vindicta, restitutionem ablatorum petebat,
offerens se juri pariturum: et quod si domino regi factum
ejus et expensæ non placuissent, ipse in omnibus satisfaceret

¹ Jeremias] Item, Savile.

² si tamen homo] homo tantum si,
Savile.

³ Wissand] Witsand, I. The
chancellor sailed from Dover on the

29th of October, having been libe-
rated on the 24th. R. de Dic. 665.

⁴ Mauricio] Maurice de Sully,
bishop of Paris, 1160-1196.

⁵ venit] om. D. I.; perendnavit, B.

Benedict,
ii. 221.

ejus voluntati. Unde summus pontifex ad iracundiam provocatus, universis archiepiscopis, episcopis Angliæ in hac forma scripsit;

A.D. 1191.
and to the
pope.

*Epistola Cælestini papæ ad prælatos Angliæ pro
Willelmo Eliensi episcopo.*

“ Cælestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus
“ fratribus, archiepiscopis, episcopis, in regno Angliæ consti-
“ tutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Cum dilectus
“ in Christo filius noster Ricardus, illustris rex Anglorum,
“ quando se, suscepto signo crucis, ad ulciscendam injuriam
“ Redemptoris accinxit, tutelam regni sui, quod, sicut vir in-
“ telligens et requirens Deum, curas duxit obsequio post-
“ ponendum, sub apostolica protectione dimiserit statum
“ regni sui ac jura et honorem ipsius, tanto majori studio
“ conservare volumus et debemus, quanto, de nostra protec-
“ tione confusus, majoribus periculis personam suam et res
“ pro exaltatione sanctæ religionis exposuit; et in obsequio
“ Creatoris laudabilius, faciente¹ Domino cum eo signum in
“ bonum, atque ferventius, sicut ex suis operibus elucescit,
“ cognoscitur se habere. Quoniam igitur quædam tam contra
“ regnum ipsum² quam contra venerabilem patrem vestrum³
“ Willelmum Eliensem episcopum, apostolicæ sedis legatum,
“ cui regnum tradidit gubernandum, per Johannem comitem
“ Moretonii, et per quosdam alios accepimus attentata, quæ
“ nonnulla in se suspicionis continent argumenta, et, si vera
“ sunt, non in modicam noscuntur sedis apostolicæ contu-
“ meliam redundare, eidem præsumptioni tanto maturius dux-
“ imus occurrendum, quanto ex mora ipsa, jam dicto regi,
“ et terræ Jerosolimitanæ gravius detrimentum, ac nobis et
“ ecclesiæ Romanæ major inde posset ignominia provenire.
“ Proinde universitati vestræ per apostolica scripta mandamus,
“ et in virtute obedientiæ præcipimus, quatenus si, prout
“ nobis insonuit, memoratus comes, vel alius, in jam dictum
“ episcopum manus violentas injicere, vel eum capere, vel jura-
“ mentum quodlibet ab eo per violentiam extorquere, seu eum
“ in captione tenere, seu statum regni a severitate⁴ regia in-
“ recessu suo dispositum aliquatenus immutare vel præsump-

Dec 2
The pope
writes to the
bishops
about the
chancellor.

Ps. lxxvi.
17.

Benedict,
ii. 222.

He con-
demns the
measures of
John agau:st
him.

He com-
mands them
to excom-
municate
John if he
lays violent
hands on the
chancellor.

¹ *faciente*] favente, D. I.
² *ipsum*] suum, B. D. I.
³ *patrem vestrum*] fratrem nos-
trum, D. I.; fratrem vestrum, B.

⁴ *severitate*] serenitate is the word
required, but the MSS. read *severi-
tate*.

A. D. 1191.
Dec. 2.
His advisers
are to be
declared ex-
communicate.

serit, vel præsumpsit, omni occasione vel simulate post-
posita, convenientes in unum, prædictum comitem, et omnes
antedictæ¹ præsumptionis consiliarios, auctores, complices,
et fautores, accensis candelis et pulsatis campanis, omni
appellatione et excusatione, necnon et personarum accep-
tatione postpositis, publice nunciatis vinculo excommuni-
cationis astrictos, et tam diu faciatis sicut excommunicatos
ab omnibus arctius evitari, nec non et in terris illorum, et
in aliis quas invaserint, præter pœnitentias et parvulorum
baptismata, Divina penitus, sine appellationis obstaculo, pro-
hibeatis celebrari officia; donec jam dicto legato tam a
captione quam a juramento primitus absoluto, et regno ipso
in statum a prænominato rege in recessu suo dispositum
reformato, cum testimonio litterarum ipsius legati et ves-
trarum pariter, ad sedem veniant apostolicam absolvendi;
scituri pro certo, quod si hujus nostri executione præcepti
negligentes fueritis, aut remissi, non minorem in vos præ-
stante Domino duximus ultionem, quam si prædicta injuria
personæ nostræ vel uni de fratribus nostris esset irrogata.
Datum Laterani quarto nonas Decembris, pontificatus nostri
anno primo.”

Benedict.
ii. 222.

Auctoritate igitur litterarum istarum summi pontificis, præ-
dictus Eliensis episcopus in hac forma scripsit Hugoni Lin-
colnensi episcopo;

*Epistola Willelmi Eliensis episcopi ad Hugonem
Lincolniensem episcopum.*

The chan-
cellor, in the
strength of
the papal
letters,
writes to the
bishop of
Lincoln, to
order the
execution of
the man-
date.

“Willelmus, Dei gratia Eliensis episcopus, et apostolicæ
sedis legatus, et domini regis cancellarius, venerabili fratri
et amico carissimo, H., eadem gratia Lincolniensi episcopo,
salutem, et sincero dilectionis affectum. Quanto de dilec-
tione vestra plenior fiduciam obtinemus, majorem con-
stantiam in vobis invenimus, tanto confidentius discretioni
vestræ et ecclesie Dei negotia, domini regis, et nostra com-
mittimus exsequenda, confidentes in Domino de vobis, quod
præceptis apostolicis et nostris vestra caritas pontificaliter
respondet. Mandamus igitur vobis in virtute obedientiæ,
et ea qua fungimur auctoritate præcipimus, quatenus ad
exsequendum mandatum apostolicum, universis archiepiscopis
et episcopis Angliæ destinatum, cum cæteris fratribus ves-
tris omnibus vel quibusdam, cito conveniatis, ne diutius in

Benedict,
ii. 223.

¹ antedictæ] jam dictæ, B. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 223.

“ ecclesiam Dei, et sacerdotes ejus, laicalis iniquitas malig-
 “ netur; ne tergiversatione vel dissimulatione aliqua illorum
 “ malitia vobis debeat imputari. Ea vero quæ dominus papa
 “ mandavit de persona Johannis comitis Moretonii tempera-
 “ vimus, differentes usque ad Dominicam qua cantatur, ‘Esto
 “ ‘ mihi,’ ut si forte resipiscere vellet interim, nos inde Deo
 “ gratias redderemus, et pro eo in conspectu domini papæ, et
 “ domini nostri regis Angliæ, athletæ Crucifixi, preces funde-
 “ remus affectuosas, ut delicti sui veniam mereretur, et modis
 “ omnibus honori et commodo ejus, salva fidelitate domini
 “ regis, et honestate sacerdotii nostri, operam adhiberemus et
 “ diligentiam efficacem. In terris autem excommunicatorum
 “ nulla Divina celebrari permittatis, præter baptismata parvu-
 “ lorum et pœnitentias. Nomina autem eorum qui a domin
 “ papa excommunicati sunt, et a nobis denunciata, quorum
 “ factum ita evidentia facti notorium sit, quod nulla possunt
 “ tergiversatione inficiari, hæc sunt:

A.D. 1191.
 He defers
 the sentence
 against
 John until
 Quinqua-
 gesima, Feb.
 1192;

and sends a
 list of the
 other ex-
 communi-
 cated per-
 sons.

“ Gwarterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus,

“ Godefridus Wintoniensis episcopus,

“ Hugo Coventrensis episcopus,

“ Willelmus Marescallus,

“ Gaufridus filius Petri,

“ Willelmus Bruwere,

“ Hugo Bardolf,¹

“ Ricardus Malebisso,

“ Et Hugo frater ejus,

“ Jacobus et Simon, filii Simonis,

“ Simon de Averenhis,

“ Rogerus filius Rainfrai,²

“ Et Gilbertus et Rainfrai, filii ejus,

“ Gyrardus de Camvilla,

“ Comes Saresbirisæ,

“ Johannes Marescallus,

“ Comes de Mellent,

“ Gilbertus Basset,

“ Thomas Basset,

“ Henricus de Ver,

“ Gocelinus filius Rainfrai,

“ Stephanus Ridel, cancellarius comitis Moretonii, quem

“ ut episcopus, et ejus legatus, vobis denunciamus

“ excommunicatum;

Benedict,
ii. 224.

¹ *Bardolf*] Bardulf, I.

² *Rainfrai*] Raimfrei, I.; Rein-
frei B. The names are summed up

in D., “et multi alii episcopi et
 “ comites et barones et milites quam-
 “ plurimi.”

A D. 1191.
Master
Benedict
and John of
Coutances
are to be
declared ex-
communicate. Also
the Bishop of
Coventry.

but Hugh
Bardolf may
be admitted
to terms.

" Et Magistrum Benedictum,¹ qui sigillum domini regis, Benedict.
ii. 234.
" contra statuta regis et regni, et contra prohibitio-
" nem nostram, ferre præsumpsit;
" Et Johannem² Oxenfordensem archidiaconum.
" Ad hæc vero vobis specialiter et distincte præcipimus, quod
" Hugonem Coventrensem episcopum, quem solenniter excom-
" municavimus, non solum quia verbo et opere episcopum
" diffitetur, et quia in manu piæ recordationis Baldewini,
" Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, fidem corporaliter præstitit de
" comitatibus non tenendis; verum quia totius subversionis
" regni Angliæ consulator exstitit manifestus et auctor, et
" turbator pacis, et contra regiam dignitatem et utilitatem
" publicus advocatus; publice denunciatis excommunicatum,
" et faciatis ab omnibus arctius evitari, ne de cætero ovis
" tam morbida gregem Domini valeat inficere et maculare.
" Hugonem vero Bardolf, qui ad præsens non fuit in ejectione
" et captione nostra, a prædicta denunciatione excoipimus, si
" statim admonitus Willelmo de Stutevilla resignaverit castella
" de Scardheburc, et de tota Eboraci sira et de Westmeri-
" laude,³ quæ detinet occupata. Prohibeatis etiam universis in
" diocesi vestra constitutis, sub interminatione anathematis,
" ne pro illis, qui se in Anglia justitiarior gerunt, aliquid faci-
" ant, nec in aliquo violentæ et usurpatæ obediant potestati.
" Valete."
Item⁴ prædictus Eliensis episcopus in hac forma scripsit
Hugoni, Lincolnensi episcopo;

*Epistola Willelmi Eliensis episcopi ad Hugonem
Lincolnensem episcopum.*

The chan-
cellor in
another let-
ter orders
the reve-
nues of the
archdiacon
of Oxford
to be es-
questrated.

" Willelmus, Dei gratia Eliensis episcopus, apostolicæ sedis
" legatus, et domini regis cancellarius, H., eadem gratia Lin-
" colniensi episcopo, venerabili fratri et amico, salutem. Ea
" qua fungimur auctoritate vobis mandamus, et in virtute
" obedientiæ vobis præcipimus, quod archidiaconatum et
" omnes redditus Johannis Oxefordensis⁵ archidiaconi in manu
" vestra saisistis, recipiatis, et⁶ conservetis, donec apostoli-

¹ *Benedictum*] Of Sansetun, after-
wards, in 1215, bishop of Rochester.

² *Johannem*] John of Coutances,
dean of Rouen, and afterwards, in
1196, bishop of Worcester.

³ *Westmerlande*] Westmardlande,
I.; Westmarelände, D.

⁴ *Item*] om. B. D. I.

⁵ *Oxefordensis*] Exoniensis, D.

⁶ *et*] om. B. D. I.

Benedict.
ii. 224, 225.

“ cum aut nostrum inde mandatum acceperitis, quoniam cum
“ avunculo suo, Rothomagensi¹ Pilato, pacem et tranquillitatem
“ regni Angliæ perturbat, et malum quodcumque potest domino
“ regi² et regno, tanquam hostis regni et nobis, perquirit.
“ Unde auctoritate domini papæ illum excommunicationis vi-
“ cudo innodavimus. Valete.”

A D. 1121.

Similiter Eliensis episcopus prænominatus scripsit quibus-
dam aliis episcopis Angliæ, sed nullus eorum executus est
mandatum apostolicum, neque suum. Non enim habebant
eum pro legato,³ neque pro regis cancellario. Prædictus
vero Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri justitiiarii An-
gliæ, dissaisiaverunt illum ab episcopatu suo, et redditus ejus
collegerunt ad opus regis, propter thesauros regis quos ad-
mihilaverat. Deinde prædicti justitiiarii, et omnes epi-
scopi et comites et barones Angliæ, in communi scripto
mandaverunt regi, qualiter cancellarius suus regnum
Angliæ et thesauros suos destruxerat, et qualiter ipse
per commune concilium regni dejectus est. Ipse vero
cancellarius hæc contra scripsit regi, significans quod
Johannes frater ejus regnum occupaverat, et quod regni
diadema capiti suo imponeret, nisi ipse celerius venire
festinasset. Tamen rex, confidens in Domino, servitium
Dei noluit deserere donec pecunia et homines defecerunt
ei.

The bishops
decide to
execute the
mandate.

The jus-
titiarii seize
the property
of the see of
E. y. and
write to the
king.

The chan-
cellor also
complains to
the king.

De recessu Philippi regis Franciæ de Accon, et de itinere suo.

Benedict,
ii. 192.

Nunc autem revertamur ad regem Franciæ; qui in-
terim, imperfecta peregrinatione sua, a terra Jerosolimitana
recedens cum xiv. galeis, transitum fecit ante civitatem de

August.

Philip's
journey
home.

¹ Rothomagensis] quondam, et nunc, ins. D.

² perturbat . . . regis] om D. I.

³ It is indeed questionable whether the bishop was lawfully legate at this time; and the date of the letters themselves may depend on the time at which his legation was renewed. The questions will be: (1) Did his legation expire with the

life of the grantor, Clement III. ? (2) If so, when was it renewed by Celestine III. ? (3) Was the renewal by Celestine sufficient to constitute him legate without the consent of the king, or (4) against the will of the king's representatives? On some of these points see note in *Epp. Cantuar.*, p. lxxxvi.

A. D. 1191.
August.He passes
Berytus,
Jebel,
Isirum,
Ba'feh,
Tripoli,
Arka,
Castel Blanc,
el Khuat.Baruth, quæ tunc erat in manu paganorum, et non invasit eos. Benedict.
ii. 192, 193.

Deinde transiit ante Gibelet civitatem, et ante Buterun castellum, et ante Neffin castellum. Deinde venit ad civitatem Tripolis, et ibi moram fecit per aliquot dies.

Et cum inde recessisset, transiit ante castellum de Archis, et ante castellum Album, et ante le Culiât, castellum Hospitalis. Deinde venit ad Turtuse, civitatem episcopalem.

Tortosa
Marcelon,
Merkeb.

Et est notandum, quod ante Turtusam est insula quedam in mari, quæ dicitur Aredos: unde Turtusa dicitur civitas Antaradensis. Deinde venit ad Maureclai portum bonum; et recedens inde transiit ante Margat, castellum Hospitalis, ubi Ysakius, imperator de Cypro, tenebatur in vinculis.

Ba'ans,
Jebelh,
S. Simeon,
Antiochia,
Beilan,
Alexan-
dretta.

Deinde venit ad Valeniam civitatem. Deinde venit ad Gibel civitatem, deinde ad Melide civitatem, deinde ad portum Sancti Simeonis. Deinde venit ad civitatem Anthiochenam; et recedens inde venit ad portum de Bucl; deinde ad portum Alexandret.

He enters
Armenia.
passes
Coryens,
and Saef.Deinde intravit terram Erminiorum quæ dicitur Erminia,¹ et est terra Rupini de la Muntaigne² sub principe Antiochie. Deinde venit ad fluvium magnum qui dicitur Thil,³ et ibi est civitas bona, quæ similiter dicitur Thil. Deinde venit ad alium fluvium magnum, qui dicitur Curck,⁴ et ibi est civitas magna deserta quæ similiter dicitur Curck. Deinde venit ad tertium fluvium magnum, qui dicitur Salef, et ibi super fluvium illum est civitas magna quæ similiter dicitur Salef;⁵ in fluvio autem illo Salef submersus est Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, cum exiret de terra Soltani de Yconio.*De tribus Magis qui obtulerunt Domino tria munera,
aurum, thus et myrrham.*The country
of the Three
Kings.Sciendum vero est, quod a finibus illis egressi sunt illi tres reges, qui obtulerunt Domino nostro Jesu Christo tria munera pretiosa, scilicet aurum, thus et myrrham. Quorum nomina hæc sunt: Jesphar, Paptizar, Melchior;⁷ quorum¹ *ecnt*] om. B. D. I.² *Erminia*] Armenia, B. I.; Ermenea, D.³ *Muntaigne*] Muntaine, B. D. I.⁴ *Thil*] Chil, B. D. I.⁵ *Curck*] Curch, D. I.⁶ *et ibi . . . Salef*] om. I.⁷ *Jesphar . . . Melchior*] Jespar, Pabpizar, Melchior, I; Paptizar, B. D. G.

Benedict,
ii. 194.
Ps. lxxii. 10.

unus erat rex de Salef, quæ dicitur insula; et alter erat rex de Malmistre; et tertius erat rex de Terzol,¹ id est, Tarsis;² unde dicitur in Psalmo: "Reges Tarsis et insularum munera offerent." Et est sciendum, quod hi tres fluvii, scilicet Salef et Curck et Thil, oriuntur in Turkia, quæ dicitur terra Turcorum, qui sunt homines Soltani de Yconio; et dividunt terram Turcorum a terra Rupini de la Muntaigne;³ et descendunt in mare prope gulfum Sataliæ. Et flavius qui dicitur Salef est oppositus insulæ de Cypre, et non distat ab ea plusquam per L. milliaria ad aestimationem nautarum, facile enim videtur de una ripa in alteram. Et cum rex Franciæ a flavio illo de Salef recessisset, transivit juxta montes excelso qui dicuntur Catmerdes.⁴

A D 1191.
August.
They came
from Sere-
cia, Malacca,
Ira, and
Tarsus.

Deinde transivit ante castellum quod dicitur Nesgekin. Deinde venit ad villam bonam quæ dicitur Stamere, in qua nobilis abbatia Griffonum est. Deinde transivit ante castellum desertum, quod dicitur castellum de Rote. Deinde venit ad fluvium qui dicitur Scalendros: fluvius iste Scalendros dividit terram Erminiorum a terra imperatoris Constantinopolitani; et ibi ex una parte fluvii illius, in terra imperatoris Constantinopolitani, est castellum quod dicitur Antiochet; et ex altera parte ejusdem fluminis, in Erminia, est castellum quod dicitur Isanci.

Philip
passes
Serecia,
Estelmar.

Kelender
Antiocheta

Cumque rex Franciæ venisset ad castellum Antiochet, Constantinus, dominus castelli, recepit eum cum gaudio, et administravit ei et suis necessaria. Et rex Franciæ ibidem moram fecit per octo dies, et prædicti Constantini filium primogenitum fecit militem.

He kind to
the eldest
son of the
lord of
Antiocheta

Et est sciendum, quod tota terra quæ est a fluvio illo Scalendros versus Septentrionem secus mare, est terra imperatoris Constantinopolis, quæ dicitur Romania, id est, Græcia.

This is the
fronter of
Anatolia

Benedict,
ii. 195.

Et cum ipse inde recessisset, statim intravit gulfum Sataliæ.⁵ Gulfus dicitur, ubi aqua protenditur inter duas terras, et sinum facit. Satalia castellum est optimum, unde gulfus ille nomen accepit. Et super gulfum illum sunt duo castella et villæ, et utrumque dicitur Satalia: sed unum illorum desertam est, et dicitur vetus Satalia; et alterum dicitur Satalia nova, quod, Manuel imperator Constantinopolis firmavit. Et transito gulfo Sataliæ, transivit rex Franciæ sub monte qui dicitur Siredme, in fine gulfu Sataliæ. Deinde transivit per montem excelsum valde, qui dicitur Reswt. Deinde venit ad

He enters
the gulf of
Satalia

He passes
Cheldeo

¹ de Terzol] Cerzol, I.

² Tarsis] Tharsis, B. D. I.

³ Muntaigne] Muntaine, B. D. I.

⁴ Catmerdes] Catimerdes, I.

Cathmerdes, B.

⁵ Satalia] Sataliæ, D.

- A.D. 1191. Philip
Pysars
Phaneka,
and the
part of the
Pisans.
- Myra,
- Kekova :
- Kastelorizo.
- Legend
about this
place.
- fluvium qui dicitur Winke,¹ super quem est castellum deser-
tum, quod similiter dicitur Reswt. Et fluvius ille Winke
similiter dicitur portus Pisanorum, eo quod piratæ Pisanæ
portam illum sæpius frequentant. Quo cum rex Francie
venisset, invenit ibi quatuor galeas piratarum, et cepit eas :
piratæ autem relictis galeis fugerunt in montana, et sic eva-
serunt manus ejus. Deinde venit rex ad Mirream civitatem,
ubi Beatus Nicolaus episcopatum tenuit, quam Græci vocant
Stamire. Deinde venit ille ad bonam portam et securum in
omni tempestate et vento, qui dicitur Ckakois.² et ex utraque
parte portus illius fuerunt antiquitas civitates pulchræ et
magnæ, quæ dicebantur Cuke; et ruinae magnæ murorum
sunt ibi usque in hodiernum diem, et nemo in eis habitat
propter metum piratarum.
- Deinde transivit per insulas de Yse, in quarum una est
castellum quod dicitur castellam Ruge. Ibi fuit quondam
quædam puella, quæ Yse vocabatur, a cujus nomine insulae
illa dictæ sunt.
- Indigenæ quidem narrant, quod quidam miles dilexit puellam
illam, et illa noluit consentire illi, quamdiu vixit: defuncta
autem illa, miles accessit, et concubuit cum illa, dicens.
" Quod cum viva facere non potui, cum mortua feci : " et statim
intravit Satan in eam, et ait, " Ecce genuisti in me filium,
" et cum natus fuerit, afferam eum ad te." Et post novem
menses, cum tempus pariendi instaret, peperit filium aborti-
vum, et portans eum ad militem, ait, " Ecce filius tuus quem
" genuisti: abscede caput ejus, et reserva tibi. Quandocunque
" enim volueris inimicum tuum vincere, vel terram illius
" destruere, capitis abscisi vultus discooperiatur, et respi-
" cuit inimicum tuum, vel terram ejus, et statim peribunt;
" et cum cessare volueris, recooperiatur vultus, et cessabit
" tribulatio." Et factum est ita. Post multum vero temporis
miles ille uxorem duxit, quæ sæpius interrogavit eum qua
arte, vel quo ingenio, ipse ita destruebat inimicos suos sine
armis et sine exercitu: ille autem ei dicere noluit, sed incre-
pavit eam ut taceret. Contigit ergo quadam die dum miles
abesset, quod illa accessit ad arcam, in qua sperabat secre-
tum illud esse domini sui, per quod ille ita operabatur ini-
que, et invenit in arca caput illud detestabile, et statim abiens
proiecit illud in gulfu Satalia. Et dicunt nautæ, quod quan-
docunque caput illud fuerit resupinum, commotus est gulfus

Benedict,
ii. 196.Benedict,
ii. 196.¹ Winke] Vinke, I.² Chackois] Karkois, B. D.; Karkois, I.; Crachour, Bened.

Benedict,
ii. 196.

ille adeo, quod nulla navis potest transire illum; et quando caput supinum est, tunc potest navis transire illum. A. D. 1101. Winds of the gulf of Satalia.

Credat hoc Judæus Apella, non ego.

Benedict,
ii. 197.

Et est aliud mirabile, quod unoquoque mense anni semel contingit. Videtur quod draco niger et ingens veniat in nubibus cœli, qui mittit caput suum in gulfo Sataliæ, et haurit aquas, et attrahit ita vehementer, quod si navis aliqua fuerit ibi, quamvis fuerit onusta, tamen hauritur et defertur in sublime. Volentes autem hoc vitare periculum, oportet quod, cum viderint monstrum illud, statim faciant tumultum magnum et clamationes altas, percutientes in tabulis, ut auditis clamoribus draco ille elongetur ab eis. Nos¹ autem dicimus hoc non esse draconem, sed æstum solis, qui attrahit ad se aquas maris.

Sequitur;² cum rex Franciæ recessisset ab insulis de Yse, transivit juxta montem magnum, in cujus summitate sita est civitas Patara, in qua natus et diu conversatus fuit Beatus Nicolaus. Deinde transivit juxta montem excelsum valde qui dicitur Turkic, qui dividit terram imperatoris Constantinopolis a terra Soltani de Yconio. Et exinde incipit Rumania, quæ etiam Græcia dicitur. Philip passes Patara, and the cape of Turkey.

Tota Rumania est terra solida, de dominio imperatoris: et multæ insulæ sunt in mari, quæ dicuntur insulæ de Romania. Description of the Greek islands.

Caput Romanis est civitas Constantinopolis. Romania vero conjuncta est Sclavoniæ et Hungariæ et Istriæ et Aquileiæ.

Benedict,
ii. 198.

Nomina quarundam principalium insularum, quæ sunt in mari Græco, sunt hæc: insula Siciliæ, quæ est regis Siciliæ; insula de Crete, quæ magna est et fertilis, et in medio ejus est mons magnus, qui dicitur mons Cameli; insula de Rodes; insula de Cypre; insula de Biscopie; insula de Isky, in hac insula crescit copia speciei quæ dicitur Mastic; insula de Ysame; insula de Ynexæ; insula de Stuple; insula de Mil; insula des quales; insula de Couverfu; insula de Serfent; insula de Sasent; insula quæ dicitur Fale de Compari; insula de Andre; insula quæ dicitur Tine. Sed multæ istarum sunt desertæ propter metum piratarum. Et in multis illarum habitant piratæ. Sunt et aliæ insulæ de quibus mentionem fecimus superius, et multæ aliæ quæ non scribuntur in libro hoc. Names of the principal ones.

¹ Nos] Quidam, Bened.

this place in Benedict, but further on.

² Sequitur] As if making an extract. The word does not occur in

³ Isky] Yski, D. I.; Iski, B.

A. D. 1191.

Philop.
Rhodes.

Sequitur; cum rex Francie præterisset caput Turkiæ, venit ad insulam de Rodes; et mansit ibi per aliquot dies, in civitate quæ dicitur Rodes, quam Herodes ædificavit, qui fecit amputari caput Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, et dari in disco saltatrici. Et inter insulam de Rodes et Rumaniam est mare latum per xx. miliaria, ut dicunt nautæ.

Benedict.
ii. 193.Rhodes is a
hard part of
the way from
Acre to
Benedict.
iii.

Et est sciendum, quod cum perventum fuerit ad insulam de Rodes, præteritur tertia pars viæ maris inter Accon et Brundisium. Et inter Accon et Brundisium computantur M. et Decc. miliaria. Et inter Marsiliam et Siciliam computantur mille et Dc. miliaria. Et inter Siciliam et Accon computantur M. et Dc. miliaria.¹ Et in medio viæ inter Marsiliam et Siciliam est insula de Sardena. Et in medio viæ inter Siciliam et Accon est insula de Creta.

Voyage from
Mars. (De I.)
A. D.

Et est sciendum, quod si ventus prosper fuerit illis, qui a Marsilia ad Accon ire voluerint, dimittent insulam de Sardena, et insulam de Sicilia, et insulam de Creta, longe in sinistra parte navigii; et, si rectum cursum tenuerint, non videbunt terram donec videant terram Suliæ; et via illa brevior est et securior sed cavendum est illis ne nimium declinent in dextris navigii, propter Barbarie et alias insulas multas, in quibus habitant pagani sub imperatore Africae. Sed galeæ non possunt neque audent illam viam ire, quia si tempestas supervenisset, ex facili submergerentur; et ideo² oportet eas semper ire prope terram.

Benedict.
ii. 199Voyage from
the Cape of
Turkey by
Sourpando,
Malvasia,
Cape Manto,
Gulf of
Kulokythia:
Miana,
Corou,
Modon,
Sapientia,
St. Vith.

Et qui voluerit transire per costeram Rumanie, a capite Turkiæ, transibit juxta montem excelsum qui dicitur Serpent, et ad montem illum incipit brachium Sancti Georgii, per quod itur ad civitatem Constantinopolitanam. Deinde in costera Rumanie est Malvasie, mons magnus. Deinde caput Meliæ mons magnus. Deinde est gulfus de Witon, et supra gulfum illum est castellum bonum et³ forte, quod dicitur Mayne; et supra gulfum illum est civitas episcopalis bona et magna, quæ dicitur Curan: et ibi crescit copia olivarum, adeo quod dicitur, quod in toto mundo non est locus in quo sit tanta copia olei olive: et in exitu ejusdem gulfus de Witon est Muszun, civitas deserta, quam Rogerus rex Sicilie destruxit; et ante introitum illius civitatis sunt duæ insule, quarum una dicitur Sapientia, et altera dicitur insula Vulturum. Deinde non longius a terra quam per xx. miliaria, est quedam valde periculosa rupes rotunda, et fere

¹ et . . . miliaria] om. D. I.
² [deco] ita, B. D. I.

³ et] om. B. I.

Benedict,
ii. 190.

submersa aquis, quæ dicitur Triffar; et inter rupem illam et Muszun computantur L. milliaria; et valde necessarium est prætereuntibus quod naves non elongent se nimium a terra, donec præterierint periculum illud. Deinde quasi percentum milliaria a periculo illo, est in mari insula quæ dicitur Serfent; et illa et aliæ duæ insulæ, quarum una dicitur Chefelenie, et altera Jagent, sunt insulæ Margariti.¹ Deinde est portus Wiscardi.

A.D. 1191.
Difficulties
of naviga-
tion.

De Roberto Viscard et ejus adquisitis.

Benedict,
ii. 200.

Est itaque sciendum, quod Robertus Wiscard natus fuit in Normannia, et miles factus diu de familia fuit Henrici regis Angliæ, filii Willelmi Bastardi.² Qui licet fuisset miles probus in armis, tamen nullam gratiam potuit invenire ditandi apud regem illum. Unde factum est quod, cum uxore sua et filiis et fratre suo, reliquit Normanniam et Romam adiit: et accepta a summo pontifice³ licentia et consilio subjicere sibi barbaras nationes, confluebat ad cum multitudo magna virorum ei adhærentium. Et recedens inde, intravit Apuliam, et videns eam terram bonam et fertilem, et habitatores illius indoctos armis, sæpe invasit eos in manu forti et armata, et vicit eos, et obtinuit terram. Et totam Apuliam, et Calabriam, et principatum Capuæ subjugavit sibi, et eripuit eas de manu⁴ imperatoris Romanorum, et dedit eas Tancredo⁵ filio suo.

History
of Robert
Wiscard.

His con-
quests in
Italy.

Deinde magnum congregavit navigium, jactans quod ipse imperium Constantinopolitanum invaderet, et totum sibi subjugaret. Sed interim dum navigium ejus præpararetur, contigit quod ipse, et Tancredus et Boimundus filii ejus, in una die commiserunt prælium contra dominum papam, et contra imperatorem Romanorum,

His war
with Con-
stantinople.

¹ *Margariti*] The Sicilian admiral.

² A repetition of the mistake of the older chronicler. Robert Wiscard had made his conquests and died in 1085, long before Henry I. came to the throne.

³ Nicolas II., in 1059.

⁴ *manu*] om. I.

⁵ *Tancredo*] The great Tancred was not son of Robert, but his nephew; son of Emma, daughter of Tancred of Hauteville, and Fudes, the good marquis. The son in question was Roger.

A.D. 1191.
History
of Robert
Wiscard.

et contra imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, ita quod ipse Robertus Wiscard commisit prælium contra imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, et unus filiorum suorum contra papam, et alter contra imperatorem Romanorum: et ille et uterque filiorum suorum, in una eademque die, obtinuerunt victoriam. Deinde Robertus Wiscard intravit navigium suum, et nxor ejus cum eo, et subjugavit sibi insulam de Cuyersu, et insulam de Crete, et insulam de Rodes, et alias insulas multas, eripiens eas de manu imperatoris Constantinopolis. Deinde venit ad portum qui nunc nomine suo nuncupatur portus Wiscardi.

Bened. et.
ii 261

De proditiōne quam uxor Roberti Wiscardi fecit.

Story of his
death.

Et cum inde progredi voluisset, et intrare Romanam, imperator Constantinopolitanus, timens valde adventum illius, mandavit uxori suæ,¹ quod si ipsa prædictum Robertum Wiscard morti tradidisset, et sic terram suam de eo liberasset, ille duceret eam in uxorem, et faceret eam imperatricem Constantinopolitanam. Concessit autem mulier se facturam quod imperator petebat; et nacta opportunitate temporis et loci, porrexit Roberto Wiscard marito suo venenum bibere, et mortuus est; et ibidem, in insula que usque in hodiernum diem dicitur portus Wiscardi, sepultus est; et totus exercitus ejus dissipatus est. Mulier autem fugit ad imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, qui statim adimplevit omnes conventiones suas, et duxit eam in uxorem, et coronavit in imperatricem: et cum omnis solennitas debita facta fuisset ei, et in desponsatione et in coronatione et in nuptiis, ita solenniter quod illa diceret imperatori, "Domine, vestri gratia jam perfecistis mihi omnem conventionem nostram;" imperator facto silentio, coram omnibus ostendit conventionem quam fecerat cum illa, et qualiter illa morti tradiderat maritum suum; et petiit ab eis iudicium de illa. et judicaverunt eam ream esse mortis. Et sic translata de nuptiis ad supplicium, accenso rogo injecta est, et in cinerem redacta.

¹Uxor suæ] id est, Roberti, A | of all these Italian details scarcely
interl. It is hardly necessary to say | one is accurate.
that this story is fabulous, and that

De Rogero, fratre Roberti Viscardi, et ejus adquisitis. A. D. 1101

Benedict.
ii. 211.

Rogerus vero, frater prædicti Roberti Viscardi, debellavit Siculos, et totam sibi subjugavit Siciliam, et factus est comes Siciliæ.

Roger
Viscard
conquered
Sicily.

Sicilia insula est magna, et antequam præfatus Rogerus debellasset eam, inhabitata fuit a paganis, et erat de domino imperatoris de Africa. Sed prænominatus Rogerus, expulsis inde paganis, legem Christi instituit, et fecit in ea duos archiepiscopatus,¹ et sex episcopatus.

History
of Roger
Viscard

Benedict.
ii. 202.

Deinde uxorem duxit, de qua unum solum genuit filium, quem vocavit nomine suo Rogerum; et fecit illum ducem Apuliæ, et dedit illi Calabriam, et principatum Capuæ, defuncto Tancredo, filio Roberti Viscardi, sine prole.

His son
Roger

Rogerus dux Apuliæ, filius Rogeri comitis Siciliæ, coronatus est primus regum Christianorum in Sicilia.

Deinde obiit prædictus Rogerus comes Siciliæ, et Rogerus filius ejus, dux Apuliæ, successit ei in comitatu Siciliæ. Et paulo post, per consilium comitum et baronum suorum, fecit se coronari in regem Siciliæ.² Et iste Rogerus ita factus est primus rex coronatus in Sicilia; qui uxorem duxit, ex qua genuit duos filios, et unam filiam: quorum primus vocatus est Rogerus, et alter Willelmus; et filia ejus vocata est Constantia. Et ipse dedit filio suo primogenito ducatum Apuliæ, et principatum Capuæ. Qui uxorem duxit inconsulto patre suo, et genuit ex ea filium unum, quem vocavit Tancredum. Deinde obiit,³ patre suo adhuc vivente. Deinde obiit pater⁴ suus, rex Siciliæ, cui successit in regno Willelmus filius ejus, qui uxorem duxit, de qua genuit unum solum filium, quem vocavit nomine suo Willelmum.

Roger, son
of Roger
Viscard,
becomes
king of
Sicily.

His family
William I

¹ This is a mistake. The see of Messina was made archiepiscopal in 1166; until then there was but one archbishop, at Palermo.

² Hoveden here forsakes the older chronicler, who gives an account of a visit of Lewis VII. and Eleanor to Sicily. The title of king was given first to Roger, by the antipope Ana-

cletus, Sept. 27, 1130; and he was crowned at Christmas following. He was, however, invested with the kingdom as a fief of the papacy by Leo IX., July 25, 1139; ten years before Lewis and Eleanor could have visited him.

³ obiit] In 1149

⁴ obiit pater] In 1154.

A D 1101. *De Constantia, filia Rogeri regis Siciliae, data in uxorem Henrico regi Alemannorum, filio Frederici Romanorum imperatoris.*

Stephen
History.
William II.

Iste Willelmus ultimus successit patri suo in regnum: et dedit Tancredo, fratri avi sui,¹ comitatum de la Liche. Et Constantiam, sororem avi sui, dedit Henrico regi Alemannorum, filio Frederici Romanorum imperatoris, in uxorem. Et fecit jurari ei regnum Siciliae post illum, si ille decessisset sine prole. Et deinde ipse Willelmus, rex Siciliae, duxit sibi in uxorem Johannam, filiam Henrici regis Angliae, filii Matildis imperatricis: sed ille Willelmus rex Siciliae obiit sine prole.

Benedict,
ii 202.

Benedict,
ii 203.

De Tancredo rege Siciliae.

Usurpation
of Tancred.

Quo defuncto, Tancredus praedictus comes de la Liche, immemor sacramenti, quod cum caeteris fecerat Henrico regi Alemannorum, usurpavit sibi regnum Siciliae, et factus est inde rex coronatus. Quod cum Henricus Romanorum imperator audisset, magno congregato exercitu, intravit terram regis Tancredi, et adducens secum uxorem suam Constantiam, haereditatem regni Siciliae, obsedit Salernum, et infra xv. dies reddita est ei, et uxori suae, et ipse dimisit eam illi; et ipse procedens inde obsedit Neapolim, ubi cum ipse moram fecisset per vi. septimanas, amisit fere totum exercitum suum, ex corruptione aeris; et ipse aegrotabat usque ad mortem. Et cum vidisset se nihil posse² proficere adversus eam, recessit, et abiit ad civitatem suam Melan.

Benedict,
ii 206.

War of
Henry VI.
and Tan-
cred.

Benedict,
ii 207.

De captione Constantiae imperatricis.

Capture of
Constance.

Quod cum audissent Salernitani, iniecerunt manus in dominam suam Constantiam imperatricem, et tenentes tradiderunt eam Tancredo regi Siciliae. Et imperator Alemannorum, dolens et confusus de amissione uxoris suae, scripsit Coelestino papae, ut per auxilium illius recuperasset eam; quae postmodum reddita est ei per auxilium domini papae.

¹ *Tancredo fratri avi sui*] Tancred was the son of William's uncle, not the brother of his grandfather; and Constance was his father's sister, not his grandfather's
² *posse*] om. B D. I.

Item de itinere regis Franciæ.

A. D. 1191.

Benedict,
II. 203.

Sequitur. Cum Philippus rex Franciæ recessisset ab insula de Rodes, et venisset ad costeram de Rumania, transivit per montem magnum qui dicitur caput Melic. Deinde venit in gulfo de Witun, et transivit per castellum de Maine. Deinde venit ad civitatem quæ dicitur Curun. Deinde venit ad Munzun civitatem desertam, quæ est in fine ejusdem gulfi. Deinde præterit insulam de Triffar. Deinde venit ad insulas quarum una dicitur Cefeline, et altera Fale de Compar: et illæ duæ insulæ dicuntur portus Wiscardi. Et ex opposito in Rumania est quædam villa quæ dicitur Sanctus Salvator: et ibi fere omni tempore piratæ insidiantur prætereuntibus. Et cum rex Franciæ recessisset inde, venit ad insulam quæ dicitur Cuverfu.

Philip's
journey
resum'd
Cape Maço.
gulfo of Koo-
kytha,
Mania,
Coron,
Modon,
Stralah,
Cephalonia,
Itaca.

Benedict,
II. 204.

Ad introitum insulæ de Cuverfu, versus terram Suliæ, est quædam arena periculosa, protensa per medium ab insula de Cuverfu usque ad ripam Rumanicæ; et mare non habet ibi supra arenam plus profunditatis quam quatuor ulnas et dimidium. Insula quidem de Cuverfu magna est et fertilis, et reddit¹ singulis annis imperatori Constantinopolitano xv. quintallos auri. Quintallus est pondus c. librarum. Et insula de Cuverfu distat a Romania per vi. milliaria; et in² quibusdam locis est mare ita strictum inter Cuverfu et Romaniam, quod ab una ripa in alteram potest homo audiri ab homine. Longitudo de Cuverfu continet quinquaginta milliaria; et inter Cuverfu et Apuliam computantur c. milliaria: et facile videtur Cuverfu ab illis qui sunt in Apulia, sed non e converso; quia Apulia terra bassa est, et Cuverfu terra alta. Et ad exitum insulæ de Cuverfu in Romania est castellum desertum quod dicitur Buteentrost, super littus maris, in quo Judas proditor natus fuit. Deinde cum fere perventum fuerit in fauce maris, est quædam civitas deserta in exitu insulæ de Cuverfu, quæ dicitur Caszope; in qua est tanta copia serpentum, quod nemo ausus est ex illa parte prope illam applicare. Et quasi ex opposito in Romania est civitas deserta quæ dicitur Sancta Carenta; et ibi est bonus portus, latus et profundus. Et ad exitum illius portus, in fauce maris est quædam³ rupis, similis turri semiruptæ, quæ protenditur fere per medium

Account
of Corfu.

Benedict,
II. 205.

Butrinto.

Cassope.

Santa
Quarenta.

¹ reddit] reddidit, B. D. I.
² in] om. D. I.

³ quædam] om. D. I.

- A. D. 1121. portus, et latet sub undis; et ideo necessarium est ut transeuntes transeant prope insulam de Cuverfu. Et in exitu insulæ de Cuverfu sunt tres insulæ, quarum una dicitur Fanum.¹ Benedict. ii. 265.
- Corfu.
- Faxo. Deinde quasi per quadraginta milliaria ab insula de Cuverfu, est mons magnus in capite Romaniam, qui dicitur Faxo; et a monte illo usque ad Octrento, civitatem archiepiscopalem quæ est in Apulia, sunt quinquaginta milliaria; et a monte illo usque ad Brundusium sunt centum milliaria; et a monte illo qui dicitur Paxo incipit gulfus de Vonia,² qui habet in longitudine centum et quinquaginta milliaria, et in latitudine centum milliaria. Euntes autem per gulfum illum versus Venetiam dimittent Romaniam et Sclavonium et Istriam. In Apulia supra littus maris sunt portus, quorum nomina hæc sunt: primus portus Apuliæ dicitur Lenke; deinde portus qui dicitur Castre; deinde portus qui dicitur Octrento; deinde portus qui dicitur Leliche; deinde portus qui dicitur Brandiz, id est, Brundusium; deinde portus de Monople; deinde portus de Bar, ubi Beatus Nicholaus requiescit; deinde portus de Trane; deinde portus de Barlet; deinde portus de Sypunt;³ deinde portus de Bestie; deinde portus de Tremulo. Portus iste de Tremule est ultimus portus de Apulia. Deinde est Ortona primus portus de terra Venetiæ; deinde portus de Atre; deinde portus de Pescare; deinde portus de Ancone; deinde portus de Ravenne: deinde est Venetia, civitas nobilis, et bonus portus. Benedict. ii. 266.
- Ports in the gulf of Venice, Lenke, Castro, Otranto, Lesce, Brundis, Monopoli, Bari, Trani, Barletta, Siponto, Vasto, Tremula.
- Ortona, Atri, Pescara, Ancone, Ravenna, Venice.
- Philip lands at Otranto, Oct. 10. Cum igitur rex Franciæ venisset in insulam⁴ de Cuverfu, misit nuncios suos ad regem Tancredum, et petiit ab eo licentiam transeundi per terram suam, et data est ei licentia. Deinde venit in Apuliam, et applicuit apud Octrento vi. idus Octobris, feria quinta. Et procedens inde, præmisit præambulos suos ad Henricum Romanorum imperatorem, et petiit licentiam transcundi per terram suam, et data est ei licentia. Qui cum venisset Romam, mala multa locutus est de rege Angliæ, in conspectu domini pape et omnium cardinalium; dicens quod rex Angliæ coegit cum a terra Jerosolimitana recedere; et appellavit eum de prodicione sua. Sed nec dominus papa nec cardinales fidem habuerunt verbis ejus, scientes hæc magis Benedict. ii. 267.
- His visit to Rome, and call on the emperor Richard. Benedict. ii. 269.

¹ Fanum] Fanon, D. I.² Vonia] So A. B.; Venetia, G.³ Sypunt] Sipont, B. D. I.⁴ insulam] insula, B. D. I.

Benedict,
ii. 228, 229.

ex invidia processisse, quam ex delicto regis Angliæ. Dominus vero papa cum omni honore et diligentia recepit eum, et per octo dies ministravit ei necessaria. Et pro amore Dei et suo, novum fecit remedium peregrinis; scilicet, quod eum, et omnes qui cum eo venerunt, vel post eum venerunt, absolvit a voto suo et ab itinere professionis Jerosolimitanæ: et licet votum non solvissent, tamen palmas eis distribuit, et cruces collis eorum suspendit, statuens quod essent peregrini.

A.D. 1191.
The pope's treatment of Philip and his pilgrims.

Deinde rex ¹ Franciæ effecit adversus Romanorum imperatorem, quod ipse regem Angliæ caperet, si per terram suam transiret. Deinde rex Franciæ veniens in terram suam, defamavit regem Angliæ adversus proximos suos, imponens ei crimina multa. Et proferens cartam regis Angliæ, quæ facta fuit apud Messanam, petiit a Willelmo filio Radulfi, senescallo Normanniæ, Alesiam sororem suam, quam rex Angliæ in uxorem ducere debuerat, et senescallus Normanniæ noluit tradere eam illi.

Philip conspires with the emperor against Richard.

Benedict,
ii. 236.

On reaching home he demands the restoration of his sister.

Benedict,
ii. 231.

Eodem anno Hugo Lincolnensis episcopus, faciens visitationes suas per domos religiosorum in sua diocesi, venit ad abbatiam sanctimonialium de Godestoue,² quæ est inter Oxoniam et Wudestoc.³ Et cum intrasset ecclesiam ut oraret, vidit tumbam in medio chori ante altare, sericis pannis velatam, et lampadibus et cereis circumdatam: et quæsivit cujus esset tumba, et dictum est ei, illam esse tumbam Rosemundæ, quæ quondam exstiterat amica Henrici regis Angliæ, filii Matildis imperatricis; et quod ipse pro amore illius multa bona ecclesiæ illi fecerat. Et respondit episcopus: "Tollite eam hinc, quia scortum" fuit, et sepelite eam extra ecclesiam cum cæteris, ne Chris-

S. Hugh of Lincoln removes the tomb of Fair Rosamond at Godstow.

Benedict,
ii. 232.

¹ *Deinde rex*] These additional notices in Hoveden show that his narrative was drawn up after the designs of Henry VI. were known, and most probably after the capture of Richard. The Chronicle of Benedict in the corresponding place, although mentioning Philip's negotiation with the emperor for a passage for himself, says nothing

about the design of capturing Richard; nor indeed could it have been at that time regarded even as a remote probability that Richard should return through the imperial dominions.

² *Godestoue*] Godestowe, I.; Godistoue, D.

³ *Wudestoc*] Wdestoke, I.; Wodestoke, B. D.

A D 1191. "trana religio videscat, et ut exemplo illius cateræ mulieres ^{Benedict.}
"exterritæ, caveant sibi ab illicitis et adulterinis concubi-
"tibus." Et factum est ita.

Expulsion
of monks
from
Coventry.

Eodem anno Hugo, Coventrensis¹ episcopus, expulit
monachos Coventrenses ab ecclesia cathedrali, et in ea
instituit canonicos sæculares.

Election
and death
of Arch-
bishop
Reginald.

Eodem anno² monachi Cantuarienses elegerant sibi in archi- ^{Benedict.}
episcopum Reginaldum Batoniensem episcopum, qui statim ^{ii 226, 227}
incidit in ægritudinem, et infra quindecim dies post
electionem suam obiit, et apud Bath sepultus est.

Quarrel
of the
archbishop
of York
and the
bishop of
Durham.

Eodem anno Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, propter
animi indignationem quam habebat adversus Gaufridum
Eboracensem archiepiscopum, nitebatur modis omnibus
a subjectione ejus solvi. Unde prædictus Gaufridus
scripsit ei in hanc formam;³

*Epistola Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi ad
Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum.*

The arch-
bishop
rebukes the
bishop for
arrogance.

"Gaufridus, Dei gratia Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et Angliæ ^{(Not in}
"primas, Hugoni, eadem gratia Dunelmensi episcopo, salutem. ^{Benedict.)}
"Dum ad culmen singularitatis ardentem erumpere properas,
"aliis præesse elegisti, et nemini vis esse subjectus. Unde
"in te completum esse novimus illud quod dicitur: 'In Is. xiv 13.
"cælum conscendam, et supra astra cæli exaltabo solium
"meum, et ero similis Altissimo.' Minus igitur memoriter
"tones, 'Quia Deus superbis resistit, et humilibus dat gra- ^{1^a Pet. v. 3.}
"tiam;' et, 'Qui se exaltat humiliabitur, et qui se hu- ^{8. Matt.}
"miliat exaltabitur.' Nos enim et ecclesiam nostram Ebo- ^{Ed. 12.}
"racensem ardentem, immo more hostili persequeris, contra
"professionem tuam, et debitam nobis et ecclesie Eboracensi
"obedientiam, te a jurisdictione nostra, quod Deus avertat,
"subtrahere et oximere desiderans. Nos vero juri ecclesiar

¹ Coventrensis] Coventrensis,
I.

² Eodem anno] Reginald was
elected on the 27th of November;
he accepted the election on the
2nd of December; died on the 26th
of the same month at Dogmersfield,

and on the 29th was buried at Bath.
Gero 580; *Epp. Cant.*

³ Eodem . . . formam] omitted in
MSS. B. D. and I., with the following
letter, and everything else down to
p. 172 below. They are wanting also
in the Chronicle of Benedict, except
in a very abridged form.

(Not in
Benedict.)

“ nostræ et dignitati, prout decet, providere volentes, tibi
 “ tanquam suffraganeo nostro, auctoritate apostolica et nostra,
 “ firmiter injungimus, quatenus proxima die Lunæ instantis
 “ post festam Sancti Michaelis, apud Eboracum in matrice
 “ ecclesia, synodo nostræ interesse nulla occasione differas,
 “ debitam nobis exhibiturus reverentiam, et canonici, juxta
 “ formam mandati apostolici sapius litteris nostris et ex
 “ parte nostra tibi exhibiti, obedientiam præstiturus; respon-
 “ surus præterea, quod jam per biennium ecclesiam nostram
 “ Eboracensem debitis ei processioibus ab antiquo, et obla-
 “ tionibus in diebus Pentecosten, scilicet, Hovedenesire et
 “ Alvertonsire, contra juris ordinem spoliarè præsumpsisti,
 “ et falcem in alienam messem mittere non formidans, ele-
 “ ricis et parochianis nostris spiritualia ministrare usurpasti.”

A. D. 1133.
He summons him to York for the first Monday after Michaelmas.

Benedict,
ii. 225.

Quibus auditis, Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus ad eum
 nec venire, nec obedientiam seu professionem illi facere
 voluit. Dicebat namque se semel fecisse obedientiam
 et professionem ecclesie Eboracensi, et archiepiscopo
 ejusdem ecclesie Rogero; et quod de jure non tene-
 batur reiterare eam. Et ne predictus archiepiscopus
 super hoc posset gravare eum, appellavit ad præsentiam
 summi pontificis seniel, secundo, et tertio supponens seip-
 sum et ecclesie sue causam examini domini papæ, et
 Romanæ ecclesie. Archiepiscopus autem Eboracensis, ap-
 pellationi Dunelmensis episcopi non deferens, in spiritu
 furoris sui sententiam anathematis tulit in Dunelmensem
 episcopum, innixus mandato summi pontificis, in quo
 continebatur, quod, si Dunelmensis episcopus aut nol-
 let aut injuste differret facere illi debitam obedientiam,
 ille, omni appellatione remota, compelleret per ecclesias-
 ticam censuram. Videns itaque Dunelmensis episcopus
 sententiam excommunicationis in eo illatam, post appella-
 tionem ad præsentiam summi pontificis factam, noluit
 eam tenere, sed ita audacter, sicut antea fecerat, cele-
 bravit, et celebrari fecit Divina. At archiepiscopus
 altaria ubi Dunelmensis episcopus celebraverat sub-
 vertit, et calices in quibus celebraverat aliquis eo pro-
 sente in sua diocesi fregit; et Johannem fratrem
 suum, comitem Moretonii, habuit pro excommunicato, pro
 eo quod ipse comederat cum Dunelmensi episcopo post

The bishop
refuses to
obey, and
appeals to
Rome.

The arch-
bishop
excommuni-
cates him.

Benedict,
ii. 226.

The arch-
bishop
treats his
brother
John as
excommuni-
cate.

A D 1101.
Negotiations of the
bishop of
Durham
at Rome.

sententiam illam, et noluit communicare cum illo, donec ipse ad satisfactionem venisset absolvendus. Cuique Dunelmensis episcopus vidisset quod quamplures homines vitassent loqui et manducare aut bibere cum illo, misit nuncios suos ad Celestinum papam, exponens ei primo secreto, deinde coram cardinalibus universis, quam indiscrete Eboracensis archiepiscopus sententiam excommunicationis in eum tulerat, in nullo deferens appellationi suæ. Quo agnito, dominus papa et omnes cardinales iudicaverunt sententiam illam nullam esse, nec debere teneri. Unde dominus papa in hæc forma scripsit;

Benedict.
ii. 236.

*Epistola Celestini papæ, ad Hugonem Lincolnensem episcopum et ceteros, de irritatione sententiæ quam Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus dederat in Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum.*¹

A D 1102
Letter of
Celestine
III. to the
bishops of
Lincoln and
Rochester,
and the
abbot of
Peter-
borough

“ Celestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus
“ fratribus Lincolnensi et Rosensi episcopis, et dilecto filio
“ abbati de Burgo, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
“ Sicut ea quæ a venerabilibus fratribus, coepiscopus nostris,
“ circumspectivè provida et ratione praviâ statuuntur, de-

Benedict.
ii. 245.

¹ This letter is given in the Chronicle of Benedict under the year 1192. Hoveden appears in his account of this proceeding of Geoffrey against Hugh to have massed his information in a way not usual with him whilst discussing subjects of which he had personal knowledge. Nor is either Hoveden or Benedict liberal in dates on the subject. So far as appears from the existing data, if Hoveden is right in ascribing the letter of Geoffrey given above, (p. 168), to this year, the struggle must have begun almost immediately on Geoffrey's landing in England. Geoffrey was released from his arrest on the 26th of September, and the synod at York, to which he sum-

mons the bishop of Durham, was fixed for Sept. 30. Either then the summons was issued before Geoffrey landed, or the letter is misplaced. The former is the more probable. At all events Hugh neglected to make profession of his obedience to the archbishop, and appealed to the pope, in consequence of which Geoffrey, after three citations, excommunicated him, in November or December 1191. Hugh spent Christmas at Howden with John; still lying under the sentence. On Candlemas day 1192 the archbishop again excommunicated him, Hugh now proceeding with his appeal at Rome. (*Ben. Pet.* ii. 237) After Midlent, Mar. 15, Hugh offered to

Benedict,
i. 246.

“ bemus illibata servare : ita quæ minus quandoque considerate
 “ aguntur, providentia pleniori corrigere, et in statum debitum
 “ nobis imminet reformare. Cum itaque venerabilis frater
 “ noster Gaufridus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, in venerabilem
 “ fratrem nostrum Hugonem, Dunelmensem episcopum, et quos-
 “ dam alios, excommunicationis sententiam promulgasset, et
 “ eorum nunciis ad nostram præsentiam venientibus, in consis-
 “ torio nostro fuisset hinc inde super ea sententia et quibus-
 “ dam aliis articulis plenarie disceptatum ; nos cognoscentes
 “ tam in ipsum quam in alios jaculatam sententiam inconsulte
 “ prolatam fuisse, nullius causæ rationabilis munimine robo-
 “ ratam, eam de consilio fratrum nostrorum denunciavimus
 “ publice non tenere, irritantes eam, ne quid auctoritatis habeat
 “ inhibentes. Ut itaque, quod nos decrevimus, per partes
 “ vestras publice nunciatur, per apostolica scripta vobis man-
 “ damus, ut eandem sententiam per ecclesias vestras prædicetis
 “ auctoritate sedis apostolicæ irritatam ; ut fidelium populus
 “ tam ipsi episcopo, quam aliis una cum ipso injusto ligatis,
 “ fraternæ communionis participium securo impendat, et ab
 “ illorum nullatenus, propter hoc, communionem recedat. Datum
 “ Laterani.”

A.D. 1192.
 He commits
 to them
 the duty
 of declaring
 the excom-
 munication
 of the
 bishop of
 Durham to
 be null.

Præterea dominus papa mandavit in aliis litteris suis, prædictis Lincolniensi et Rofensi episcopis, et abbati de Burgo, quod si constiterit illis quod Eboracensis archiepiscopus, post appellationem ad Romanum pontificem factam, altaria et calices fregerit, in quibus Dunelmensis episcopus, vel per se vel per alium, missam celebravit, idem Dunelmensis episcopus non teneretur aliquam facere subjectionem præfato Eboracensi archiepiscopo, quamdiu ipsi duo vixerint.

If the arch-
 bishop has
 proceeded
 unlawfully
 against
 the bishop
 after appeal,
 the latter
 is to be
 released
 from
 making
 any subjec-
 tion to him.

submit to arbitration, but the attempt failed. (*Ib.* 238.) Then it would seem the papal letter must have arrived, committing the matter to judges delegate. This letter is dated at the Lateran, where the papal court was from February to May 1192. (*Jaffé, Reg. Pont.* 891.) It was probably issued in February or March. The judges proceeded to hear the case at Northampton, at a point of time later than the conclusion of Benedict's chronicle,

which contains the letter, but not the proceedings upon it; therefore probably in April or May 1192. After the first hearing it was adjourned to July 1st (p. 172). The final hearing seems to have been in October 1192, at Northampton. (*Gerv.* 1580, 1581.) According to Hoveden in the text, the third hearing was fixed for the 14th of that month. Hoveden has thus anticipated the course of events by nearly a year.

A.D. 1192. *De discordia inter Gaufridum archiepiscopum Eboracensem et Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum.*

Continuation of the suit between the archbishop of York and bishop of Durham, down to October 1192.

Cumque prædicti archiepiscopus et episcopus convenissent in præsentia prædictorum iudicum apud Northamptoniam, et diu hinc inde super prædictis articulis inter eos disceptatum fuisset, tandem, per consilium et admonitionem domini Lincolnensis episcopi, controversia illa dilationem cepit usque ad octavas Nativitatis Beati Johannis Baptistæ; ut honore invicem prævenientes, ad plenioris pacis consummationem per Dei gratiam facilius inducantur, rebus omnibus inter eos eodem statu quo fuerunt interim permanentibus. Et si pax interim formata non fuerit, litteræ ad iudices a domino papa directæ, eundem vigorem sunt habituræ, quem habuerunt si præfata dilatio non intercessisset, et per tantum temporis, salvis utrique parti omnibus exceptionibus suis; citatione etiam, si qua fieri debet, facienda sub eodem spatio temporis et eadem forma, ad eundem diem, quo facta fuit prima, scilicet ad diem Sancti Calixti.

A.D. 1191. Roger de Lacy hangs two traitors.

¹ Eodem anno ² Rogerus constabularius Cestria, cui cancellarius tradiderat castella de Nothinham et de Thikehil in custodia, cepit duos (scilicet Alanum de Lec, et Petrum de Bovencurt) ex illis quibus commiserat prædicta castella in custodia, et quia consenserant proditioni Roberti de Crockestun,³ et Eudonis de Divilla, qui castella illa tradiderunt Johanni comiti Moretonii, suspendit utrumque. Unde comes Moretoni iratus, totam terram illius, quæ in sua potestate erat, devastavit.

Benedict. H. 232, 233, 234.

John devastates his lands.

Eodem anno ⁴ Willelmus rex Scotorum misit nuncios suos ad Coelestinum summum pontificem, pro liber-

¹ *Eodem anno*] Here MSS. B. D. and I. resume.

² *anno*] om. I.

³ *Crockestun*] Crockestun, I.; Crokiston, D.; Crokestone, G.

⁴ *Eodem anno*] The following letter

with this prefatory notice is omitted in B. D. and I. A has this note in the margin in the same hand as the text.

"Scriptæ sunt superius." G. gives the letter down to the word *favorem*, and ends there with "ut supra."

tatibus ecclesiarum regni sui confirmandis; et invenit gratiam in oculis domini papæ, ita quod dominus papa in hac forma scripsit illi;

Benedict.
ii. 234.

" Cælestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, carissimo in Christo filio Willelmo, illustri Scotorum regi, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.

" Cum universi Christi jugo subjecti, apud sedem apostolicam patrocinium invenire debeant et favorem, illos tamen specialius convenit promotionis munimine confoveri, quorum fidem et devotionem in pluribus est experta: ut ad ipsius dilectionis favorem tanto amplius provocentur, et ejus reverentia devotiori affectione subdantur, quanto benivolentia ipsius et gratia pignus se noverint certius assecutos. Eapropter, carissime in Christo fili, reverentiam ac devotionem quam ad Romanam te habuisse, a longis retro temporibus, ecclesiam novimus, attendentes, præscitus scripti pagina duximus statuendum, ut Scoticana ecclesie apostolicæ sedi, cujus filia specialis existit, nullo mediante, debeat subiacere. In qua hæc sedes episcopales esse noscuntur: ecclesie videlicet Sancti Andrewæ, Glasguensis, Dunkeldensis, Dublinensis, Brehinnensis, Aberdonensis, Moraviensis, Roscenensis, Cathmenensis. Et nemini liceat nisi Romano pontifici, vel legato ab ipsius latere destinato, in regnum Scotiæ inter-

A. D. 1191
Bull. releasing the
Scottish
Church
from ad
subjection
except to
the see of
Rome itself.

The letter has in fact been given already as the act of pope Clement III, under the year 1188, vol. ii. p. 360. It is given in Benedict as Clement's, vol. ii. 234, under the year 1191, as here. Indeed, if it were Celestine's it could hardly have appeared in England before the time at which Benedict's chronicle ends, and must have been incorporated from Hoveden, in a copy of later date than Hoveden: for March 13 in the first year of Celestine falls in 1192. It is very improbable that both the popes Clement III. and Celestine III. should have issued the same letter with the same date. Occasionally I believe a papal letter is found repeated totidem verbis, but the coincidence of the dates is unparalleled. To which of the

popes then are we to ascribe it? I think to pope Clement, because it appears first as his act in Hoveden under the proper year; and in Benedict, although misplaced, it bears the name of Clement. Hoveden finding it in his copy of the older chronicle at a date subsequent to Clement's death, forgetting, as the marginal note shows, that it had been inserted before, might easily think that Clement was a mistake for Celestine. Nor again is it likely that, if Celestine had been the first author of the letter, it would have been known to the author of Benedict's Chronicle, who clearly, at the time of writing, had not heard of the commission issued about the same time, for the hearing of the cause of Geoffrey and Hugh, just given above.

A. D. 1191. Privileges of the Scottish Church

“dicti vel excommunicationis sententiam promulgare, et si Benedict. ii. 234.
 “promulgata fuerit, decernimus non valere. Adicimus, ut
 “nulli de caetero, qui de regno Scotiae non fuerit, nisi quem
 “apostolica sedes propter hoc de corpore suo specialiter
 “destinaverit, licitum sit in eo legationis officium exercere.
 “Prohibemus autem, ut controversiae, quae fuerint in regno
 “illo de possessionibus ejus exorta, ad examen extra regnum
 “positorum iudicium non trahantur, nisi ad Romanam eccle-
 “siam fuerit appellatum. Si qua vero scripta contra hujus
 “libertatis statutum apparuerint impetrata, vel in posterum,
 “istius concessionis mentione non habita, contigerit impe-
 “trari, nullam tibi vel ipsi regno circa hujus prerogativas
 “concessionem praedictam generetur. Praeterea libertates
 “et immunitates tibi, vel ei regno, vel ecclesiis in eo consti- Benedict. ii. 245.
 “tutis, a praedecessoribus nostris Romanis pontificibus in-
 “dultas, et haecenus observatas, ratas habemus, et inlibatas
 “futuris temporibus statuimus permanere. Nulli ergo homi-
 “num liceat hanc paginam nostrae constitutionis et prohi-
 “bitionis infringere, vel ei aliquatenus contraire. Si quis
 “autem hoc attentare praesumpserit, indignationem Omnipo-
 “tentis Dei, et Beatorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, se
 “noverit incursum. Datum Laterani, tertio idus Martii,
 “pontificatus nostri anno primo.”

*Item de adquisitis Ricardi regis Angliae in terra
 Suvia.*

Richard gives Joppa and Ascalon to Geoffrey of Lusignan.

Eodem anno¹ rex Angliae, post reedificationem Caesareae et Benedict. ii. 227
 Jopen, dedit utramque Gaufrido de Lezinan, fratri Gwidonis regis. Deinde rex Angliae firmavit castellum des Plains, et deinde firmavit castellum Maen.

Advanced towards Jerusalem

Deinde secunda die ante Natale Domini, perrexit rex Benedict. ii. 236
 Angliae usque ad Turonum des Chevalers,² et ibi fuit

¹ *Eodem anno*] Here MSS. B. D. and J. resume.

² *Chevalers*] Chancellors, B. D. 1. A comparison of this with the corresponding passage in Benedict will show that the latter chronicler at the time of writing had not heard of the final failure of Richard's crusade, and had been misled by ac-

counts from Palestine, as yet uncontradicted, of the events which took place between Beit Naba and Jerusalem in the Christmas of 1191. See *Ben Pet.* ii. 230, and *Itin. R. R.* 298, 299. The dates are as follows: Nov. 15, Richard began to advance on Ramlah, Saladin retreating, at Ramlah Richard stayed

in Natali Domini ; et voluit inde procedere post Natale Domini ad obsidendum civitatem Jerosolimam ; sed dux Burgundiæ et Franci noluerunt eum sequi, dicentes quod rex Franciæ, dominus eorum, prohibuit eis in recessu suo, ne ipsi ulterius moram facerent in terra illa ; unde oportebat regem Angliæ a proposito suo deficere, quia homines et pecunia defecerunt ei.

A.D. 1191.
December.
The French
crusaders
desert
Richard.

De reditu imperatoris Affricanorum cum exercitu in terram Sancii regis Portugalensis.

Eodem anno Boyach Almiramunoli,¹ imperator Africanorum, qui anno præcedenti intraverat terram regis Portugalensis cum exercitu suo magno, et ceperat castellum quod dicitur Turres Noves, et obsederat castellum quod dicitur Tumar, et utrumque reliquerat Christianis, propter metum peregrinorum qui in navigio regis Angliæ venerant, et fugiens finxerat se mortuum, ut supra dictum est ; isto anno, postquam totum navigium regis Angliæ præterierat, magnum congregavit exercitum, et iterum intravit terram regis Portugalensis, et cepit per vim civitatem Silvix, et Alcaz, et Almade, et Palmele,² et devastavit terram Christianorum. Rex autem Portugalensis non potuit illius resistere viribus : et ipse Boiach Almiramunoli³ dedit prædictas civitates, quas acquisierat, fratri suo regi de Cordres, id est Corduba.

The emperor of Morocco recovers the cities in Portugal which he had lost in 1190.

22 days, up to December 8 ; during which time two skirmishes took place, Nov. 25 and Dec. 3. On Dec. 8 the army retired into winter quarters at Ramlah : Dec. 20, Richard was nearly taken prisoner near Tel-es-safih ; the same day Guy of Lusignan went from the camp to Acre. About Dec. 31 the crusaders advanced from Ramlah towards Jerusalem as far as Beit Nûba ; there was a skirmish on Jan. 3rd,

and on the 13th the retreat from Beit Nûba began, owing to the defection of the French under the duke of Burgundy. See *Joinville* (ed. Didot, Paris, 1859), p. 172.

¹ *Boyach Almiramunoli*] Boyac Almiramunoli, B. I. ; Armomummoli, D. ; Miramumelin, G.

² *Palmele*] Palmade, I.

³ *Boiach Almiramunoli*] Boyac Almiramunoli, B. I.

A. D. 1191

*De episcopatibus qui sunt in Hispania.*Navarre
has only
one episco-
pal see,
Pampeluna.Castile, an
archbishop-
ric at
Toledo.Wonders of
Toledo.S. Fraguans
of Toledo;
Cordova,
Placcina,
Alarcos,
Trucejo,
Avila,
Segovia,
Sicoença,
Segura,
Osma,
Palencia,
Burgos.Suffragans
of the arch-
bishop of
Compostella,
Leon,
Astorga,
Zamora:

Et est notandum, quod in terra regis Navarræ est una sola civitas episcopalis, quæ dicitur Pampelune; sed multa castella sunt in terra sua, quorum unum dicitur Tudele, super fluvium de Ebera,¹ et alterum dicitur Lestaile,² et alia multa. In terra autem regis Castellæ est³ una sola civitas archiepiscopalis, quæ dicitur Tulette, quæ sedet super fluvium Tagi, et ipsa habet primatiam Hispaniæ: et in eadem civitate est alia episcopalis, qui dicitur episcopus de Musceravs,⁴ id est Suriens. Et in eadem civitate est mons quidam, de quo quotidie sumuntur plusquam mille camelorum onera, et tamen nunquam decrescit; quia quamvis spelunca fiat profundissima, tamen cras implebitur, si pluvia ceciderit super eum. Et terra inde sumpta deferitur per circumjacentes provincias, et venditur ad lavandum capita, et pannos hominum, tam Christianorum quam paganorum.

Præterea archiepiscopus Tuletti habet sub se xi. episcopos suffraganeos: scilicet episcopum de Musceravs, episcopum de Alarchas, qui est prope Cordres, id est Corduba, episcopum de Plazence, episcopum de Trugel, episcopum de Aville, episcopum de Segove, episcopum de Alarlges, episcopum de Segunce, episcopum de Soyre,⁵ et de Osme, episcopum de Palence, episcopum de Burs.

Præterea in eodem regno regis Castellæ sunt plusquam cc. castella bona, quorum unum est Legruin.

In terra regis de Sancto Jacobo est unus archiepiscopatus, scilicet, apud Sanctum Jacobum; et ipse habet sub se xi. suffraganeos, scilicet, episcopum de Leone, episcopum de Sturghe, episcopum de Auzemore, episco-

¹ *Ebera*] Ehora, B.² *Lestade*] Lesteile, B. G.; Lees-
tulle, D.; Leestrile, I.³ *est*] om. B. D. I.⁴ *Musceravs*] Muscerans, D; the
Mozarabic Christians.⁵ *Soyre*] Seoyre, D. I.

pum de Salemanke, episcopum de Citaz Rodrike, episcopum de Cooire, episcopum de Sancta Maria de Lughe, episcopum de Sancto Salvatore de Wede, episcopum de Villemajur, episcopum de Aurens, episcopum de Tuie. Præterea in eodem regno regis de Sancto Jacobo sunt castella multa.

A.D. 1191.
Salamanca,
Cruces Rod-
rigo, Corin-
Luso,
Oviedo, Villa-
major, Or-
euso, Toy

In terra regis Portugalensis est unus archiepiscopus apud civitatem quæ dicitur Braga; et ipse habet sub se septem suffraganeos; scilicet, episcopum de Portigal, episcopum de Cuvilana, episcopum de Lamegke,¹ episcopum de Viseou, episcopum de Cunimbre, episcopum de Evere in Marchia Saracenorum, episcopum Ulyxisbonæ super fluvium Tagi.

See in Por-
tugal: Bra-
ga, Oporto,
Covilha,
Lamego,
Viseu, Com-
bra, Évora,
Lisbon.

Deinde protenditur Hispania quæ dicitur Saracenicæ, sub imperatore Africanorum: et ibi incipit terra quam rex de Cordres, id est Corduba, frater prædicti Almiramimoli, tenet; scilicet, Corduba civitas, de qua Lucanus ait:

Saracenic
Spain, know-
d in of Cor-
dova, and its
cities.

“ Corduba me genuit, rapuit Nero, prælia dixi,

“ Quæ gessere pares, hinc socer, inde gener.”

Et Palmel, et Almada, et Alchaz,² et Silves civitas, et Sancta Maria de Hairun, et Badeluz civitas super fluvium de Godiana; et Meride, quæ quondam fuit civitas archiepiscopalis; et Sibilla, quæ quondam fuit civitas archiepiscopalis;³ civitas ista et Corduba sedent super fluvium qui dicitur Gedelkevir; et Granata civitas, et Jubelarie civitas.

Deinde incipit regnum regis de Gahang, in eadem Hispania, sub imperatore Africanorum; et rex ille est frater Almiramimoli; et ipse habet in dominatione sua Gehen castellum, et Baence civitatem, et Aubede⁴ civitatem, et Segure civitatem, et Melega civitatem, ubi fit copia de corduan vermail; et Melte⁵ civitatem in fauce maris; et utraque illarum sedet super fluvium qui dicitur Segure.

Kingdom of
Jaen and its
cities.

¹ *Lamegke*] Lameghe, D. I.

² *Alchaz*] Alchaz, B. D. I.

³ *et Sibilla* . . . *archiepiscopalis*]

om. D. I.

⁴ *Aubede*] Auldene, B. D.

⁵ *Melte*] Melce, D. I.

A. D. 1191.
Kingdom of
Murcia.

Deinde in eadem Hispania Saracenicā incipit terra regis de Murcia, qui est frater prædicti Almiramimoli: in cujus dominatione sunt Murcia civitas, et Oriole castellum, et Urgelet castellum, et Almaria civitas, et Cartagine civitas, et Chinchele¹ castellum, et Lapanne de Seinpere² castellum.

Kingdom of
Valencia.

Deinde in eadem Hispania Saracenicā incipit terra regis de Valencia, qui est frater prædicti Almiramimoli: in cujus dominatione sunt Oedeeb castellum, et Stuuē castellum, et Valencia civitas, et Burrianz civitas, et Penisele, et alia castella multa.

Kingdom of
Arragon and
its cities—
Tortosa,
Saragossa,
Tarragona,
Tarazona.

Deinde incipit Hispania terra regis Arragoniæ. In cujus regni principio est Ampost castellum, deinde Turtusa, civitas episcopalis. Deinde Saraguce, civitas episcopalis,³ deinde Caletau castellum, deinde Doroke castellum, deinde Torol⁴ castellum, deinde Sancta Maria Abiraziū, civitas in Marchia Christianorum et paganorum; deinde Tarragune, civitas archiepiscopalis; deinde Tarrazon, civitas episcopalis; deinde Oske civitas, deinde Jake civitas, deinde Leride civitas supra fluvium de Segre, deinde Wike civitas, deinde Barzelune civitas, deinde Sain de Urgel, deinde Gyrunde civitas; deinde Turezele castellum, quod quondam vocabatur Purpallar supra mare; deinde alti montes, qui vocantur portus de Laclusa; deinde Castellun, deinde Empires.⁵

County of
Roussillon.

Deinde est⁶ terra que vocatur Russilun, in qua est civitas bona quæ dicitur Alne; deinde est Nerbona civitas; deinde est Beders civitas; deinde est Agda civitas; deinde est Villenove, episcopatus de Maggalona, et prope inde est portus de Monte Pessolano, qui dicitur Lates. Sunt et alia multa castella et civitates in regno regis Arragoniæ, ut supra dictum est.

¹ Chinchele] Chingele, D. I.; Chiucele, B.

² Seinpere] Seimpere, I.; Scumpere, B.; Cimpere, D.

³ deinde . . . episcopalia] om. I.

⁴ Torol] Torolea, I.

⁵ Empires] Emprires, I.

⁶ est] om. B. I. These geographical details are much abridged in D.

Tertius annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Benedict,
ii. 235.

Anno gratiæ m^{cc}xcⁱⁱo., qui erat tertius annus regni Ricardi regis Anglorum, Philippus rex Franciæ fuit in Francia, sanus et incolumis apud Fontaine Blaud,¹ die Natalis Domini, quæ feria quarta evenit, impudenter jactans se in proximo vastaturum terras regis Angliæ.

A D. 1191.
Dec 25.
Philip at
Fontaine-
bleau.

Eodem die Natalis Domini, Johannes comes Moretonii, frater Ricardi regis Angliæ fuit apud Hovedene, cum Hugone Danelmensi episcopo.

John at
Hewden.

Eodem die Natalis Domini, Alienor regina, mater Ricardi regis Angliæ, fuit in Normannia apud Boneville sur Thoke.²

Eleanor at
Bonnevillle.

Eodem die Natalis Domini, Ricardus rex Angliæ fuit in terra Saliæ apud le Turun as chevalers,³ volens post Natale Domini obsidere civitatem Jerusalem: et in die Sancti Hilarii habuit ibi colloquium cum Templariis et Hospitalariis, et cum toto exercitu, de civitate Jerusalem obsidenda; sed non fuit de consilio eorum ut ipse procederet, sed ut rediret ad firmandam Scalonam;⁴ et sic perrexit ille ad Scalonam, et firmavit eam, et in firmando eam fecit moram magnam.⁵

Richard at
Larcon.

A D. 1193.
Jan 13.
Richard
goes to A-
scalon.

Et quindecim diebus⁶ ante Pascha, recesserunt ab eodux Burgundiæ et Franci, dicentes quod cum eo diutius non remanerent, nisi ipse invenisset eis necessaria, et noluit rex invenire eis quicquam.

March 22.
Departure of
the French.

¹ *Fontaine Blaud*] Fontaine Blaud. B. I.; Blad, A., corrected to Blaud. It should be observed that Hoveden has omitted the journal of Philip's return from Rome onwards, which is given in Benedict, ii. 229-230.

² *sur Thoke*] super Toke, B.

³ *Turun as chevalers*] Turonum as chevalers, G.; as chanales, B.; ad chevalers, D. See *Itiner. R. R.*, 298, 299; Ben. Pet. ii. 235: from this point Hoveden's account of Richard's movements is original; the information of Benedict's Chronicle ceasing.

⁴ *Scalonam*] Ascalonam, B. I.; Ascalonam, D.

⁵ *moram magnam*] Richard marched from Ramlah on the 19th of January, and reached it the following day. The fortification occupied several months, during which the king made a journey to Acre, and had several adventures of interest. The army finally left Ascalon on the 4th of June. *Itin. R. R.*, 313-365.

⁶ *quindecim diebus*] The duke of Burgundy had left Ascalon and gone to Tyre in February. *Itin. R. R.*, 321. The French nobles took leave of Richard on the 1st of April. *Itin. R. R.*, 326.

A. D. 1102.
Richard fortifies the strongholds, keeping Easter, April 5, at Ascalon.

Infra vero Quadragesimam, rex Angliæ firmavit¹ la Blanchewarde, et Galaciam, et Gazere.

He goes to Darum.

Et in die Paschæ, tenuit ibi commune festum extra villam in tentoriis. Et post Pascha fecit ipse equitationes per terram paganorum, et invenit segetes eorum maturas, et fecit omnes colligi a Christianis pro medietate segetum. Et in planitie de Scalona moram fecit usque ad Pentecosten: et die clausi Pentecosten² equitavit apud le Darun,³ castellum forte, juxta magnum fluvium Euphraten; et cepit in equitatione illa xxiv. paganos, et unum Reneez, qui quondam Christianus fuerat, et Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum negaverat; et rex posuit eum ad sagittandum, et sagittatus est.

He takes Darum.

Et rex⁴ die Lunæ post clausum Pentecosten obsedit le Darun, et die Veneris sequenti cepit eam per vim; et cepit in ea MDCCC. paganos⁵ vivos, et dedit illud statim comiti Henrico de Campania.

Quarrels at Acre.

Interim post Pascha orta est gravis dissensio inter Pisanos et Januenses, qui erant in Acon, et mutuo se interfecerunt: et dux Burgundiæ, per exhortationem Januensium misit Tyrum pro Conrado Marchione, volens levare eum in regem; et Pisani miserunt pro rege Angliæ, qui tunc temporis morabatur in Scalona,

¹ *firmavit*] om. D. I. The Itinerarium does not say that Richard fortified any of these places; he probably occupied them with his forces: but Gaza could have hardly been in his hands so early as Easter; for on Easter Tuesday he went in person to reconnoitre it. *Itin.* 330. Blancheguard and Galatia had been deserted by Saladin (*Ib.* 280); and were visited by Richard later. On April 22 he found the former unoccupied (*Ib.* 344); and he was at Galatia in June. *Ib.* 384.

² *die clausi Pentecosten*] These dates are inconsistent with the ac-

count given in the Itinerarium, and are indeed obviously wrong. Richard took Darum on the Friday before Pentecost May 22 (*Itin.* 355), having besieged it since the previous Sunday (*Ib.* 352). The French arrived at Darum in time for Pentecost, and kept it there (*Ib.* 356). Before the date given by Hoveden Richard was marching on Jerusalem.

³ *le Darun*] Darun, B. D. I.

⁴ *Et rex*] Rex igitur, G.

⁵ *paganos*] Saracenos, interl. A: G. reads *Sarracenos* for *paganos*.

significantes ei propositum ducis Burgundiæ. Et rex venit Accon,¹ et exegit a duce Burgundiæ M. et D. libras argenti, quas ipse ei commodaverat; et dux ille non habens unde redderet, tradidit regi Carokois² pro quietâ clamantia debiti.

A D. 1162.
March.
Richard
visits Acre,
and returns
to Ascalon.

De interfecione Conradi Marchionis.

Deinde rediit rex ad Scalonam, ubi dum ipse moram fecisset, duo de servientibus regis Accinorum, id est de Assasis,³ qui multo tempore servierant in curia Conradi marchionis, et familiares illius diu extiterant, interfecerunt prædictum Conradum in Tyro civitate sua, et statim capti sunt a circumstantibus v^{to}. kalendas Maii. Et interrogati, dixerunt se hoc fecisse per præceptum regis Accinorum domini sui: et unus illorum statim capitalem subiit sententiam, et alter excoriatus est Franci vero dixerunt hoc totum factum fuisse per consilium regis Angliæ. Post interfecionem vero prædicti Conradi, uxor illius nupsit⁴ Henrico comiti de Campania, nepoti regis Angliæ et regis Franciæ; et statim, per communem totius exercitus electionem, prædictus Henricus est electus in regem terræ Jerosolimitanæ. Et rex Angliæ dedit in excambium regi Gwidoni insulam de Cypre, in vita sua tenendam.

Assassina-
tion of Con-
rad, Apri. 28.

Henry of
Champagne
elected king
of Jerusa-
lem.

Post captionem del Darun,⁵ eodem scilicet die Veneris quo rex Angliæ ceperat eam, Franci redierunt ad regem Angliæ in misericordia ejus usque ad Scalonam, et rex venit illuc ad eos, et inde per consilium totius exerci-

The French
return to
the camp
(May 22).

¹ *venit Accon*] Richard's visit to Acre was before Easter; he arrived there Feb. 20, and returned to Ascalon Mar. 31. *Itin. R. R.*, 322, 326.

² *Carokois*] Carkois, B.; Karakois, D.; Carrakois, I. Mes-toch was released on payment of his ransom, Apr. 16. *Itin.* 344. Karakoush was not released until

the peace: he rejoined Saladin on the 20th of October. His ransom was 80,000 aurei. Behadin, 267.

³ *Assasis*] Aussasis, B. I.; om. D.; Ausas s, G

⁴ *nupsit*] May 5. R. de Diceto, 667.

⁵ *Darun*] Darun, I.; castelli, præf., G.

A. D. 1192.
June.
Richard at
Beit-Nuba

He acquires
a portion of
the True
Cross.

tus processit ad obsidendum Jerosolimam. Et cum venissent usque¹ Betenoble,² rex cum quibusdam illorum fecit equitationem ante Jerusalem; et perrexit inde ad capellam Sancti Elyæ,³ quæ distat a Jerosolimis per tres leucas; et invenit ibi crucem quandam de ligno Domini sigillatam infra murum capellæ, quæ vocabatur⁴ crux Syriorum, et asportavit eam, et rediit ad exercitum suum.

De caravana a Ricardo rege Angliæ capta.

Capture of
the great
caravan,
June 23.

Interim redierunt ad regem Angliæ exploratores sui, et indicaverunt ei quod caravana⁵ Saladini veniebat de Babilonia in Jerusalem, ad muniendum eam et victu et armis; et credidit illis rex, et assumens secum quinque millia hominum electorum, occurrit prædictæ caravanæ, quam undecim millia paganorum conduxerunt; et occurrit eis rex in Vigilia Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, circa horam diei primam, et commisit cum eis prælium, et habuit de illis victoriam; et fere omnes interfecit, et spolia eorum possedit, et cepit tria millia camelorum, et quatuor millia equorum et mularum et mularum, exceptis interfectis. Et sic cum victoria rediit rex ad Betenoble, unde recesserat, et ex spoliis interfectorum dedit militibus exercitus.

Richard
proposes to
besiege
Jerusalem.

Et habito colloquio cum duce Burgundiæ et Francis, obtulit se juraturum, quod ipse Jerosolimam iret, et obsideret eam, et inde non recederet, quamdiu haberet unum runcinum ad manducandum, donec capta fuisset

¹ usque] om. B. D.; ad, ins. B. D. G. I.

² Betenoble] Richard marched from Ascalon, June 7. he spent June 8 at Blancheguard: June 9, he marched to Latroon: June 10 to Beit Nuba; where he stayed until July 3. On the 4th the retreat began. *Itin.*, 362-397.

³ Elyæ] Helyæ, B. I.; Helyæ, D. This event took place June 22. *Itin. R. R.*, 377.

⁴ vocabatur] vocatur, B. D. I.

⁵ caravana] cavarna, D. I. As to the date of this adventure see *Itin. R. R.*, p. 383, note 1.

civitas; et petiit ut Franci, et omnis exercitus, illud idem sacramentum fecissent. Dux autem Burgundiae et Franci responderunt ei, quod sacramentum non facerent, neque in terra illa diutius remanerent; sed recederent a terra illa quam citius possent, sicut praeceperat illis rex Franciae dominus illorum. Et sic per discordiam recesserunt a rege, et redierunt usque Accon, et rex secutus¹ est eos.

A. D. 1192.
June.
The French refuse, and the army returns to Acre. (July 4.)

Et Saladinus statim descendit de montibus, et obsedit Jopen² quam rex Angliae tradiderat Alberico de Rains³ in custodia, et cum ipse eandem defendere nequiverisset, tradidit Saladino pro licentia abeundi cum vita et membris: qui cum a Saladino recepisset sagittam electam in signum pacis suae, et cum audivisset adventum regis Angliae, regressus est ad Saladinum, et reddidit ei sagittam suam, et renunciavit paci suae; et Saladinus statim cepit eum, et captivavit, et villam cepit totam, excepta munitione castris, in qua pauci receperunt se, et mandaverunt regi Angliae eventum rei. Qui statim tradidit exercitum suum equestrem comiti Henrico de Campania, ad conducendum per terram; et ipse rex cum septem galeis tantum perrexit per mare; et in die tertia venit ad Jopen Sabbato, mane,⁴ post festum Sancti Petri ad Vincula; et intravit castellum, et locutus est cum suis, docens eos quomodo sequerentur eum. Deinde exivit ille⁵ et pauci cum illo, et ex improvise fecit impetum in exercitum Saladini, et exclamans signum suum, fortiter percussit eos, et ejecit eos a civitate, et multos eorum interfecit in ore gladii, et civitatem illam liberavit de manibus eorum.

Saladin besieges Joppa, and compels the garrison to capitulate.

Richard comes to the rescue (Aug. 1), and enters the castle.

He delivers the city.

¹ *secutus*] The attack on Jerusalem was given up in consequence of the desertion of the French, on the 4th of July: Richard himself returned to Acre on the 26th.

² *Jopen*] Joppen, B. Saladin be-

sieged Joppa on the 26th of July. *Itin.*, 401.

³ *Rains*] Reins, D.; Renis, I.

⁴ *Sabbato, mane*] Really on the Feast of S. Peter ad Vincula, Aug. 1. *Itin.*, 406, 407.

⁵ *ille*] om. B. D. I.

A D. 1192.
August.
Challenge of
Saladin.

Post triduum¹ Saladinus mandavit regi, quod præliaretur cum illo in prælio campestri: et mandatum illud plurimum placuit regi. Et cum omnia hinc inde præordinata essent ad prælium campestre, venerunt ad regem de Acon quinque galeæ cum viris armatis ad succurrendum illi, et tunc noluit Saladinus bellum inire contra regem.² Interim Hugo dux Burgundiæ, et Radulfus de Cusci, et vicedominus de Pinkenni³ obierunt apud Acon, octavo die quo⁴ venerant illuc.

Death of the
duke of Bur-
gundy.

Saladin pro-
poses a truce
for three
years.

Deinde Saladinus mandavit regi Angliæ, quod ipse redderet ei omnes expensas quas fecerat in firmatione Scalonie,⁵ et daret ei, et cæteris Christianis qui in terra Jerosolimitana remanerent, treugas a Paschato proximo venturo per triennium, et pacem eis servaret usque ad præfinitum tempus, si ille redegisset Scalonam in eum statum quo ipse eam dimiserat.

De recessu Ricardi regis Angliæ de terra Salia.

September.
Richard
concludes
the truce.

Videns ergo rex Angliæ⁶ quod homines et pecunia et sanitas corporis defecerunt ei, per consilium Templariorum et totius exercitus, recepit supradicta quæ Saladinus obtulerat ei; et ipsi sacramentis pacem⁷ illam

¹ *Post triduum*] The great struggle at Joppa was on the 5th. *Itin.* 415-427.

² *regem*] In the margin of A., written in a hand of the date of the text. "Ad ejus laudem magister Gaufridus qui cognominatus est "Vin est sauf, hos versus composuit, "et aureis litteris scripsit.

"Pingitur hic auro rex auree
"laus tua tota
"Aurea materia conveniente
"nota

"Laus tua prima fuit Siculi,
"Cyprus altera, dromo

"Tertia, Carvana quarta, sup-
"prema Jope.

"Retrasi Siculi, Cyprus pes-
"sundata, mersa

"Dromo, carvana rapta, re-
"tenta Jope." Partly also

in G.

³ *Pinkenni*] Pinkeni, B. D. I.

⁴ *quo*] qua, B. I.

⁵ *Scalonie*] Asealonæ, B. D. I.

⁶ *Angliæ*] om B. D. I.

⁷ *pacem*] The truce was signed Sept. 2. Bohadin, 261.

usque præfixum tempus servandam firmaverunt. Et ex tunc rex Angliæ, traditis omnibus in manu Henrici comitis de Campania, redire in regnum suum properavit,¹ propter sinistros rumores quos audierat, tam de rege Franciæ, et de cancellario suo expulso, quam de comite Moretonii fratre suo, qui castella regni occupaverat, et totum occuparet si posset.

A D. 1192.
September.
He proposes
to return
home.

Venit itaque rex Angliæ ad Cayphas, et ægrotavit ibi, et perrexit inde Accon, et ibi intravit busciam magnam, post festum Sancti Michaelis, octavo idus Octobris, feria quinta, et infra mensem post diem illum applicuit in insula de Cuverfu, et intravit naviculam, et navigavit usque ad tres galeas, quas vidit ex opposito in Rumania, et conduxit eas usque ad Raguse producentis marcis argenti; et postea rediit ad busciam suam, et prædictæ galeæ cum eo, et ipse pacavit eos; et assumpsit secum Baldwinum advocatum Betuniæ,² et alios viginti socios, et intravit unam de prædictis galeis: et cum applicuisset prope Gazere³ apud Raguse,

He sails
from Acro,
Oct. 8; lands
at Corfu;
sails thence
to Razusa,
and lands at
Zara.

¹ *properavit*] Richard sailed Oct. 9: *Iun.* 441; Bohadin, 267. He landed at Corfu about Nov. 11: *R. Dic.*, 669.

² *Betuniæ*] *Betonix*, B.; *Betariæ*, I. Baldwin was lord of Choques, and son of Robert V., advocate of Arras. Richard had with him, according to Ralph of Coggeshall, Philip his clerk, who is probably Philip of Poicton, afterwards bishop of Durham; and Anselm his chaplain, who told the abbot of Coggeshall the story. *R. Coggesh.*, Mart. and *Dur. Ampl. Coll.*, v. 830.

³ *Gazere*] Ansbart, who has an account of the capture, places the landing at Pola (ed. Dobrowsky, p. 114), and adds that Richard pursued his journey through Friuli. W.

Newburgh places the shipwreck between Aquileia and Venice (*lib. iv.*, c. 31), in accordance with the letter of the emperor, p. 193 below. Ralph of Coggeshall agrees with Hoveden in placing the landing at Zara: but there is probably some confusion between the place for which Richard took his passage from Corfu, and the place where the storm compelled him to land. The former was unquestionably Ragusa; the latter may have been Zara, Pola, or probably some place still further north. The emperor's letter should be the best authority, and that, if construed literally, places the shipwreck west of Aquileia, which would account both for the journey through Friuli and for the conduct of the count of

A.D. 1192.
He proceeds
in disguise.

noluit indicare quod esset rex Angliæ, sed peregrini essent: et quamvis ipse barbam haberet prolixam, et capillos prolixos, et vestes et omnia cætera ad similitudinem gentis terræ illius, tamen celari non potuit, propter nimias expensas quas faciebat, contra consuetudinem illius patriæ. Et statim homines illius provincie, conjicientes illum esse regem Angliæ, proposuerunt illum capere, et Romanorum imperatori tradere, qui eum odio habuit, propter auxilium regi Tancredo factum, et propter necem Conradi marchionis, consanguinei sui.

The people
of the coun-
try suspect
him, and
inform the
emperor.

De captione Ricardi regis Angliæ.

He hurries
onto Vienna.

Quod cum regi Angliæ per quendam suorum constaret, tradidit familiam suam advocato Bitunie,¹ præcipiens ut in loco illo per quatuor dies moram fecisset, expendentes profusius quam ipse fecerat. Et ipse cum uno solo comite,² velocibus equis ascensis, sero viam carpsit, et properans die ac nocte venit prope Vieniem;³ et non longe ab ea, in quadam parva villa, ipse et comes suus hospitium ceperunt. Et dum comes regis pergeret ad emendum cibum, rex ex labore itineris fatigatus statim incubuit super lectum, et dormivit. Interim comes suus, dum intenderet concambire denarios, a quodam serviente ducis Austriæ cognitus est, et captus, et ductus ante ducem; et cum diutius celare non potuit, indicavit eis hospitium regis: et venientes invenerunt eum dormientem, et ceperunt.

where he is
recognized
and taken
prisoner by
the duke of
Austria.

Goritz, whose territory comes down nearly to the sea, on both sides of Aquæia. The distances, however, between Ragusa, Zara, and Pola are so great, that the simplest solution would be to suppose that the king touched at all three.

¹ *Bitunia*] Betunio, B.; Betunias, D.; Beturia, I.

² *uno solo comite*] Willelmo de Stagno. R. Cogges. *ut supra*, 832.

³ *Vienum*] Wenam, B. I. On S. Thomas's day, Dec. 21: R. Cogges. 832. Dec. 20: R. Dic. 668.

Advocatus vero Bituniæ, et qui cum eo erant, cum exire vellent a villa in qua rex dimiserat eos, capti sunt, et abire¹ permissi.

A.D. 1192.
December.
The advocate of Bethune released.

Interim rex Franciæ, habito colloquio² cum senescallo et proceribus Normanniæ, petiit ab eis Alesiam sororem suam, quam habebant custoditam in turre Rothomagensi; et castellum de Gysortio, et comitatum de Auca, et comitatum de Albemaria: et ostendit ei chirographum, factum inter ipsum et regem Angliæ apud Messanam. Cui proceres Normanniæ responderunt, quod ipsi nullum mandatum receperant inde a domino suo, et ideo facere noluerunt quod petebat.

The steward of Normandy refuses to surrender Gisors (January).

Deinde rex Franciæ, magno congregato exercitu, voluit Normanniam hostiliter invadere: sed primates regni sui noluerunt ei consentire, dicentes, quod dominus papa excommunicaverat omnes qui gwerram facerent in terra regis Angliæ ante reditum suum; et quod ipsi juraverant tenere ei et terræ suæ pacem, donec rediisset.³

Philip prepares to invade Normandy.

Eodem anno, in Quadragesima, archiepiscopus Eboracensis venit Londonias, per mandatum justitiariorum regis: et cum venisset ad Westmonasterium cum cruce sua, prohibitum est ei a Lundoniensi episcopo, et cæteris episcopis Angliæ, ne ipse a modo præsumeret crucem suam portare in Cantuariensi diocesi. Et contumaciter respondit eis, quod propter illos non dimitteret: tamen, suorum fretus consilio, abscondit eam a facie populi, ne tumultus fieret in clero. Lundoniensis vero episcopus, illum pro excommunicato habens propter transgressionem illam, suspendit Novum Templum a Divini celebratione officii, et a sonitu campanarum, ubi prædictus Eboracensis archiepiscopus fuerat hospitatus; unde oportebat illum a civitate exire. Sed antequam exiret, Alienor regina, et Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et ipse, et omnes magnates regni convenerunt in unum, et juraverunt fidelitatem et fidele servitium Ricardo regi Angliæ, et hæredi suo, contra omnes homines.

March.
The archbishop of York comes to Westminster with his cross erect in defiance of the bishops of the province of Canterbury.

The new Temple suspended.

Oaths of fealty taken to Richard.

¹ *abire*] non sunt, ins. G., and in a modern hand, D.

² *colloquio*] On the Octave of S. Hilary, Jan. 20. Benedict.

³ *rediisset*] Hoveden is here singularly reticent as to John's trans-

actions with Philip, which are described by Benedict, il. 236; and with some important additions by Richard of Devizes, pp. 56, 57. See below, p. 203, note 2.

Benedict, 36.

Benedict, 38.

Benedict, 37.

A D 1192. **In eadem Quadragesima Eliensis episcopus, cancellarius,** Benedict. II. 239.
March. The chancellor for lands at Dover. **rediit in Angliam, per mandatum comitis Moretonii, et mansit per aliquot dies in castello Doroberniæ, non ausus ulterius procedere. Comes autem Moretonii, pro quingentis libris¹ argenti, quas cancellarius promiserat ei pro restitutione officii sui, modis omnibus tentavit inducere principes regni, ut recepissent cancellarium in pristinum statum: et noluerunt, sed mandaverunt cancellario, quod nisi ipse celerius a regno recederet, caperent illum. Quo audito, cancellarius, non ausus moram facere in Anglia contra voluntatem principum, transfretavit in Cœna Domini.**

John fails to persuade the barons to receive him.
He leaves sea II. April 2.
The nuns of Clemen-thorpe refuse to be subject to Godstow. **Eodem anno, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus dedit, et carta sua confirmavit abbatiæ de Godestawe,² prioratum Sancti Clementis in Eboraco; sed moniales Sancti Clementis, quæ semper ab ipsis ecclesiis suæ fundamentis liberæ existerant, noluerunt obedire abbatiæ de Godestawe, facta appellatione ad dominum papam pro libertatibus ecclesiæ.** Benedict. II. 240.

Interim clerici Rothomagensis archiepiscopi, quos ipse Romanam miserat contra cancellarium, in hac forma scripserunt illi; Benedict. II. 241.

Epistola clericorum Walteri Rothomagensis archiepiscopi ad ipsum.³

Report of the agents of the archbishop of Rouen, at Rome. **“Waltero Dei gratia Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, carissimo domino et patri, clerici sui, salutem. Omittimus pericula et labores quos in via sapius nos oportuit sustinere, et quod frequenter insidiis declinatis, tandem incidimus in latrones, bonisque omnibus præter quosdam equos et litteras spoliati, sine omni viatico venimus in urbem sumptuosam,**

¹ *quingentis libris*] quingenta milia marcarum, *Benedict.*; which is of course impossible, and leads to the conclusion that the *milia*, *M.*, is a clerical error. *R.* Devizes mentions 500*l.* as the fine imposed on the chancellor.

² *Godestawe*] *Godistawe*, *D.*; *Godestatou*, *G.*; *Godestowe*, *B. I.*

³ This letter is omitted in MSS. *B. D. I.*, which have, however, the preceding words, *in hac forma scripserunt illi*, showing that they were transcribed from a more perfect copy. These MSS. omit all that follows down to p. 193.

Benedict,
ii. 241.

“ tertio idus Februarii, apud Beati Petri ecclesiam curia
 “ commorante.¹ Ibiq; invenimus cancellarii clericos plurima
 “ jactantes, et multa, ut videbatur, prosperitate gaudentes.
 “ Nam plenæ legationis officio impetrato, jam sumpsit dominus
 “ papa, et cardinalium quidam, Eliensi episcopo, cum sub-
 “ scriptione ‘legati,’ suas epistolas dirigebant, et principali-
 “ bus legationis bullatis litteris inde nondum traditis, sese
 “ recessui imminenti prædicti nuncii præcingebant. Etenim
 “ dominum papam ex toto pronum invenimus, ut partes can-
 “ cellarii tueretur; et qui domino papæ familiariter assident,
 “ et adherent, ipsius negotia tanquam propria promovebant.
 “ Verum, per Dei gratiam, ad adventum nostri instantiam,
 “ litteræ sunt retentæ, quibusdam, qui devotius negotia nostra
 “ respiciunt, sæpe et multum dicentibus non fuisse hæcenus
 “ adeo necessariam vestrorum præsentiam nunciorum. Porro
 “ quando potuimus, audiendi copia impetrata, coram domino
 “ papa et cardinalibus universis litteras proposuimus, a vobis
 “ et episcopis et prælatis et justitiariis Angliæ destinatas,
 “ eum diligentia digna cætera adnectentes, que intentioni
 “ vestræ credidimus expedire. Et cum nuncii Eliensis atten-
 “ tassent objicere tam responsionibus quam objectis, dominus
 “ papa, in vestri depressione negotii, plurima indignanter et
 “ cum amaritudine proponebat, multiplicatis inculcans sermo-
 “ nibus, et affirmans: ‘Scimus quod illustris rex Anglorum
 “ domino Eliensi regni sui totius administrationem reliquit,
 “ nec aliquem ei parem vel majorem adhibuit; litteras domini
 “ regis super eo vidimus; revocatorias aut contrarias non
 “ vidimus nec videmus, nec earum transcriptum sigillis sup-
 “ positis et autentice consignatum. Sed multe venerabiles
 “ personæ scribunt contra dominum cancellarium: et nos pro
 “ domino cancellario multarum recepimus venerabilium lit-
 “ terarum personarum. Sed et litteræ, quas vos portatis,
 “ eorum sunt qui dominum cancellarium expulerunt; nec
 “ miramur admodum, si pro se scribere videantur. Scimus
 “ quia dominus rex nulli unquam mortalium tantam dilec-
 “ tionem exhibuit, vel honorem impendit, quantum domino
 “ Eliensi. Ipsam fecit non modo episcopum venerande
 “ sedis et ditissimæ Eliensis, sed et cancellarium suum; sed
 “ et regnum Angliæ universum ejus solius custodiæ com-
 “ mendavit. Sed nec omnibus istis contentus esse potuit
 “ dominus rex; sed et pro legationis officio domino cancella-

A. D. 1192.
February.
They arrived
at Rome
Feb. 11.

The pope
had pro-
posed to
renew the
bishop of
Ely's lega-
tion, but the
letters are
kept back.

The writers
have had an
audience of
the pope.

who made a
speech in
favour of the
bishop of
Ely.

Benedict,
ii. 242

¹ commorante] The court was at the Lateran from the middle of February to May Jaffé, 891

A D 1162.
February.
Speech of
the pope in
favor of
the bishop
of Ely.

“rio committendo, et bonæ recordationis domino Clementi, Benedict.
“et nobis etiam supplicavit. Vide quam tenere amabat eum; II. 245.
“quem unquam hominum tantum diligit, vel dilexit? Ad
“preces domini regis, et instantiam multam, præsentem
“legationem indulimus domino Eliensi. Ab homine, quem
“dilexerat, regem tam subito tantam gratiam revocasse vix
“possumus credere, nisi literas ejus et sigillum regium
“videremus. Et quod domino regi dedimus, puta legationem
“domini Eliensis, sine falsitatis nota nec suspendere possumus
“nec auferre. Sed et omnes Angliani episcopi, pro
“legationis officio confirmando, nobis proprias literas trans-
“miserunt; et nobis unanimiter supplicantes, pro ipso can-
“cellario commendationem plurimam porrexerunt. Et modo Benedict.
“[quod] contrarium postulatur ab eis, suæ potius levitati im- II. 243.
“putandum videtur. Sed et dominus vester, Rothomagensis
“archiepiscopus, nobis pro domino Eliensi plenas devotionis
“litteras destinavit, cum pro ipso scripsisset, dum prospera
“uteretur: contra ipsum exilii calamitate oppressum eos
“grave est exaudiri, cum contra eos scriptum sit:

“Cum fueris felix, multos numerabis amicos:
“Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

Ovid.
Tristia,
12. 5.

“Porro cum pristina felicitate gauderet, et legationis vice
“apud vos fungeretur, quæ unquam ecclesia, quod monas-
“terium, quæ persona, quis vulgaris aut nobilis, super ero-
“gationibus domini Eliensis, vel ecclesiarum gravamine,
“verbum miserat ad nos aut querelam? Omnes applaudebant
“felici, omnes murmurant in oppressum. Amici fortunæ
“fuerant, cum fortunæ gratia recedentes.”

Arguments
founded on
the king's
petition for
the arch-
bishop to
have the
office of
legate in
Normandy.

“Hæc quidem et multa alia, a domino papa opposita, non
“esse non poterant magni ponderis et momenti, ut ab eo
“proposita qui superiore non habet, et a pontifice summo
“et iudice, et cujus voluntati nemo est qui resistat. Sed et
“multum contra nos quibusdam facere videbatur, quod do-
“minus rex Angliæ, in reversione vestra, supplicavit pro
“vobis, ut in Normanniæ partibus, et cæteris transmarinis,
“vobis legatio transferretur. Unde prima facie nemini
“videbatur, quod regiæ esset voluntatis, vos in Angliæ par-
“tibus administrationem habere, et legationis officium in
“Normannia exercere: cum et Angliæ tutelam gerere, et
“legationis officium in Normannia exercere, uni et eidem
“homini, nec facile nec promptum esse videbatur. Sed et
“forma regiæ voluntatis, quæ pro vobis fuerat a rege can-
“cellario destinata, senescallo Normanniæ a rege dicebatur
“transmissa, ut et ipse in Normanniæ partibus vestro consilio
“fungeretur.

Benedict,
ii. 243.

“ Ad quæ et similia cum responsiones idoneas haberemus, tamen domini papæ favor et adjutorium in partem contrariam nitebantur. Verumtamen tandem dubitare coactus, tum ad instantiam nostram, tum cardinalium aliquorum, quos in nostræ partis gratiam traxeramus, cardinalibus omnibus congregatis in unum, singulorum consilia requisivit: nostroque negotio diu suspensis deliberationibus agitato, suam dominus papa sedens pro tribunali dedit sententiam sub hac forma: puta, ut breviter et summatim procedamus; et cancellarium a vestra et domini Rothomagensis decani¹ denunciatione absolvit; et vice mutata, sententiam Eliensis episcopi, quam occasione quarundam probabilium litterarum in vos tulerat, et decanum, et alios quosdam cancellario odiosos, nullam fuisse publice judicavit.

Benedict,
ii. 244.

“ Porro dominus papa, in sua procedens sententia, super injuria archiepiscopo Eboracensi illata, sine forma præscripta, cancellario purgationem indixit; legationem autem nec ejus executionem ademit, cum jam ipsam ad precum regiarum instantiam contulisset, et vobis etiam supplicantibus, cum pontificibus Angliæ universis: eam tamen legationem protulit exsequendam sub hac exceptione adjecta, quod ipse interdictum vel suspensionis vel excommunicationis sententiam proferendi, in vos vel in decanum Rothomagensem, vel episcopos Angliæ, vel justitiosos vel magnates, nullam habeat potestatem. Cujus interpretationem sententiæ vos habituros confidimus utiliorem, verborum faciem vobis in proximo, in ipsius papæ litteris transmissuros. Sententiæ vero prænominatæ adjecit, quod consilio cardinalium convocato, nostroque adhibito, et nunciorum domini Eliensis, personas venerabiles in vestris partibus providebit, quibus mediantibus inter vos et dominum cancellarium, possit pax et concordia reformari, saltem quantum ad mutuum rancorem animi remittendum. In hujus autem deliberationis tractatu, et prædictæ forma sententiæ, eas pro certo credimus ex toto litteras revocandas; quæ cum essent episcopis totius Angliæ destinatæ, tamen occasione ipsarum, idem cancellarius vos cum multis aliis excommunicationis vinculo denunciavit astrictos. Super quam tamen denunciationem, cum nos domino papæ ad mandatum domini Rothomagensis decani proposuimus querelam palam in consistorio coram cardinalibus universis et populo, lectis eisdem litteris et inspectis; quantum protestatus est voce coram omnibus ex-

A.D. 1192.
February.
The pope annuls the sentences of excommunication on both sides.

He does not withdraw the legatine commission from the bishop of Ely, but restrains his power of excommunication.

He will send mediators.

He disowns the letters published by the bishop of Ely.

¹ *decani*] John of Coutances, dean of Rouen.

A.D. 1192. "altata quod nunquam prædictæ litteræ a conscientia ejus
February. "originem habuerunt, cœtu cardinalium de se id idem cum ad-
"miratione plurima proclamante! Et cum nuncii Eliensis
"episcopi papæ instantissime reclamarent, nemini aurem
"propitiam vel fausticem impendit. Valet." Benedict,
ii. 244.

The bishop
of Ely's
agent's re-
monstrance,
and compels
the pope to
confess that
he autho-
rized the
letters.

In nocte sequenti venerunt nuncii Eliensis episcopi ad domi-
num papam, et increpantes eum quod ita in conspectu
universorum cardinalium protestabatur, quod confirma-
tio sententiæ quam cancellarius dederat in archiepiscopum
Rothomagensem et complices suos, qui in dejectione illius
unanimis extiterunt, non manasset a conscientia sua; et Benedict
ii. 245.
quesierunt ut pro amore Dei, et honore Romanæ ecclesiæ,
reduceret ad memoriam servitia quæ cancellarius ei et
Romano ecclesiæ devote exhibuit: et ut ipse, per testi-
monium veritatis, opprobrium cancellarii et suorum tol-
leret, ne inimici illorum de injusta condemnatione sua gra-
tularentur. His et aliis hujusmodi exhortationibus dominus
papa exhortatus, in crastino sedens pro tribunali, coram
cardinalibus et omni populo confessus est, quod litteræ
illæ, quas die præcedenti devoverat, præcepto illius
factæ fuerant, et in Angliam missæ, ad confirmandam
sententiam excommunicationis, quam cancellarius dederat in
archiepiscopum Rothomagensem et complices suos, qui eum
a regno deiecerant.

Præterea¹ iidem clerici Rothomagensis archiepiscopi
mandaverunt ei, quod Romæ locuti fuerunt per quatuor

¹ Præterea] The following para-
graph is very puzzling; and, as it is
not found in Benedict, may be alto-
gether misplaced. Andrew of Cha-
vigni was in Palestine at this time,
with the king. *Itin. R. R.*, 302,
355, 405, &c. Either there must
have been two persons of the name,
which is improbable, or Andrew
may have been sent on an occasional
mission from Rome, which is equally
so; or the chronicler has misplaced
this part of his information, having
been betrayed by his love of massing
the incidents, instead of taking them
chronologically. Richard moreover,

as appears from the *Itinerarium*, did
not hear of the deposition of the
chancellor before the close of Easter,
1192, when the prior of Hereford
brought to him, at Acre, the letters
of William. The confusion of the
events of 1191 and 1192 is very
great. It almost looks as if the
chroniclers were appalled by the
news of Richard's capture, and gave
dates for nothing else. In this case
moreover it seems to illustrate the
transmission of the pen from the
hand of the previous historian to
that of Hoveden.

dies cum Hugone de Gurnai, et cum Willelmo de Pessi, et Dragone de Trubleville, et cum multis aliis, quos rex Angliæ in terram suam destinavit: et quod quindecim diebus post venit Andreas de Chavenneio, narrans, quod multum placuit domino regi, quod cancellarius fuit amotus; sed etiam multum displicuit ei quod communia Londoniæ et totum regnum esset juratum comiti Johanni. Et quæsivit rex ut dominus papa cassaret omnes donationes reddituum ecclesiasticorum quas cancellarius post recessum regis fecerat: sed dominus papa noluit ita absolute illas donationes cassare, sed communiter cassavit omnes donationes reddituum ecclesiasticorum ad regem pertinentium, a quocunque factæ fuerint, et super hoc constituit dominus papa Lincolniensem et Lundoniensem episcopos iudices. Concessis autem litteris clericis domini Rothomagensis archiepiscopi, accesserunt ad dominum papam, et dixerunt ei de cancellario: "Ecce quomodo amabat eum."

A.D. 1192.
February.
Reports of the archbishop's agents at Rome, of Richard's approval of the deposition of Longchamp.

De adventu cardinalium in Normanniam.

¹Eodem anno² dominus papa misit a latere suo duos cardinales, scilicet, Octovianum Hostiensem episcopum, et Jordanum de Fossa Nova, ad dirimendam litem quæ erat inter cancellarium et Rothomagensem archiepiscopum. Qui cum venissent in Normanniam usque ad Gysorcium, clausa est eis janua, et intrare non potuerunt. Et cum cognovissent hoc factum fuisse per Willelmum filium Radulfi, senescallum Normanniæ, illum excommunicaverunt, et omnes complices suos et fautores, et consiliarios et auctores prædictæ præsumptionis: et totam Normanniam sub interdicto posuerunt. Quod cum nunciatum esset in Anglia, regina Alienor et Rothomagensis archiepiscopus miserunt ad eos Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum, ut relaxarent sententiam quam dederant in senescallum Normanniæ, et in ipsam Norman-

Arrival of the legates at Gisors.

They excommunicate the Steward, and put Normandy under interdict.

¹ This is the last paragraph which Hoveden has in common with Benedict.

² Eodem anno] Here MSS. B. D. I. resume. A. has the marginal note *Scribe.*

Benedict, ii. 246.

Benedict, ii. 247.

A.D. 1182.
The bishop
of Durham
mediates.

niam. Primo vero invenit eos Dunelmensis episcopus apud Parisius, deinde secutus est eos usque Vizeliacum; sed nullo modo relaxare sententiam suam voluerunt, nisi recepti fuissent in Normannia. Sed dominus papa interdictum Normanniæ relaxavit, et relaxari fecit a legatus, nec tamen intraverunt Normanniam.

Benedict,
ii. 247, 249,
250.

Rebellion in
Gascony,
during the
absences of
the steward.

Eodem anno, dum senescallus Gasconiæ ægrotaret, comes Petragoriensis,¹ et vicecomes de Marchia, et fere omnes barones Gasconiæ, terras regis Angliæ vastare cœperunt.

On his re-
covery he
seizes the
castles of
Perward and
la Marche.

Senescallus vero nec pacem nec treugas interim habere potuit, licet id pluries et perpluries requisisset. Convalescens tandem, invasit castra et munitiones prædicti comitis, et ea omnia debellavit et cepit, quedam ad opus regis muniendo, quedam funditus subvertendo. Similiter omnia castra prædicti vicecomitis cepit, et totum comitatum illius in perpetuum dominationi regis mancipavit.

He is suc-
ceeded by
the son of
the king of
Navarre.

Postmodum filius regis Navarræ² affuit illi in auxilium cum octingentis militibus; et terram comitis Tolosæ pariter ingressi sunt, multaque castra circa Tolosam ceperunt, et capta ad opus domini regis munierunt; et multas alias munitiones funditus subverterunt; et usque ad portas Tolosæ progressi sunt, et fere sub ipsis muris pernoverunt.

December.
Reports of
the return-
ing pilgrims,
of Richard's
progress
homowards.

Eodem anno multi peregrini, qui recesserunt cum rege de terra Suliæ, redierunt ante Natale Domini in Angliam, sperantes se invenisse regem in Anglia, et interrogati de rege, ubi esset, responderunt: "Nescimus; sed navem ejus, quam intraverat, vidimus applicatam apud Brundisium in Appulia."

A.D. 1193.
March.
Richard is
given up to
the emperor.

Interim Limpoldus dux Austriæ, qui regem Angliæ ceperat, tradidit eum Henrico Romanorum imperatori. Unde idem imperator in hac forma scripsit Philippo regi Francorum;

¹ comes Petragoriensis] Helias V.,
1166-1204.

² filius regis Navarræ] Sancho,

son of Sancho VI.; he succeeded his
father in 1194, and is the hero of the
story told above, p. 90.

Epistola Henrici Romanorum imperatoris ad Philippum regem Franciæ de captione Ricardi regis Angliæ.¹

A. D. 1192.
Dec. 28.

“ Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et semper
 “ Augustus, dilecto et speciali amico suo Philippo, illustri
 “ Francorum regi, salutem, et sinceram dilectionis affectum.
 “ Quoniam imperatoria consuetudo non dubitat regalem magni-
 “ ficentiam tuam lætiorem effici de universis quibus omnipo-
 “ tentia Creatoris nostri nos ipsos et Romanum imperium
 “ honoraverit et exaltaverit; nobilitati tuæ præsentium tenore
 “ declarare duximus, quod inimicus imperii nostri, et tur-
 “ bator regni tui, rex Angliæ, cum esset in transeundo
 “ mare, ad partes suas reversurus, accidit ut ventus, rupta
 “ navi sua in qua ipse erat, duceret eam versus partes His-
 “ triæ, ad locum qui est inter Aquileiam et Venetias,² ubi
 “ ipse rex Dei permissione passus naufragium, cum paucis
 “ evasit. Quidam itaque fidelis noster comes Mainardus de
 “ Gorzto,³ et populus regionis illius, audito quod in terra
 “ erat, et considerato diligentius qualem nominatus rex, in
 “ terra promissionis, prodicionem et traditionem et perdi-
 “ tionis suæ cumulum exercuerat, insecuti sunt, intendentes
 “ eum captivare. Ipso autem rege in fugam converso cepe-
 “ runt de nocte octo milites. Postmodum processit rex ad
 “ burgum in archiepiscopatu Salzeburgensi, qui vocatur Fri-
 “ sorum,⁴ ubi Fridericus de Betesowe, rege cum tribus tantum
 “ versus Austriam properante nocte, sex milites de suis cepit.
 “ Dilectus autem consanguineus noster Limpoldus, dux Aus-
 “ triæ, observata strata, impositis ubique custodibus, sæpe-
 “ dictam regem juxta Wenam, in villa viciniore, in domo de-
 “ specta captivavit. Cum itaque in nostra nunc habeatur
 “ potestate, et ipse semper tuæ molestiæ et turbationibus
 “ operam præstitorit; ea, quæ præmisimus, nobilitati tuæ insi-
 “ nuare curavimus, scientes ea dilectioni tuæ beneplacita

Henry VI. writes to Philip the news of the capture of Richard.

He was shipwrecked between Aquileia and Venice;

pursued by Mainard of Goritz;

escaped capture at Frisach;

but was taken near Vienna.

Philip will be pleased with the news.

¹ An abstract of this letter is given by Rigord, in nearly the same words (ed Pithou, p. 193).

² *inter Aquileiam et Venetias*] See note 3, p. 186, above.

³ *Mainardus de Gorzto*] Gorze, D. G. Mainhard II., count of Goritz, conjointly with his brother Engelbert, from about 1186 to 1223 or later. These counts were advocates of the

church of Cividale or Civitas Austriæ, and had great power in Aquileia itself. Mainhard III. was the person who proposed Rudolf of Hapsburg as king of the Romans, and afterwards became count of Tyrol.

⁴ *Frisorum*] Frisarum, W. Newb. Frisach in Carinthia, north of Klagenfurt: it was a detached property of the see of Salzburg.

A. D. 1192.
Dec. 28.

“ existere, et animo tuo uberrimam importare lætitiã. Datum
“ apud Rithiencie,¹ v^{to} kalendas Januarii.

A. D. 1193.
February.

The arch-
bishop of
Rouen
writes to the
bishop of
Darham.

His itaque per Angliã publicatis de captione regis
Angliæ rumoribus, Walterus Rothomagensis archi-
episcopus in hac forma scripsit Hugoni Dunelmensi
episcopo ;

Epistola Walteri Rothomagensis archiepiscopi ad Dunelmensem episcopum de captione Ricardi regis.²

The king's
fate is now
known.

“ Venerabili in Christo fratri, et amico carissimo, Hugoni
“ Dei gratia Dunelmensi episcopo, Walterus eadem gratia
“ Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, salutem in vero Salutari.
“ Super adventu regio rumoribus variis ventilatis, tandem,
“ quia veritas latere non potuit, nobis omnia sunt aperta.
“ Verum in adversis et prosperis esse æquanimis nos oportet :
“ Dei enim non possumus avertere voluntatem ; et cum
“ Ejus judicia sint occulta, eventus rerum fortuitos Ejus misericordiam
“ et providentiæ commendamus. In mœrore animi
“ nostri cogimur profiteri, de domino nostro rege alter accidisse,
“ quam ejus regno et universis fidelibus expediret :
“ et si ejus merita plenius intuemur, is casus ejus operibus
“ nullatenus deberetur. Qui enim ad Dei gloriam patrimonium
“ universum exhausit, et bellorum fortunæ suorum et suum
“ sanguinem indifferenter commisit, in omnibus viis suis protectionem
“ Dei merebatur. Verum adversitas quæ bonis
“ votis objicitur, probatio virtutis est, non indicium reprobationis.
“ Et quid plura ? loqui compellimur, quod nollemus. Imperatoris
“ Alemannorum litterarum transcriptum vobis ducimus transmittendum,
“ quas de domini nostri regis Angliæ captione ad regem Francorum
“ destinavit, presenti pagina nostra involutum. Vobis autem non est
“ opus lacrymis, sed virtute : quoniam fortunæ aggressibus non est
“ planetibus occurrendum, sed, dissimulato dolore, probitatis
“ experientiæ intendendum. Forsitan ad vesperum demora-

He transmits a copy of the emperor's letter to king Philip. This is a time for action.

¹ *Rithiencie*] Rithientia, I. Henry was at Merseburg on the 8th of December (Bohmer, *Regesta Regum*, &c, p. 149) and nothing seems to be known of his movements until we find him at Speyer, in March 1193. The identification of *Rithiencie* has been scarcely attempted.

Bohmer simply queries it. William of Newburgh, however, read it *Renhensa* (lib. iv. c. 32), and it is probably Rense or Rhense, the well known rendezvous of the electoral body, between Coblenz and Mentz.

² This letter is omitted in MSS. B. D. I.

Ps. xxx. 5.

“ bitur fletus, et nos ad matutinum lætitia visitabit. Et quo-
 “ niam spei nostræ maxima pars post Dei misericordiam in
 “ sinu vestro reponitur; lacrymantibus intimis, et toto corde
 “ deprecamur supplices et devoti, et quasi carissimi, postu-
 “ lantes, quatenus in negotio quod domino nostro regi, supra
 “ opinionem arduum, incumbit, vestræ diligentiae partes et
 “ industriæ totis conatibus impendatis, et consilium vestrum,
 “ quod totis visceribus exoptamus, nullius recordatione an-
 “ gustiæ, nullius adversitatis prospectu, nulla occasione, nulla
 “ temporalium aut felicitatis cautela, nobis et domino nostro,
 “ immo vobis potius, denegetis. Et quoniam præsentis animus,
 “ quam absentis plenius intimatur; et in personarum præsentia
 “ consilium præsentis articuli copiosius elucescit, et salubrio-
 “ rem Dominus inde sortietur effectum; idcirco nos a vobis
 “ affectione præacta lacrymabiliter postulamus, ut omnis diffi-
 “ cultatis exceptione postposita, die Dominica ante *Lætare*
 “ *Jerusalem*, apud Oxenforde nobis et aliis domini regis fide-
 “ libus occurratis. Præsens enim negotium instantiam eam
 “ desiderat, ut omnis excusatio delitescat, et omnem dilec-
 “ tionem domino regi debitam, in casu quem loquimur, proba-
 “ tionem credimus habituram. Dominum autem Batoniensem¹
 “ noveritis de domino nostro rege quantocius liberando cum
 “ domino imperatore jam habuisse tractatum. Omnem enim
 “ impendit laborem et operam, ut ei præstet obsequium, et
 “ regiæ debitum reverentiæ, et honori gratum, et utile ad præ-
 “ sens, sicut et alias, plenum exhibeat famulatum; sicut ab eis
 “ recepimus, qui interfuerunt colloquio, quod de nostro domino
 “ liberando cum domino principe dominus Batoniensis ha-
 “ bebat. Et quoniam universis eventibus Divinum est a Deo
 “ auxilium implorandum, rogamus, quatenus in universa ves-
 “ tra diocesi pro ipso preces apud Altissimum faciatis effundi,
 “ ‘ Plurimum enim valet deprecatio justis assidua;’ et inoppor-
 “ tuna mulier in Evangelio meruit exaudiri, et, sicut ibi dici-
 “ tur, Christus filium suscitavit, quia multæ pro eo lacrymæ
 “ fundebantur. Valete.”

A.D. 1193.
February.

He begs the
bishop to
attend a
consultation
at Oxford on
the third
Sunday
in Lent,
Feb. 28.

The bishop
of Bath is
treating
with the
emperor for
the king's
release.

He begs that
prayers may
be offered in
the diocese
of Durham
for it.

S. James v.
16.

¹ *Batoniensem*] Savaric, bishop of Bath, was consecrated in September 1192. R. de Dic. 668. He claimed relationship with the emperor, who afterwards made him chancellor of Burgundy, but it is not known by what line the connexion existed. On Savaric's family, see a

note in *Epp. Cant.* p. lxxxvii. The mission to Germany was no doubt confided to him on account of this connexion. This disproves Hoveden's statement lower down, p. 221, that Savaric received the bishopric from Richard during his captivity.

A. D. 1193
March.

De nunciis missis per justitios Angliæ ad quærendum Ricardum regem Angliæ captum.

The abbots of Boxley and Robertabridge, sent to seek the king, find him shortly before Palm Sunday, March 21.

He complains to them of the conduct of his brother John

Audita¹ itaque regis captione, Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri domini regis justitii, miserunt abbatem de Boxeleia,² et abbatem de Ponte Roberti in Alemanniam, ad quærendum regem Angliæ. Qui cum totam Alemanniam peragrassent, et regem non invenissent, Baveriam ingressi sunt, et obviaverunt regi in villa quæ dicitur Oxeser,³ ubi ducebatur ad imperatorem, habiturus cum eo colloquium in die Palmarum. Et comperto quod prædicti abbates venissent de Angliâ, rex præbuit se illis hilarem et affabilem, quærens de statu regni sui, et de fidelitate hominum suorum, et de salute et prosperitate regis Scotiæ, in cujus fide fiducialius innitebatur. Ipsi vero, quæ audierant et viderant, testificati sunt. Conferentibus itaque illis ad invicem, conquestus est rex super prodicione Johannis fratris sui, comitis Moretonii, cui tot beneficia et honores contulerat immensos; qui se regi Franciæ contra eum dederat, et rupto fraternitatis fœdere, fœdus cum morte inierat, et pactum cum inferno. Super hoc itaque rex valde contristatus subito in vocem consolationis erupit, dicens; "Johannes frater meus non est homo qui sibi vi terram subjiciat, si fuerit qui vim ejus vi saltem tenui repellat."

Is xxviii.
15.

¹ *Audita*] Here B. D. I. resume. Scribe, A. in margin.

² *Boxeleia*] Boxleia, D. I. Boxeleya, B. Robert abbot of Boxley, and W. abbot of Robertabridge, are associated in several transactions relative to Canterbury in 1198 (*Epp. Cant.* 423, 459, 511); but very little is known of either of them.

³ *Oxeser*] Oxesforde, G. Leopold had imprisoned Richard at Tyernstein (Durrenstein) on the Danube (Ansb. 114). The agreement for the

surrender of the king to Henry was made at Wurtzburg, Feb. 14, 1193 (*Ib.* 119). A copy of it will be found in the appendix to the preface of this volume, p. cxli. Richard was brought to Speyer, (the Oxeser of the text is perhaps Ochsenfurt, on the Main, near Wurtzburg,) on Palm Sunday; and on the Tuesday after was surrendered to the emperor, March 23 (R. de D. c. 668). From Speyer Richard writes on the 26th to Canterbury for money (*Epp. Cant.* 362).

In itinere autem per tres dies, usque dum ad imperatorem pervenisset, quomodo se habuerit strenue, eleganter, prudenter, admirati¹ sunt universi, judicantes illum dignum imperatoria celsitudine, qui ita novit animo imperare, et fortunæ biformes eventus uniformi constantia superare.

A.D. 1193.
March 19-21.
Dignified
behaviour of
Richard.

Die vero constituto, habito colloquio per internuncios cum imperatore, non potuerunt illo die confœderari, eo quod imperator multa petierat, quibus nec etiam pro mortis periculo rex consentiendum judicavit.

March 21.
He fails to
satisfy the
emperor.

In crastino autem, omnibus desperantibus, cum successu læta successit consolatio. Nam imperatore regem impetente in multis, et objiciente quam plurima, tum de proditione terræ Suliaë, tum de morte Marchionis, tum de quibusdam conventionibus ad invicem habitis, et non observatis; rex libere, et constanter, et ita intrepide respondit, quod non solum eum imperator gratia vel venia dignum, sed etiam laude judicavit. Nam inclinantem se regem erexit, et suscepit in osculo pacis, et confœderavit eum sibi; et ampliando honoribus et auxiliis, circumstante populo, et in lacrymas ruente præ gaudio, promisit, asserens quod confœderaret regem Angliæ regi Franciæ. Et tunc quasi pro mercede rex Angliæ centum millia marcarum, mediante duce Austriæ, pro sua liberatione promisit imperatori. Promisitque imperator quod, si per operam ejus rex Angliæ et rex Franciæ non possent confœderari, ipse regem Angliæ ad propria remitteret sine pecunia.

March 22.
He argues
his case be-
fore the
emperor, and
convinces
him.

He promises
a ransom
of 100,000
marks: the
emperor is
to make
peace be-
tween him
and Philip.

Eodem anno² Cœlestinus papa, considerans quod rex Franciæ et comes Moretonii, frater regis Angliæ, guerram faciebant contra regem Angliæ, in hac forma scripsit episcopis Angliæ;

The pope
writes to the
bishops.

¹ *admirati*] mirati, B. D. I.

² *Eodem anno Angliæ*]

omitted in B. D. I., with the following letter.

*Epistola Cœlestini papæ ad archiepiscopos et episcopos
per Angliam constitutos.*

A. D. 1193.
Jan. 11.

The pope
reviews the
history of
the cru-
sades.

“ Cœlestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus
“ fratribus, archiepiscopis et episcopis per Angliam consti-
“ tutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Cum ad pro-
“ pulsandam injuriam populi Christiani, et communis notam
“ fidei abolendam, quam ei paganorum spurcitia in captione
“ Sanctæ Terræ, quæ Domini est hereditas nuncupata, perni-
“ ciosè ac violenter impressit; et ad emundandam etiam
“ civitatem sanctam, et sepulcrum Dominicum, ab Saraceno-
“ rum et aliorum insuper occupantium immunditiis, ac aufe-
“ rendam illam per auxilium supernæ clementiæ a potestate
“ illorum, sedes apostolica suum debitum recognoscens, per
“ diversas mundi partes nuncios sæpe a suo latere, ac com-
“ monitorias litteras destinaverit, et, in Divina confisa cle-
“ mentia, magnas illuc tendentibus impenderit indulgentias;
“ licet, ut fraternitas vestra potest perpendere, ad hæc agenda
“ per exhortationes illius viriliter ac devoto plurimi se ac-
“ cinxerint, et tot in transmarinis partibus Christi fideles
“ propter hæc sæpe fuerint congregati, ut multitudo eorum
“ oppugnantium numerum non modicum videretur excedere,
“ et animis¹ ac viribus etiam prævalere; non multum tamen
“ proficere potuit, vel his qui ex adverso contendebant obesse,
“ pro eo, sicut ex affectu datur intelligi, quod nisus et actiones
“ eorum, qui fuerant ad partes illas profecti, Domino pro parte
“ magna displicebant. Unde merito aliorum peccaminum, quia
“ non in Deo sed viribus propriis confidebant, et non erat autem
“ ipsorum oculos timor Dei, ex præconcepta superbia cor eorum
“ permissum est obscurari, ut alia insuper agerent, quæ minime
“ convenirent, Divinum contra se suis perversitatibus iudicium
“ provocantes. Verum, quia multæ sunt misericordiæ Domini,
“ Qui, etsi ad malorum pervicaciam retundendam, et subdenda
“ cervicorum hominum colla, disciplinæ manus quandoque
“ Suas medicinaliter aggravat, et ut elevet opprimit, et
“ percutit aut flagellat ut sanet; si ad Eum cum debita fuerim-
“ us humilitate reversi, et de peccatis castigati, ac de
“ observandis Creatoris de cætero studio ferventiori mandatis
“ firmum propositum assumpserimus; absque ulla poterimus
“ hæsitatione sperare, quod affluentius gratiusque nobis assistet,
“ et de inimicis nominis Christi plenam indulgebis de cælo
“ victoriam; ita quod universa quæ incurramus hucusque

¹ animis] auxiliis, Savile.

“ gravamina oblivioni tradantur, omnibus conversis retrorsum,
 “ et merita confusione ruentibus, qui oderunt Sion, et gentili-
 “ bus præsumpserunt contaminationibus maculare.

A.D. 1163.
 Jan. 11.
 Hope for the
 future.

“ Attendentibus autem, ac studio diligenti scrutantibus,
 “ quales nimis populo Israeliti, cum ex promissione memoratam
 “ supra terram intraret, Divina potestas intulerit, non erit
 “ dubitationis scrupulus, qui hujusmodi inquisitioni opponat,
 “ quare nostrum pro Deo inceptum conamen speratos non sit
 “ consecutum effectus. Dictum est enim illis, ut ab habita-
 “ torum illius terræ contagiis et spurcitiis abstinerent; et
 “ illorum vitia imitatione digna non ducerent, quæ ipsis possint
 “ accidere in ruinam; sed legem Domini firmo proposito, et
 “ omni animi et intentionis nisu servarent. Quibus itaque
 “ monitis ei devote ac humiliter obedirent, unus eorum nullo
 “ vinceret, ac decem ex illis decem millia. Quæ certiori post-
 “ modum experimento noverunt; eum pauci de ipsis magnam
 “ ex illis, infantam quasi multitudinem, trucidarent; et dum
 “ devote Divinis intenderent mandatis, non fuit civitas, vel
 “ munitio, quæ ipsorum possit evitare congressus, vel ipsorum
 “ subtrahi conamine aliquo vel consilio potestati. Quia tamen
 “ cum eorum filii, qui Dominum, ut ibi dicitur, non noverunt,
 “ ab illorum, quæ fuerant sibi legali promulgatione injuncta,
 “ temere cæpissent observatione deficere; inimici eorum ad-
 “ versus eos cuneos obstruentes suæ illos potentiæ sæpius
 “ subjugaverunt; quos denuo per Divinum sibi auxilium suble-
 “ gerunt, cum de commissis excessibus pœnitentes, ac reatum
 “ suum recognoscentes, humiliter pia sunt ad Deum devotione
 “ conversi. Satis autem indubitanter potestis agnoscere, quod
 “ cum ex subortis discordiis proventus speratæ victoriæ Chris-
 “ tianæ militiæ auferretur, causa erat simultatum et odiorum
 “ frequentius in exercitu pullulantium, quia carnem posae-
 “ rant prius brachium suum, et a Domino recesserant corda
 “ eorum. Si ergo volumus sine magno labore in adversariorum
 “ perniciem gloriosam per omnia obtinere triumphum, propter
 “ hucusque perpessa gravamina non deficiamus animo. sed
 “ requirentes cum humilitate ac cordis contritione misericor-
 “ diam Creatoris, in confusionem eorum perpetuam, insupera-
 “ bilem poterimus victoriam ex consueta superna dignationis
 “ merito benignitate sperare. Hac itaque consideratione in-
 “ ducti, universis orbis principibus in remissionem injunximus
 “ peccatorum, ut, Divini amoris et propriæ salutis intuitu,
 “ siquis adversus aliquem concepit qualibet occasione rancorem,
 “ etsi despexerit homini, Creatori dimittat; ne ulterius dis-
 “ sentiendi ad invicem occasio præbeat, quæ hactenus
 “ et victoriæ nobis, ut nostis, proventus abstat, et maxime
 “ multitudinis parti absque ullo commodo periculum mortis

Comparison
 of the his-
 tory of the
 Israelites.

The quarrels
 among the
 Christians.

He has ex-
 hortet the
 princes of
 the world to
 make peace.

A. D. 1193.
Jan. 11.
If peace is
made, the
remnant of
Palestine
may be
saved and
the sepul-
chre re-
covered.

He forbids
tourna-
ments.

He urges
the kings
to labour
for the good
cause.

Richard re-
sues the
kingdom of
England to
the emperor.

“ indaxit: et toto animi studio id inter se consilii reperiro
“ procurent, quo et interim valeat illud tantillum terræ Domini
“ portionis, quæ adhuc sub Christianorum potestate tenetur,
“ ne a perversorum manibus occupetur, inconcusso servari, et
“ contra impiorum impetus sine aliquo pavore defendi; et
“ accingatur denuo multitudo fidelium, quæ illuc sub debita
“ et devota humilitate itura, totam possit terram, et sepul-
“ chrum Dominicum, devicto et conculcato penitus occupantium
“ furore, liberare. Adhæc etiam, quia ex hoc nobis et universo
“ populo Christiano nimium exuberat causa fletus, et tristari
“ debemus omnimodis, non letari; dum, videlicet, terra
“ ubi steterunt pedes Domini, et salutis nostræ sunt sacra-
“ menta patrata, gentilium occupationibus detinetur; tornea-
“ menta, quæ causa lætitiæ inventa fuerunt, et tyronum exer-
“ cendæ virtutis, penitus inhibemus; ut qui se voluerit exer-
“ cere, ad terram illam accedat, ubi et corporis et animæ
“ vius viriliter poterit ac subriter demonstrari. Taliter
“ etiam unitati et pacis concordæ ad invicem procurent inten-
“ dere, ut nullus sit qui adversus alium guerram intendat, vel
“ armis injuriam audeat propulsare; sed communiter potius
“ studeant quæ dissidentium animos studio ac labore diligent
“ reformat. Si quis vero, quod non credimus, Dei timore
“ postposito, et reverentia nostra et fidei Christianæ contempta,
“ contra hoc agere aliqua temeritate præsumserit, noverint
“ nos vobis, et aliis archiepiscopis et episcopis, districtius
“ injunxisse, ut coram terris, qui contumaciter incepto hujus-
“ modi duxerint insistendum, interdicto ecclesiastico supponatis,
“ et personas etiam, si opus fuerit, excommunicationis vinculo
“ astringatis, et facialis utramque sententiam inviolabiliter
“ observari. Vobis ergo per apostolica scripta districte præcipi-
“ endo mandamus, quatenus, ad ea quæ prædiximus celeriter
“ adimplenda, omni tarditate et contradictione postpositis, vos
“ accingatis, et studeatis per vestras dioceses, dilatione et
“ appellatione cessante, id executioni mandare. Datum Romæ
“ apud Sanctum Petrum, tertio idus Januarii, pontificatus nostri
“ secundo.”

Ricardus¹ rex Angliæ in captione Henrici Romanorum
imperatoris detentus, ut captivum illam evaderet, con-
silio Alienor matris suæ,² deposuit se de regno Angliæ,
et tradidit illud imperatori sicut universorum domino,

¹ Ricardus] Here MSS. B. D. I. resume. The following paragraph is

added in the cursive hand in A., with the marginal direction *Scribe.*

² suæ] om. B. I

et investivit eum inde per pilleum suum : sed imperator, sicut prælocutum fuit, statim reddidit ei, in conspectu magnatum Alemanniæ et Angliæ, regnum Angliæ prædictum, tenendum de ipso pro quinque millibus librarum sterlingorum singulis annis de tributo solvendis ; et investivit eum inde imperator per duplicem crucem de auro. Sed idem imperator, in morte sua, de omnibus his et aliis conventionibus quietum clamavit ipsum Ricardum regem Angliæ, et hæredes suos.

A.D. 1193.
and receives
it again,
under tri-
bute of
£5,000 a year.

The em-
peror at his
death re-
leased him
from this.

Quartus annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo tertio, qui erat quartus annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, Philippus rex Franciæ erat in Francia apud¹ die Natalis Domini, quæ feria sexta evenit, multum contristatus et confusus propter hoc, quod senescallus Normanniæ noluit tradere ei Alesiam sororem suam ; et frequenter misit nuncios suos in Angliam ad Johannem fratrem regis, comitem Moretonii, mandans ei qualiter rex captivus tenebatur,² et quod ipse nunquam exiret de captione imperatoris Alemanniæ ; adnectens quod, si ille voluntati illius et consilio acquiesceret, daret ei Alesiam sororem suam in uxorem, et redderet ei Normanniam, et Aquitanniam, et Andegaviam, et omnes alias terras transmarinas quas rex Angliæ Henricus, pater suus, unquam tenuit ; et quod ipse acquireret ei regnum Angliæ.

A.D. 1192.
Dec. 25.
Philip at-
tempts to
draw John
into fresh
treason
against his
brother.

¹ *apud*] so A. B. D. I. ; om. G.

² These offers of Philip to John are placed by the author of Benedict's Chronicle, and also by Richard of Devizes, under the year 1192. It is of course possible that Philip renewed them in 1193, but Hoveden's silence as to the circumstance and its consequences in the former year looks as if he referred to the same transaction now. His words closely

resemble the words of Benedict, and if taken from them satisfactorily show that he had mistaken his authority, who is amply borne out by Richard of Devizes. A document purporting to be the agreement between John and Philip for the division of Richard's dominions is given in the *Fæderu*, i. 57, dated Paris, January 1193.

A D. 1192.

Dec. 25.

Richard in
prison.

A D. 1193.

January.

John goes to
Normandy.

Ricardus vero rex Angliæ tenebatur in captione imperatoris Alemanniæ.

Johannes autem frater regis, comes Moretonii, statim post Natale Domini transfretavit in Normanniam. In ejus adventu senescallus Normanniæ, et cæteri fideles regis Angliæ, occurrerunt ei, et petierunt ut ipse venisset cum illis ad colloquium apud Alenzon, ad tractandum

The Norman
barons re-
fuse to
swear fealty
to him.

de negotiis regis, et liberatione ejus. Quibus ille respondit: "Si receperitis me in dominum, et juraveritis mihi fidelitatem, vobiscum veniam, et ero defensor vester apud regem Franciæ; sin autem, ad vos non veniam."

His auditis, proceres Normanniæ noluerunt ei obedire, neque fidelitatem jurare; sperantes dominum suum regem Angliæ, per auxilium Dei, sanum et incolumem reversurum.

He joins
Philip, and
does homage
to him.

Deinde Johannes frater regis profectus est ad regem Franciæ, et homo suus devenit de Normannia et cæteris terris fratris sui transmarinis, et de Anglia,

He promises
to marry
Aelis, and
she is to
have part of
Flanders for
dowry.

ut dicebatur; et juravit quod ipse Alesiam sororem illius in uxorem duceret; et ipse quietum clamavit regi Franciæ in perpetuum Gysorcium, et totum Velgesin le¹ Normand: et rex Franciæ concessit ei, cum prædicta sorore sua, illam partem Flandriæ quæ eum contingebat; et juravit ei, quod pro posse suo juvaret eum ad Angliam, et cæteras terras regis fratris sui, ad opus illius perquirendas.

He returns
to England,
and takes
Wallingford
and Wind-
sor.

Deinde prædictus comes Moretonii rediit in Angliam, multos alienigenas secum adducens; et statim reddita sunt ei castellum de Wallingford et de [Windeshoveres].²

He meets
the justices
at London,
and affirms
that Richard
will never
return.

Deinde ipse comes venit Lundonias, et a Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, et cæteris justitiariis Angliæ, petiit sibi regnum, et fidelitates hominum regni; affirmans quod rex Angliæ frater suus mortuus erat: sed non

¹ le] de. B. D. I.² Windeshoveres] Windeshoures, I., blank in A.; inserted in B. D.; but MS. G reads *reditum est*, and

omits all mention of Windsor. It is clear from the sequel that Windsor is meant. See pp. 206, 207.

crediderunt verbis ejus. Ipse autem a justitiariis et aliis magnatibus regni repudiatus recessit; et furia invectus castella et munitiones suas munivit, et terras regis fratris sui hostiliter invasit. Confluebant ergo multi ad eum, fallentes semetipsos, quia digno Dei judicio flagellati amiserunt omnia quæ habuerunt. Nam justitiiarii Angliæ, et fideles domini regis, viriliter restiterunt prædicto comiti Moretonii, et fecerunt ei damna plurima; et munierunt custodibus portus maris et omnia maritima ita caute, quod Franci et Flandrenses, et cæteri multi, qui præfato comiti auxilium promiserunt, in Angliam applicare ausi non fuerunt.¹ Quidam tamen de cœtu eorum in Angliam applicantes capti fuerunt, et vinculis mancipati.

A. D. 1193.
March.
The justices take measures of defence, and attack John.

Invasion prevented.

Rex vero Franciæ, immemor sacramenti quod in recessu suo de terra Suliæ fecerat regi Angliæ de pace servanda, hostiliter intravit Normanniam, et terram regis combussit, et prædas abduxit. Tamen Robertus comes Leircestriæ, qui paulo ante redierat de terra Suliæ, et cæteri magnates Normanniæ, restiterunt ei viriliter.

Philip invades Normandy, which is defended by the earl of Leicester.

Interim prædicti abbates de Boxleia et de Ponte Roberti, quos justitiiarii Angliæ ad quærendum regem miserant, redierunt in Angliam post Pascha, narrantes pacem factam fuisse inter imperatorem et regem Angliæ in Coena Domini, in hunc modum; Quod rex Angliæ dabit imperatori Romanorum centum millia marcarum argenti de redemptione, et inveniet ei quinquaginta guleas cum omni apparatu per unum annum in servitio suo, et cc. milites per unum annum in servitio suo; et quod ipsi interfuerunt paci illi. Et jam facta concordia venerunt nuncii regis Franciæ, et defidaverunt dominum regem ex parte ipsius. Quibus imperator continuo re-

After Easter, March 28, the abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge returned with the news of the agreement between Richard and the emperor, and of the conduct of Philip.

¹ Gervase describes this as a general levy of the population in arms to guard the coast. "In Passione Domini et Pascha et deinceps nobiles et ignobiles, mi-

"lites et rustici, ad arma convolabant" "ex mandato reginæ." c. 1581. Pass. on Sunday full on the 14th, and Easter on the 28th of March.

A. D. 1193.
March.
The emperor
attempts to
mediate
between
Richard and
Philip.

spondebat, quod quicumque regem Angliæ inquietaret, et ipsum imperatorem læderet; tantus amor et firma concordia perpetuatur inter eos. Et quia rex Angliæ obtulerat se juri pariturum in curia domini sui regis Franciæ de omnibus quæ rex Franciæ vel aliquis alius de suis partibus ei imponeret, imperator cepit colloquium inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, sed non fuit prosecutus. Rex autem Angliæ misit in Angliam pro navibus, et pro Alano Trenchemer, gubernatore suæ navis, et pro obsidibus dandis imperatori super pactis inter illos contractis. Mandavit, et facta sunt universa.

Richard
sends for
Alan Tren-
chemer.

Arrival of
Robert de
Turnham.

Deinde venit Londonias Robertus de Turnham, familiaris regis, missus ab eo cum hernasio suo in Angliam.¹

Windsor be-
sieged by
the barons.
Doverster
fortified by
the justices.

Tunc convenerunt omnes principes regni, et obsederunt Vindeshoveres, castellum comitis Moretonii; Gaudfridus vero Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo Bardolfus² justitiarius regis vicecomes Eloraci, et Willelmus de Stuteville, congregatis exercitibus venerunt usque Denecastre, et firmaverunt eam. Et cum archiepiscopus Eboracensis vellet inde procedere, et obsidere Thikehil, castellum comitis Moretonii, Hugo Bardolf et Willelmus de Stuteville consentire noluerunt, quia erant homines comitis Johannis. Tunc recessit ab eis archiepiscopus Eboracensis cum gente sua, vocans eos proditores regis et regni.

The arch-
bishop of
York is pre-
vented from
besieging
Treichil.

April.
Philip takes
Gisors and
Neuville by
treachery of
Gibert of
Vincennes.

Interim rex Franciæ in manu forti intravit Normanniam, et obsedit Gysorcium. Gilbertus vero de Gwascoil habuit in custodia castellum de Gisortio, et castellum de Nefle; et tradidit³ utrumque regi Franciæ, et adhæsit ei; sed vilis habitus est inter illos, propter prodicionem quam fecerat domino suo regi Angliæ; qui miserat eum a Messana cum plenitudine gratiæ suæ in Normanniam, ad prædicta castella custodienda.

¹ *Angliam*] Anglia, D. I.

² *Bardolfus*] Bardulfus, D. I.;
Bardolphus, B.

³ *tradidit*] Pridie idus Aprilis-
Rigord, p. 193.

Deinde venit rex Franciæ Rothomagum,¹ et dixit habitantibus in ea: "Johannes comes Moretonii venit homo meus de Anglia, et Normanniam totam et omnes alias terras cismarinas mihi clamavit quietas: et veni huc, ut civitatem istam, quæ caput est totius Normanniæ, accipiam; et permittite me pacifice intrare, et ero vobis dominus mansuetus et justus." Cui illi responderunt: "Ecce apertæ sunt januæ; intrate si vultis; nemo resistit vobis." Et ait rex: "Ego loquar inde cum gente mea." Habito itaque consilio cum gente sua intrare noluit. Rex autem Franciæ ita fraudatus a desiderio suo, recessit a Rothomago cum exercitu suo; et perrarias suas numero viginti tres,² quas in circuitu civitatis locaverat, combussit; et fractis vasis vinariis totum vinum suum fudit; et abiit, mandans civibus, quod visitaret eos in virga ferrea.

A.D. 1193.
April.
Philip comes to Rouen.

The inhabitants bid him enter; but on consideration he retires, and burns his engines.

Rege autem Angliæ moram faciente in captione³ imperatoris Romanorum, mirati sunt universi de mora illius; et quidam, per prædicationem comitis Moretonii, qui semper prædicabat illum nunquam rediturum, dubitaverunt de illo, et de reditu illius. Unde factum est, quod Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri justitiiarii Angliæ, licet comitem Moretonii ad deditionem coegissent, et castellum suum de Vindeshoveres, quod obsederant, fere cepissent, ceperunt a comite Moretonii inducias usque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, castellis de Nothinham et de Thikehil⁴ remanentibus in custodia comitis, sicut antea fuerant. Castella vero de Vindeshoveres, et de Wallinford, et de Pecho, tradita sunt in manu reginæ Alienor, matris ejusdem comitis Moretonii, et aliorum custodum, qui tradent ea in manu illius, si rex frater suus interim non redierit.

Rumours about Richard's prolonged absence.

The justices make a truce with John until November.

Windsor, Wallingford and the Peak entrusted to Eleanor.

¹ *Rothomagum*] Philip was before Rouen from the day of the capture of Gisors to the 29th of April, when he retired. *Chron. Rothomag.* ap. Labbe, *Biblioth.*, i. 362.

² *tres*] quatuor, G.

³ *captione*] custodia, B. I.

⁴ *Thikehil*] Tikeil, I.; Tykeil, B.; Tikel, D.

A. D. 1193.
April.
The bishop
of Durham
unwillingly
retires from
Tockhill.

Quod cum Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, qui castellum de Thikehil¹ interim obsederat, audisset, doluit vehementer, quia jam securus erat de illo capiendo; et per mandatum prædictorum justitiariorum inde recessit imperfecto negotio.

Richard
demands an
aid for his
ransom.

Et paulo post venerunt in Angliam nuncii regis cum litteris illius, missi ab eo ad omnes archiepiscopos et episcopos et abbates, et comites et barones, et clericos, et francos tenentes; per quos rex humiliter postulavit ut universi, tam clerici quam laici, tale auxilium facerent ei ad redimendum eum, unde ipse sciret eis grates: et ut ipsi hoc securius facerent, imperator Romanorum scripsit generaliter universis hominibus regis Angliæ, mandans eis quod dominus illorum rex Angliæ cum illo composuerat de redemptione sua pecuniaria; sed summam pecuniæ non manifestavit. Dominus vero papa Cælestinus similiter pro ipso rege scripsit universis viris ecclesiasticis regni Angliæ, ut imperator et totum ipsius regnum subjicerentur anathemati, nisi rex Angliæ celerius liberaretur a captione illius. Similiter præcepit, ut rex Franciæ et regnum ejus anathemati subjacerent, nisi ipse desisteret a persecutione regis Angliæ, quamdiu fuisset in captione imperatoris.

The pope
threatens to
excommunicate
the emperor and
the king of
France.

Agreement
between
Richard
and the
emperor

His et aliis admonitionibus domini papæ et universorum cardinalium, et consilio virorum sapientium, imperator Romanorum et rex Angliæ facti sunt amici. Unde rex Angliæ in hac forma scripsit fidelibus suis per Angliam constitutis;

Epistola Ricardi regis Angliæ ad Alienor reginam matrem suam, et ad justitios suos Angliæ.

April 19.
Letter of
Richard to
Eleanor and
the Justices.

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, Alienor eadem gratia reginæ Angliæ, carissimæ matri suæ, et justitios suis, et omnibus fidelibus suis per Angliam constitutis, salutem.

¹ *Thikehil*] Thikeil, L.; Tykehil, B.; Tikeil, D.

" Notum sit universitati vestræ, quod postquam recesserunt
 " a nobis dilecti nostri, Hubertus venerabilis episcopus Sares- A D. 1193.
 " buriensis,¹ et Willelmus de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia prothono- April 19.
 " tarius noster, venit ad nos carissimus cancellarius noster The bishop
 " Willelmus Eliensis episcopus; et eo inter dominum impera- of E. y has
 " torem et nos fideliter interloquente, eo usque res pervenit, negotiated
 " quod de castello de Trivelha, in quo detinebamur, obviam an interview
 " venimus imperatori apud Hagenou, ubi honorifice ab ipso with the
 " imperatore et tota curia recepti fuimus. Ibiq; dominus emperor at
 " imperator et domina imperatrix nos magnis et variis mu- Hagenau.
 " neribus honoraverunt; et, quod præcipuum est, mutuum
 " fœdus amoris et² indissolubile inter dominum imperatorem
 " contractum est et nos, ita quod³ uterque nostrum alterum Formation
 " contra omnes viventes, in jure suo obtinendo et retinendo, ju- of a league
 " vare debet. Honestè autem circa ipsum imperatorem moram with the
 " facimus, donec ipsius et nostra quædam negotia perficiantur, emperor;
 " et donec ei septuaginta millia marcas argenti solverimus. and terms of
 " Quare vos rogamus, et in⁴ fide, qua nobis tenemini, adju- ransom.
 " ramus, quatenus in hac pecunia perquirenda solliciti sitis; et The king
 " vos justitiarum nostri, qui alius in regno nostro præestis, charges his
 " exemplum aliis præbeat: ut ita honorifice et magnifice faithful] to
 " de proprio nobis subveniat, et etiam de his quæ de aliis do their ut-
 " mutuo accipere poteritis, ut aliis fidelibus nostris exemplum most to raise
 " detis similia faciendi. Universum autem aurum et argentum the money;
 " ecclesiarum diligenti observatione, et scripti testimonio, ab and prom-
 " ipsarum ecclesiarum prælatis accipiat, cisque per sacra- ises repay-
 " mentum vestrum, et aliorum baronum nostrorum, quos ment.
 " volueritis, affirmetis, quod eis plenarie restituentur. Uni- The barons
 " versorum etiam baronum nostrorum obsides recipiat, ut are also to
 " cum fidelissimus cancellarius noster, quam cito peractis in furnish hos-
 " Alemannia negotiis nostris, in Angliam venerit, eosdem ob- tages to go to
 " sides penes carissimam matrem nostram reginam reperiat, Germany.
 " ut eos, de quibus inter nos et dominum imperatorem con-
 " venit, expedite possit ad nos transmittere; ne liberatio
 " nostra per absentiam obsidum et negligentiam vestram ino-
 " ram patiat. Pecunia autem collecta similiter matri meæ,
 " et illis quibus ipsa voluerit, tradatur. Quem autem in ne-

¹ The bishop of Salisbury landed in England after his visit to Richard, on the 20th of April. He had stayed behind the king in Palestine, and on his arrival in Sicily heard of Richard's imprisonment, and hastened to join him. Richard

immediately despatched him home. W. Newb., lib. iv. c. 33; Gervase, c. 1582.

² et] om. I.

³ ita quod] itaque, D. I.

⁴ in] om. D. I.

A D. 1193.
Apr 11.
The King
will be
grateful.

The terms
made with
the emperor
are well
worth the
money.

“cessitate nostra promptum invenimus, in suis necessitatibus
“amicum nos reperiet et remuneratorem; gratusque nobis
“erit, si quis in absentia nostra in aliquo nobis subveniat,
“quam si in presentia nostra in duplo quis nobis subveniret.
“Volumus autem ut singulorum magnatum nomina, et sub-
“ventiones quæ præsentialiter fient, per sigillum matris
“nostræ nobis significentur, ut sciamus quantum unicuique
“in gratiarum actionibus¹ teneamur. Sciatis pro certo quod
“si in Anglia in libera potestate nostra essemus constituti,
“tantam vel majorem pecuniam domino imperatori daremus,
“quam modo damus pro pactionibus consequendis, quas per
“Dei gratiam consecuti sumus; et si etiam pecuniam non
“præ manibus haberemus, proprium corpus nostrum impera-
“tori tradcremus, donec pecunia solveretur; antequam quod
“factum est relinqueretur imperfectum. In bulla autem
“domini imperatoris aurea fert vobis cancellarius noster præ-
“dictam testificationem. Testibus nobis ipsis apud Hagenou,²
“xiii. kalendas Maii.”

De auxilio ad redemptionem regis statuto.

Great aid
levied in
England for
the king's
ransom, by
the queen
and justices.

Auctoritate igitur litterarum istarum, mater regis et
justitiiarii Angliæ statuerunt, quod universi, tam clerici
quam laici, quartam partem redditus sui de hoc anno
darent ad redemptionem domini regis, et tantum super-
adderent de mobilibus suis, unde rex deberet eis grates
scire; et de unoquoque feodo militis viginti solidos, et
de ablatiis ordinis Cisterciensis,³ et de domibus ordinis

¹ *actionibus*] *actione*, B. D. I

² *Hagenou*] Richard continued at Speyer until the 30th of March, after which he was removed to Trüfels, in Rhenish Bavaria, the stronghold where the imperial insignia were kept; and there he seems to have had a visit from his chancellor, after which he was removed to Hagenau, before the 19th of April, the date of the letter. He was

at Worms on the 28th of May and on the 8th of June, on which days he wrote to Canterbury on the subject of the election to the archbishopric. *Epp. Cant.*, 364, 365. Here Ralph of Coggeshall describes him as still imprisoned, c. 833. There he stayed until June 29, when the final agreement was made for his release.

³ *Cisterciensis*] *Cestrensis*, A.

de Semplingham, totam lanam suam de hoc anno ; et universum aurum et argentum ecclesiarum, sicut rex in mandato suo præceperat.

A.D. 1193.
April.

Deinde venit in Angliam ex parte domini regis prædictus cancellarius suus, afferens litteras domini imperatoris, aurea bulla imbullatas, in hac forma ;

Return of the chancellor with the emperor's letter.

Epistola Henrici Romanorum imperatoris ad magnates Angliæ pro Ricardo rege Angliæ.

“ Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et semper Augustus, dilectis sibi archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus, nobilibus, et omnibus ad quos præsens pagina¹ pervenerit, in Anglia constitutis, salutem et bonam voluntatem.

April 19.
The emperor writes to the prelates and barons.

“ Dignum judicavimus, et nostræ celsitudini gloriosum, si universitatem vestram sollicitius inducamus ad ea modis omnibus quibus potestis agenda, quæ ad honorem carissimi nostri illustris regis Ricardi, domini vestri, debeantur ; ne devotionis vestra constantia et meritum fidei circa ipsius commoda appareat mortuum, sed in suis et in regni sui obsequiis vivere videatur. Sane omnibus, quorum devotio prædicto regi absentis sincera extiterit et pura, uberes referemus gratiarum actiones ; ad universitatis vestræ notitiam devenire volentes, quod imperatoria sublimitas cum regia ipsius nobilitate in concordia et bona pace consistit. Unde quæcunque ipsi irrogata fuerint contraria, pariter cum eo nobis parient molestiam et gravamen. Quare ad devotorum suorum et fidelium honorem et profectum, et turbatorum suorum damnationem et exterminium, operam præstabimus semper efficacem, et quia corde et animo uniti sumus, facta regis vestri, specialiter nostri et imperii nostri penitus reputabimus ; et gravamina ejus nobis et coronæ imperiali illata censemus ; nec ea, Deo concedente, sine ultione, et eorum, qui ea intulerint, gravi damno et destructione, transibimus. Datum apud Hagenou, xiii. kalendas Maii.”

He urges them to show their faith to their king ; and promises gratitude.

The two have made alliance, offensive and defensive.

¹ pagina] scriptum, B. D. I.

A.D. 1193.
April.

*De colloquio inter imperatorem et regem Franciæ
non prosecuto.*

Proposed interview, on June 25, between Philip and the emperor, which does not come off.

Deinde post pacem istam inter imperatorem et regem Angliæ ordinatam, ipse imperator cepit colloquium inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, de pace facienda inter illum et regem Angliæ, mediante Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo, regis Franciæ avunculo, et regis Angliæ consanguineo; et statuerunt diem colloquii inter Valculur¹ et Tulum, in crastino nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, feria sexta.

The chancellor received at St. Alban's by the queen and the justices.

Cancellarius vero regis cum in Angliam intravit, cum humilitate magna ad Sanctum Albanum accessit; ubi occurrerunt ei domina regina mater regis, et dominus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et alii justitiani domini regis. Ibi etiam bullam domini imperatoris auream, fœdus indissolubile inter dominum imperatorem et dominum regem continentem, prædictus cancellarius justitianiis porrexerit; asserens, quod nec ut justitia, nec ut legatus, nec ut cancellarius, sed ut simplex episcopus in Angliam venit; nec ut incola, sed ut hospes, immo tantum ut nuncius domini regis. Injunxit etiam quibusdam baronibus, quod cum eo ad dominum regem venirent: videlicet, Gilberto episcopo Rofensi, et Sefrido episcopo Cicestrensi, et Benedicto abbati de Burgo, et Ricardo comiti de Clare, et comiti Rogero Bigot, et Gaufrido de Say, et aliis quampluribus.

The king summons certain prelates and barons.

Guardians of the ransom appointed.

Ibi etiam dispositum est, penes quem pecunia collata debeat residere: scilicet sub custodia Huberti Walteri Cantuariensis electi, et domini Ricardi Lundoniensis episcopi, et Willelmi comitis de Arundel, et Hamelini comitis de Warena, et majoris Lundoniarum,² sub sigillo dominæ reginæ matris regis, et sigillo domini Rothomagensis archiepiscopi.

¹ Valculur] Vauculur, D. I.

² majoris Lundoniarum] Henry fits Aylwin.

De electione Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.

A.D. 1193.
May.

Et est notandum, quod post adventum Huberti¹ Walteri Saresbiriensis episcopi in Angliam, convenerunt in unum monachi metropolitanæ ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, et elegerunt sibi in archiepiscopum prædictum Hubertum Saresbiriensem episcopum. Contra cujus electionem Herbertus² Cantuariensis archidiaconus appellavit ad summum pontificem; tum quia rex in captione erat, tum quia episcopi Angliæ, quorum est interesse electioni Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, non interfuerunt electioni illi.

Election of Hubert Walter as archbishop of Canterbury.

Protest of the arch-deacon.

Eodem anno, dum rex Angliæ erat in captione imperatoris, Saladinus obiit in prima hebdomada³ Quadragesimæ. Unde dux Venetiæ in hac forma scripsit prædicto regi Angliæ;

Death of Saladin, in March.

Epistola Dandoli, ducis Venetiæ et Dalmatiæ et Chroatiæ,⁴ ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, de morte Saladini.

“Serenissimo domino suo Ricardo, Dei gratia regi Angliæ, duci Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, comiti Andegaviæ, Henricus Dandolus,⁵ eadem gratia Venetiæ, Dalmatiæ, atque Chroatiæ⁴ dux, salutem et sinceræ dilectionis obsequium. Certa nobis relatione noveritis intimatum quod inimicus ille Christianæ religionis Saladinus interiit. Cujus quidam filiorum, quem totius domini sui dicitur constituisse hæredem; in Damasco⁶ versatur. Alter vero Babiloniæ et Alexandriæ⁷ dominatur. Frater⁸ autem ejus est in circuitu Babilonis cum exercitu copioso; et est dissensio maxima inter eos. Valetē.”

Letter of the Doge of Venice to Richard on Saladin's death.

¹ *post adventum Huberti*] Hubert was elected May 30. R. de Dic. 669.

² *Herbertus*] le Poor, afterwards bishop of Salisbury.

³ *in prima hebdomada*] March 4, 1193.

⁴ *Chroatiæ*] Cher, A. B. D. I.

⁵ *Henricus Dandolus*] Dandalus, B. Doge of Venice, 1192-1205.

⁶ *Damasco*] Malek al Afdal Noureddin Ali.

⁷ *Babilonia et Alexandria*] Malek al Aziz Othman.

⁸ *Frater*] Malek al Adel Seifeddin-Abubekr (Saphadin).

A.D. 1193.
June.
On the approach of the day fixed for Philip's interview with the emperor, the German princes took alarm, and Richard fears for his release.

He procures a reconciliation between the emperor and the king, and the murder of the bishop of Liege.

The conference is prevented.

June 25-29.
Interview of Richard with the emperor at Worms.

Interim appropinquante termino colloquii inter imperatorem et regem Franciæ, rex Angliæ per certa indicia cognovit quod, si colloquium illud haberetur, imperator et rex Franciæ confœderarentur contra archiepiscopos Coloniensem et Maguntinum, et contra duces de Luvain,¹ et de Lemburg,² et Saxonie, et multos alios magnates et nobiles, qui conspiraverant contra imperatorem propter necem episcopi de Leges, fratris ducis de Luvain, quam imperator machinatus erat. Timebat etiam rex Angliæ quod, si colloquium illud haberetur, ipse sine dubio traderetur in manus regis Franciæ. Unde rex Angliæ plurimum se intromisit, ut colloquium illud deficeret, et pax inter imperatorem et prædictos magnates fieret. Ad illius igitur instantiam imperator et magnates prædicti inter se pacis foedus et concordie inierunt in hunc modum: "Quod imperator jurare fecit episcopos quamplures, et comites et barones, in animam suam, quod ille nec præcepit nec voluit ut prædictus episcopus de Leges³ occideretur; et quando hoc scivit, vehementer inde doluit. Et de satisfactione reddidit unicuique prædictorum virorum, qui contra eum conspiraverant, omnia castella que pater suus vel ipse eis abstulerat, et sic facti sunt amici; excepto duce Saxonie." Et colloquium illud, quod inter illum et regem Franciæ esse debuit apud Valculur, adnihilatum est.

His itaque peractis, imperator die Veneris proxima post festum Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ venit Wermasiam, ubi dominus rex Angliæ erat. Et ibi colloquium celebratum est inter eos per quatuor dies; cui interfuerunt episcopi de partibus illis, et duces de

¹ *Luvain*] Henry the Warrior, 1190-1235, brother of the bishop of Liege.

² *Lemburg*] Lenburg, D. I. Henry III, duke of Limburg, 1170-1221 uncle of the bishop of Liege.

³ *episcopus de Leges*] Leges, corrected to Leges, A. Albert of Louvain, son of Godfrey the Courageous, duke of Brabant (Louvain), and Margaret of Limburg; elected in 1191, and murdered Nov. 23, 1192.

Luvain et de Lemburc,¹ et comites et barones multi: et ex parte regis Angliæ interfuerunt episcopi Bato- niensis et Eliensis; et quarta die, scilicet vigilia apo- stolorum Petri et Pauli, venerunt ad regem Angliæ Willelmus Brigwere,² et Baldewinus de Betun; et adhuc omnes³ penitus desperaverunt de liberatione regis An- gliæ. Sed per Dei misericordiam ipso die apostolorum Petri et Pauli omnino convenit inter imperatorem et regem, hoc modo; “ Dominus rex dabit imperatori cen- tum millia marcarum puri argenti ad pondus Coloniae, et alia quinquaginta millia marcarum argenti pro auxilio, quod deberet conferre imperatori ad Apuliam acquirendam. Præterea rex dabit sororem Arturi ducis Britanniae, nepotis sui, uxorem filio ducis Aus- triæ. Et liberabit imperatorem Cypri sine restitu- tione imperii; similiter et filiam ejusdem imperatoris, quam faciet tradi duci Ostricii, ut avunculo suo. Prædicta vero centum millia marcarum debet domi- nus rex conducere suo periculo usque ad terminos imperii; et quam cito intrabunt in aliquam partem imperii, dominus rex libere et quiete redibit cum salvo conductu in Angliam.” Et hoc juraverunt in animam imperatoris episcopi, duces, comites, et nobiles omnes qui interfuerunt. Unde cyrographum factum est inter imperatorem et regem Angliæ in hac forma;

A.D. 1193.
June 25-29.
On the
fourth day
Richard's
friends
arrive.

June 29.
New terms
agreement
of ransom.

New mar-
riage for
Eleanor of
Brittany.

The conduct
of the ran-
som money.

Exchange of
oaths.

Forma compositionis factæ inter Henricum Romano- rum imperatorem et Ricardum regem Angliæ.

“ In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti. Amen. Hæc est forma compositionis inter dominum imperatorem, semper Augustum, et dominum Ricardum, illustrem regem Angliæ. Dominus imperator mittet nuncios suos cum nunciis domini regis, qui Londonias ibunt, et ibi recipient centum

Form of
treaty be-
tween
Henry VI.
and Richard
I.

¹ *Lemburc*] Lenburc, I.; Len- burg, D. | ² *Brigwere*] de Briwere, I.; Bru- ere, D.; Briwere, B. | ³ *omnes*] om. I.

A D. 1183. " millia marcarum puri argenti ad pondus Colonia. Quæ
 June 29. " pecunia a nunciis imperatoris accepta, et ponderata, sigilla-
 Arrange- " bitur in præsentia nunciorum ipsius, et in conductu regis
 ment for the " per regni sui terminos ducetur: ita ut si eam in rognu suo
 safe conduct " perdi contigerit, periculo regis perdatur. Postquam vero ad
 of the rai- " perdi contigerit, periculo regis perdatur. Postquam vero ad
 son, 100,000 " terminos imperii venerit dicta pecunia, per nuncios regis
 marks; " nunciis domini imperatoris præsentabitur, qui eam illico
 " ibi recipient, et si forte in partibus imperii eam perdi con-
 " tegerit, periculo imperatoris perdetur, et rex in ea non
 " tenebitur, nec obsides sui. Alia quoque quinquaginta millia
 hostages to " marcarum argenti dabit rex imperatori et duci Austriæ, et
 be given for " pro illis ponet obsides: scilicet, domino imperatori pro tri-
 50,000 " ginta millibus marcis sexaginta obsides; duci vero Austriæ
 marks. " septem obsides pro viginti millibus marcis. Solutis ergo
 " centum millibus marcis, et datis obsidibus, rex libere re-
 " cedit. Si autem dominus rex solverit promissionem, quam
 " domino imperatori de Henrico quondam duce Saxonie fe-
 " cerit, imperator de quinquaginta millibus marcis regem
 " liberum dimittens et absolutum, pro ipso rege solvet duci
 " Austriæ viginti millia marcarum, et rex non tenebitur dare
 " duci Austriæ septem obsides, nec imperatori sexaginta.
 " Cum igitur rex prædictam promissionem de Henrico quon-
 " dam duce Saxonie impleverit, et centum millia marcarum
 " solverit, libere recedit. Præterea rex fecit jurare in animam
 " suam, quod neptem suam, filiam comitis Britannie, tradet
 " nuptui filio ducis Austriæ, infra septem menses postquam
 " liberatus fuerit, et in terram suam redierit; et eam trans-
 " mittet usque ad introitum imperii, si eam recipere voluerint;
 " et si noluerint, erit absolutus. Item si promissio de Hen-
 " rico quondam duce Saxonie completa non fuerit, quinquaginta
 " millia marcarum, quæ residua sunt, solventur infra
 " septem menses postquam dominus rex in terram suam redi-
 " erit. Cum autem rex liberatus fuerit, et¹ redire voluerit,
 " imperator dabit ei conductam per terram suam usque ad
 " fines imperii sui, et in portu illo, ubi mare intrabit, quam-
 " diu ibi stabit, donec prospero vento recedat. Præterea ea
 " omnia, quæ tam in his quam in aliis familiaribus litteris
 " sigillatis sigillis imperatoris et regis, super contractibus
 " qui inter eos ordinati sunt, uterque pro parte sua rata et
 " firma habebit, et bona fide observabit."

Arrange- " ment for the " marriage of " Eustace " with a son " of the duke " of Austria.
 " The emperor " is to give " the king a " safe escort.
 " Descrip of " Philip and " John.

Quod cum rex Franciæ audisset, statim mandavit comiti Johanni, ut ipse sibi caveret, quia diabolus jam

¹ et] rex, ins. D. I.

solutus erat. Comes autem Johannes sciens hoc de rege fratre suo dictum fuisse, statim transfretavit de Anglia in Normanniam, et adhæsit regi Franciæ, non ausus exspectare adventum regis fratris sui in Angliam.

A.D. 1193.
July.
John joins Philip in Normandy.

Deinde rex Angliæ misit Willelmum Eliensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, et Willelmum Brigwere,¹ et alios viros sapientes ad regem Franciæ, ad pacem cum illo faciendam qualemcunque. Qui pacem fecerunt cum illo in hac forma;

Peace arranged between Richard and Philip.

Pax facta inter reges Franciæ et Angliæ, per Willelmum Eliensem episcopum et cæteros regis Angliæ nuncios, sed non servata.

“ Noverint universi ad quos litteræ præsentis pervenerint, quod Willelmus, regis Angliæ Ricardi cancellarius, Eliensis episcopus, sedis apostolicæ legatus, et cum eo Willelmus de Rupibus, et Johannes de Pratellis, et Willelmus Briwere, ex parte regis Angliæ cum litteris ejusdem regis patentibus ad regem Franciæ accesserunt: in quibus continebatur, quod ea quæ ipsi cum ipso agerent et ordinarent, ipse rex Angliæ rata prorsus et firma haberet. Ipsi autem hoc modo egerunt, et istas conventiones cum rege Franciæ ex parte domini sui regis Angliæ fecerunt. Rex Angliæ Ricardus mittit se super dominum regem Franciæ de tota terra quam rex Franciæ adquisivit super se et homines suos, de qua ipse et homines sui sunt tenentes, quod ipse tantum inde retinebit, quantum ipse voluerit, sibi et suis. De comite autem Johanne sic erit; quod si homines regis Angliæ poterunt sufficienter monstrare in curia domini regis Franciæ, quod idem Johannes juraverit ad perquirendam pecuniam ad liberationem regis Angliæ, et de hoc dederit litteras suas, ipse Johannes tenebitur ad solvendum, et totam terram quam ipse tenebat quando rex Angliæ frater ejus iter arripuit ultra mare, tenebit, citra² mare et ultra, ita libere sicut prius tenebat; excepto eo, quod liber erit a sacramento quod fecerat de non intranda terra Angliæ; et de hoc dictus rex Angliæ faciet dominum Johannem securum per se, et per barones, et per archiepiscopos et episcopos terræ suæ, et insuper per regem Franciæ. Si autem comes Johannes vellet negare, quod litteræ illæ non essent suæ, aut quod illud non

July 9.
The ambassadors, the chancellor, William des Roches, John des Preaux, and William Brewer, made the peace.

Arrangement as to the late captures.

As to John: he is to pay the money he has collected for the king's ransom, and to be freed from his oath not to visit England.

¹ *Brigwere*] Briwere, I.; Bruer, D. | ² *citra*] circa, L.

- AD 1191. " jurasset, homines regis Angliæ sufficienter in curia regis
 Jul. 9. " Franciæ monstrabunt, per idoneos testes, quod juraverit ad
 Terns as re- " querendam pecuniam ad liberationem regis Angliæ. Si
 gards John. " autem monstratum fuerit, sicut dictum est, quod comes ju-
 " raverit ad querendam pecuniam ad liberationem regis, vel
 " si defecerit de recipienda monstratione, rex Franciæ non
 " intromittet se de comite Johanne, si pacem de terra sua
 " prædicta recipere voluerit.
- As regards " De comite Lodowico¹ sic erit: rex Angliæ assignabit ei in
 the count of " terra sua, ad laudem et consilium regis Franciæ et archi-
 Blois. " episcopi Remensis, quingentas libras Andegavensium de
 " redditibus annuatim, aut plus si plus fuerit, et faciet affi-
 " dari² ei, quod ipse faciet comiti Lodowico justitiam, et ser-
 " vitium quod pater suus fecit comiti Theobaldo, et ipse rex
 " Angliæ comiti Lodowico reddet tantum pecuniæ, quantum
 " retinuit post mortem comitis Theobaldi, de eo, quod de-
 " bebatur ei reddere.
- As regards " De Hugone de Gurnay³ sic erit: Hugo totam terram,
 Hugh de " quam alibi tenebat, tenebit de rege Franciæ, nisi sit
 Gurnay. " quod Hugo bona voluntate, absque coactione aliqua, et sine
 " defectu regis Franciæ, voluerit redire ad regem Angliæ;
 " et rex Franciæ Hugonem super hoc libenter rogabit, abs-
 " que vim⁴ faciendo, et aliquid de suo mittendo. Si autem
 " Hugo noluerit redire ad regem Angliæ, cum terra quam
 " de rege Franciæ tenet, et aliam terram suam de Angliæ
 " et de Normannia vellet tenere de rege Angliæ, neque ex-
 " cambium pro terra illa accipere, nec aliquam pacem exinde
 " per regem Franciæ et per regem Angliæ recipere, oport-
 " tebit regem Angliæ facere grantum Hugoni rationaliter.
- As regards " Comes Engolismus⁵ et sui liberabuntur, et salvo redi-
 the counts of " bunt in terram suam; et ipse et sui erunt in eo statu quo
 Angouême: " fuerunt ante gwerram; neque propter aliquid quod de gwerra
 " fecerit, malum ei aut suis fiet.
- Perche: " Comes Partici⁶ redditus suos in Angliæ integre habebit,
 " et rex Angliæ et sui pacem ei tenebunt.
- and Meulan. " Comes Mellenti⁷ terram suam rehabebit, quæ est in terra
 " regis Angliæ.
 " Quando rex Angliæ revenerit in pacem regis Franciæ, ipse
 " faciet regi Franciæ servitia et justitias in curia regis

¹ *Lodowico*] Lewis count of Blois, who had succeeded his father, count Theobald, in 1191.

² *affidari*] affidare, B. D. I.

³ *Gurnay*] Gurnai, I.

⁴ *vim*] inde, I.; corrected in B.; om. D.

⁵ *Comes Engolismus*] Aymar.

⁶ *Comes Particu*] Geoffrey III.

⁷ *Comes Mellenti*] Robert IV.

“ Franciæ de singulis feodis quos ab eo tenet, sicut singulus
 “ feodus apportat. Præterea rex Angliæ dat regi Franciæ
 “ viginti millia marcarum boni argenti et puri ad pondus
 “ Treccensis, persolvendas per duos annos ibidem, his termi-
 “ nis: ad primum dimidium annum a die liberationis suæ
 “ de captione imperatoris quinque millia marcarum; et ab
 “ eo termino ad proximo¹ sequentem dimidium annum quin-
 “ que millia marcarum; et exinde ad proximo² sequentem
 “ dimidium annum quinque millia marcarum; et exinde ad
 “ proximo³ sequentem dimidium annum quinque millia mar-
 “ carum argenti. Et pro his conventionibus omnibus obser-
 “ vandis rex Angliæ tradet regi Franciæ Locas, et Castelionem
 “ supra Edriam; et archiepiscopo Remensi Driencourt et
 “ Arches.⁴ Hæc autem quatuor castella custodientur ad ex-
 “ pensas regis Angliæ; ita tamen quod pro Locis et pro Castel-
 “ lione custodiendis, Willelmus de Rupibus, aut ille qui loco
 “ ejus erit, tradet regi Franciæ duo millia librarum Andega-
 “ vensium singulis mensibus, quantum ad mensem continget,
 “ et semper de victualibus apponet in illis duobus castellis
 “ ad duos menses; in Luches ad undecim milites⁵ et centum
 “ et quadraginta servientes, in Castellione ad quatuor milites
 “ et quadraginta servientes. De Driencourt et de Archis⁶
 “ senescallus Normanniæ faciet, pro victualibus et custodia, ad
 “ grantum et voluntatem archiepiscopi Remensis. Similiter
 “ victualia apponentur a senescallo Normanniæ in istis duobus
 “ castellis semper sufficientia ad duos menses, secundum quod
 “ archiepiscopus Remensis dicet.

“ Si omnes prædictæ conventiones integre observatæ fue-
 “ rint regi Franciæ; et quando ex parte regis Angliæ so-
 “ luta fuerint regi Franciæ quinque millia marcarum argenti,
 “ rex Franciæ reddet ei unum de prædictis quatuor castellis,
 “ quod rex Franciæ voluerit. Et iterum quando quinque
 “ millia marcarum solutæ fuerint regi Franciæ ex parte regis
 “ Angliæ, rex Franciæ reddet ei unum de illis quatuor cas-
 “ tellis, quod rex Franciæ voluerit. Si vero decem millia
 “ marcarum redditæ fuerint simul regi Franciæ ex parte regis
 “ Angliæ, rex Franciæ reddet illi duo de illis quatuor
 “ castellis, quæ rex Franciæ voluerit. Si vero quindecim
 “ millia marcarum simul redditæ fuerint regi Franciæ, rex
 “ Franciæ reddet illi tria de illis quatuor castellis, quæ rex
 “ Franciæ voluerit. Si simul viginti millia marcarum redditæ

A.D. 1193.
 July 9.
 Payments to be made by Richard to Philip, for which Loches, Châtillon-sur-Indre, Driencourt, and Arques are pledged.

Arrangements for their security.

Arrangements for their restoration.

¹ *proximo*] proximum, I.
² *proximo*] proximum, I.
³ *proximo*] proximum, I.

⁴ *Arches*] Archez, I.
⁵ *milites*] om. I.
⁶ *Archis*] Arches, B. I.

A. D. 1143. July 9.	<p>“ fuerint regi Franciæ, prædicta quatuor castella reddentur regi Angliæ. Rex autem Franciæ nullum de illis quatuor castellis reddet, nisi conventiones prædictæ ei et suis fuerint observatæ, de præfata sibi pecunia reddenda, de comite Johanne, de comite Lodowico, de comite Engolismi et suis, de comite Particii, de comite Mellenti. Quando vero rex Franciæ habuerit Locas et Castellionem, et archiepiscopus Remensis Driencurt et Arches, rex Franciæ recipiet regem Angliæ in gratiam suam pro exsequendo conventiones prædictas, sicut carta præsens dicit, et rogabit imperatorem de liberatione regis Angliæ.</p>
Oaths of the envoys;	<p>“ Prædictus autem cancellarius, et Willelmus de Rupibus, et Johannes de Pratellis, et Willelmus Briwere, in animam regis Angliæ juraverunt, quod rex Angliæ conventiones, quas in carta præsentis continentur, observabit; et quando rex Angliæ redierit, ipse in propria persona jurabit, infra rationabilem terminum postquam a rege Franciæ summōnitus fuerit, se prædictas conventiones servaturum, et litteras suas patentes ei inde daturum. Præfati autem quatuor, et cum eis constabularius¹ Normanniæ, et Robertus de Harencurt, et Stephanus de Longo-campo, juraverunt, quod si rex Angliæ dictas conventiones non observaret, se mitterent Parisius in captione regis Franciæ.</p>
and of the sarotus.	<p>“ Archiepiscopi, episcopi, barones terre regis Angliæ, quos rex Franciæ voluerit, quando requisiti fuerint, jurabunt quod ipsi se Parisius in captione regis Franciæ² ponent, si rex Angliæ prædictas conventiones non servaverit, sicut præsens carta dicit: et si rex Angliæ moreretur antequam rex Franciæ reddidisset præfata quatuor castella, rex Franciæ illa quatuor castella redderet recto hæredi pro exsequendo prædictas conventiones, sicut præsens carta continet, et salvo jure regis Franciæ.</p>
Oaths of the bishops and barons of England.	<p>“ Qui omnia prædicta, ut rata permaneant et inconcussa, ego Willelmus Elyensis episcopus, regis Angliæ cancellarius, et ego Willelmus de Rupibus, et ego Johannes de Pratellis, et ego Willelmus Briwere,³ per præceptum regis Angliæ domini nostri, sigillorum nostrorum attestacione roboravimus. Actum Meduntæ,⁴ anno ab Incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo nonagesimo tertio, septimo idus Julii.”</p>
Sealing by the envoys.	

¹ *constabularius*] William du Hommet, or Humes.

² *Franciæ*] se, ins. B. D. I.

³ *Briwere*] de Briwere, I.; Brig-

were, G.; de Bruere, B.; de Bruer, D.

⁴ *Medunte*] Medunæ, B.

*De archiepiscopatu Cantuariensi dato Huberto
Saresbiriensi episcopo.*

A.D. 1193.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ, dum adhuc esset in captione Romanorum imperatoris, dedit Huberto Walteri, Saresbiriensi episcopo, archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem; et Savario,¹ archidiacono Northamptoniæ, episcopatum Batoniensem; et Henrico Marescallo, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decano, episcopatum Exoniensem; et magistro Philippo Pictavensi,² clerico suo, dedit rex archidiaconatum Cantuariæ; et Henrico abbati Glastinbiriensi³ dedit episcopatum Vigornensem; et prædicto Savarico, Batoniensi episcopo, dedit abbatiam de Glastinbiri.⁴ Electo itaque⁵ Henrico Marescallo, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decano, ad episcopatum Exoniensem, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, tunc temporis moram faciens apud Ripun,⁶ dedit Petro fratri suo decanatum Eboraci, præsentibus Hamone præcentore,⁷ et Simone Apulo, et aliis clericis suis quampluribus. Sed quia prædictus Petrus tunc temporis Parisius erat, et Ricardus rex Angliæ instanter petebat ut archiepiscopus daret decanatum illum Johanni præposito de Duai,⁸ fratri advocati de Betun, idem archiepiscopus, consilio suorum fretus, dedit decanatum illum Simoni Apulo,⁹ clerico suo, et sic liberavit se a petitione regis. Sed postmodum cum archiepiscopus vellet contra factum suum venire, dicens præfato Symoni quod non dederat ei

Eccllesiastical appointments made by Richard during his captivity.

Disputes about the deanery of York.

It is given first to Peter, the archbishop's brother, then to John de Bethune; then to Simon of Apulia.

¹ *Savario*] Savarico, B. D. This is wrong. Savaric had been elected and consecrated before Richard's capture: see above, p. 197, note 1.

² *Philippo Pictavensi*] The companion of his crusade and journey. The archdeaconry was vacant by the promotion of Herbert le Poor to the see of Salisbury.

³ *Glastinbiriensi*] Glastingbiriensi, I. Henry de Soilli, bishop of Worcester, 1193-1195.

⁴ *Glastinbiri*] Glastingburi, I.; Glastingbiri, B.

⁵ *itaque*] autem, B. D. I.

⁶ *Ripun*] Ripund, D. I.; Ripunt, B. G.

⁷ *præsentibus . . . præcentore*] om. I.

⁸ *Duai*] Duay, I.

⁹ *Simoni Apulo*] afterwards bishop of Exeter, 1214-1223.

A.D. 1188. decanatum illum, nisi in custodia ad opus Petri fratris
The canon elected Sth. on of Apulia as Dean. sui, canonici Eboracensis ecclesie communiter elegerunt sibi præfatum Simonem in decanum contra voluntatem archiepiscopi.

De discordia inter Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum et canonicos suos.

The archbishop gives the deanery to Philip of Poitou. Unde factum est quod idem archiepiscopus, ut placeret regi, dedit prædicto magistro Philippo,¹ clerico et familiari regis, præfatum decanatum; et sic orta est discordia inter ipsum archiepiscopum Eboracensem et canonicos suos; cujus hæc fuit origo et initium.

Exactions of the archbishop from the canons for the king's ransom. Eodem tempore, cum Ricardus rex Angliæ in reditu suo a terra Jerosolimitana captus esset, et in Alemania detentus, et jam inter imperatorem et ipsum de se per pecuniam redimendo convenerat, ipsi archiepiscopo² terræ suæ custodiam præcipue, et corporis sui liberationem litteris suis commisit. Quo mandato suscepto, fraternæ captionis miseria commotus, canonicos, quos magis familiares habebat, quos etiam ditaverat et exaltaverat, vocavit, monuit, et rogavit, ut quartam partem reddituum suorum ad præfati regis liberationem conferrent, sicut in aliis partibus regni factum est.

Their complaints. Qui renuentes, et concanonicos suos in partes suas trahentes, asserebant eum in hoc casu et in³ consimilibus libertates ecclesie suæ velle subvertere; et sic ab ejus familiaritate, colloquio, et consortio discesserunt.

The appointment to the deanery disputed. ⁴Tunc temporis, ut supra dictum est, vacabat Eboracensis ecclesie decanatus; cujus donationem ad se pertinere archiepiscopus, electionem vero suam esse capitulum asserebat. Ideoque ad sedem apostolicam ex

¹ *Philippo*] of Poitou.

² *archiepiscopo*] Eboracensi, ins.

³ *in*] om. D. I.

⁴ *Tunc*] MS. D. omits what follows as far as the king's letter, on p. 226.

parte archiepiscopi est appellatum. Capitulum nihilo-
minus ad electionem magistri Simonis Appuli in deca-
num processerunt. Hoc facto, dictus Simon ad regem,
qui, ut dictum est, erat in Alemannia, transfretavit.
Missi sunt etiam¹ ad sedem apostolicam ab archiepiscopo
nuncii ad prosequendam appellationem, ita tamen ut
per Alemanniam usque ad regem transitum facerent.
Illis ad regem venientibus, eoque salutato, et itineris
sui causis expositis, interdixit rex statim, ne alterutra
partium ob has causas ad curiam accederet Romanam;
inhibens ne regnum suum² ingrederetur qui sine ejus
assensu hoc aggredi præsumeret, proponens se pacem
inter illos sine dilatione reformaturum. Rediit itaque
unus ex nunciis archiepiscopi ad ipsum, cum litteris
regis continentibus ut ad eum cum omni festinatione
veniret; sicut etiam proposuerat, sed casu emergente
præpeditus est.

A.D. 1193.
Geoffrey ap-
peals to the
pope.
Simon goes
to the king
in Germany.

Richard for-
bids the ap-
peal to the
pope.

Medio siquidem tempore canonici Eboraci ecclesiam
majorem a consueta Divina celebrandi solemnitate, cam-
panas etiam a solito pulsandi officio suspenderunt; et
ob id tota civitas commota fuit: altaria etiam denuda-
verant; stallum archiepiscopi in choro sera præcluserant;
ostium per quod ei a palatio suo et capella descendenti³
in ecclesiam patebat ingressus, sera obstruxerant; et
alia plura in ejus contumeliam fecerant. Unde et ipse
a mari, ubi transfretare paratus erat, ad ecclesiam suam
rediens, clericos quosdam præmisit, monens et præci-
piens ecclesiæ ipsius ministris, ut, antiqua forma ser-
vata, in ea ministrarent. Qui ejus admonitionem et
præceptum contemnentes, ecclesiam vacuum reliquerunt,
et ab officio Divino destitutam.

The canons
suspend all
service in
the Cathed-
ral, and
lock out the
archbishop.

Eodem anno Clemens⁴ papa misit Huberto Walteri,
Cantuariensi electo, pallium.

The pall
sent to
archbishop
Hubert.

¹ *etiam*] om. B. I.

² *suum*] om. I.

³ *descendenti*] descendendi, I.

⁴ *Clemens*] Properly Celestine III.
Hubert received the pall, Nov. 7,
1193, at Canterbury.

A D. 1193. *Philippus rex Franciæ duxit sibi in uxorem Botildam,*
August. *filiam Waldemiri regis Dacorum.*

Marriage of
Philip with
a Danish
princess.

He takes a
dislike to
her.

He is di-
vorced from
her on the
ground of
consan-
guinity.

Eodem anno Philippus rex Franciæ desponsavit sibi Botildam,¹ filiam Waldemeri quondam regis Dacorum, sororem etiam² Cnut regis Dacorum modo regnantis, mense Septembris, apud Amiens, Sabbato:³ et in crastino fecit eam coronari et consecrari in reginam Franciæ, coram nunciis regis Dacorum, qui eam ad eum duxerant: scilicet ea intentione, quod prædictus rex Dacorum veniret in Angliam cum navali exercitu. Sed in crastino primæ noctis, qua prædictus rex Franciæ illam uxorem suam cognoverat, voluit eam dimittere secreti sui conscius. Et cum ipse vellet eam tradere in manus nunciorum fratris sui, ad reducendam in patriam suam, noluerunt eam recipere, sed abeuntes cum festinatione, reversi sunt in regiones suas, et illa remansit in custodia regis Franciæ mariti sui. Et paulo post factum est inter illos divortium per Willelmum Remensem archiepiscopum, et per sacramentum Reginaldi Carnotensis et Philippi Belvacensis episcoporum; et per sacramentum Roberti comitis de Druës, et comitis de Nevers, et Walteri⁴ camerarii regis Franciæ, et aliorum multorum; qui juraverunt quod prædicta filia regis Dacorum erat consanguinea comitis de Hainou,⁵ cujus filiam idem rex Franciæ uxorem habuerat: sed idem rex Franciæ hoc fecit fieri, ut acciperet sibi in⁶ conjugem filiam⁷ comitis Palatini de

¹ *Botildam*] Blank in G., which MS. later on consistently calls her Ingeburga. She is called Ingeburga generally: she was daughter of Waldemar I, king of Denmark 1157-1182; and sister of Canute VI., king 1182-1202.

² *etiam*] om. B. I.

³ *Sabbato*] Aug. 14.

⁴ *Walteri*] De Villebeon.

⁵ *comitis de Hainou*] Baldwin V.,

count of Hainault, father of queen Isabella, was great-grandson of Baldwin II, whose uncle Robert Friso, count of Flanders, was grandfather to Waldemar I., the father of Ingeburga.

⁶ *in*] om. B. I.

⁷ *filiam*] blank in A. for the name of the count. The Count Palatine was Conrad of Hohenstaufen, brother of Frederick Bar-

Reno in Alemannia, avunculi supradicti Henrici Romanorum imperatoris. Quæ cum regi Franciæ a patre et aliis parentibus suis esset concessa, refutavit eum: et consilio matris suæ nupsit Henrico duci Saxoniae, nepoti Ricardi regis Angliæ.

A D. 1193.
August.
He proposes another marriage, and is refused.

Interim Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri justitii Angliæ, ceperunt ad redemptionem regis, de unoquoque feodo militis viginti solidos, et quartam partem universorum laicorum reddituum, et omnes ecclesiarum calices, et cæteros ecclesiarum thesauros. Episcopi vero quidam ceperunt de clericis quartam partem reddituum suorum, et quidam decimam partem, ad redemptionem prædicti regis. Similiter factum est per omnes terras regis transmarinas; et sic infinitam adquisiverunt pecuniam. Deinde venerunt Landonias nuncii imperatoris, et receperunt ibi maximam partem redemptionis regis in pondere et mensura, et tradiderunt eam, sub sigillorum suorum testimonio, illis qui illam deferrent usque ad fines imperii, periculo regis Angliæ.

The justices exact enormous sums for the king's ransom.

It is paid in great part.

De terris quas imperator dedit Ricardo regi Angliæ pro homagio suo.

Præterea prædictus imperator dedit regi Angliæ, et carta sua confirmavit has terras subscriptas: scilicet, Provinciam, et Vianam, et Vienais,¹ et Marsilium, et Nerbonam, et Arleleblanc, et Leun supra Rodanum usque ad Alpes, et quicquid imperator habet in Burgundia, et homagium regis Arragoniæ, et homagium comitis de Disdera,² et homagium comitis de Sancto Ægidio. Et est sciendum, quod in his terris sunt

The emperor gives the kingdom of Arles with its dependencies to Richard.

barossa; and the lady was Agnes his daughter, who married Henry of Saxony, son of Henry the Lion, and Count Palatine in 1196. The proposal and rejection of Philip are

described most amusingly by William of Newburgh, lib. iv., c. 32.

¹ *Vienais*] Vianais, B. I.

² *Disdera*] The count of Die (?).

A D 1193. ¹quinque archiepiscopatus, et triginta tres ²episcopatus.
 Et est sciendum, quod supradictus imperator nunquam
 prædictis terris et hominibus dominari potuit; neque
 ipsi aliquem dominum ad præsentationem imperatoris
 recipere voluerunt.

The emp-
 per had no
 real hold on
 these lands.

Rex autem Angliæ statim misit in Angliam pro
 Alienor regina matre sua, et pro Waltero Rothoma-
 gensi ³archiepiscopo, et pro aliis multis, ut venirent ad
 eum in Alemanniam: et constituit Hubertum Cau-
 tuariensem archiepiscopum summum justitiarium in
 Anglia.

Richard
 sends for
 his mother,
 and makes
 Hubert
 Walter jus-
 ticiar.

Interim Henricus Romanorum imperator, per con-
 silium principum imperii sui, statuit Ricardo regi
 Angliæ diem liberationis suæ, a secunda feria post
 diem Natalis Domini in tres septimanas. Unde idem
 rex Angliæ in hac forma scripsit Huberto Cantuariensi
 archiepiscopo;

The day of
 Ricard's
 release fixed
 for three
 weeks after
 Christmas.

⁴*Epistola Ricardi regis Angliæ ad Hubertum Cantua-
 riensem archiepiscopum de liberatione sua.*

Dec. 22.
 Letter of
 Ricard to
 the arch-
 bishop.

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aqui-
 tanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, venerabili patri in Christo,
 “ et amico carissimo Huberto, eadem gratia Cantuariensi
 “ archiepiscopo, salutem, et sinceræ dilectionis plenitudinem.
 “ Quoniam certi sumus, quod liberationem nostram plurimum
 “ desideratis, et quod liberatio nostra admodum vos lætificat;
 “ idcirco volumus quod lætitiæ nostræ particeps sitis. Indo

¹quinque archiepiscopatus] Lyons, Arles, Vienne, Aix, and Narbonne.

²triginta tres] viginti tres, B. viginti quatuor, L. If the archbishops are the five mentioned in the last note, the sees contained in them are more nearly 33 than 24.

³Waltero Rothomagensi] The archbishop of Rouen's justiciarship thus terminates: he held it two years and a quarter (R. de Dic. 671); which calculated from the 10th

of October 1191 brings the date of the appointment of Hubert Walter to January 1194. According to Gervase, 1586, the appointment was made before Christmas. Early in that month the archbishop and queen Eleanor arrived in Germany, keeping the Epiphany at Cologne. On the morrow of S. Blaise, Feb. 4, they were with the king at Mentz.

⁴Here MS. D. resumes.

“ est, quod dilectioni vestræ dignum duximus significare, A.D. 1193.
 “ dominum imperatorem certum diem liberationis nostræ nobis Dec. 22.
 “ præfixisse in diem Lunæ proximam post vicesimam diem The day of
 “ Natalis Domini: et die Dominica proximo sequenti corona- release is
 “ bimur de regno Provenciæ quod nobis dedit. Unde mittimus fixed for
 “ in Angliam litteras domini imperatoris super his patentes Monday,
 “ vobis, et cæteris amicis nostris et benivolis; vos autem Jan. 17.
 “ interim pro omni posse vestro, quos scitis nos diligere,
 “ consolari velitis, et quos scitis promotionem nostram deside-
 “ rare. Teste meipso apud Spiram, vicesimo secundo die
 “ Decembris.”¹

*Epistola Henrici Romanorum imperatoris ad mag-
 nates Angliæ, de liberatione Ricardi regis Angliæ.*

“ Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et semper Dec. 20.
 “ Augustus, dilectis suis archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, Letter of the
 “ baronibus, militibus, et universis aliis fidelibus Ricardi emperor to
 “ illustris regis Angliæ, gratiam suam, et omne bonum. the English
 “ Universitati vestræ duximus intimandum, quod dilecto The day of
 “ amico nostro Ricardo, illustri regi Anglorum, domino vestro, the king's
 “ certum diem liberationis suæ statuimus, a secunda feria release is
 “ post diem Nativitatis Domini in tres septimanas, apud fixed for
 “ Spiram, sive apud Wermaciam; et inde in septem dies² Jan. 17, and
 “ posuimus ei diem coronationis suæ de regno Provenciæ, on the 24th
 “ quod ei promisimus; et hoc certum habeatis et indubitatum. he is to be
 “ Nostri siquidem propositi est et voluntatis, præfatum domi- crowned
 “ num vestrum sicut amicum nostrum specialem promovere, king of
 “ et magnificentius honorare. Datum apud Gheallusam,³ vi- Arles.
 “ gilia beati Thomæ Apostoli,”

Sed antequam pax ista confirmata esset inter im- Richard
 peratorem et regem, rex misit Willelmum Eliensem prevails on
 episcopum, cancellarium suum, et alios nuncios suos in John to re-
 Franciam, ad comitem Johannem fratrem suum, et turn to his
 effecit adversus eum quod ipse rediit in Normanniam, fealty.
 et juravit regi fratri suo fidelitatem et pacem contra

¹ *Decembris*] Septembris, added in a modern hand over an erasure, in L. The date is omitted in D.

² *dies*] om. B. D. L.

³ *Gheallusam*] Theallusam, A.

C. G. The emperor was at Geilens-
 hausen in December, and the text is
 doubtless the true reading. Böh-
 mer, 149. The date is omitted in
 D.

A D. 1193.
The wardens
of his castles
refuse to
give them
up, and he
returns to
Phil.p.

omnes homines: et rex præcepit quod omnia castella honorum quos ipse illi¹ dederat traderentur illi, citra mare et ultra: sed custodes illorum noluerunt tradere illi aliquod castellum per breve. Unde comes iratus regressus est ad regem Franciæ, et adhæsit ei: et rex Franciæ tradidit illi castellum de Driencurt, et castellum de Archis, quæ tradenda erant Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo.

Berengaria
arrives at
Rome, and
stays there
half a year.

Eodem anno Berengera regina Angliæ, et Johanna quondam regina Siciliæ, et filia imperatoris Cypri,² venerunt Romam³ sub custodia Stephani de Turneham; et a domino papa Cælestino et nobilibus Romanis honorifice sunt susceptæ; et moram fecerunt ibi fere per dimidium anni spatium, propter metum imperatoris: et cum inde recessissent, tradidit eas dominus papa in conductu magistri Mellur⁴ cardinalis; et perrexerunt usque Pisam. Deinde usque Jeneues. Deinde usque Marsiliam. Apud Marsiliam suscepit eas rex Arragoniæ, et exhibuit eis omnem honorem et reverentiam; et conduxit eas usque ad fines regni sui: et comes⁵ de Sancto Ægidio conduxit eas per terram suam. Et sic pervenerunt Pictavim.

She is
escorted
safely to
Poitiers.

Quintus annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Dec. 25.
Richard
keeps
Christmas
at Breyer.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo quarto, qui erat secundus annus captionis Ricardi regis Angliæ, idem Ricardus fuit adhuc in captione Henrici Romanorum imperatoris, in Alemannia apud Spiram, die Natalis Domini, quæ Sabbato evenit; et ibi mansit usque ad tempus liberationis suæ, quod statuerat ei imperator,

¹ illi] ei, B. D. I.

² Cypri] de Cypre, B. D. I.

³ Romam] et, ins. B. D. I.

⁴ Mellur] Meillar, B. C. G. I.;
and so corrected in A. Melur, D.

Melior, cardinal priest of SS. John and Paul, tit. Pammachii.

⁵ comes] Raymond V., count of Toulouse, died in 1194; his son Raymond VI., who afterwards married queen Johanna, succeeded him.

videlicet, a secunda feria ¹ post diem Nativitatis Domini in tres septimanas.

A. D. 1194.
January.

Cumque imperator venisset illuc, una cum archiepiscopis, episcopis, et ducibus et magnatibus imperii sui, et diu tractasset de liberatione regis Angliæ, venerunt ad imperatorem nuncii regis Franciæ, et nuncii comitis Johannis fratris regis Angliæ; et obtulerunt imperatori ex parte regis Franciæ quinquaginta millia marcas argenti, et ex parte comitis Johannis triginta millia marcas argenti, tali conditione, ut ipse regem Angliæ teneret in captione sua usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis ² proxime sequens; aut si imperator mallet, darent ei in fine uniuscujusque mensis, quamdiu ipse regem Angliæ in captione sua teneret, mille libras argenti; aut si imperator mallet, rex Franciæ daret ei centum millia marcarum argenti, et comes Johannes daret ei quinquaginta millia marcarum argenti, tali conditione, ut ipse traderet eis regem Angliæ, vel saltem in captione sua teneret ab illo tempore per spatium unius anni. Ecce quomodo amabant eum!

Philip and John propose to the emperor that he shall retain Richard in captivity until Michaelmas.

Quibus auditis, imperator distulit diem liberationis ³ regis Angliæ, et alium diem liberationis suæ statuit ei in Purificatione Sanctæ Mariæ, apud Maguntum.⁴

The emperor delays the release until Feb. 2.

Interim Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, octavo die Natalis Domini, Eboracum venit, et consilio virorum prudentum ministros constituit in metropolitana ecclesia Eboraci, quam vacuam invenit: qui in ipsa ecclesia, sicut decebat, solemniter deservirent. Et hoc ita observatum est, donec canonici et eorum capellani per licentiam potestatem et violentiam essent restituti. Post hæc quatuor ex majoribus ecclesiæ, ob prædictam ecclesiæ suspensionem excommunicati, ad regem, tunc temporis liberatum, transfretaverunt; et licentia ab eo accepta, qui commotus fuerat quia archiepiscopus, sicut

On Jan. 1 Geoffrey, archbishop of York, places now clerks in the cathedral who h was without ministers.

¹ feria] om. D.

² Michaelis] Archangel, ins. Sa-
vile

³ liberationis] suæ, ins. D. I.

⁴ Maguntum] Manguntum, D. I.

A. D. 1193.
January.
Appendix to
Rome.

in mandatis acceperat, ad eum non venerat, Roman profecti sunt. Contra quos nuncii ab archiepiscopo sunt illuc destinati.

The pope
waiting the
question of
right,
nominates
Simon of
Apulia to
the deanery.

Utraque autem parte in presentia Cœlestini papæ constituta, de electione decani diutius est agitatum et deliberatum, quoniam post appellationem rite interpositam factam esse dinoscebatur, et ideo¹ irritanda, vel potius irritata erat denuncianda. Dominus vero papa cognitioni causæ, utrum si ad archiepiscopum² decanatus donatio, an ad capitulum decani electio spectaret, tunc temporis volens supersedere; fretus sua potestate, de cujus amplitudine disputare fas non est; præfato Simoni Apulo, salvo in posterum tam ipsius archiepiscopi quam capituli jure, decanatum contulit, confirmavit, et per anulum suum aureum investivit. Quo articulo ita exposito, statim processerunt ad diffamationem ipsius archiepiscopi, et accusationem; proponentes eum esse suum et aliorum clericorum spoliatorem violentum, exactorem improbum, et ecclesiarum fores manu armata frangere, ecclesiastica beneficia Simoniace dividere et retinere, appellationibus non deferre, privilegia Romani pontificis contemnere; et, ut breviter dicatur, asserebant eum omne episcopale officium vilipendentem, nuceputio, venationi, et aliis curis militaribus deditum esse. Et his et aliis de causis intendebant eum deponere; illi maxime, quos ipse maximis honoribus et inæstimabilibus divitiis et redditibus in Eboracensi ecclesia ditaverat, et, ultra quam debuerat per Deum, exaltaverat. De talibus dicit Dominus, "Filiis enutrivisti

The canons
bring heavy
charges
against
Geoffrey.

Isa. i. 2.
"et exaltavi, ipsi autem spreverunt Me." Caveant ergo sibi, ne spernat eos justus Judex; et ne cum Juda proditore condemnentur in gehenna.

The pope
orders
to require
into the

His propositis, scripsit dominus papa Hugoni Lincolnensi episcopo, et conjudicibus suis, ut si essent qui archiepiscopum super objectis accusarent, audirent dili-

¹ ideo] om. D. I.

| ² archiepiscopum] episcopum, D. I.

genter hinc inde proposita, et veritatem inquisitam sigillis suis signatam ad sedem destinarent apostolicam. Si vero accusator non appareret, et archiepiscopus fama publica laboraret, ei purgationem cum tribus episcopis et totidem abbatibus indicerent. Sed quia archiepiscopus ante citationem iudicum appellaverat, et iter ad prosequendam appellationem arripuerat, dicti iudices ei spatium trium mensium, secundum quod in rescripto domini papæ continebatur, ad ejus prosecutionem assignaverunt, diem præfigentes kalendas Junii. Sed archiepiscopus ad terminum illum non venit, tum propter regis prohibitionem, tum propter aeris intemperiem, quæ tunc temporis est Romæ. Clerici vero ejus eodem tempore in curia Romana consistentes, et has causas absentiae suæ prætendentes, impetraverunt, ut quicquid contra archiepiscopum post appellationem medio tempore factum fuerat, in irritum revocaretur, quia per eum non stetit quo minus ad curiam venisset Romanam; et terminus quo se apostolico præsentaret conspectui, infra octavas Beati Martini proximo sequentis, est ei a domino papa præfixus: et quoniam nec tunc in curia Romana per se vel per sufficientem responsalem comparuit, ad Natale Domini proximo sequens, ab omni administratione episcopali suspensus fuit.

A.D. 1194.
truth of the charges.

The judges fix June 1 for the hearing of the appeal at Rome.

Geoffrey does not go to Rome.

The day postponed to Nov. 18, but he does not appear, and is suspended.

De colloquio inter imperatorem et Ricardum regem Angliæ.

Interim Henricus Romanorum imperator, cum magnatibus imperii sui, et Ricardus rex Angliæ, cum Alienor regina matre sua, et Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, et Willelmo Eliensi episcopo cancellario suo, et Savarico Batoniensi episcopo, convenerunt apud Maguntum¹ in Purificatione Beatæ Mariæ; et celebrato ibi concilio de liberatione regis Angliæ, imperator

Feb. 2.
Meeting of the king and emperor at Mentz.

¹ *Maguntum*] Manguntum, B. D. I.

A. D. 1194.
Feb. 2.
The emperor shows Richard the proposals of Philip and John.

Richard engages the emperor's counsellors in his favour.

voluit a pacto resilire, propter cupiditatem pecuniæ quam rex Franciæ et comes Johannes ei obtulerant. Et adducens secum nuncios regis Franciæ et nuncios comitis Johannis, de quorum numero erat Robertus de Nunant, frater Hugonis Coventrensis episcopi, tradidit regi Angliæ litteras regis Franciæ et comitis Johannis legendas, quas ipsi miserant contra liberationem illius. Quibus visis et lectis, rex plurimum turbatus est et confusus, desperans de liberatione sua. Convenit ergo¹ super hoc Maguntinum,² et Coloniensem,³ et Saxeburgensem⁴ archiepiscopos, et Wermaicensem,⁵ et de Spire,⁶ et de Legis⁷ episcopos; et de Suave,⁸ fratrem imperatoris, et de Ostricio,⁹ et de Luvain¹⁰ duces; et comitem Palatinum¹¹ de Reno, et cæteros magnates imperii, qui constituti fuerant ex parte imperatoris fidejussores inter illum et regem Angliæ super pactis inter illos contractis.

De liberatione Ricardi regis Angliæ.

They urge Henry to fulfil his agreement.

Qui audacter introierunt ad imperatorem, et plurimum increpaverunt eum de cupiditate sua, qui ita impudenter a pacto suo resilire volebat; et effecerunt adversus eum quod ipse liberum et quietum dimisit

¹ *ergo*] per consiliarium suum, ins. Savile.

² *Maguntinum*] Manguntinum, I. Conrad of Wittelsbach, 1183-1200; cardinal bishop of Sabina.

³ *Coloniensem*] Adolf, count of Altena, 1193-1205, whose alliance with Richard dates from this time.

⁴ *Saxeburgensem*] Adalbert of Bohemia, 1183-1200.

⁵ *Wermaicensem*] Henry of Mastrecht, 1192-1195.

⁶ *Spire*] Spir, D. I.; Spira, G. Otto, count of Henneberg, 1187-1200.

⁷ *Legis*] Probably Simon of Limburg, son of duke Henry III, who was elected in 1193, and received investiture; but was displaced and made a cardinal by Celestine, in 1194.

⁸ *Suave*] Conrad, the emperor's brother.

⁹ *Ostricio*] Leopold V.

¹⁰ *Luvain*] Henry the Warrior, 1190-1235.

¹¹ *Palatinum*] Conrad of Hohenstaufen, 1156-1195.

regem Angliæ a captione sua; ita tamen quod rex Angliæ tradidit imperatori Walterum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum,¹ et Savericum Batoniensem episcopum, et Baldewinum Wac, et alios multos, filios comitum et baronum suorum, obsides de residuo pecuniæ redemptionis suæ, et de pace servanda imperatori et imperio suo, et omni terræ suæ dominationis. Et Maguntinus et Coloniensis archiepiscopi tradiderunt eum in manu Alienor matris suæ liberum et quietum ex parte imperatoris, pridie nonas Februarii, feria sexta, die Ægyptiaca, quam moderni diem malam vocant, et sic in die mala liberavit eum Dominus.

A.D. 1194.
Feb. 4.
Interchange
of hostages
and release
of the king.

Ps. xli. 1.

Cum autem idem rex rogaret Robertum de Nunant, fratrem Hugonis Coventrensis episcopi, ut pro illo obses esset, respondit Robertus, quod ipse erat homo comitis Johannis, et ideo noluit pro ipso obses esse. Unde rex iratus præcepit illum capi, et in carcerem mitti; et factum est ita.

Robert of
Nunant re-
fuses to be a
hostage.

Eodem vero die, quo rex liberatus fuit de captione imperatoris, misit Salt de Bruil,² in terram Sulie, ad Henricum comitem Campaniæ nepotem suum, et ad alios Christianorum principes, mandans eis diem liberationis suæ; et quod ipse, si Deus fecerit ei vindictam de inimicis suis, et pacem dederit, veniet ad terminum statutum ad succurrendum illis contra paganos. Promisit etiam prædicto Salt de Bruil, quod quadraginta libratas terræ daret ei in reversione sua de terra Sulie.

Richard
sends a mes-
sage into
Syria, that
he will re-
turn at the
time ap-
pointed.

Eodem die rex summonuit per litteras suas Hugonem Coventrensem episcopum, quod ipse veniret in curia sua, et staret iudicio episcoporum, in eo quod ipse episcopus erat, et iudicio laicorum in eo quod ipse de eo laicalem tenuerat bailliam, super his quæ adversus eum loqueretur.

He sum-
mons Hugh,
bishop of
Coventry, to
appear in
his court.

Eodem die Romanorum imperator, et archiepiscopi

The em-
peror and

¹ *archiepiscopum*] om. I.
² *Bruil*] nuncium quendam, ins.
Savile. Saut de Bruill is men-

tioned in the Close Rolls of John,
A.D. 1205; ed. Hardy, p. 23.

A. D. 1194.
Feb. 4.
princes give
notice to
John and
Philip to
surrender
Richard's
castles & c.
to their
lands.

et episcopi, et duces et comites imperii, facto communi scripto, et sigillis suis appositis, mandaverunt regi Franciæ et comiti Johanni, quod statim visis litteris illis redderent regi Angliæ castella, civitates, munitiones, villas, et prædia, et alia universa, quæ ipsi super eum ceperant, quamdiu ipse in captione imperatoris fuerat; et nisi fecerint, scirent pro certo, quod ipsi juvarent regem Angliæ pro posse suo ad recuperandum omne quod amiserat.

De homagiis factis Ricardo regi Angliæ a magnatibus Alemanniæ.

Richard
makes
friends and
allies among
the German
princes.

Deinde rex Angliæ promisit, et cartis suis confirmavit, quibusdam archiepiscopis et episcopis, et ducibus et comitibus, et baronibus¹ multis de imperio, redditus annuos² pro homagiis et fidelitatibus, et auxiliis eorum contra regem Franciæ. Recepit itaque homagium de archiepiscopo Maguntino, et de archiepiscopo Coloniensi, et de episcopo de Legis, et de duce Ostriciï, et de duce de Luvain, et de marchiso³ de Munferrat, et de duce de Nemburc, et de duce Suaviæ fratre imperatoris, et de comite Palatino de Reno, et de filio comitis de Henou, et de comite de Holande,⁴ et de aliis multis, salva fidelitate imperatoris.

De recessu Ricardi regis Angliæ a captione imperatoris.

Length of
his cap-
tivity.

Et est sciendum, quod rex Angliæ fuit in captione imperatoris per spatium unius anni, et sex hebdomadarum, et trium dierum. Liberato autem rege, omnes qui aderant præ gaudio lacrymati sunt. Deinde im-

¹ *baronibus*] et, ins. B. D. I.

² *annuos*] anno, D. I.

³ *marchiso*] Bon face, marquis of Montferrat, received, in 1197, 800*l.* as his fee from Richard, and

26*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.* as a present. Stapleton, *Norman Rolls*, ii. xiv. and 301.

⁴ *Holande*] Dietrich VII., 1190-1203.

perator tradidit regi salvum conductum, usque ad¹ portum de Amvers. Cumque rex Coloniam venisset, archiepiscopus Coloniae recepit eum cum gaudio; et pro exultatione liberationis illius celebravit Missam² in hunc modum, "Nunc scio vere quia misit Dominus angelum Suum, et eripuit me de manu Herodis, et de exspectatione plebis Judæorum," etc.³ Et cum rex inde recederet, prædictus archiepiscopus conduxit eum usque ad portum de Amvers, ubi Renus fluvius cadit in mare. Et illuc convenit multitudo navium, quæ de Anglia venerant contra regem. Et portus ille de Amvers est in terra ducis de Luvain. Quo cum rex venisset, intravit galeam Alani Trenchemer, ut cum ea facilius transiret inter insulas; singulis autem noctibus exiens de galea illa intravit navem magnam et pulcherrimam, quæ venerat de Rie, et in ea jacuit in nocte; et in die rediit ad galeam, donec perveniret ad portum de Swiene, qui est in Flandria, in terra comitis de Henou, et fecit quatuor dietas a portu de Amvers, usque ad portum de Swine,⁴ et in portu de Swine fecit moram quinque dierum; et sexta die circa horam tertiam recessit a portu de Swine, et in crastino post horam diei nonam applicuit in Angliam apud Sandicum portum, die Dominica, tertio idus Martii.⁵

A.D. 1194.
February.
His reception at
Cologne.

March.
He reaches
Antwerp,
and goes
thence to
Swine.

He sails
from Swine,
and lands at
Sandwich,
Mar. 13.

¹ *ad*] om. I.

² *missam*] These words are the introit of the feast Ad Vincula S. Petri, August 1. On the 22nd of February is the feast of S. Peter's Chair at Antioch, which has no special service in the Missal, but follows the rite of S. Peter's Chair at Rome, Jan. 18. We must suppose then that Adolf substituted for the service of Jan. 18 that of Aug. 1, by a convenient and courtier-like mistake, on the 22nd of February, on which day it seems most probable that the incident occurred.

³ See R. de Diceto, c. 672. On

this occasion Richard granted a charter to the merchants of Cologne, relieving them from a payment of two shillings paid annually for their guild-hall in London. Pauli, *Bilder aus Alt-England*, p. 151. The charter as given in Sartorius, *Urkundliche Geschichte der Ursprunges der Deutschen Hanse*, ed. Lappenberg, ii. 11, is dated at Louvain, Feb. 6: but this is impossible.

⁴ *Swine*] Sweine, D.; Swiene, I.

⁵ According to this computation Richard left Antwerp on Friday, March 4, and reached Swine on Monday the 7th. He had then

A D 1194.
Feb. 9.

John sends
a foolish
messenger
to England,
who boasts
to the arch-
bishop of his
master's
frensh p.
with Phil p.

Interim non longe ante adventum regis,¹ venit in Angliam Adam de Sancto Eadmundo, clericus et familiaris comitis Johannis, missus ab eo in Angliam² cum litteris ad castella sua munienda contra regem fratrem suum. Qui cum Lundonias venisset, et sine impedimento transire potuisset, accessit ad hospitium Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et comedit cum illo, multa jactans de prosperitate domini sui, et de familiaritate regis Franciæ quam habebat adversus dominum suum, dicens quod rex Franciæ tradiderat domino suo castellum de Driencurt, et castellum de Archis, quæ tradenda erant archiepiscopo Remensi, sicut in supradicto scripto continetur; et plura tradidisset domino suo, si dominus suus haberet homines in quibus confideret.

The mayor
of London
arrests the
messenger.

His itaque et aliis jactantiis prædictus Adam plurimum exasperavit dominum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, et omnes qui audierunt verbum illud; sed nemo misit in eum manum propter reverentiam mensæ. Attamen post prandium, cum prædictus Adam ad hospitium suum rediret, major Londoniarum injecit manus in eum, et tenuit; et cepit omnia brevia sua, in quibus mandata comitis Johannis continebantur, et tradidit ea Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Qui in crastino, convocatis coram eo episcopis, comitibus, et baronibus regni, ostendit eis litteras comitis Johannis, et earum tenorem.

Council held
Feb. 10.

Et statim per commune consilium regni definitum est

spent a month in Germany between Meutz and Antwerp, where he had to wait a long time for a wind (R. Coggesh.): but as no mention is made of his coronation, which should have been performed at Ales, we may conclude that it did not take place. Ralph de Diceto places the landing at Sandwich on the 20th instead of the 13th of March: Gervase makes him land on the Saturday, March 12. Ralph

of Coggeshall confirms Hoveden, but gives the hour, "the second hour of the day," differently. Richard went on to Canterbury on the Sunday (Gerv. 1532); and met the archbishop on the way to Rochester, on the Monday. He reached London on the Wednesday after he landed. R. Dic. 672.

¹ ante adventum regis] Feb. 9, as appears from what follows.

² Angliam] Anglia, D. I.

quod comes Johannis dissaisiaretur de omnibus tene-
 mentis suis in Anglia, et ut castella sua obsiderentur: et factum est ita.

A.D. 1194.
 Feb. 10.
 John dis-
 possessed of
 his lands.

Eodem die Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo Lincolnensis, et Ricardus Lundoniensis, et Gilbertus Rofensis, et Godefridus Wintoniensis, et Wigornensis et Herefordensis episcopi, et Henricus Exoniensis electus, et abbates et clerici multi Cantuariensis diocesis, convenerunt in capella monachorum infirmorum apud Westmonasterium, et sententiam anathematis tulerunt in comitem Johannem, et in omnes fautores ejus et consiliarios, qui pacem et regnum regis Angliæ turbaverunt vel turbarent, nisi relicta hostilitate ad satisfactionem venirent. Deinde appellarunt ad præsentiam domini papæ contra Willelmum Eliensem episcopum, ne ipse de cætero fungeretur in Anglia legationis officio; et appellationem suam sigillis suis confirmaverunt, et miserunt illam domino regi, deinde summo pontifici confirmandam. Facta est autem hæc appellatio quarto idus Februarii, feria quinta.

The bishops excommunicate him;

and appeal to the pope against the bishop of Ely's legation.

Omnes igitur, quibus commissa fuerant comitis Johannis castella obsidenda, reversi sunt in patrias suas. Episcopus vero Dunelmensis, cui commissum fuit castellum de Tikehil¹ obsidendum, magnum congregavit exercitum Eboraci siriæ, et de Northimbria, et de aliis terris suis, et obsedit illud. Et comes David, frater regis Scotiæ, et Ranulfus comes Cestriæ, et² comes de Fereres, cum magno exercitu obsedit castellum de Nottingham. Et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum magno exercitu obsedit Merleberge; quod infra paucos dies redditum est ei, salvis vita et membris inclusorum. Similiter redditum est ei castellum de Lencastre, quod Theobaldus Walteri, frater ejus, custodierat ex parte comitis Johannis; et Mons Sancti

The bishop of Durham besieges Tickhill castle; the earls of Huntingdon and Chester, Nottingham; and the archbishop takes Marlborough.

Lancaster and S. Michael's mount are surrendered.

¹ *Tikehil*] Tykeil, B.; Tikehilla, G.; Tikeil, I.

² Blank for the name of the earl in A.; William.

A. D. 1194.
February.

Michaelis in Cornubia redditus est ei, quem Henricus de la Pumerai,¹ expulsis inde monachis, contra regem munierat. Idem vero Henricus, audito adventu regis, obiit timore perterritus.

Nottingham
and Tikehill
held out
until the
king's
arrival.

March.
Then Tike-
hill surren-
ders.

Hæc autem tria castella, videlicet, Merleberge et Lencastre² et Mons Sancti Michaelis, reddita fuerunt ante adventum regis: cætera vero duo, scilicet Nottingham et Tikehil, viriliter restiterunt impugnantibus. Sed audito adventu regis, illi de castello de Tikehil, per licentiam Dunelmensis episcopi, miserunt duos milites ad videndum si rex venisset, et ad offerendum ei castellum illud. Et noluit rex recipere, nisi ponerent se in misericordia ipsius sine aliqua exceptione. Et sic redeuntes narraverunt Roberto de la Mare, constabulario, et cæteris inclusis, voluntatem regis. Qui inuito consilio cum Dunelmensi episcopo, qui eis vitam et membra promisit, tradiderunt ei ad opus regis castellum de Tikehil.³

March 25.
The king
comes to
Notting-
ham.

Illi autem qui in castello de Nottingham erant, non miserunt quenquam suorum obviam regi. Unde rex iratus venit ad Nottingham, die Annunciationis Dominiæ, feria sexta, cum tanta hominum multitudine, et sonitu tubarum et buccinum, quod illi qui in castello erant, audientes hoc et videntes, admirati sunt, conturbati sunt, commoti sunt;⁴ tremor apprehendit eos: et tamen credere non poterant quod rex venisset, sed sperabant⁵ totum hoc factum fuisse a principibus exercitus ad illudendum eis. Rex vero hospitatus est prope castellum; ita quod sagittarii de castello sagittabant homines regis ante pedes ejus. Unde rex iratus armavit se et exercitum suum ad faciendum insultum in castellum; et factus conflictus multus inter illos et

¹ *Henricus de la Pumerai*] Brother of Jolan de Pumerai (B. Pet. i. 163), who was nephew to earl Reginald of Cornwall.

² *Lencastre*] Lancastre, G. L.;

Lencastre, A., corrected to Lancastere.

³ *Tikehil*] Tikel, D.; Tikel, I.

⁴ *commoti sunt*] om. D. I.

⁵ *sperabant*] putabant, D.

homines castelli: et multi ceciderunt ex utraque parte vulnerati et mortui. Rex vero interfecit sagitta unum militem. Prevalluit itaque rex. et retrusis illis in castellum, cepit quasdam preparationes¹ quas fecerant ante portas. et portas exteriores combussit.

A.D. 1194.
March 25.
He takes the barbicans.

Eodem die venit illic Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et crucem suam ante se portari fecit. Gaufridus vero Eboracensis archiepiscopus crucem suam non portavit; sed conquestus est regi de archiepiscopo, qui crucem suam portare fecit in Eboracensi diocesi. Quod cum Cantuariensis archiepiscopus audisset, et vidisset quod Eboracensis archiepiscopus crucem suam non portasset, dixit, "Ego crucem meam per totam Angliam porto, et portare debeo, sicut totius Angliæ primas; tu autem crucem tuam non portas, et forsitan portare non debes: et ideo rebus sic existentibus appello ad dominum papam."

The archbishop of Canterbury has his cross carried in the province of York.

Vicesima sexta die mensis Martii rex Angliæ fecit² perarias suas fieri, habens in proposito quod amplius insultum non faceret in castellum, donec machinæ suæ bellicæ pararentur; sed furcas levare fecit prope castellum, in quibus suspendit quosdam servientes comitis Johannis extra castellum captos.

March 26.
Richard prepares for a siege.

Vicesima septima die mensis Martii Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, et illi qui cum eo erant in obsidione castelli de Tikehil, venerunt ad regem apud Nottingham, adducentes secum captivos qui capti fuerant in castello de Tikehil; et rex processit obviam illis. Et viso rege, episcopus Dunelmensis descendit, et rex³ similiter obviam ei, et osculatus est eum. Deinde ascendentes equos suos venerunt ad obsidionem.

March 27.
The bishop of Durham arrives from Tickhill.

¹ *preparationes*] id est, barbicans, A. B. I. interl. G. has the words in the text.

² *fecit*] præcepit, D.

³ *rex*] om. D. I.

A D. 1104.
March 27.

Castellum de Notingham redditum est Ricardo regi Anglie.

The de-
founders of
Notingham
castle pro-
pore to
submit.

Eodem die cum rex sedisset ad prandium suum, Radulfus Murdac et Willelmus de Vendeval, constabularii castelli de Notingham, miserunt duos ex sociis suis ad videndum regem. Quo viso regressi sunt in castellum, nunciantes eis qui miserant eos, ea quae audierant et viderant, de rege et statu ejus. Quae cum Willelmus de Vendeval et Rogerus de Muntbegun¹ audissent, cum aliis duodecim exierunt a castello, et posuerunt se in misericordia regis, et amplius non redierunt in castellum.

March 28.
They sur-
render

Vicesima octava die Martii, mediante Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Radulfus Murdac, et Philippus de Wirecestre et Radulfus de Wirecestre, fratres ejus, et universi qui in castello erant, tradiderunt regi castellum, et posuerunt se in misericordia regis de vita et membris et terreno honore.

March 29.
Richard
views Sher-
wood forest.

Vicesima nona die mensis Martii, Ricardus rex Angliae profectus est videre Clipestune et forestas de Sirewude,² quas ipse³ nunquam viderat antea; et placuerunt ei multum: et eodem die rediit ad Nothingham.

Concilium Ricardi [regis] Angliae apud Nothingham.

March 30.
Great coun-
cil held at
Notting-
ham.

Tricesima die mensis Martii, feria quarta, Ricardus rex Angliae celebravit primum concilii sui diem apud Notingham; cui interfuerunt Alienor regina mater ejus, et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui in dextris regis sedebat in concilio illo, et Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, qui a sinistris ejus sedebat, et Hugo Dunelmensis, et Hugo Lincolnensis, et Willelmus Eliensis regis cancellarius, et Willelmus Herefordensis, et Hen-

¹ *Muntbegun*] Munbegum, B.
Mundegum, D.; Munbegun, I.

² *Sirewude*] Sirewde, B. I.

³ *ipse*] om. B. D. I.

ricus Wigornensis, et Henricus Exoniensis, et Johannes Candidæ Casæ episcopi; et comes David frater regis Scotiæ, et Hamelinus comes de Warena, et Ranulfus comes Cestriæ, et Willelmus¹ comes de Ferreres, et Willelmus comes de Salesbiria, et Rogerus Bigot.

A D. 1194.
March 30.
Council at Nottingham.

Eodem die rex dissaisivit Gyrardum de Camvilla de castello et vicecomitatu Lincolnensi, et Hugonem Bardolf de vicecomitatu Eboraci siræ, et de castello Eboraci, et de castello de Scardheburg, et de custodia de Westmerilande; et omnia supradicta exposuit venditioni. Unde factum est, quod cum cancellarius conventionasset, se daturum regi pro vicecomitatu Eboraci siræ, et² pro vicecomitatu Lincolnensi, et pro vicecomitatu Nordhantesiræ,³ mille et quingentas marcas in principio conventionis, et singulis annis de unoquoque prædictorum comitatum centum marcas de incremento; Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus obtulit regi tria millia marcarum pro vicecomitatu Eboracensi, et singulis annis centum marcas de incremento: et sic abjecto cancellario, Eboracensis archiepiscopus obtinuit vicecomitatum Eboracensem, et ita facta est regis serviens, et præcipitavit se in potentias regis.

The sherrifdoms of Lincoln and Yorkshire, and the castles of York and Scarborough put up for sale.

The archbishop buys the sherrifdom of Yorkshire.

Tricesima prima die mensis Martii, scilicet pridie kalendas Aprilis, rex Angliæ celebravit secundum diem concilii sui; in quo ipse petiit sibi fieri iudicium de comite Johanne fratre suo, qui, contra fidelitatem quam ei juraverat, castella sua occupaverat, et terras suas transmarinas et cismarinas destruxerat, et fœdus cum inimico suo rege Franciæ contra eum inierat. Similiter et de Hugone de Nunant Coventrensi episcopo sibi fieri iudicium postulavit, qui secreti sui conscius eum reliquerat, et regi Franciæ et comiti Johanni inimicis suis adhæserat, omne malum in perniciem regni sui machinans.

March 31.
The king demands sentence against John and the bishop of Coventry.

¹ Willelmus] om. B. G. I.; added in A.

² pro . . . et] om. I.

³ Nordhantesiræ] Northantsyre, B. I.

A. D. 1191.
March 31.
They are
summoned
to appear
within forty
days.

Et iudicatum est, quod comes Johannes et episcopus Coventrensis peremptorie seitaerentur; et si infra quadraginta dies non venerint, nec juri steterint, iudicaverunt comitem Johannem demeruisse regnum, et episcopum Coventrensem subjacere iudicio episcoporum, in eo quod ipse episcopus erat, et iudicio laicorum, in eo quod ipse vicecomes regis extiterat.

April 1.
Richard im-
poses a tax
of two shil-
lings on each
carucate,
and makes
other ex-
actions.

Kalendis Aprilis, prima die ejusdem mensis, prædictus rex Angliæ celebravit tertium diem colloquii sui: in quo constituit sibi dari de unaquaque carucata terre totius Angliæ duos solidos, quod ab antiquis nominatur *Temantale*.¹ Deinde præcepit quod unusquisque faceret sibi tertiam partem servitii militaris, sicut singulus feodus apportat, ad transfretandum cum illo in Normanniam. Deinde exiebat ab monachis ordinis Cisterciensis totam lanam suam de hoc anno; sed quia hoc facere erat eis grave et importabile, fecerunt cum eo finem pecuniarium.

April 3.
He hears
conplaints
against the
archbishop
of York.

Secunda die mensis Aprilis, Sabbato, celebravit diem quartum et ultimum concilii sui: in quo omnes, tam clerici quam laici, qui volebant sibi conqueri de archiepiscopo Eboracensi, fecerunt querimonias multas de rapinis et injustis exactionibus: sed archiepiscopus Eboracensis nullum dedit eis responsum. Deinde per consilium et machinationem cancellarii, ut dicitur, Girardus de Camvilla² fuit retatus³ de receptatione prædonum, qui rapuerunt bona mercatorum euntium ad nundinas de Stanford; et ab eo recesserunt ad rapinam illam faciendam, et de rapina illa redierunt ad eum. Præterea appellaverunt eum de lesione regie majestatis, in eo quod ipse ad vocationem justitiarum regis venire noluit, nec juri stare de prædicta recepta-

Gerard
Camville
indicted for
treason and
robbery

¹ *Temantale*] This is the Northumbrian word for *tithing*, Vol. ii., p. 228, and is certainly wrongly applied by our author in this place: it would answer more to *Danegeld*

than to anything else that could have been in his mind

² *Camvilla*] Canvillis, B. D. I.

³ *retatus*] *rectatus*, D. I.

tione raptorum, neque eos ad justitiam regis producere; A.D. 1194.
April 2.
sed respondit se esse hominem comitis Johannis, et velle Other charges against him.
in curia sua juri stare. Præterea appellaverunt cum ¹
quod ipse fuit in vi et adjutorio cum comite Johanne,
et aliis inimicis regis, ad castella regis de Notingham et
de Tikehil capienda. Girardus vero de Camvilla negavit
omnia quæ objiciebantur ei ab illis; et illi dederunt
vadium de prosequendo, et Girardus dedit vadium de
defendendo se per unum de liberis hominibus suis.

Eodem die statuit dominus rex diem coronationis suæ The king fixes April 17 for his coronation; and meets the king of Scots at Clipstone.
apud Wintoniam in clauso Paschæ.

Eodem die perrexit rex usque Clipestun contra Wil-
helmum regem Scottorum: et præcepit ut omnes qui
capti fuerant in castello de Notingham, et castello de
Tikehil, et castello de Merleberge, et castello de Lan-
castre, et in Monte Sancti Michaelis, convenirent ad
eum apud Wintoniam in crastino clausi Paschæ.

Tertia die mensis Aprilis, Dominica scilicet in Ramis April 3.
He keeps Palm Sunday at Clipstone.
Palmarum, fecit rex Angliæ moram apud Clipestun, et
rex Scottorum apud Wirkesope propter diem solemnem.

Quarta die mensis Aprilis rex Angliæ et rex Scotiæ April 4.
Southwell.
venerunt apud Suuelle.

Quinta die mensis Aprilis rex Angliæ et rex Scotiæ April 5.
Malton.
venerunt ² ad Maltonam, ubi rex Scotiæ petiit a rege
Angliæ dignitates et honores quos prædecessores sui
habuerunt in Anglia. Petiit etiam comitatum North-
imbriæ, et Cumberlande et Westmerilande, et comita-
tum de Lancastre, sibi reddi de jure prædecessorum
suorum. Cui rex respondit, se satisfacturum per con-
siliu ³ baronum suorum. The king of Scots demands Northumberland, Cumberland, and Westmoreland.

Sexta die mensis Aprilis venerunt prædicti reges ad April 6.
Rutland.
domum Petri forestarii de Rotelande.

Septima die mensis Aprilis venerunt prædicti reges

¹ *cum*] om. I.

² *apud Suuelle . . . venerunt*] om.
D. I.; Suthwell, G.

³ *consilium*] comitum et, ins. Sa-
vile, from B.

A. D. 1194.
April 7-8.
Gaitington.

April 9.
Northampton.

Richard refuses the king of Scots' request.

apud Gaidinton.¹ Octava die mensis Aprilis prædicti reges fecerunt moram apud Gaidintoniam² propter reverentiam Parasceue Domini. Nono die mensis Aprilis, in vigilia Paschæ, venerunt prædicti reges ad Northamptoniam: et decima die et undecima die mensis Aprilis fecerunt prædicti reges moram apud Northantun: ubi rex Angliæ, habito cum episcopis et comitibus et baronibus suis cum deliberatione consilio, respondit regi Scotiæ, quod petitionem suam, quam fecerat de Northimbria, nulla ratione facere debuerat, et maxime illis diebus, in quibus omnes fere principes regni Francorum facti sunt ei inimici. Nam si hoc fecisset, videretur quod hoc magis ex timore procederet, quam ex dilectionis affectu.

De conductu qualis debeat fieri regi Scotiæ, quotiescunque in Angliam venerit per mandatum regis Angliæ.

April 11.
He makes arrangement for the honourable escort of the king of Scots to and from court.

Tamen rex Angliæ in præsentia Alienor matris suæ, et Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi, et Gocelini³ Glascuensis episcopi, et aliorum multorum tam clericorum quam laicorum utriusque regni, concessit, et carta sua confirmavit Willelmo regi Scottorum,⁴ et hæredibus suis in perpetuum; quod quandocunque ipsi per summonitionem regis Angliæ ad curiam suam venient, episcopus Dunelmensis et vicecomes Northimbræ recipient eum ad aquam de Tuede, et in salvo conductu ducent eos usque ad aquam de Taise;⁵ et ibi recipient eos archiepiscopus Eboracensis et vicecomes Eboraci, et in salvo conductu ducent eos usque ad fines comitatus Eboracensis; et sic per episcopos et vicecomites ducentur de

¹ *Gaidinton*] Gaidirtun, D.; Gaidintone, B.; Gaidirtunum, I.

² *Gaidintonum*] Gaidintonum, I.; Gaidintone, B.; Gartintone, G.

³ *Gocelini*] Jocelini, G.; Goscelini, I.

⁴ *Scottorum*] Scotæ, D. I.

⁵ *Taise*] Tese, B. I.; These, D.

comitatu ad comitatum, donec perveniant ad curiam regis Angliæ:¹ et ex quo rex Scottorum intraverit terram regis Angliæ habebit quotidie de bursa regis Angliæ centum solidos de liberatione. Cum autem rex Scotiæ ad curiam regis Angliæ venerit, quam diu ipse in curia regis Angliæ moram fecerit, habebit quotidie de liberatione triginta solidos, et duodecim wastellos dominicos, et duodecim siminellos dominicos, et quatuor sextaria de dominico vino regis, et octo sextercia de vino expensabili, et duas libras de pipere, et quatuor libras de cymino, et duas petras de cera, vel quatuor cereos, et quadraginta grossos et longos colpones de dominica candela regis, et quater viginti colpones de alia candela expensabili; et cum ipse in patriam suam redire voluerit, conducetur per episcopos et vicecomites de comitatu in comitatum, donec pervenerit ad aquam de Tuede: et habebit similiter quotidie centum solidos de bursa regis Angliæ ad liberationem. Carta autem hujus concessionis et confirmationis regis Angliæ tradita fuit Willelmo regi Scotiæ in villa de Northantune, feria secunda in hebdomada Paschæ, per manum Willelmi Eliensis episcopi, regis cancellarii, anno ab Incarnatione Domini nostri Jesu Christi M^oC^oXC^oIV^o, anno etiam regni regis Ricardi quinto.²

A D. 1194.

April 11.

Allowance
of the king
of Scots
whilst he is
at court.

*Discordia inter Willelmum regem Scottorum et
Hugonem episcopum apud Brakeleia.*

Duodecima die mensis Aprilis, feria tertia in hebdomada Paschæ, Ricardus rex Angliæ recessit de Northamtonia, et perrexit usque ad Selvestun; et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, perrexerunt usque ad Brakelai, ubi præpara-

April 12.

The king
goes to
Seliston.

¹ Angliæ] om. I.

² quinto] The act is given but in a mutilated form in the *Fzd.* i. 62;

from the original in the Treasury of Receipt of the Exchequer, but dated at Winchester, April 17.

A D 1104.
April 12.
Quarrel of
the king of
Scots and
the bishop
of Durham
at Bruckoy.

tum erat hospitium Dunelinensis episcopi, quod ipse a triginta annis retro tenuerat ex liberatione marescallo-
rum regis Henrici. Et ubi procuratio sua preparata fuerat, supervenerunt servientes regis Scotiæ volentes ejicere servientes episcopi, sed non poterant. Emerunt tamen cibaria regis, et in quadam domo ejusdem curiæ preparaverunt. Quo cum Dunelmensis episcopus venisset, et dictum esset ei a suis ita contigisse, noluit pedem referre, sed audacter hospitium suum intravit, et mensas apponi jussit. Et dum pranderet supervenit Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et obtulit ei hospitium suum: et consuluit ei ut ipse, relicto hospitio illo regi Scotiæ, abiret. Cum autem rex Scotiæ a venatu redisset sero, et nunciatum esset ei ita contigisse, grave tulit, et noluit illo ire: sed præcepit procurationem suam dari pauperibus, et ipse venit ad regem apud Selvestun, et conquestus est ei de injuria quam fecerat ei Dunelmensis episcopus; unde rex iratus multum increpavit Dunelmensem episcopum.

April 13.
Richard
comes to
Woodstock.

Tertia decima die mensis Aprilis venit rex ad Wudestoc.¹

April 14.
Prestantato.

April 15.
Winchester.
He takes the
castle from
the bishop.

Quartadecima die venit rex ad Fresmantel:² quinta-
decima die mensis Aprilis venit rex Angliæ ad Wintoniam, et eo die dissaisivit Godefridum Wintoniensem episcopum de castello et comitatu Wintoniæ, et de illis duobus maneriis quæ episcopus Wintoniensis ab illo emerat ante iter suum Jerosolimitanum, et de magna parte patrimonii sui.

April 16.
He visits the
monas try of
S. Swithun.

Sextadecima die mensis Aprilis, post prandium, trans-
tulit se rex Angliæ de castello Wintoniæ ad prioratum Sancti Swithuni, et ibi nocte illa jacuit, et se balneari fecit; et mandavit Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, ne ipse in crastino ad coronationem suam accederet cum cruce sua, ne forte tumultus fieret inter ipsum et

¹ *Wudestoc*] Wodistoke, D.; | A. has Fresmantel, corrected to
Wdestoke, I. | Fremmantel. Fremmantel, G.;

² *Fresmantel*] Freitmantel, I. | Freidmantel, B.

Cantuariensem archiepiscopum. Et quia prohibitum erat ei crucem suam portare, noluit coronationi regis interesse.

A.D. 1194.
April 16.
Preparations for the coronation.

Septima decima die mensis Aprilis, die Dominica in octavis Paschæ, convenientibus in unum in ecclesia Sancti Swithuni Huberto Cantuariensi, et Johanne Dublinensi archiepiscopis; et Hugone Dunelmensi, et Hugone Lincolnensi, et Ricardo Londoniensi, et Gilberto Roffensi, et Willelmo Eliensi, et Sefrido Cicestrensi, et Henrico Exoniensi, et Willelmo Herefordensi, et¹ Wigornensi, et de S. David, et¹ Pangorensi² episcopis; et abbatibus multis, et clero et populo; Ricardus rex Angliæ vestimentis regalibus indutus, coronam auream habens in capite,³ processit de thalamo suo coronatus, gestans in manu sua dextra sceptrum regale, cujus summitate habetur signum crucis, et in manu sinistra virgam auream, in cujus summitate habetur species columbæ; et a dextris ejus ibat Willelmus Eliensis episcopus, cancellarius suus, et a sinistris Ricardus Londoniensis episcopus. Præcedebat quoque eos ordinata processio archiepiscoporum et episcoporum, et abbatum, et monachorum et clericorum. Comites vero, et barones, et milites, et magna plebis multitudo, sequebantur regem.

April 17.
Coronation of Richard, at Winchester.

He appears crowned in procession.

Et pannus sericus quatuor lanceis superpositus⁴ ferebatur supra regem a quatuor comitibus: videlicet, Rogero

Canopy borne by four earls.

¹ et] blanks for names of the bishops of Worcester and Bangor.

² Pangorensi] Pangornensi, B. I.

³ coronam auream habens in capite] It is worth while remarking that notwithstanding the political significance given to this second coronation of Richard, it was a ceremony different in kind from the first, and far more in itself analogous to the great crown-wearing days of the earlier Norman kings. The king receives the crown from the archbishop privately (Gerv. 1587), and

presents himself to the people already crowned and in his royal robes. It is not so much a renewal of his "inauguration" after an eclipse of dignity or even a loss of it, as an assertion that that dignity has undergone no diminution. The day and place recall the Easter crown-wearing of William the Conqueror at Winchester. Gervase was reminded by them of the Canterbury crowning of king Stephen, c. 1158.

⁴ superpositus] suppositus, D. I.

A D. 1104.
Apr. 17.
Three
swords
carried be-
fore him.

Bigot comite de Norfolchia,¹ et Willelmo comite de Insula Vectæ,² et—comite Salesbiriensi,³ et—comite de Ferreres.⁴ Et tres gladii de thesauro regis sumpti gestabantur ante regem; quorum unum gestabat Willelmus rex Scottorum, et alterum portabat Hamelinus comes de Warennæ,⁵ et tertium gestabat Ranulfus comes Cestriæ: medius autem illorum ibat rex Scottorum, et comes Warennæ a dextris ejus, et comes Cestriæ a sinistris ejus.

He receives
a blessing
from the
archbishop.

Et sic coronatus ductus est in metropolitanam ecclesiam⁶ Sancti Swithuni usque ad altare; et ibi flexis genibus devote recepit benedictionem ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et inde ductus est ad sedem suam.

who cele-
brates the
mass.

Alienor vero regina mater ejus, cum puellis suis, sedebat in Boreali parte ecclesiæ ex opposito regi. Cantuariensis vero archiepiscopus Missam celebravit; et rex ductus est a prædictis episcopis ad oblationem, et reductus est in sedem suam.

The king
returns to
his chamber
and changes
his crown.

Post celebrationem Missæ reductus est rex in thalamum suum, præcedente ordinata processione, ut superius. Rex vero depositis gravioribus vestimentis suis et corona, leviora sumpsit indumenta et coronam levio-rem, et ita ad prandendum intravit refectorium monachorum; et præfati archiepiscopi et episcopi, et rex Scotiæ, et comites et barones, sedebant ad mensam, unusquisque in locum suum, secundum ordinem et dignitatem suam, et epulabantur splendide. Cives autem Lundoniarum, data regi mercede ducentarum marcarum, servierunt de pincernaria, contra calumniam civium Wintoniæ. Cives vero Wintoniæ servierunt de coquina.

The ban-
quet.

¹ *Norfolchia*] Northfolchia, B. I.

² *Vectæ*] Wettæ, B.; Wetæ, G.; Weetæ, D. I. William de Fortibus.

³ *comite Salesbiriensi*] blank for the name in A. William.

⁴ *comite de Ferreres*] blank for the name in A. William.

⁵ *de Warennæ*] Warennæ, I. Warennia, B.

⁶ *metropolitanam ecclesiam*] metropolitana ecclesia, B. D. I.

Eodem die post prandium sero rediit rex in domum suam, quæ est in castello Wintoniæ.

A.D. 1194.
April 17.

He returns to the castle.

Decimo octavo die mensis Aprilis, in crastino coronationis regis, Jollanus frater ¹ Henrici de la Pumerai, appellatus quod proditiose interfuerat captioni Montis ² Sancti Michaelis in Cornubia, elegit magis abjectus esse ab Anglia, quam stare inde juri in curia regis.

April 18.

Jollan de la Pumerai goes into exile.

Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus reddidit Ricardo regi Angliæ Northimbriam.

Nonodecimo die mensis Aprilis, Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, sponte sua, nullo cogente, reddidit regi comitatum Northimbriæ, cum castellis et aliis pertinentiis suis: et præcepit ei rex ut ipse ea traderet Hugoni Bardulfo. Quod cum Willelmus rex Scotiæ audisset, statim obtulit regi Angliæ quindecim millia marcarum argenti pro Northimbria et pertinentiis suis, dicens quod comes Henricus pater suus illam tenuit ex dono Henrici regis secundi, et post eum rex Malcolmus filius ejus quinque annis eam pacifice possedit. Unde rex Angliæ, habito cum suis consilio, respondit regi Scotiæ, quod daret ei totam Northimbriam, exceptis castellis, pro memorata pecunia: sed rex Scotiæ noluit illam recipere sine castellis.

April 19.

The bishop of Durham surrenders the county of Northumberland.

The king of Scots renews his claims.

Vicesima die mensis Aprilis fecit rex Angliæ segregari ab aliis ditiores, qui capti fuerant in castellis de Nottingham, et de Tikehil, et aliis castellis comitis Johannis, et poni in carceribus ad redimendum: cæteros autem abire permisit per plegios veniendi ad vocationem suam, et standi judicio curiæ; et unusquisque illorum invenit plegios de centum marcis, si ipse non rediret in curiam regis.

April 20.

Disposal of the prisoners taken at Tickhill and Nottingham

¹ *frater*] regis, ins. Savile, from D. | ² *Montis*] om. D. I.

A.D. 1194.
April 21.
Richard refuses to give any castles to the king of Scots.

Vicesima prima die mensis Aprilis, Willelmus rex Scottorum iterum tentabat si ipse modo quolibet obtinere posset comitatum Northumbriæ cum castellis: sed non erat de consilio regis Angliæ ut ipse ei aliqua castella traderet, sed tamen dedit ei spem habendi ea in futuro, post reditum suum de Normannia.

April 22.
The king of Scots goes home.

Vicesima secunda die mensis Aprilis, feria sexta, Willelmus rex Scotiæ recessit a curia regis Angliæ, versus patriam suam rediturus, dolens et confusus propter repulsam ei factam.

Richard goes to Waltham.

Eodem die rex Angliæ recessit a Wintonia versus mare ad transfretandum, propter sinistros rumores quos audierat de Normannis, et jacuit apud Waltham.

April 23.
He refuses to arbitrate between the two archbishops and restores to Geoffrey the lands in Angou.

Vicesima tertia die mensis Aprilis rex Angliæ fecit moram apud Walteham, et Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus venit illuc ad regem, et crucem suam ante se portare fecit. Unde Hubertus Walteri, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, plurimum conquestus est regi: sed rex respondit, quod hoc non pertinebat ad eum, immo ad dominum papam.

Eodem die reddidit rex Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo Baugi et Langis in Andegavia, et carta sua confirmavit.

Pax facta inter Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum et Willelmum Eliensem episcopum, regis cancellarium.

April 24.
Reconciliation of the archbishop of York with the bishop of Ely.

Vicesima quarta die mensis Aprilis, dominus rex fecit pacem et finalem concordiam inter Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum et Willelmum Eliensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, de omnibus controversiis quæ inter illos erant, tam de captione Eboracensis archiepiscopi apud Doroberniam, quam de abjectione cancellarii ab Anglia; ita quod predictus Eliensis episcopus, ad summonitionem Eboracensis archiepiscopi, jurabit cum centesima manu sacerdotum, quod ipse nec præ-

cepit nec voluit ut idem Eboracensis archiepiscopus caperetur. Et post concordiam illam, eodem die recessit rex de Waltham, et perrexit ad Portesmue ad transfretandum, et Alienor regina mater ejus cum eo.

A.D. 1194.
April 24.
Richard goes to Portsmouth, and stays there from the 25th to the 27th.

¹ Vicesima quinta, et vicesima sexta, et vicesima septima die mensis Aprilis, fecit rex moram apud Portesmue.

Vicesima octava die mensis Aprilis recessit rex a Portesmue, et perrexit usque Stanstede causa venandi. Quo abeunte, Walenses et Braibanceni² hostiliter congressi sunt, et mutuo se interfecerunt.

April 28.
He goes to Stansted.

Vicesima nona die mensis Aprilis rediit rex ad Portesmue,³ ad extinguendam malitiam Walensium et Braibancenorum: et factum est ita.

April 29.
Portsmouth.

Tricesima die mensis Aprilis, et prima die mensis Maii, festo apostolorum Philippi et Jacobi, fecit rex ibidem moram, et videbatur ei nimis tædiosa.

April 30 and
May 1.
Portsmouth.

Secunda die mensis Maii rex, tædio affectus, fecit totam classem suam carcari hominibus et equis et armis, feria secunda: et contra consilium nautarum suorum intravit quandam navem suam longam, sperans transfretare navigando; et quamvis ventus esset ei contrarius noluit reverti. Cæteræ autem naves remanserunt in portu; rex vero, et qui cum eo erant, jactabantur fluctibus. Erat enim tempestas valida, et erat cor eorum pavens.

May 2.
The king attempts to set sail.

Et in crastino sequenti rediit rex in insulam Vectæ, deinde ad Portesmue. Et facta ibi et in provincia illa octo dierum mora, nono die, feria quinta, festo Sanctorum Nerei et Achillei atque Pancratii martyrum, iterum naves intravit ipse, cum exercitu suo, et transfretavit in Normanniam, et applicuit apud Barbeflet cum centum magnis navibus onustis viris bellicosis, et equis et armis; et statim properavit Vernolium ire, quod rex

May 3.
He returns to Portsmouth.

May 12.
He sails to Barbeflet.

¹ MS. D. on its all from this point to *fecerat*, p. 252, line 4.

² *Braibanceni*] Braibaceni, B.; Brabaceni, I.

³ *ad Portesmue*] om. I.; a Portesmue, Savile, from B.

A. D. 1184.
May 28.
The king of
France de-
serts the
siege of
Verneuil.

Franciæ obsederat. Cujus adventu audito, rex Franciæ ab obsidione Vernolii recessit, in vigilia Pentecosten, nesciente exercitu suo, postquam ipse ibidem moram octodecim dierum in obsidione fecerat.

Concordia facta inter Ricardum regem et Johannem fratrem regis.

Reconcilia-
tion of
Richard and
John.

Interim Johannes frater regis, comes Moretonii, rediit ad regem fratrem suum; et mediante Alienor regina matre eorum, facti sunt amici rex et ille; sed rex nullum castellum neque terram aliquam ei reddere voluit. Exercitus vero regis Franciæ, quem ipse dimiserat in obsidione Vernolii, cum vidisset quod rex suus abierat, secutus est eum die Lunæ in hebdomada Pentecosten.

May 30.
Richard
pursues
Philip from
Verneuil.

Rex vero Angliæ impiger, et "torto Balearis verbere"
"fundæ" ocior, audito quod rex Franciæ obsidisset Vernolium, illuc festinanter advenit; et non invento ibi rege Franciæ, in ore gladii secutus est exercitum ejus fugientem. Deinde properavit rex Angliæ ad Vernolium, et partes debiliores firmavit. Deinde properavit rex ad castrum Montis Mirabilis, quod Andegavenses et Cenomannenses obsederant; sed priusquam ipse illuc veniret, ceperunt illud, et funditus diruerunt. Deinde rex Angliæ cum festinatione properavit ad castrum de Luches, transitum faciens per castrum Toronum, ubi duo millia marcarum a burgensibus dono spontaneo recepit.

Luo Phara.
p. 229.

Montmiral
taken by the
Angevins
and Man-
ceaux.

Richard
goes by
Tours to
Loches.

De auxilio quod Navarenses fecerunt Ricardo regi.

Siege of
Loches.

Milites vero Navarra, et Braibanceni,¹ obsederunt castrum de Luches. Quorum dux et prævius extiterat Anfuns,² filius Sanctii regis Navarra, frater Berengeriæ

¹ Braibancens] Braibaceni, B. 1. | Alfonso, the new king of Navarre
² Anfuns] Although here called | really was Sancho VII.

reginæ Angliæ: sed ipse non perduxit eos usque Luches, quia antequam illuc veniret, nunciatum est ei quod pater suus rex Navarrae obiret; et hac de causa reversus est in regionem suam, et receptus est in regem ab hominibus regni.

A. D. 1194.
June.
Succours
from Na-
varre.

Cumque rex Angliæ ad castrum de Luches veniret, invenit ibi prædictos Navarrensens et Braibancenos,¹ jam in vigiliis, et jejuniis, et laboribus multis, in captione illius castelli in vanum laborantes; et statim cum suis, et cæteris, qui aderant, die noctuque in eo insultum faciens, tandem cepit illud vi et armis, et cepit in eo quinque milites, et quatuor et viginti servientes, feria secunda post festum Sancti Barnabæ apostoli.

June 13.
Richard
takes
Loches.

Interim consilarii regis Franciæ ceperunt colloquium cum senescallo et constabulario et proceribus Normanniæ, ad Pontem Archæ. Ubi die statuto, cum Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, una cum prædicto senescallo² et constabulario³ et proceribus, veniret ad locum colloquii, et ibi frustra cum illis adventum nunciorum regis Franciæ expectaret, rex Franciæ cum exercitu non modico venit ad castellum modicum, quatuor miliaribus distans a Rothomago, nomine⁴ Fontaines, et obsedit illud; et in obsidione illa per quatuor dies plus quam credi posset laborans, tandem cepit illud, et demolitus est. Interim comes Johannes, frater regis Angliæ, et Robertus comes Leircestris, et alii multi barones convenerant Rothomagum: sed quia non habebant cui principaliter tanquam domino regi adhererent, et quia impares multitudine et viribus multum a rege Franciæ differebant, non præsumserunt infestare regem Franciæ. Cum autem rex Franciæ destructo castello illo inde recederet, et versus Franciam remearct, incautum invenit comitem Leircestris, qui ad insidias

Proposed
conference
at Pont de
l'Arche be-
tween the
king of
France and
the Norman
barons.

Philip takes
Fontaine.

The Norman
barons dare
not attack
Philip.

¹ *Braibancenos*] Braibacenos, B. I.
² *senescallo*] William Fitz-Ra-
nulf.

³ *constabulario*] William du Hom-
met.

⁴ *nomine*] om. B. D. I.

A. D. 1184.
June 15.
The Earl of
Leicester
captured.

ei parandas de nocte Rothomagum exierat, et usque in terram Hugonis de Garnagio¹ ad deprædandam eam, evagationem fecerat inconsultam, et sic a rege Franciæ cum paucis suorum detentus est.²

June 17.
Conference
at Vaudreuil.

Deinde ex communi assensu utriusque regis, Wilhelmus Remensis archiepiscopus, et comes de Neverz, et comes de Bar,³ et magister Anselmus decanus Turo-nensis, et alii multi ex parte regis Franciæ; et Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et senescallus Normanniæ, et constabularius, et alii multi ex parte regis Angliæ, convenerunt prope vallem Rodolei, sexta feria post festum Sancti Barnabæ apostoli, de treugis inter prædictos reges ad invicem firmandis tractatum habituri. Post longam itaque deliberationem inter eos habitam, in hoc tandem convenit: quod treuga, quæ usque ad finem triennii ex parte regis Franciæ requirerentur, tantum per unum annum essent duraturæ; ita quod rex Angliæ teneret, in nullo obnoxius regi Franciæ, omnes terras quas habet in manu propria: et rex Franciæ similiter oppida, quæ occupavit vel tenet, pacifice teneret: et interim liceret utrique illorum munire et roborare omnes munitiones quas integras et infractas retinisset, cæteras vero dirutas reedificare interim non liceret eorum alicui. Si quis vero alius, præterquam in castis reedificandis, domos vastatas vel combustas ædificare affectaret, licite posset vel in ædificiis, vel in colligendis segetibus vel aliis fructibus, sibi pacifice providere.

Terms of
truce agreed
on.

Fortifica-
tions that
have been
destroyed
are not to be
rebuilt.

Goods of
churchmen
to be re-
stored.

Cæterum vero compromissum fuit, quod omnes ecclesie, et ecclesiasticæ personæ, quæ suis bonis vel redditibus per violentiam hujus guerræ privatæ fuerant, in omni loco terrarum utriusque regis, restituerentur

¹ *Garnagio*] Gurnai, B. D.

² *detentus est*] The earl of Leicester was taken prisoner June 15. Rigord, 195.

³ *comes de Bar*] Miles de Puiset, count of Bar-sur-Seine, 1189-1218.

in integrum. Sed quia rex Franciæ volebat quod omnes illi qui ei adhæserant, vel regi Angliæ, clauderentur in treugis istis, ita quod a neutro illorum molestarentur, vel quod etiam nemo conversorum in alterutrum hostiliter moveretur, impeditæ sunt treugæ; quia videlicet rex Angliæ violare nolebat consuetudines et leges Pictaviæ, vel aliarum terrarum suarum, in quibus consuetum erat ab antiquo, ut magnates causas proprias invicem gladiis¹ allegarent.

A.D. 1194.
June 17.

Richard refuses to compel the barons of Poitou to peace.

Et sic imperfecto negotio ab invicem separati sunt omnes qui colloquium illud ceperant, et ex illo die prædicti reges inimiciores facti sunt, et acrius inter se alter adversus alterum congressus est, in rapinis et iniquis combustionibus. Rex quidem Franciæ venit ad civitatem Ebroicarum, et eam penitus subvertit, et ecclesias destruxit, non parcens ætati vel sexui: et reliquias sanctorum inde asportavit. Hæc autem fecit eo quod cives Ebroicenses, relicto eo, reversi fuerant ad fidem et servitium domini sui regis Angliæ.

The conference fails, and the war is renewed.

Philip destroys Evreux.

Cum autem rex Franciæ, destructa civitate Ebroicensi, inde recederet, et ad villam quæ dicitur Freteval veniret, rex Angliæ ad insidias ei parandas venit Vendomiam. Et quia locus ille non erat clausus muro, nec ad defendendum aptus, fecit rex tendere extra villam tentoria sua; et in eis, ita securus ac si esset clausus muro, exspectabat mandatum regis Franciæ, qui mandavit ei quod die illo visitaret illum in manu hostili. Cujus mandatum rex Angliæ lætus suscipiens, renunciavit illi quod ipse exspectaret eum; et nisi venisset, ipse visitaret eum in crastino mane. Quod cum rex Franciæ audisset, non visitavit regem Angliæ illo die.² Mane autem facto rex Angliæ fecit exercitum suum armari, et processit, ut cum exercitu regis Franciæ congredetur. Quo audito, rex Franciæ

July.
Richard comes to Vendome: Philip to Freteval.

Messages between the two.

Richard prepares to fight.

¹ *gladiis*] *gladii*, I.

² *illo die*] Thirty-seven days after Pentecost, July 4. R. de Dic., 674.

A. D. 1194.
July.
Philip flies
and loses his
treasure.

et exercitus ejus fugit ante faciem regis Angliæ¹ subsequentis. In fuga autem illa multi de exercitu regis Franciæ interfecti sunt, et multi capti. Captus est etiam regis Franciæ thesaurus magnus, et capella regia, et cartæ universorum hominum regis Angliæ, qui se dederant regi Franciæ, et comiti Johanni, contra eum.

Narrow
escape of
Philip.

In fuga vero illa rex Franciæ declinavit se a turba, et intravit quandam ecclesiam, ut Missam audiret, longe a recta via. Rex vero Angliæ, nesciens quod rex Franciæ se absconderet, ibat adhuc spirans minarum et cædis in homines regis Franciæ, et querebat eum, ut morti traderet, vel vivum caperet; et dictum est ei a quodam Flandrensi, quod rex Franciæ jam longe processerat: et ita rex Angliæ deceptus processit in equo velocissimo modicum ultra fines Franciæ et Normanniæ; et deficiente ei equo illo, Marcades princeps Braibancenorum tradidit illi alium equum: et sic rex Angliæ, non invento rege Franciæ, rediit Vendoniā, cum præda magna hominum et equorum, et pecunia magna.

Richard
reduces
Poitou.

Deinde perrexit rex in Pictaviam, ad debellandum Gaufridum de Rancune, et vicecomitem² de Engolismo, qui dederant se regi Franciæ et comiti Johanni contra eum; et ipse expugnavit eos. Unde et ipse in hac forma scripsit Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo;

Epistola Ricardi regis Angliæ ad Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum de castellis captis.

July 23.
Letter to
the arch-
bishop of
Canterbury.

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, et dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et³ comes Andegavie, venerabili in Christo patri “ Huberto, eadem gratia Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, totius Angliæ primati, salutem.

¹ *regis Angliæ*] om. I.; ejus, D.
² *vicecomitem*] Probably a mistake for *comitem*, as would appear from the letter that follows; or pos-

sibly it may refer to the viscount of Limoges.

³ *et*] om. B. D. G. I.

“ Sciatis quod nos, Dei gratia, Qui in omnibus rectum con-
 siderat, Taillurgum,¹ et Marchacum,² et omnia castella, et
 totam terram Gaufridi de Rancona cepimus; et civitatem
 Engolismi, et Castellum Novum, et Muntiniacum, et La
 Chese, et omnia alia castella, et totam terram comitis En-
 golismi, cum omni integritate cepimus; civitatem autem
 Engolismi et Burgum in una vesperata cepimus; in terris
 vero, quas in partibus illis cepimus, bene usque³ ad tre-
 centes milites, et quadraginta millia armatorum cepimus.
 Teste meipso apud Engolismum, vicesimo secundo die Julii.”

A.D. 1134.
 July 22.
 The king
 has taken
 the castles
 of Geoffroy
 of Rancon
 and the
 count of
 Angouleme.

Interim familiares regis Franciæ, et familiares regis
 Angliæ, ex consensu utriusque regis, convenerunt inter
 Vernolium et Tileres ad colloquium, ad tractandum de
 treugis inter illos; et convenit inter eos, sicut inferius
 notatum est;

A truce
 between
 the kings
 agreed on.

*Litteræ Drogonis de Merloto, et Anselmi Turonis decani,
 de treugis factis inter reges Franciæ et Angliæ.*

“ Drogo de Merloto constabularius Franciæ, et Anselmus
 beati Martini Turonis decanus, et Ursio domini regis
 Franciæ camerarius, omnibus ad quos litteræ præsentis per-
 venerint, salutem. Noveritis, quod nos de mandato domini
 nostri Philippi regis Franciæ juravimus, et fidem manu
 legati dedimus, quod dominus noster rex Franciæ treugas,
 sicut inferius scripto sunt, et conventiones trougarum
 observabit. Treugæ autem in hunc modum datæ sunt.
 Dominus noster rex Franciæ, intuitu Dei, ad preces cardi-
 nalis⁴ et abbatis Cisterciensis, concedit regi Angliæ et suis
 treugas: et concedit, quod firmare possit, si firmare volu-
 erit, Novum Burgum, et Drieneurt, et Concas, et Britol-
 hum. Aliæ munitiones, quæ dirutæ sunt per guerram per
 regem Franciæ, aut per suos, non firmabuntur in his
 treugis, nisi eas contigerit firmari per pacem quæ fiet
 inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ. Rex Franciæ et
 sui erunt de omnibus in ea teneatura, in qua erant die qua
 treugæ datæ fuerunt. De valle Rodoli in hunc modum
 erit; rex Franciæ tenens erit de valle Rodoli, sicut erat
 prius: scilicet, de ipso Rodoleo et de ipsa tota villa cum

July 23.
 Dreux de
 Merco and
 dean Anselm
 declare the
 conclusion
 of a truce.

Richard is
 to fortify
 four places.

Philip is
 to hold
 Audreant.

¹ *Taillurgum*] Taleburgum, B.;
 Calleburgum, D., Talleburgum, I.

² *Marchacum*] Marcehacum, D. I.

³ *usque*] om. B. D. I.

⁴ *cardinalis*] Melior, cardinal
 priest of S. John and S. Paul: see
 above, p. 228. The abbot of Cîteaux
 was Guy Paré.

A. D. 1104. " ecclesiis; et de Lovers, et de Aquigeniaco,¹ et de Laire, et
 July 23, " de aliis usque ad Hayam Malherbe, et usque ad pontem
 Frontier " Archiæ. De Haya vero Malherbe, et de ultra, et de ponte
 drawn. " Archiæ, et de ultra, erit tenens rex Angliæ.
 The kings " De omnibus fortellescis,² et de quibus rex Franciæ est
 may do what " snisitus die treugarum, sic erit: quod rex Franciæ eas
 they please " infra treugas poterit infortiare, vel diruere, vel comburere
 with fort- " si voluerit, et de tota terra, quam tenet, voluntatem suam
 resses in " facere. Et rex Angliæ similiter illas fortellesces,³ de quibus
 their hands " est tenens die treugarum, poterit infortiare, vel diruere,
 on the day " vel comburere: sed rex Angliæ de dirutis fortollescis per
 of the truce. " regem Francia aut per suos nullam poterit firmare, nisi
 " illas quatuor quæ superius dictæ sunt. Præterea rex Franciæ
 " ponit in treuga sua omnes illos, qui melius erant homines
 " sui ante guerram, quam regis Angliæ. Præterea illos, qui
 " fuerant homines regis Angliæ, quos infra nominabimus:⁴
 Persons and " videlicet, Archas et Driencurt, sicut inde est tenens ipse
 places to be " et suæ gentes; comitatum Augi,⁵ sicut inde est tenens
 the truce. " ipse et gentes suæ: Mortuam Marc et terram, unde Wil-
 " lelmus de Cahou⁶ est tenens: terram comitis Boloniæ,⁷ de
 " qua erat tenens die qua treugæ datæ fuerunt: Hugonem
 " de Gornaco,⁸ et Albamarle,⁹ et officium de Bauvair¹⁰ et
 " terram suam, sicut inde est tenens: Novum Mercatum et
 " terram, sicut Willelmus de Garlando et sui inde sunt
 " tenentes: Gysortium, et Vogesin Normanniæ, sicut rex
 " Franciæ et sui inde sunt tenentes: Vernonem et Gallonem,
 " et terram, sicut rex Franciæ et sui sunt tenentes: Pascia-
 " cum et terram, sicut rex et sui sunt tenentes: Ileres et
 " terram, sicut rex et sui inde sunt tenentes: Marcehacum
 " et terram, sicut rex et sui inde sunt tenentes: Loiam et
 " terram, sicut rex et sui inde sunt tenentes: Nonancurt et
 " terram, sicut rex et comes Robertus¹¹ et sui sunt tenentes:
 " Thiellerias,¹² et terram, sicut rex et Gervasius et sui sunt

¹ Aquigeniaco] Aquigeū, B. I.; Aquineg, A. The names are omitted in D.

² fortellescis] fortelescis, B. I.

³ fortellesces] fortelesces, B. I.

⁴ nominabimus] nominavimus, B. I.

⁵ comitatum Augi] Ralph II., of Issoudun, count of Eu by marriage.

⁶ Willelmus de Cahou] William of Kæu or Cayeux.

⁷ comitis Boloniæ] Reginald of

Dammartin, husband of the countess Ida.

⁸ Gornaco] Gurnaco, I.

⁹ Albamarle] Alhenarle, I.

¹⁰ officium de Bauvair] Bauveu, B; Bauveu, I. The administration of that part of the forest of Lyons in which the castle of Beauvoir was; see Stapleton, *Norman Rolls*, i. cxiv.

¹¹ comes Robertus] of Dreux.

¹² Thiellerias] Thillers, B; Tillers, I.

" tenentes: Nevelonem et suos homines, et Fractam Vallem A. D. 1194.
 " et terram suam, sicut inde sunt tenentes. Comitem Bruciae¹ July 23.
 " et homines suos, et terram suam, si quam habet, unde sit Places and
 " tenens: comitem Engolismi² et homines suos, et terram persons to
 " suam et feodum suum, sicut inde est tenens; Johannem be included
 " de Ruvereio,³ et Baldewinum de Aquinni, et comitem Mel- in the treaty
 " lenti et terram suam, sicut inde est tenens: et tam præ- on the side
 " dictas terras, quam homines qui in eis sunt. Et treugæ of the king
 " durabunt ab instanti festo Omnium Sanctorum in unum of France.
 " annum. Ideo autem rex Franciæ omnes prædictos nomi-
 " navit, quia vult quod rex Angliæ illos magnos homines,
 " quos voluerit in treugam esse, nominet infra quindenam
 " supradictæ treugæ; quoniam si post quindenam a die supra-
 " dictæ treugæ vellet nominare, rex Franciæ illos non reci-
 " peret; et si se cognoverint coadjutores regis Angliæ, in
 " treuga erunt. Minuti⁴ autem coadjutores in facta treuga
 " erunt utrinque.
 " Rex autem Franciæ duos elegit dictatores, et rex Angliæ Arbitrators
 " similiter duos: quorum arbitrio, vel majoris partis, si alter chosen, and
 " regum adversus alterum, vel aliquis hominum suorum inter provisions
 " se intereiperet, emendatio hinc inde fieret infra quadraginta made con-
 " dies. Isti autem dictatores jurabunt super sancta Evangelia, cerning
 " quod nec amore, nec odio, nec timore, nec pretio omittent, them.
 " quin bona fide arbitrentur. Si autem contigerit intercep-
 " tionem fieri ultra Ligerim versus Bituricam, dictatores
 " convenient inter Exodunum et castellum Radulfi, propter
 " emendationem faciendam. Arbitri de terra, in qua inter-
 " ceptio facta fuerit, summonebunt alios dictatores; et ipsi
 " bona fide audita summonitione, convenient per convenientes
 " dietas ad alterutrum locorum dictorum; et si interceptio
 " fieret citra Ligerim versus Normanniam, dictatores con-
 " venient inter Vernolium et Tielcrias propter emendationem
 " faciendam. Si autem contentio esset inter dictatores, le-
 " gatus, magister Melior, bona fide a se periculo animæ suæ
 " inde veritatem inquireret, et super illum qui interceptio-
 " nem et delictum emendare non vellet, omni appellatione
 " remota, excommunicationis sententiam promulgaret, et terram
 " suam interdicto subponeret. Si autem malefactor esset de
 " terra regis Franciæ, rex Franciæ juvaret bona fide ad hoc

¹ comitem Bruciae] Apparently Bernard III., viscount of Brosse.

² comitem Engolismi] Ainar, count of Angoulême, in opposition

to Hugh of Lusignan, who had married the heiress Matilda.

³ Ruvereio] Auvereio, I.

⁴ minuti autem] Munat, B.; autem, om. B I.

If there is a division of opinion among them, card mal Melior is to decide.

A. D. 1194.
July 21.
The cardinal
shall have
power to
enforce obe-
dience by
interdict

Arrange-
ment about
prisoners.

Oaths to be
taken by
both kings.

“ emendandum sine suo mittendo et rex Angliæ similiter
“ faceret de suis hominibus bona fide. Si rex Franciæ contra
“ regem Angliæ, aut rex Angliæ contra regem Franciæ inter-
“ ciperet, cardinalis terram interdiceret intercipientis, si in-
“ terceptionem nollet emendare ad arbitrium dictatorum, vel
“ majoris partis Ricardus rex Angliæ et sui erunt in ca-
“ teneatura, citra¹ Ligerim versus Normanniam, in qua erant
“ die qua treugæ captæ fuerunt; et ultra Ligerim erunt in
“ ea teneatura, in qua erant die qua ipse et sui poterunt
“ scire per legales dictas treugas esse datas. Et rex Angliæ
“ mittit omnes illos in treuga sua, qui melius erant homines
“ sui quam regis Franciæ ante treugam. De prisonis ita erit
“ utrobique, quod illi prisonis quos rex Franciæ habet, osti-
“ gabuntur per securitatem quam obtulerint, si prædicto regi
“ placuerit; si autem non placet, dictatores sui sub adjuratione
“ sacramenti sui dicent quæ securitas facienda esset ad hoc,
“ quod rex Franciæ securus esset, quod priso revertent in
“ prisonam regis Franciæ quindecim diebus ante terminum,
“ si vivus esset priso: et de prisonibus regis Angliæ erit
“ similiter per suos dictatores. Hæc autem omnia bona fide
“ servanda ambo reges² jurabunt et affidabunt in manu cardina-
“ nalis, et litteras suas patentes inde facient de treugis et
“ conventionibus prædictis servandis. Nobiscum autem treugas
“ juravit et affidavit ex parte regis Franciæ Gervasius de
“ Castello tenendas: jurabunt etiam illi quos rex Angliæ
“ requæret, tam clerici quam laici, arbitrio dictatorum. Ad
“ hoc sciatis, quod nos, qui juravimus hanc treugarum con-
“ ventionem, super hoc habuimus regis Franciæ litteras pa-
“ tentes de ratificatione: videlicet, quod quicquid de treugis
“ servandis ordinaremus, ratam haberet et firmum. Et nos,
“ ut omnia prædicta firma sint et stabilia, universa prædicta
“ sigillis nostris roboravimus. Actum inter Vernolium et
“ Thileres,³ anno Incarnati Verbi millesimo centesimo nona-
“ gesimo quarto, vicesima tertia die Julii.”

Hugh Bar-
dolfus
the bishop
of Dunelm
to Roger
North-
umberland.

Post transfretationem autem regis, cum Hugo Dunel-
mensis episcopus domum rediret, Hugo Bardolfus⁴
petiit ab eo comitatum Northimbriæ, et Novum Cas-
tellum supra Tinam,⁵ et castellum de Bambure, sicut

¹ *citra*] contra, B. I.

² *reges*] servabunt, ms. I.

³ *Thileres*] Tilers, B. I. The document is much abridged in D.; and G. transfers the day and month

to the beginning of the following paragraph.

⁴ *Bardolfus*] Bardolphus, D.; Bardolfus, I.

⁵ *Tinam*] Thinam, I.

idem episcopus promiserat regi, se traditurum. Sed episcopus id facere distulit, quia nuncius suus, per quem ipse obtulerat regi duo millia marcarum argenti pro comitatu illo cum supradictis castellis sibi retinendo, nondum redierat. Qui cum rediret, attulit secum litteras regis, per quas rex mandavit Hugoni Bardulfi, quod, si prædictus Dunelmensis episcopus fecisset eum securum de illis duabus millibus marcis reddendis, traderet prædicto episcopo prænominatum comitatum cum castellis. Cum igitur litteræ regis traderentur Hugoni Bardulfi, respondit ipse Hugo episcopo Dunelmensi, dicens: "Si vultis ut ego præceptum regis faciam, tradite mihi castella et comitatum,¹ et ego retradam ea vobis, sicut rex præcepit; si feceritis me securum de illis duabus millibus marcis habendis ad opus regis." Cui episcopus Dunelmensis respondit: "Non est opus ut ego vobis ea tradam ad retradendum mihi, quia ego habeo illa et teneo." His auditis, Hugo Bardulfus statim mandavit domino regi responsam episcopi; unde rex iratus præcepit episcopum Dunelmensem dissaisiari de castellis et de comitatu supradictis, et ut duo millia marcarum ab eo exigenterentur; præcepit etiam rex in furore iræ suæ, ut ipse Dunelmensis episcopus dissaisiaretur de manerio de Sadberhe,² cum feodis militum et wapentaco, quæ idem rex beato Cutberto, et ecclesiæ Dunelmensi, et præfato episcopo et successoribus ejus dederat in puram et perpetuam elemosynam, et carta sua confirmaverat, sicut superius notatum est: et factum est ita.

Interim conquerentibus canonicis Eboracensis ecclesiæ Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, regis justitiano, de injuriis quas Eboracensis archiepiscopus eis faciebat; Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, auctoritate regia, qua fungebatur, misit Eboracum comitem Rogerum Bigot, et Willelmum de Gwarena, et Willelmum de Stutevilla, et Hugonem

A D. 1094.
July.

The bishop has offered 2000 marks to have the grant continued, and declines to surrender the county.

Hugh Bardulf by the king's order, seizes the county and demands 2000 marks and the manor of Sadberge.

The archbishop of Canterbury sends a commission of judges to York.

¹ et comitatum] om. B. D. I.

| ² Sadberhe] Sandberhe, B. D. I.

A.D. 1104.
 July or
 August.
 Juices sent
 to York to
 settle the
 quarrel
 between
 Geoffrey
 and the
 canons.

They
 summon
 archbishop
 Geoffrey,
 and seize
 his lands.

William
 Stuteville
 and Geoffrey
 Haset,
 keepers of
 the county.

September.
 Itinerant
 justices sent
 through the
 country.

Bardulfum, et Willelmum Briwere,¹ et Gaufridum Haget,² et Willelmum filium Ricardi clericum, ad audiendam controversiam inter archiepiscopum Eboracensem et canonicos suos, et, secundum quod jus dictaverit, terminandam. Qui cum venirent, et audirent appellationem canonicorum, et responsa archiepiscopi et suorum, præceperunt homines archiepiscopi, qui calumniati fuerant de roberia, capi et incarcerari. Et quamvis archiepiscopus opera eorum warentizaret, non tamen potuit eos archiepiscopus plegiare. Deinde summonuerunt archiepiscopum ut veniret iudicio pariturus, et quia noluit, disaisiaverunt eum de omnibus maneriis suis, excepto uno solo manerio de Ripun, in quo archiepiscopus se receperat. Deinde fecerunt canonicos introduci in stallos suos, de quibus archiepiscopus eos disaisierat. Et sic recedentes statuerunt Willelmum de Stutevilla et Gaufridum Haget custodes in Eboracensi siria³ super archiepiscopum, et super vicecomitatum suum.

Paulo post, in mense Septembris, missi sunt ex parte regis per singulos comitatus Angliæ justitiæ errantes, et secundum subscriptorum formam capitulorum processerunt in justitiis exsequendis ;

Forma qualiter procedendum est in placitis coronæ regis.

Way of
 electing the
 jury for the
 hundred or
 wapentake.

“ In primis eligendi sunt quatuor milites de toto comitatu, qui per sacramentum suum eligant duos legales milites de quolibet hundredo vel wapentaco, et illi duo eligunt, super sacramentum suum, decem milites de singulis hundredis vel wapentackis, vel, si milites defecerint, legales et liberos homines, ita quod illi xii. in simul respondeant de omnibus capitulis de toto hundredo vel wapentaco.”

¹ *Briwere*] Bruere, B. I. The names are omitted in D.

² *Haget*] om. I.

³ *siria*] syria, I.; syra, B.

Capitula placitorum coronæ regis.

- A.D. 1194.
September.
- “ (I.) De placitis coronæ novis et veteribus, et omnibus
 “ quæ nondum sunt finita coram justitiariis domini regis. Questions
to be enter-
tained
by the
itinerant
judges.
- “ (II.) Item de omnibus recognitionibus, et omnibus placitis,
 “ quæ summonita sunt coram justitiariis per breve regis, vel judges.
 “ capitalis justitiæ, vel a capitali curia regis coram eis missa.
- “ (III.) Item de eschaetis, quæ sint, et quæ fuerint post- Escheats.
 “ quam rex arripuit iter versus Jerusalem, et quæ fuerunt
 “ tunc in manu regis, et utrum sint modo in manu ejus,
 “ vel non, et de omnibus eschaetis domini regis, si a manu
 “ sua sint remotæ, quomodo, et per quem, et in cujus manus
 “ devenerint, et qualiter, et quis exitus inde¹ habuerit, et
 “ quos, et quid valuerint, et quid modo valeant; et si aliqua
 “ exchaeta sit, quæ ad dominum regem pertineat, quæ in manu
 “ ejus non sit.
- “ (IV.) Item de ecclesiis quæ sunt de donatione domini Churches.
 “ regis.
- “ (V.) Item de custodiis puerorum quæ ad dominum regem Wardships.
 “ pertinent.
- “ (VI.) Item de maritagiis puellarum vel viduarum, quæ ad Marriages.
 “ dominum regem pertinent.
- “ (VII.) Item de malefactoribus, et eorum receptoribus, et Malefactors.
 “ eis consentientibus.
- “ (VIII.) Item de falsonariis. Forgers.
- “ (IX.) Item de interfectoribus Judæorum, qui sint; et de Murderers
of Jews.
 “ vadiis Judæorum interfectorum, et catallis, et terris, et de-
 “ bitis, et cartis, et quis ea habuerit, et quis quantum eis
 “ debuerit, et quæ vadia habuerint, et quis ea teneat, et quan-
 “ tum valeant, et quis exitus inde habuerit, et quos; et omnia
 “ vadia et debita Judæorum interfectorum capiantur in manu
 “ regis; et qui ad occisionem Judæorum fuerunt, et non fece-
 “ runt finem cum domino rege vel justitiis suis, capiantur,
 “ et non deliberentur nisi per dominum regem vel justitios
 “ suos.
- “ (X.) Item de omnibus auxiliis datis ad redemptionem do- Aids for
the king's
ransom.
 “ mini regis, quis quantum promiserit, et quantum reddiderit,
 “ et quantum a retro sit.
- “ (XI.) Item de fautoribus comitis Johannis, qui finem cum Favourers of
John.
 “ domino rege fecerunt, et qui non.
- “ (XII.) Item de catallis comitis Johannis, vel fautorum Chattels of
John.
 “ ejus, quæ ad usum domini regis non sunt conversa, et quan-

¹ inde] om. B. D. I.

A.D. 1194. Septem. 1094.	“ tum vicecomites receperunt, vel ballivi sui, et quis aliquid contra antiquas consuetudines regni dederit.
John's possessions.	“ (XIII.) Item de omnibus terris comitis Johannis, de dominicis et wardis et exchaetis, et de donis suis, et qua de causa data sunt ei illa dona; et omnia dona comitis Johannis capiantur in manu domini regis, præterquam illa que per regem confirmata sunt.
H. a. debts.	“ (XIV.) Item de debitis et finibus que debentur comiti Johanni, et qua de causa; et omnia exigantur ad opus domini regis.
Usurers.	“ (XV.) Item de freuatoribus, et eorum catallis, qui mortui sunt.
Wines.	“ (XVI.) Item de vinis venditis contra assisam, et de falsis mensuris tam vini quam aliarum rerum.
Crossaders dead.	“ (XVII.) Item de cruciatis mortuis ante iter suum arreptum versus Jerusalem, et quis eorum catalla habuerit, et qua, et quantum.
Great assize.	“ (XVIII.) Item de magnis assisis, qua sunt de centum solidatis terræ, et infra.
Coroners.	“ (XIX.) Item de defaultis.
	“ (XX.) Præterea in quolibet comitatu eligantur tres milites et unus clericus custodes placitorum coronæ.
Sheriff not to be a justice in his county.	“ (XXI.) Et nullus vicecomes sit justitiarius in vicecomitatu ¹ suo, nec in comitatu quem tenuerit post primam coronationem domini regis.
Tallage to be levied.	“ (XXII.) Præterea tailleantur omnes civitates, et burghi, et dominica domini regis.

(XXIII.) *De maneriis regis instaurandis.*

Provision for restocking the king's demesne lands.	“ (1.) Justitiarii vero nominati una cum ballivis Willelmi de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia, et Gaufridi filii Petri, et Willelmi de Chimelli, et Willelmi Bruere, et Hugonis Bardulfi, ² et vicecomitum locorum, summoneri faciant milites in comitatu in rotale nominatos; ut ad diem et locum, quem eis sciro facient, veniant, et coram eis jurare faciant illos, quod legale posse suum ponent ad wardas et exchaetas domini regis instaurandas, et adpretiandas ad commodum domini regis, nec alicujus odio, favore, vel gratia illud omittent; et quod prædicti milites nominati super sacramentum suum eligent duodecim legales milites, vel liberos et legales homines, si milites ad hoc inventi non fuerint, per diversas partes
--	--

¹ vicecomitatu] comitatu, D. I.² Bardulfi] Bardolfi, B. I. The names are omitted in D., which

reads after the first “et aliorum magnatum.”

“ singulorum comitatum in itinere prædictorum justitiarum, A D. 1194.
 “ sicut expedire viderint; qui similiter jurent, quod ad wardas September.
 “ et excaetas de partibus illis instaurandas et appretiandas Inquest to
 “ et affirmandas suum legale posse, et consilium, et auxilium be made
 “ apponent ad commodum regis, ut prædictum est; et prædicti by jury into
 “ jurati supra sacramentum suum eligent de liberioribus ho- the king's
 “ minibus excaetarum et wardarum quot et quales noverint rights.
 “ esse sibi necessarios, ad prædicta domini regis negotia,
 “ sicut melius fieri potest ad commodum domini regis esse-
 “ quenda. (2.) Et sciendum est, quod prædictæ wardæ et Lands in
 “ excaetas instaurabuntur de exitibus ex eis provenientibus, wards and
 “ usque ad festum Michaelis; et etiam de exitibus ejusdem excaetas to
 “ termini. Et si hæc non sufficiunt, supplebitur deficientes de be re-
 “ toloneo¹ domini regis, ita quod illi qui tenebunt wardas et stacked.
 “ excaetas illas ad firmam, respondebunt inde a festo Sancti
 “ Michaelis et deinceps tanquam de stauratis. (3.) Dominus Farmers to
 “ autem rex illis, qui wardas illas et excaetas ad firmam have their
 “ tenebunt, eas usque ad terminum suum de anno in annum wards,
 “ warentizabit; ita quod licet dominus rex aliquam illarum and escheats
 “ alicui dedisset, firmarius firmam suam tenebit usque ad to the end
 “ finem anni, per firmam ei reddendam, cui rex eam dederit, of the term;
 “ quam dominus rex inde perceperit. Justitia vero excaetas,
 “ quam dederit, remaneat domino regi, nisi dominus rex illud
 “ nominatim dederit. (4.) Firmarius etiam, cum firmam suam
 “ dimiserit, instauramentum suum, et omnia sua que in fir-
 “ mis posuerit ultra instauramentum regis, habere et sine dimi-
 “ nutione habebit, et inde habebunt litteras domini archiepi-
 “ scopi patentes, continentes tenorem cartæ domini regis super
 “ hoc factæ. (5.) Inquiretur etiam diligentissime quantum sit Assigned
 “ assisus redditus per singula maneria in demerio, et quantum rents.
 “ valeant omnia alia in prædictis maneris assisa, et quot sunt
 “ curuce, et quantum singula valeant, non aestimantes eas ad
 “ pretium viginti solidorum tantum; sed secundum quod terra
 “ fuerit vel bona vel mala, crescat vel decrescat pretium.
 “ Illi vero qui firmas suscipient,² firmas suas instaurabunt, ut
 “ prædictum est, secundum pretium supradictum de exitibus
 “ excaetarum et wardarum. (6.) Inquiratur etiam de quot
 “ bobus et averis singula curuca valeant instaurari, et quot Cows and
 “ et quantum instauramentum singula maneria possint sus- horses.
 “ tinere. Et tunc aperte et distincte in scriptum redigantur.
 “ (7.) Erit autem pretium bovis quatuor solidi, et vacce simi- Values re-
 “ liter, et averi similiter, et ovis crispæ decem denarii, et gulated.

¹ toloneo] tolneto, D; theloneo, B.; | ² suscipient] suscipiant, D. I
 teloneo, I.

A D 1104. " ovis lanæ grossioris sex denarii, et suis duodecim denarii,
September. " et verris duodecim denarii; et cum firmarii firmas suas
" dimiserint de prædicto pretio respondebunt, vel de animalibus
" pacabilibus in optione firmariorum; et cum omnia prædicta
" instaurata fuerint et appretata, omnia imbreventur
Exceptions " aperte et distincte, et deferantur ad scaccarium. (8) Ex-
from the " cipiuntur autem de hac assisa episcopatus et abbatia, et
assise. " terra baronum qui proximi sunt ætati. (9) Inquiratur
Wards and " etiam per sacramentum prædictorum de omnibus wardis et
escheats to " excaetis, quæ non sunt in manu domini regis, et capiuntur
be taken in- " in manu domini regis, et de illis fiat, sicut de aliis excaetis
to the king's " et wardis.
hands.

(XXIV.) *Capitula Judæorum.*

Possessions " (1.) Omnia debita et vadia Judæorum imbreventur, terra,
of the Jews " domus, redditus, et possessiones. Judæus vero qui aliquid
to be regis- " horum celaverit, sit in forisfactura damni regis de corpore
tered. " suo,¹ et concealamento, et de omnibus possessionibus suis, et
" omnibus catallis suis,² nec unquam concealamentum Judæo
How the " recuperare licebit. (2.) Item provideantur sex vel septem
payments " loca in quibus facient præstita sua, et provideantur duo
of the Jews " legales Christiani, et duo legales Judæi, et duo legales scrip-
are to be " tores, et coram illis, et clerico Willelmi de Sanctæ Mariæ
made, and " Ecclesia, et Willelmi de Chimilli fiant præstita, et carta
the deeds " præstitorum fiant in modum cirograffi. Et altera pars remaneat
kept. " Judæo, sigillata sigillo illius cui pecunia traditur; et
" altera pars remaneat in area communi, in qua sunt tres
" serruræ,³ unde duo Christiani habeant unam clavem, et duo
" Judæi unam, et clericus Willelmi de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia
" et magister Willelmi de Chimilli habeant⁴ tertiam; et præ-
" terea tria sigilla, et qui claves habuerant sigilla apponent;
" clerici autem prædictorum Willelmi et Willelmi habeant
" rotulum de transcriptis omnium cartarum, et sicut cartæ
" mutabuntur, mutetur et rotulus: de singulis cartis dentur
" tres denarii, medietas a Judæo, et medietas ab eo cui pecunia
" creditur; unde duo scriptores habeant duos denarios,
" et custos rotuli tertium. Et de cætero nullum fiet præstitum,
" nulla Judæis fiet solutio, nulla fiet cartarum mutatio, nisi
" coram prædictis vel majori parte, si omnes interesse nequi-

¹ *sua*] om. I. MS. D. omits these
capitula, and all that follows down
to p. 273.

² *suis*] om. I.

³ *serruræ*] serruræ, I.

⁴ *habeant*] habeat, B. I.

“ verint. Et prædicti duo Christiani habeant unum rotulum
 “ de recepta Judæorum solutionis eis de cætero faciendæ, et
 “ duo Judæi unum, et custos rotuli unum. (3.) Item quilibet
 “ Judæus jurabit super rotulum suum, quod omnia debita sua,
 “ et vadia, et redditus, et omnes res, et possessiones suas
 “ inbrevari faciet, et quod nihil celabit, ut prædictum est;
 “ et si scire poterit quod aliquis aliquid celaverit, illud jus-
 “ titiis ad eos missis secreto revelabit, et quod falsonarios
 “ cartarum, et retonsores denariorum, ubi eos scient, detegent
 “ et monstrabunt, et de falsis cartis similiter.

A.D. 1194.
September.

The Jews
are to swear
to conceal
nothing.

“ (XXV.) Præterea inquisitio, quæ quærenda erat de prisis
 “ et tengeriis omnium ballivorum domini regis, tam justiti-
 “ arum quam vicecomitum, et constabulariorum et forestario-
 “ rum, et eorum servientium, post coronationem domini regis
 “ Ricardi primam, et quare prisæ illæ captæ fuerunt, et¹ per
 “ quem, et de omnibus catallis, donis, et promissis factis oc-
 “ casione saisinæ factæ de terris comitis Johannis, et fautorum
 “ suorum, et quis ea receperit, et quæ, et quantum,—dilationem
 “ cepit per mandatum Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi,
 “ tunc temporis capitalis justitiiarii regis.”

The inquest
into the
exactions of
the king's
officers is
postponed.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ, peractis negotiis suis
 in Pictavia pro voluntate sua, rediit in Andegaviam, et
 redemit omnes baillivos suos, id est, ad redemptionem
 coegit. Similiter fecit² in Cenomannia.

Richard
puts his
officers in
Anjou and
Maine to
ransom.

Deinde veniens in Normanniam moleste tulit quic-
 quid factum fuerat de supradictis treugis, et imputans
 cancellario suo hoc per eum fuisse factum, abstulit ab
 eo sigillum suum, et fecit sibi novum sigillum fieri, et
 mandavit per singulas terras suas, quod nihil ratum
 foret, quod fuerat per vetus sigillum suum; tum quia
 cancellarius ille³ operatus fuerat inde minus discrete
 quam esset necesse, tum quia sigillum illud perditum
 erat, quando Rogerus Malus Catulus, vicecancellarius
 suus, submersus erat in mari ante insulam de Cipro.
 Et præcepit rex, quod omnes, qui cartas habebant,
 venirent ad novum sigillum suum ad cartas suas
 renovandas.

He annuls
the truce
and all the
acts of the
chancellor
passed un-
der the old
seal,

and requires
charters
to be con-
firmed by
the new
one.

¹ *et*] om. I.

² *fecit*] om. B. I.

³ *ille*] om. B. I.

A D. 1194
August.

*De torniamentis statutis in Anglia per Ricardum
regem Angliæ.*

Tourni-
ments al-
lowed in
England,
on purchase
of licence.

Præterea rex statuit torniamenta fieri in Anglia, et carta sua confirmavit; ita quod quicumque torniare vellet, daret ei pecuniam secundum formam subscriptam: ¹ videlicet, comes daret pro licentia torniandi xx. marcas argenti, et barones x. marcas argenti, et miles terram habens iiii. marcas argenti, et miles non habens terram ii. marcas argenti. Et præcepit rex ne aliquis miles accederet ad loca torniamentorum, nisi prius tradidisset ei memoratam pecuniam. Cartam autem hujus concessionis tradidit rex Willelmo comiti Salebiriensi custodiendam.² Sed et Hubertus Walteri, summus justitiarius regis, constituit Teobaldum Walteri, fratrem suum, hujus pecunie collectorem.

The money
to be col-
lected by
Theobald
Walter.

*Henricus Romanorum imperator iterum intravit
Apuliam cum exercitu.*

Roger, son
of Tancred,
king of
Sicily, dies.

Eodem anno Rogerus, filius Tankredi regis Siciliae, quem pater suus coronari fecerat in regem Siciliae, qui etiam filiam Chursac imperatoris Constantinopolitani in uxorem duxerat, obiit; quo defuncto, Tankredus rex fecit Willelmum filium suum, fratrem prædicti regis Rogeri in regem Siciliae coronari, et paulo post prædictus Tankredus obiit;³ quo audito, Henricus Romanorum imperator, magno congregato exercitu, intravit Apuliam in principio mensis Augusti, et eam sibi subjugavit; et xv. diebus ante festum Sancti Michaelis cepit Salernum per vim. Et quia Salernitani proditiose egerant adversus eum, ut supra dictum est, tra-

Death of
Tancred.

Henry VI.
takes
Salerno,
Sept. 15.

¹ *subscriptam*] superscriptam, B. "apud villam ep scopi, xx. die Au-
L. "gusti."
² *custodiendam*] The act is given
in full in the *Firdera*, i. 65; from
MS. Cotton Claudius C. iv., fol.
233, with the date "Teste me ipso
³ *obit*] Feb. 26, 1194. *Act de V.
les dates* MS G proceeds, "Audita
"itaque morte Tancredi regis Si-
"ciliæ."

dentem Constantiam imperatricem in manu regis Tankredi, in vindictam illius prodicionis, omnes illius civitatis potentiores aut morti tradidit, aut in exilium damnatos relegavit, et uxores et filias eorum exposuit exercitui. Et invenit in turre majori magnum thesaurum valentem ducenta millia unciarum auri; et exercitus ejus factus est dives ex spoliis Salernitanorum. Deinde perrexit¹ imperator ad civitatem Melfe, quæ statim reddita est ei; et dum ipse ibi moram fecit, redditæ sunt ei omnes civitates Apuliæ; ex quibus ipse tres subvertit, scilicet Salernum, et Spinchole, et Policor. Deinde ante festum Omnium Sanctorum venit in Siciliam usque Messanam civitatem, cum tanta gloria et honore, quod non est auditum quod aliquis unquam antea gloriosius vel honorificentius terram illam intraret. Et ipse ibi honorifice susceptus est ab archiepiscopis et episcopis, et comitibus et baronibus regni Siciliæ; et recedens inde perrexit Panormum.

A.D. 1194.
September.
Cruel
revenge
of the
emperor.

He takes
Anagni, and
destroys
Salerno and
other places.

His recep-
tion in
Sicily.

Quo cum venisset, regina² Siciliæ, quondam uxor Tankredi regis, et Ricardus de Therne,³ frater ejus, tradiderunt ei palatium regis Siciliæ, et Willelmum regem, filium regis Tankredi, et uxorem⁴ Rogeri regis, filiam Chursac⁵ imperatoris Constantinopolitani, et thesaurum auri et argenti inestimabilem, quem reges Siciliæ thesaurizaverant sibi. Deinde traditæ sunt ei omnes civitates et munitiones regni Siciliæ: et Margaritus admiralia tradidit ei castrum de portu Panormi; et imperator dedit ei ducatum de Duraz et principatum de Tarenta, et principatum maris. Venerunt etiam ad prædictum Romanorum imperatorem omnes pagani et Judæi qui erant in regno Siciliæ, et satisficientes illi

The trea-
sures of
Tancred
surrendered
to him

He occupies
Sicily and
gives Du-
razzo to
Margarit.

¹ *perrexit*] rex, ins. I.

² *regina*] Sibylla.

³ *Therne*] Richard, count of Acerra: R. de S. Germ. ed. Pertz., p. 15.

⁴ *uxorem*] Irene, daughter of Isaac Angelus; blank in A.

⁵ *Chursac*] Isaac Angelus, Kyr Isaac; as in the Saga of king Swerre, the emperor Alexius is called Kyrialax, p. 222.

A.D. 1194. remanserunt in regno, unusquisque in locum suum, sub ea conditione qua ante fuerat.

Coronation
of Henry
and Con-
stantia at
Palermo.

He is crowned
at Palermo.

He gives
the widow
of Roger
to Philip of
Swabia, and
marries
the son of
Theodora.

Change in
the man-
ner of gov-
ernment
at Rome.

Swerre,
king of
Norway,
crowned

Deinde imperator fecit se, et Constantiam imperatri-
cem, uxorem suam, coronari¹ in civitate Panormi, præ-
sentibus et consentientibus archiepiscopis, et episcopis,
et principibus regni. Deinde imperator fecit effodi a
terra corpora Tankredi regis, et Rogeri filii ejus regis,
et spoliavit eos coronis et sceptris et cæteris regalibus
ornamentis; dicens quod ipsi non erant de jure reges,
immo regni invasores, et violenti detentores. Deinde
imperator dedit Philippo fratri suo, duci de Suave, præ-
fatam filiam Cbursac imperatoris Constantinopolitani
in uxorem; et Willelmum regem, filium Tankredi regis,
excræcavit et ementulavit.

Eodem anno² cives Romani elegerunt lvi. senatores,
et constituerunt eos supra se; prius enim habebant
unum solum senatorem, qui cognominatus erat Bene-
dictus³ carus homo, qui regnavit super eos duobus
annis, et deinde habuerunt alium senatorem, qui voca-
tus est Johannes Capuche, qui similiter regnavit super
eos aliis duobus annis: in quorum temporibus melius
regebatur Roma, quam nunc temporibus lvi. senatorum.

Eodem anno Swerus⁴ princeps Norweie, contra pro-
hibitionem domini pape, fecit se coronari in regem Nor-
weie. Quo audito, Eustachius⁵ archiepiscopus de

¹ *coronari*] The day is variously stated; Oct. 29, R. de Dic 678.

² *eodem anno*] This is a classical passage for the History of Medieval Rome, and is so used by Du Cange, s. v. *Senator*; whence it is quoted by Gibbon and others. See also Gregorovius, *Gesch. der Stadt Rom im Mittelalter*, v. 590.

³ *Benedictus*] Du Cange mentions an inscription bearing the name of this senator as repairer of the *Pons Cestius*.

⁴ *Swerus*] See above, vol. iv, p.

214 He was crowned June 29: *Saga Sværr. Kon* 218.

⁵ *Eustachius*] The archbishop who was driven into exile in England by Swerre was Eystein or Augustin, who died in 1188 (*Ann. Isl.* ap. Langebek, iii. 68). His successor was Eric, bishop of Stavangr, who held the see until 1205, when Thoror was consecrated in his place (*Ib.* 74). Eric was driven out of Norway in 1191, and took refuge in Denmark.

Nidros maluit exulari, quam interesse illius coronationi; abiit; et prædictus Swerus, filius Siwardi quondam regis Norweicæ, præcepit ut omnes episcopi Norweicæ convenissent apud Berghes in festo apostolorum Petri et Pauli, ad coronandum eum. Erat autem inter eos quidam episcopus de Wic, qui vocabatur Nicolaus.¹ Hic dicebat quod ipse interesse noluit illius coronationi propter absentiam archiepiscopi sui; quo audito, Swerus fecit episcopum illum comprehendi, et in mari supra monticulum ligari, ita quod unda maris fluens fere intravit in os ejus; et sic episcopus ille perterritus assensum præbuit voluntati Sweri Birkebain,² et coronavit eum, et in regem consecravit, apud Berghes in festo apostolorum Petri et Pauli, præsentibus et consentientibus Martino³ de Berghes, et Airico⁴ de Stavangre, et Thore⁵ de Burgunde, et Absalon,⁶ episcopis. Eodem die, cum idem Swerus, rex et sacerdos, pranderet more regio cum episcopis et principibus regni, fecit amputari caput Siwardi, filii Adestan⁷ quondam regis Norweicæ, et coram se et convivantibus fecit caput illud deferri.

A.D. 1194.
June 29.
He compels an unwilling bishop to crown him.

On the day of coronation he orders the execution of one of his competitors.

Est autem notandum, quod iste Swerus Birkebain quindecim reges in quindecim navalibus præliis devicit, et interfecit cum omni sequela eorum, antequam ipse coronam regni potuisset adipisci, quorum nomina hæc

This Swerre conquered and slew fifteen kings.

¹ *Nicolaus*] See the story in the *Saga Sverris*, p. 218 (ed. Thorlac and Werlauff, *Hist. Norw.*, iv., p. 218).

² *Birkebain*] Berkebain, B. I.

³ *Martino*] Made bishop of Bergen at this time. An Englishman, according to the *Saga of Swerre*, p. 218.

⁴ *Airico*] called Nial in the *Saga*; his predecessor was Eric, who had become archbishop of Nidros.

⁵ *Thore*] bishop of Hammar.

⁶ He was the archbishop of Lund in Denmark, and does not appear to have been present.

⁷ *Adestan*] Eystein, called before *Augustinus*, vol. ii., p. 214. This is Eystein Birkbain, who was set up against Magnus Erlingson, and slain in 1177 (*Ann. Island*). But the Sigurd in question was a son of Magnus Erlingson.

A.D. 1194.
Kings slain
by Swerre.

Rule of
succession
and of the
kings of
Norway.

September.
Arrival from
Rome of
the envoys
sent on
behalf of
the chapter
against the
archbishop
of York;
with letters
of absolu-
tion.

sunt : Magnus ¹ rex, Borgher ² rex, Siwardus ³ rex, Orde ⁴ rex, Guthorn ⁵ rex, Johannes Cuvelung ⁶ rex, Belue ⁷ rex, Zether ⁸ rex, et alii sex, et iste Siwardus ⁹ filius Adestani. Est etiam sciendum, quod consuetudo regni Norveie est usque in hodiernum diem, quod omnis qui alicujus regis Norveie dinoscitur esse filius, licet sit spurius, et de ancilla genitus, tantum sibi jus vendicat in regnum Norveie, quantum filius regis conjugati, et de libera genitus. Et ideo fiunt inter eos praelia indesinenter, donec unus illorum vincatur et interficiatur.

Eodem anno, paulo ante festum Sancti Michaelis, venerunt Eboracum Hamo praeceptor Eboracensis ecclesie, et Gaufridus de Muschamp archidiaconus de Clivelande, et magister Willelmus Testard archidiaconus de Notingham, qui Romam profecti fuerant cum magistro Simone Apuliensi, et cum Radulfo archidiacono de Westrithing, propter injurias quas Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus illis et concanonicis suis fecerat, qui eos et omnes illis communicantes excommunicaverat, et ecclesias eorum interdixerat, super appellationem ad summum pontificem factam. Et attulerunt secum litteras absolutionis tam de excommunicatione quam de interdicto; et litteras de restitutione ablatorum, quarum executionem faciendam Hugo Dunel-

¹ Magnus] His fall in 1184 has been already related, vol. ii., p. 214.

² Borgher] Several of these names are not assignable to any known kings. The editors of the Saga suggest that this is Vikar, son of Magnus Erlingson.

³ Siwardus] Sigurd the Burner, son of king Hingo, and a claimant of the crown against Swerre; killed in 1189. *Saga Swerres Konunga*, 195.

⁴ Orde] Order, G. "Forsan

"Ormus Kungsbroder:" *Saga Swerr.*, note, p. 433.

⁵ Guthorn] Gattoron, G.

⁶ Johannes Cuvelung] He is called John Kufung in the *Annales Islandorum*, which place his fall in 1188. Langebek, iii. 68.

⁷ Belue] Unknown.

⁸ Zether] Unknown.

⁹ Siwardus] The Sigurd who was put to death in 1194 was the son of Magnus Erlingson. *Saga Swerr.*, p. 64.

mensis episcopus ex mandato Cælestini papæ suscipiens, A D 1104.
 Eboracum venit: et in die Sancti Michaelis celebravit Sept. 29.
 Missam in matrice ecclesia; denuncians clero et populo, Hugh of
 sententiam, quam Gaufridus archiepiscopus Eboracensis Durham de-
 in canonicos suos et eis communicantes dederat, nullam clares the
 fuisse. Radulfus vero archidiaconus de Westrithing in arch-
 redeundo a Roma obiit: cujus archidiaconatum Gau- bishop's
 fridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus dedit primum Petro vertime
 fratri suo, deinde Petro de Dinant. Præfatus vero null.
 archiepiscopus facta appellatione contra canonicos suos, The arch-
 et eorum adquisita, transfretavit de Anglia in bishop goes
 manniam ad Ricardum regem Angliæ fratrem suum, to see the
 et ab eo litteras in hac forma impetravit: king in Nor-
 mandy

Epistola Ricardi regis Angliæ.

“ Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Nov. 3.
 “ Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegavni, Willelmo de Sancta The king
 “ Mariæ Ecclesia et Hugoni Bardulfo,¹ dilectis et fidelibus writes that
 “ suis, salutem. Notum facimus vobis, quod Gaufridus Eboracensis his brother
 “ archiepiscopus, frater noster, venit ad nos, et præter Geoffrey has
 “ illas mille marcas quas reddidit in Anglia, fecit nobis volun- made his
 “ tatem nostram de aliis mille marcis; ipse autem, ut nobis per peace by a
 “ queundam innotuit, libenter, si posset, ante de debito suo gift of 2000
 “ satisfecisset, et moleste dñi tulit quod tam diu distulit. marks.
 “ Inde est quod eum in gratiam et protectionem nostram
 “ recepimus, et benivolentiam nostram ei plenarie concessi-
 “ mus. Nos autem nuncium nostrum mittimus in Angliam
 “ cum nuncio suo, ut videat qualiter de residuis mille marcis
 “ nobis satisfecerit. Promisit enim nobis, ut inde nobis satis- He orders
 “ faceret, quam citius poterit. Unde vobis mandamus, ut ei that his
 “ terras suas et omnia sua integra restitua faciatis sine lands shall
 “ dilatione; quod autem de redditibus suis vel de rebus suis be restored
 “ venditum fuerit nomine hujus debiti, quod inde habuimus, to him.
 “ rationabili compoto computari faciatis in residuo debiti sui;
 “ et si aliquid inde venditum fuerit minus justo pretio quam
 “ debuerat, vel amore vel odio alienjus, id faciatis emendari
 “ ab illis qui hoc fecerunt, et archiepiscopo in debito suo
 “ computari: homines autem ejus captos vel retentos, tam
 “ clericos quam laicos, secundum consuetudinem Angliæ fa-

¹ *Bardulfo*] Bardulf, B. D. I.

A D. 1194.
Nov. 3.
He is to
have al. his
archiepis-
copal rights.

Another
letter.

The king
annals pre-
sentations
made under
his father's
seal at the
time of his
death.

These had
been sent
by Geoffrey
himself as
chancellor.

John arch-
bishop of
Lyons, re-
signs and
retires to
Chartaux.

“ciatis sine dilatione replegari et deliberari. Non patiamini
“autem quod laica potestas eum disturbet, quin ecclesiasticam
“censuram per totum archiepiscopatum suum possit¹ exercere,
“sicut de ratione debet. Distringatis etiam homines de Bever-
“laco, quod damna ab eis illata ei restituant, et ei faciant quod
“ei facere debent, et que facere consueverunt antecessoribus
“suis. Teste meipso, iii^{mo} die Novembris, apud Mamerz.”

Item prædictus archiepiscopus Eboracensis impetravit
alias litteras a domino rege in hac forma;

“Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ,
“comes Andegaviæ, Willelmo de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesiæ, et Hugoni Bardulfo, salutem. Sciatis quod didicimus,
“quod in morte patris nostri, sine præcepto suo et conscientia, habuerunt litteras de sigillo suo Gaufridus de
“Muscamp de habendo archidiaconatu de Cheloland, et Willelmus de Stigandebi² et magister Erardus de præbendis
“habendis in ecclesia Eboracensi, que tunc vacabat, et erat
“in manu nostra; et ideo præcipimus, quod præfatos ab archidiaconatu et præbendis dictis sine mora dissaisietis, repentes
“ab eis quicquid exinde perceperunt, postquam illos
“redditus ita fraudulenter et per surreptionem sunt adepti.
“Teste meipso, iii^{mo} die Novembris, apud Mamerz.”

Proh pudor!

Turpe est doctori, cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

Idem enim archiepiscopus, dum adhuc esset cancellarius regis patris sui, sigillum illud in custodia habuit: per quod præfatus archidiaconatus et præbendæ illæ date fuerant prænominatis personis.

Eodem anno Johannes Belesmeins,³ archiepiscopus de Liens supra Rodanum, deposuit se de archiepiscopatu suo; et contentus redivitibus centum librarum esterlingorum pertinentibus ad archiepiscopatum de Liens, in domo Clarevallensi vitam immaculatam, Deo et hominibus placentem, usque ad consummationem vitæ suæ duxit.

Eodem anno, cum Limpoldus dux Austriæ adhuc permaneret in sententia excommunicationis, quam do-

¹ possit] posset, B. D. I.; possint, A.

² Stigandebi] Stigandebi, I.; Stigandebi, B. om. D.

³ Johannes Belesmeins] Beles-

meins, G. John of Poitiers, treasurer of York, 1154; bishop of Poitiers, 1162-1181; archbishop of Lyons, 1181-1194.

minus papa in eum tulerat propter captionem Ricardi regis Angliæ, nec pœniteret, flagellavit Dominus terram suam in hunc modum. In primum¹ quidem incensæ sunt omnes civitates terræ suæ, nec alicui nota fuit causa incendii. Secundo, ex inundatione Danubii fluvii submersa est quædam terra adjacens, in qua decem millia hominum, vel eo amplius, perierunt. Tertio, cum in media æstate soleat et debeat omnis terra virere, tota terra ejus tunc temporis, contra solitum cursum et debitum, exaruit. Quarto, cum semina frugum deberent in herbam processisse, in vermes conversa sunt. Quinto, nobiliores terræ suæ mortalitate percussi sunt. Et quamvis tot et tantis flagellasset Dominus terram suam plagis, noluit tamen pœnitere; sed induratum est cor ejus, adeo quod ipse juravit, quod omnes obsides regis Angliæ, quos ipse habebat, capitalem subirent sententiam, nisi in proximo perficerentur ei a rege Angliæ omnes conventiones quas cum illo fecerat. Unde factum est quod Baldewinus de Betun, qui unus erat ex illis qui dati fuerant duci Austriæ pro redemptione regis Angliæ obsides, ex communi obsidum consilio missus est ad regem Angliæ ad indicandum ei ducis propositum; qui cum venisset, misertus illorum rex, tradidit ei rex sororem Arturi ducis Britannie, et filiam imperatoris Cypri, ad ducendum eas usque ad ducem Austriæ; sororem scilicet Arturi ad maritandam filio ducis Austriæ, et filiam imperatoris de Cypro tradendam in manu ducis Austriæ quietam.

A.D. 1104.
Chastise-
ments that
fell on duke
Leopold of
Austria:
conflagra-
tions, floods,
blight, bad
harvest,
pestilence.

He
threatens to
put Ri-
card's host-
ages to
death.

Baldwin of
Bethune
sent home
to Richard,
who sends
to the duke
his niece
Eleanor and
the princess
of Cyprus.

Sextus annus Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo quinto, qui est annus sextus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, idem

¹ *In primum*] In primis, D. G. These details are given by William of Newburgh, v. 8, in almost the same words. They were probably derived by the two historians from

a common source, a letter perhaps on the occasion of the duke's death. The same source doubtless furnished Ralph of Coggeshall with his very similar account.

A. D. 1194.
Dec. 23.
Richard
keeps
Christi as
at Rotten.
The truce
with Philip
was not
kept.

rex Ricardus fuit in Normannia apud Rothomagum die Nativitatis Dominicæ, quæ die Dominica evenit, sollicitus providere sibi necessaria in pecunia, et hominibus acquirendis contra Philippum regem Franciæ. Treuga enim, quæ inter eos statuta fuerat duratura usque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, minime tenebatur, quia homines utriusque regni rapinas faciebant iniquas.

Henry VI.
at Palermo.

Eodem anno, die Natalis Domini, Henricus Romanorum imperator fuit in Sicilia apud Panormum, coronatus corona regni Siciliæ.¹

De ultima plaga quam Dominus fecit Limpoldo duci Austria.

Dec. 23.
The duke of
Austria
Limpold, a
lew

Eodem anno, die Sancti Stephani prothomartyris infra Natale Domini, cum induratum esset cor Limpoldi ducis Austriae, nec propter prædictas plagas, quas Dominus fecit terræ suæ, posset adhuc emolliri, flagellavit Dominus corpus suum in hunc modum: convocatis majoribus terræ suæ ad celebrandum festum Natalis Domini, dum idem dux die Beati Stephani exiret, ut cum militibus suis luderet, cecidit equus suus super eum, et confregit pedem ejus; adeo quod ossa hinc inde confracta per mediam cutem exeuntia ad latitudinem palmæ exterius comparuerunt; et accedentes medici, quæ credebant ei expedire,² pedi apposuerunt. In crastino pes ejus denigratus inventus est, et in eum statum conversus, quod oportuit eum, assentientibus medicis, obtruncari: quod cum ipse fieri postularet, non est inventus qui voluntati ejus adquiesceret. Non enim ausus est aliquis, vel potuit pro dolore in dominum suum manum imponere. Tandem filium et heredem suum convenit, rogans et præcipiens quod pedem suum

Dec. 27
He can find
no one to
amputate it.

¹ *Treuga . . . Sicilia*] om. D. | ² *expedire*] *expediri*, I.
The second paragraph is omitted
also in G.

amputando dolori suo finem imponeret: quod cum nec ipse facere vellet, accito camerario suo, et ad hoc coacto, dux ipse dolarium manu propria tibiæ apposuit, et ipse camerarius malleo vibrato vix trina percussione pedem obtruncavit: medici vero, appositis medicaminibus, cum eum in crastino visitarent, non invenerunt in eo spem vitæ. Dux igitur desperatus, archiepiscopos et episcopos, et terræ suæ magnates, qui solemnibus illis intererant, convocari fecit; et cum petit absolvi a sententia quam dominus papa in eum tulerat, pro injuriis quas ipse regi Angliæ fecerat, responsum est ei ab universo clero, quod nullatenus absolveretur, nisi jurando caveret quod super memoratis injuriis iudicio ecclesiæ staret, et nisi alii majores de ducatu suo idem cum eo jurarent: et si de eo humanitus contingeret, quo minus iudicium ecclesiasticum per eum procederet, ipsi omnimodis procurarent, quod sanctæ ecclesiæ satisfaceret; qui absolutus, mediante iudicio, omnes obsides regis Angliæ, quos habuit, liberari præcepit, et pecuniam sibi debitam regi Angliæ remisit; quo facto cum ipse decederet,¹ et hæres ipsius cum quibusdam magnatibus resisteret, quo minus prædicta fierent, clerus ejusdem ducis corpus nullo modo sepeliri permisit: immo per octo dies detentum est super terram corpus illius, donec omnes obsides regis Angliæ liberarentur; quorum quidam in Angliam venientes narraverunt hæc omnia, sicut ea quæ viderant et audierant: qui etiam asserebant, quod in recessu suo exposita eis erant et oblata quatuor millia marcarum et amplius, reportanda, de pecunia regis Angliæ recepta; quæ propter viarum pericula nullatenus ausi fuerant recipere. Hæc omnia fecit Dominus,² ut superbos contereret, et ut potentiam suam mortalibus manifestaret; et cum injurias Sibi et

A. D. 1194.
Dec. 27.
He compels his chamberlain to hew off his foot.

Dec. 28.
He despairs of life and desires absolution.

His bishops & d. him release the English hostages.

The clergy refuse to bury him until this is done.

¹ *decederet*] Duke Leopold d'ed at Gritz, on the 30th of December 1194. Anshert (ed Dobrowsky), p. 125. The story is given by

William of Newburgh in nearly the same words. See above, p. 275.

² *Dominus*] Deus, Say. de.

A D. 1104.
December.

Suis illatas digna prosequitur ultione, illud non propter nos tantum, sed etiam propter Se credamus advenisse; nec nobis jactanter ascribamus, quod ex sola benignitate Sua operatus est Dominus.

Baldwin of
Bedoune
brings back
the ladies.

Interim cum Baldewinus de Betun appropinquasset terræ prædicti ducis Austriae, et audisset mortem illius, non processit ulterius, sed ad regem Angliæ rediit, et reduxit præfatas puellas, et tradidit eas regi.

The arch-
bishop of
Rouen rans-
oms his
lands from
Hug.

Eodem anno Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus dedit Philippo regi Franciæ mille libras Andegavensis monetæ, pro redemptione terrarum suarum quas idem rex Franciæ per werram suam occupaverat.

Robert earl
of Leicester
sacrifices his
castle of
Pasci, and
buys for his
liberty.

Eodem tempore Robertus comes Leirecstriæ obtulit Philippo regi Franciæ pro redemptione sua mille libras Esterlingorum, et clamare ei quietum in perpetuum ab ipso et hæredibus suis castellum de Pasci cum omnibus pertinentiis suis, et perquirere ei inde confirmationem domini papæ, et confirmationem regis Angliæ. Sed quia nondum finis erat gwerræ¹ inter ipsum et regem Angliæ, in respectum posuit ea quæ comes Leirecstriæ obtulerat ei.

A D. 1105.
Jan. 15.

Arrival of
the papal
commission
to inquire
into the
murders of
an bishop
Geoffrey.

Eodem² anno mense Januarii, die Dominica proxima post octavas Epiphaniæ, venerunt Eboracum Hugo Lincolnensis episcopus, et magister Winemerus archidiaconus de Norbamtun, et Hugo prior de Pontefracto;³ quibus dominus papa Celestinus commiserat inquisitionem faciendam de excessibus Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi, in quibus accusabatur a canonicis suis Eboracensibus coram domino papa et cardinalibus; et processerunt secundum domini papæ mandatum, quod ipsi susceperunt in hac forma;

¹ *gwerra*] *werra*, B. D. I.

² *Eodem . . . forma*] omitted in MSS. B. D. I. with the letter, and the narrative that follows it down to p. 283.

³ *Pontefracto*] *Ponte sacro*, Savile, who also has *Pontexam* to below. The details of this suit have been anticipated by our author above, pp. 230, 231.

*Epistola Celestini papæ contra Gaufridum
Eboracensem archiepiscopum.*

A. D. 1194.
June 8.

“ Cælestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili fratri
 “ Lincolnensi episcopo, et dilectis filiis archidiacono de Nor- The pope
 “ hamton, et priori de Pontefracto,¹ salutem. Mediator Dei et writes to the
 “ hominum, Dominus Jesus Christus, Cujus providentia in Sui bishop of
 “ dispositione non fallitur, totius ecclesie disciplina caput et Lincoln, the
 “ magisterium sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesie voluit reservari, archdeacon
 “ et omnes alias ipsius ordinationi et correctioni subesse; ita of North-
 “ quod concessa ei speciahter plenitudine potestatis, ejus etiam ampton, and
 “ proprium cæterarum excessus corrigere, et quod laudabiliter² the prior of
 “ agitur auctoritate apostolice culmine approbare. Unde nos, Pontefract.
 “ quia ad ejus regimen Divina sumus dispositione assumpti, ea
 “ volumus fratres et coepiscopos nostros cautela et discretionem
 “ diligere, ne videamur affectum et familiaritatem eorum
 “ vocationis nostræ officio anteferre; præsertim cum habeat
 “ suos fines dilectio qua quisque tenetur ad hominem, non ad
 “ hominis errorem diligendum. Sane ad audientiam nostram He has
 “ ex personarum et capituli Eboracensis ecclesie insinuatione heard the
 “ pervenit, et id ipsum dilectorum filiorum nostrorum complaints
 “ Roberti³ Eboracensis, et Rogeri de Selebi, et aliorum XI. of the ab-
 “ abbatum Præmonstratensis ordinis testimonia manifesto bot's agent at
 “ declarare videntur, quod venerabilis frater noster Gaufridus, Geofroy.
 “ Eboracensis archiepiscopus, sacramenta injuncti sibi officii
 “ vilipendens, venatione, aucupatio, et aliis militaribus curis
 “ inutiliter occupatus, ordinationi clericorum, ecclesiarum de-
 “ dicationibus, aut synodis celebrandis nec manum nec operam
 “ post sui promotionem adhibuit, nec abbatem aliquem bene-
 “ dixit; licet tam contra clericos quam abbates, ad maledicen-
 “ dum et excommunicandum, linguam consueverit juxta motum
 “ proprium indiscrete relaxare: libertates ecclesie sue ac con- Clergos
 “ suetudines approbatas evacuat et subvertat; appellationes, que make
 “ solent esse ad remedium oppressorum, ad Romanæ sedis in- against him
 “ juriam reduxit in contemptum; plures, pro eo quod ad nos
 “ appellationes miserant, vinculis fecit vehementer carceribus-

¹ *Pontefracto*] Ponte sancto, Sa-
 vile. Hugh, prior of Pontefract,
 had a bull confirming the grants to
 his priory, from a pope Celestine,
 probably Celestine III: *Mom. Angl.*,
 v. 122. An extract from a letter of
 Celestine III. to the bishop of Lin-
 coln and the prior of Pontefract, on

the same business as that in the
 text, has a place in the Decretals of
 Gregory IX., lib. x., tit. 3, c. 29.

² *quod laudabiliter*] collauda-
 biliter, A. G.

³ *Roberti*] Abbot of S. Mary's,
 York.

A D 1104.
June 8.
Charges
against
archbishop
Geoffrey.

The pope
has found
evidence on
these points
and others.

He commits
to the re-
cipients the
task of
inquiring.

“ que¹ astringi; personas ecclesiarum suarum, post appellationem ad
 “ nos factam, honoribus et beneficiis spoliavit: quosdam, cano-
 “ nicorum appellatione contempta, excommunicationi subiecit;
 “ privilegia Romanorum pontificum in eius presentia omnino
 “ auctoritate frustrantur; et qui forte alias tutus esset in
 “ ostensione privilegii nostri, optati coram eo beneficium pre-
 “ sidii demeretur. Cum contingit aliquem ad subtractam sibi
 “ ecclesiam aut possessionem per iudices delegatos auctoritate
 “ nostra restitui, cum per quem debuerat iudicium execra-
 “ tioni mandari statim sentiet inimicum. Plures enim taliter
 “ restitutos destituit, et ecclesias per ministros suos violenter
 “ aggrediens, fores ecclesiarum fregisse, et eos proponitur per
 “ violentiam expulisse. Quamplures etiam reatum perjurii
 “ fecit perniciose incurrere, ipsos ab obedientia, quam archi-
 “ diaconis suis canonice servandam juramento promiserant,
 “ quadam necessitatis violentia retrahendo. Præterea majorem
 “ ecclesiam cum multitudine armatorum aggrediens, fores
 “ capti per violentiam confringi et asportari fecit, et bona
 “ canonicorum et aliorum plurimum, qui res suas tam in
 “ ecclesia quam in thesauraria deposuerant, fecit per violentiam
 “ detineri; pro quibus omnibus Eboracense capitulum ad
 “ nostram audientiam appellavit. Comperimus etiam ex testi-
 “ monio predictorum quod ecclesie quandoque vacantibus,
 “ presentatas sibi ab his ad quos presentatio pertinet, per-
 “ sonas idoneas non admittit; sed eas aut pueris et minus
 “ honestis personis assignat, usus pariter presentatis et
 “ instituentis officio; aut facit eas de sola voluntate vacare,
 “ ut earum fructus ipsius usibus applicentur, et quod susten-
 “ tationi alicujus clerici honesti debebatur, sibi non metuit
 “ retinere. Adjecerunt etiam, quod cum spiritualia dona gra-
 “ tis debeant et sine pravitate distribui, frequenter cum donat
 “ ecclesiam, aut eam scindit per partes contra statuta ecclesie
 “ canonica, aut in ea novam et indebitam retinet pensionem, et
 “ quamplures excommunicatos vel suspensos non, nisi pecunia
 “ interveniente, absolvit. Religiosi vero viri et honesti in con-
 “ spectu ejus despecti et contemptibiles fiunt; viles et suspecti
 “ personæ de facili familiaritatem ejus et gratiam assequuntur.
 “ Unde si sic vivitur, et in talibus diutius fuerit conversatio
 “ sua, timendum est ne gregi sibi commissio potius sit lapis
 “ offensionis, et scandali petra, quam eruditionis exemplum, vel
 “ contra spirituales nequitas solatium aut tutela. Quia igitur,
 “ que præmissa sunt, sollicitudinem inquisitionis expos-
 “ cunt, discretioni vestræ, de qua plene confidimus, inquisi-

¹ *carceribusque* } et *carceribus*, G.; *carceralibus*, Savile.

"tionem horum duximus committendam; per apostolica scripta
 "præcipiendo mandantes, quatenus ad Eboracensem ecclesiam
 "accedatis, et convocatis abbatibus et prioribus, et alijs eccle-
 "siasticis personis Eboracensis diocesis, diligentius inquiratis,
 "utrum Eboracensem ecclesiam et provinciam tam inutiliter
 "et perniciose tractaverit; et si super præmissis leg tūmi accu-
 "satores apparuerint, audiatis quæ contra præfatum archiepi-
 "scopum duxerint proponenda; et eis diligenter auditis et
 "cognitis, attestaciones sub sigillis vestris inclusas nobis
 "transmittere procuretis, assignantes partibus terminum com-
 "petentem, quo sufficienter instructo ad apostolicam sedem ac-
 "cedant, quod canonicum fuerit ibi, dante Domino, receptura.
 "Si vero accusatores defecerint, et fama publica fuerit contra
 "ipsum, ei purgationem cum tribus episcopis et totidem ab-
 "batibus, auctoritate nostra, sublato appellationis obstaculo,
 "indicietis. In qua si forte defecerit, ipsum ab archiepiscopali
 "officio et administratione suspensum, apostolico conspectui
 "faciatis præsentari, ut auctore Domino ibi plenius doceatur,
 "qualiter eum et sibi consimiles in demo Dei oporteat mim-
 "strare. Si vero idem archiepiscopus aliquid contra eos
 "duxerit proponendum, illud nihilominus auditis, et ad nos
 "sub sigillis vestris transmittatis inclusum; ut super his
 "quod canonicum fuerit statuatur. Sane si dictus archiepi-
 "scopus, in elusionem mandati nostri, antequam citatio vestra
 "ad eum perveniat, appellationem interposuerit, vel iter arri-
 "perit ad sedem apostolicam veniendi, vos ei terminum trium
 "mensium statuatis, infra quem se debeat in propria persona
 "nostro conspectui præsentare. Quod si non fecerit, vos eum
 "ex tunc ab omni pontificali officio, et archiepiscopatus admi-
 "nistratione, denunciatis, auctoritate nostra, remota appella-
 "tione, suspensum. Quod si omnes his exsequendis interesse
 "nequiveritis, duo vestrum nihilominus ea exequantur. Datum
 "Romæ, apud Sanctum Petrum, vi^o. idas Junii, pontificatus
 "nostri anno quarto."

A. D. 1194.
June 8.

They are to go to York and hear the charges, receive the evidence and send it sealed to Rome.

If evidence fails, but the archbishop cannot produce compurgators, he is to be suspended.

The delegates are to fix a day for him to appear at Rome.

Harum igitur auctoritate litterarum, prædictus Lin-
 colniensis episcopus et collegæ sui venerunt Eboracum
 ad inquisitionem illam faciendam; et congregatis coram
 eis in cathedrali ecclesia abbatibus et prioribus, et alijs
 ecclesiasticis personis Eboracensis diocesis, processerunt
 secundum formam apostolici mandati, diligenter inqui-
 rentes de universis capitulis quæ continebantur in
 scripto illo. Et multi abbates et priores, et aliæ ho-
 nestæ personæ, constanter accusabant præfatum archi-

A. D. 1195.
June 16.

The delegates sit to hear the charges at York.

A. D. 1195.
Jan. 15.
They fix for
the arch-
bishop a day
to appear at
Rome, in
four months
and a fort-
night.

episcopum in universis predictis capitulis, presentibus clericis et familiaribus ejusdem archiepiscopi excusantibus eum, in quantum poterant, et dicentibus quod ipse ante illorum citationem predictus archiepiscopus appellaverat, et iter veniendi ad summum pontificem arripuerat. Quibus auditis, predictus Lincolnensis episcopus et collega sui, diligenter audientes accusationes adversariorum Eboracensis archiepiscopi, et scripto eas commendantes, sub sigillorum suorum testimonio inclusas procuraverunt transmittere summo pontifici, assignantes archiepiscopo Eboracensi spatium trium mensium ex precepto summi pontificis; et ex proprio beneficio superaddiderunt ei spatium sex hebdomadarum, infra quod se debeat in propria persona apostolico presentare conspectui; adjungentes quod si ipse hoc non fecerit, sciret se ex tunc ab omni pontificali officio, et archiepiscopatus administratione, auctoritate apostolica suspensum. Et ipsi assignaverunt adversariis archiepiscopi terminum in capite kalendarum Junii, quo sufficienter instructi ad apostolicam sedem accedere debeant, ibi, dante Domino, quod canonicum fuerit accepturi.

and for the
company
of
June 1st.

June.
The arch-
bishop fixes
to present
himself at
Rome, and
the pope
fixes Nov. 18,
and after-
wards sus-
pends him,
Dec. 25.

Constituti igitur predicti adversarii archiepiscopi Romæ in presentia domini papæ ad terminum eis prefixum, instanter accusabant suum archiepiscopum; sed archiepiscopus ad terminum illum non venit, tum propter regis prohibitionem, tum propter aeris corruptionem quæ tunc temporis Romæ est. Clerici vero ejus eodem tempore in curia Romana consistentes, et has causas absentiae suæ prætendentes, impetraverunt, ut quicquid contra archiepiscopum post appellationem medio tempore factum fuerat, in irritum revocaretur; et dominus papa prefixit ei terminum veniendi Romam infra octavas Sancti Martini proximo sequentis. Sed quia nec tunc in curia Romana per se vel per sufficientem responsalem comparuit, ad Natale Domini proximo sequens ab omni administratione episcopali suspensus fuit.

In supradicta vero congregacione abbatum facta apud

Eboracum contra archiepiscopum, obiit Rogerus abbas de Selebi, et apud Selebi sepultus est; cui successit Ricardus prior ejusdem domus, dono regis Ricardi, qui benedictionem suam recepit a Huberto Walteri Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, tunc temporis totius Angliæ legato.

A. D. 1185.
January.
The abbot of Selby dies.

Eodem anno,¹ dum rex Angliæ moram faceret apud Chinun in Andegavia, accesserunt ad curiam regis quidam Accini numero xv. Et cum vellent ad regem² accedere, ut eum interficerent, quidam illorum capti sunt et retenti, dicentes quod rex Franciæ eos miserat ad regem Angliæ interficiendum; sed rex Angliæ dissimulans regem Franciæ hoc velle, distulit iudicium facere de illis, donec socii illorum comprehenderentur.

Richard captures a band of Assassins, who declare that they are sent by Philip.

Eodem anno mense Februarii, cum magister Simon Apuliensis, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decanus, rediret a transmarinis partibus, cum plenitudine gratiæ regis, et ejus confirmatione super decanatu Eboracensis ecclesiæ, et cum appropinquaret civitati Eboracensi, exierunt obviam ei clerus et populus civitatis in multitudine magna; inter quos erant quidam familiares Gaufridi archiepiscopi, videlicet magister Johannes Otui, et Wilhelmus de Bonavilla, et duo alii, et³ prohibuerunt eidem decano, ex parte domini papæ et Eboracensis archiepiscopi, ne ipse tanquam decanus accederet ad matricem ecclesiam, donec controversia, quæ vertebatur inter archiepiscopum et illum de decanatu illo, terminaretur sine debito per Romanum pontificem: et super hoc appellaverunt ad dominum papam.

February.
Simon of Apulia, returning to York with letters from Rome, is forbidden by the archbishop's people to act as dean or to enter the church.

They appeal to Rome.

Et quia præfatus decanus a proposito suo desistere noluit, ipsi injecerunt in eum manus violentas; sed statim ipsi propter violentiam illam excommunicati permiserunt eum abire; et ipse procedens pervenit ad matricem ecclesiam; et canonici ecclesiæ receperunt eum cum solempni processione, die Dominica proxima ante

He persecutes how-ever and is received by the canons, Feb. 12.

¹ Eodem anno] Here MSS. B D. | ² et] om. I. The names are
L. resume. | omitted in D.

³ regem] Angliæ, ins. Sav. le.

A. D. 1195.
Feb. 16.

Hugh of
Durham ex-
com-
muni-
cates the
dean and
sacristans.

Hugh is
sick at Don-
castre and
is carried to
Howden.

caput Jejunii; et in capite Jejunii venit Eboracum Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, et sententiam excommunicationis, quæ data erat in illos qui manus violentas injecerunt in decanum, confirmavit.

Et cum idem Dunelmensis episcopus inde procederet versus Lundoniam, et veniret Donecastre,¹ ægrotavit; et ulterius procedere non valens, delatus est per navem ad villam suam de Hovedene.

Death of the
bishop of
Ross in
Scotland

Eodem mense Februarii, in terra regis Scottorum, obiit Gregorius² Rosensis episcopus; cui successit Reginaldus³ dictus Macer, monachus de Malros. Dicitur autem, quod in cathedrali ecclesia episcopatus Rosensis, quæ dicitur Rosmarcin, Beatus Bonifacius,⁴ papa, qui fuit quartus a Beato Gregorio, sepultus est. De quo Bonifacio legitur in ecclesiasticis historiis, quod ipse a Phoca Cæsare, Romanorum imperatore, impetravit donari ecclesiæ Dei templum Romæ, quod Panteon antea vocabatur; quod et ipse, eliminatis dæmoniorum spurciis, dedicavit in honore Beatæ Dei genitricis, et semper virginis Mariæ, et Omnium Sanctorum, statuens illud festum celebrari singulis annis in capite kalendarum Novembris.⁵

Legend of
Ross.

Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus obiit.

March 3.
Hugh de
Passet dies
at Howden.

Eodem anno mense Martii, tertia die ejusdem mensis, feria sexta, obiit Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus in villa

¹ *Donecastre*] Denecastre, B. D. I.

² *Gregorius*] Bishop of Ross, 1161-1195.

³ *Reginaldus*] Bishop of Ross, 1195-1213

⁴ *Bonifacius*] This Boniface who was commemorated as a saint on the 16th of March, was not pope Boniface IV., with whom he is here confounded. The *Acta Sanctorum*, Boll. Mart. ii 449, contain several extracts from a Utrecht MS. of little authority about him. His death is

placed in A. D. 620. He is also called Kirithaus and Abbanus, and regarded as the first bishop of Ross. If he ever existed at all he was probably an early Roman missionary, but Dempster states the tradition that he had come to Scotland "pontificatu maximo deposito." The Aberdeen Breviary contains lessons, &c. for his day.

⁵ *Novembris*] Novembrium, D. I. The whole of the last sentence of this paragraph is omitted in G.

sua de Hovedene, et sepultus Dunelmi in capitulo monachorum; sed antequam corpus ejus Dunelmum intraret, Walterus de Ferlington tradidit Hugoni Bardulfo castellum Dunelmense, et claves castelli suspendit super feretrum Sancti Cuthberti; ad quas cum Radulfus de Stavebi capiendas inconsulte irrueret, irruit super eum pavor, et regressus suspendit claves super feretrum, ubi prius erant; sed antequam ab ecclesia exiret digno Dei judicio nimia aegritudine flagellatus, paucis post elapsis diebus obiit.

A. D. 1195. March. Hugh Bardolf takes possession of the castle of Durham.

Postea vero predictæ claves traditæ sunt per manum prioris et monachorum Hugoni Bardulfi, qui juravit, quod ipse fideliter custodiret eas ad honorem beati Cuthberti, et regis. Deinde Henricus de Ferlington tradidit Hugoni Bardulfi castellum de Norham, per præceptum justitiarum¹ regis.

Norham delivered to him.

Interim,² ad instantiam canonicorum Eboraci, Cælestinus papa in hac forma scripsit Haimo decano Lincolnensis Ecclesiæ, et Rogero de Leicestre et Winemero de Norhamtun, archidiaconis Lincolnensis ecclesiæ;

Another papal commission at York.

Epistola Cælestini papæ contra Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum.

“ Cælestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, dilectis filiis
 “ Haimo³ decano Lincolnie, et Rogero⁴ de Leicestria, et
 “ Winemero de Norhamtun, archidiaconis in Lincolnensi
 “ diocesi constitutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
 “ Exposuerunt nobis dilectissimi filii nostri Simon decanus et
 “ capitulum ecclesie Sancti Petri Eboraci, quod, post appella-
 “ tionem ad nos interpositam, clerici de capella venerabilis
 “ fratris nostri ejusdem ecclesie archiepiscopi, et quidam alii
 “ ejusdem civitatis, in cathedralem ecclesiam, in grave præjudi-
 “ cium ipsorum canonicorum intrusi, exclusis vicariis et clericis

May 31. (1194.) The pope writes to the dean of Lincoln and the archidiacon of Leicester and Northampton.

¹ justitiarum] justitiarum, I.

² Interim . . . ecclesie] omitted in MSS B. D. I., with the following letter and narrative down to p. 286.

³ Haimo, dean of Lincoln, 1189-1195.

⁴ Roger Rolleston, afterwards, in 1195, dean of Lincoln.

A. D. 1185
March.
The pope
commissions
delegates to
hear the
complaints
of the monks
and nuns
of the dan-ages.
(Ms. B.
118.)

“ ecclesie ejusdem, in ea ministrare, et contra approbatam et
“ antiquam consuetudinem, loca et stalla personarum in choro
“ et capitulo usurpantes, ordinem ecclesie pervertere præ-
“ sumpserunt. Volentes vero hujusmodi præsumptionibus, pro-
“ ut convenit, obviari, discretioni vestre per apostolica scripta
“ præcipiendo mandamus, quatenus si vera sunt quæ præmi-
“ simus, præsumptores illos, ut ipsi ecclesie Sancti Petri, et
“ canonicis, super his in præsentia vestra debitam satisfactio-
“ nem exhibeant, per censuram ecclesiasticam, appellatione
“ postposita, compellatis. Damna etiam, quæ per eosdem
“ clericos prædicto capitulo constiterit irrogata, sicut justum
“ fuerit, resarciri faciat: quod si omnes his exsequendis in-
“ teresse acquiveritis, duo vestrum ea nihilominus exsequantur.
“ Datum Romæ apud Sanctam Petram, secundo kalendas Junii,
“ pontificatus nostri anno quarto.”

The dele-
gates sit,
and the
damages to
list at 1000
marks.

Harum igitur auctoritate litterarum, prædictus Lin-
colnensis decanus et collega sui statuerunt partibus
terminum et locum, primo apud Torkesie, deinde apud
Anecastre, ubi in præsentia eorum personæ et canonici¹
Eboracensis ecclesie, probaverunt damna, quæ habue-
runt per archiepiscopum Eboracensem, et per præsump-
tores illos, ad valentiam mille marcarum argenti.

Richard is
reconciled
with John,
and re-
stores him.

Eodem² anno Ricardus rex Angliæ remisit Johanni
fratri suo omnem iram et malivolentiam suam; et red-
didit ei comitatum de Moretonia, et honorem de Eia,³
et comitatum Gloucestricæ, cum omni integritate eorum;
exceptis castellis; et pro omnibus aliis comitatibus et
terris suis dedit ei rex per annum octo millia librarum
Andegavensis monetæ.

The bishop
of Whithorn
comes to
York to con-
secrate
Carnham.

Eodem anno appropinquante Cæna Domini, cum Jo-
hannes episcopus Candidæ Caste, suffraganeus et officii-
alis Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi, appropinquasset
Eboraco, ut illi in Cæna Domini more solito chrisma
et oleum consecraret, decanus et personæ Eboracensis
ecclesie noluerunt eum recipere. Unde factum est quod

¹ *personæ et canonici*] Savile
reads *priorum et canonicorum*, which
is nonsense

² *Eodem* *appellat*] This

follows below, immediately before
the story of the hermit, in MSS. B.
D. I.

³ *Eia*] Eya, I.

ipse ad Suelle¹ accessit, et ibi in Cœna Domini chrisma et oleum consecravit, et tradidit ea officialibus archiepiscopi ad distribuendum per ecclesias archiepiscopatus. Dicitur etiam quod Gaufridus de Muschamp, archidiaconus de Cliveland, recepit chrisma et oleum, sed statim projecit ea in sterquilinio. Cæteri autem canonici ecclesiæ Sancti Petri noluerunt inde recipere; sed miserunt ad Hugonem Lincolnensem episcopum, ut ab eo reciperent oleum et chrisma; sed fraudati sunt a desiderio suo. Petrus enim archidiaconus Lincolnæ, frater Gaufridi archiepiscopi, prohibuit episcopo ne illis oleum et chrisma daret, et super hoc ad Romanum pontificem appellavit.

A D. 1105.
March 30.
Not being received there, he does it at Southwell, but the clergy refuse to receive the chrism, and apply to the bishop of Lincoln for it, in vain.

Eodem anno² rex remisit iram et malivolentiam suam Hugoni Coventrensi episcopo, et reddidit ei episcopatum suum, pro quinque millibus marcis argenti quas ei dedit; sed Robertus frater ejusdem episcopi obiit in captione domini regis apud Doroberniam. Similiter dominus rex remisit Galfrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, fratri suo, iram et malivolentiam suam, et recepit eum in osculo pacis; unde idem archiepiscopus supra modum elatus, regem ipsum opprobriis ita exasperavit, quod ipse præcepit illum dissaisiri de archiepiscopato suo, et de vicecomitatu Eboraci. O utinam legisset archiepiscopus ille commonitionem sapientis, qui ait: "Ignem gladio ne confodias:" et Dominus informans nos ad humilitatem per os apostoli, ait: "Servi, "subditi³ estote in omni timore dominis vestris; non tantum dico sapientibus et modestis, sed etiam dyscolis:" "Subditi estote regi quasi præcellenti, sive ducibus tanquam ab eo missis ad vindictam malorum, laudem vero bonorum." Et, "Ecce naves cum magnæ sint, et a ventis validis minentur, circumferuntur

Richard forgives Hugh of Nuant.

He also pardons Geoffrey, but quarrels with him again.

The archbishop will not learn to be mild, or to curb his tongue.

18. Peter, n. 18.

18. Peter n. 18.

8. James iii. 4.

¹ Suelle] Suwelle, I.

Eodem anno] Here MSS. B. D. I. resatne.

³ subditi] om. B. D. I. MS. G. omits all from "O utinam" to the end of the paragraph.

A D. 1195.
 Marcu.
 The lessons
 that Geof-
 frey ought
 to have
 learned.

“ tamen a modico gubernaculo, ubi impetus dirigentis
 “ voluerit; ita et lingua modicum membrum est, et
 “ magna exaltat” Et “ Ecce quam parvus ignis, quam
 “ magnam sylvam incendit, et certe lingua ignis est,
 “ et omnis iniquitas ex lingua ad effectum venit, quæ
 “ maculat totum corpus et inflammat; linguam autem
 “ nullus domare potest,” nisi sapiens et circumspectus.
 “ Circumcidamus ergo corda nostra:” ex corde enim
 incircumciso procedunt fornicationes, adulteria, homi-
 cidia, furta, et falsa testimonia, blasphemie, conten-
 tiones, et rixæ, et cætera his similia, quæ coinquant
 hominem. Et, hæc contra, ex mundo corde et circum-
 ciso exeunt caritas, gaudium, pax, patientia, longani-
 mitas, bonitas, benignitas,¹ mansuetudo, fides, modestia,
 continentia, castitas, et alia his similia, quæ anima-
 fructus sunt, et eam ad Deum Creatorem suum per-
 ducunt. “ Ex abundantia enim cordis os loquitur,” sive
 bonum sive malum.

⁸ James.
 111. 5.

*De commonitione salutifera facta Ricardo regi
 Angliæ.*

Solemn
 warning
 given to
 Richard by
 a hermit.

Eodem anno venit quidam heremita ad regem Ri-
 cardum, et prædicans ei verba salutis æternæ dixit:
 “ Esto memor subversionis Sodoma, et ab illicitis te
 “ abstine; sin autem, veniet super te ultio digna Dei.”
 Sed rex inhians terrenis, et non his quæ Dei sunt, non
 potuit tam cito animum ab illicitis revocare, nisi
 datum ei fuisset desuper, vel signum videret. Despi-
 ciebat enim personam monentis, non intelligens quod
 quandoque Dominus revelat parvulis, quæ a sapientibus
 absconduntur: leprosi etiam nunciaverunt salutem Sa-
 maria, et subjugalis Balam² dominum suum revocavit
 a via illicita. Abiit ergo heremita relicto rege, et ab-
 scondit se a facie ejus. Procedente autem tempore
 præfatus rex, licet pauperis heremita commonitionem

¹ bonitas, benignitas] om. B. D. I. | ² Balam] Balaam, D.

respueret, tamen ex Divina inspirante gratia memoriter aliquam illius commonitionis partem retinuit, fiduciam habens in Domino, quod Ipse, Qui publicanum et Cananæam revocavit ad pœnitentiam, secundum magnam misericordiam Suam daret ei cor pœnitens. Unde factum est, quod die Martis in hebdomada Paschæ

A.D. 1195.
April 4.
Richard
acknowledges his
sins and
takes back
his wife
whom he
had neglected.

visitavit eum Dominus¹ in virga ferrea, non ut contereret, sed ut flagellatum in Sua reciperet. Flagellavit enim eum Dominus ægritudine magna in die illa, adeo quod ipse convocatis coram se viris religiosis vitæ suæ fœditatem confiteri non erubuit, et accepta pœnitentia, mulierem suam, quam a multo tempore non cognoverat, recepit; et abjecto concubitu illicito, adhæsit uxori suæ, et facti sunt duo in carne una; et dedit ei Dominus sanitatem tam corporis quam animæ. O felicem filium, quem Pater cœlestis in hac peregrinatione flagellat ad castigationem, et non ad mortem! corripit enim pater filium nunc blandis, nunc asperis, ut sic vel sic revocet eum ad bene faciendum. Et sic examinat in fornace justitiæ Dominus aurum Suum; sic probat in adversitatibus sanctum Suum, ut eum provehat ad coronam.

- Ps. cxlv. 8. Vere magna et inenarrabilia sunt opera Domini, et miserationes Ejus super omnia opera Ejus. Rex enim
 Ps. xxxviii. 4. iste, cujus caput supergressæ erant iniquitates suæ, Christo adoptatur in filium, et a pravitate sua ad Dominum conversus recipitur in filium. Deus enim, in Cujus manu corda regum sunt, et quocunque voluerit
 Prov. xvi. 1. vertit ea, cordi regis instillavit, quod ipse tam cito vitam et conversationem suam mutavit in bonum.
 8. Matt. vi. 33. Ipse enim mane consurgens quotidie, primum quærebat regnum Dei et justitiam Ejus, et ab ecclesia non discedebat, donec more ecclesiastico omne Divinum perageretur officium. Gloriosum siquidem est in principe quotidianos actus suos et ab Eo incipere, et finire in

His repentance and amendment.

He goes daily to church.

¹ Dominus] om. B. D. I The history of Richard's former penances at Messina, told above pp. 74, 75, and in Ben. Pet. ii. 146, 147, should be compared with this.

A.D. 1195.
April 3.
Richard's
reputation.
His works of
mercy.

Et, Qui est principium sine principio, et iudicat fines
terre.

Præterea idem rex, memor verbi illius quo dicitur,
"Beatus qui intelligit super egenum et pauperem, in Ps. xl. 1.
"die mala liberabit eum Dominus," fecit quotidie pascere
pauperes multos, tam in curia sua, quam in civitatibus
et villis suis, quos quotidie numero augebat secundum
quod opus fuerat. Fames erat magna in terra illa,¹ et
confluebant ad eum pauperes ut alerentur. Exemplo
siquidem talium confirmatur fides, spes erigitur, nutri-
tur caritas, deprimitur superbia, humilitas custoditur,
augetur devotio, et bene operandi desiderium excitatur.

Præterea idem rex fecit fieri calices² multos; quos
ipse ecclesiis distribuit, a quibus calices sui abstracti
erant ad redemptionem illius. "Vae homini illi, per S. Matt.
"quem scandalum venit." Non enim imputandum est xviii. 7
regi, quod calices illi in redemptione sua dati fuerant;
sed illis magis imputandum est, qui consilium illud³
dederunt ei; quia prava consilia bonos corrumpunt 1 Cor. xv. 1
mores; et in Evangelio legitur, "Majus peccatum habent S. Joh. xii.
"qui tradiderunt Me tibi."⁴ 11.

Hubert
Water
made legate.

Eodem anno Cælestinus papa, ad petitionem Ricardi
regis Angliæ, constituit Hubertum, Cantuariensem ar-
chiepiscopum, totius Angliæ legatum. Unde idem papa
scripsit illi in hac forma;

*Epistola Cælestini papæ ad Hubertum Cantuarien-
sem archiepiscopum de legato sibi commissa.*

March 18.
The pope's
letter.

"Cælestinus⁵ episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili
"fratri Huberto, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apostolicæ sedis

¹ This famine began in 1194, and lasted five years. See W. Newb. v. 17, 31.

² *calices*] aureos et argenteos, ins. Savile, from MS. D.

³ *illud*] om. D. I.

⁴ *et in ... tibi*] om. G.; which

reads the preceding words "Cor-
"rumpunt mores bonas consilia
"prava."

⁵ *Cælestinus*] This letter is given by *R. de Dicte*, 679; and occurs also among the *Epistolæ Cantuarienses*, p. 368.

“ legato, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Sinceritas
 “ devotionis, et fidei consuetæ, quam Anglicana semper eccle-
 “ sia circa sacrosanctam Romanam ecclesiam conservavit, in
 “ tua, sicut bene confidimus, providentia et virtute reflat, in
 “ et placidi fervoris accepit acceptabile incrementum. Talis
 “ enim ad Romanam ecclesiam tuæ fraternitatis emanavit
 “ opinio, quæ in tuæ honestatis odore nos recreat, et con-
 “ stantiæ quam habes vigore confortat; ita ut¹ confidentiam,
 “ quam de tua probitate concepimus, in nostro jam apertius
 “ opere declaremus. Supplicante itaque carissimo in Christo
 “ filio nostro Ricardo illustri rege Anglorum, et universis suf-
 “ fraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, ut Anglicana ecclesia le-
 “ gatum apostolicæ sedis pro suis et regni profectibus obti-
 “ neret; tum pro devotione quam ad Cantuariensem ecclesiam
 “ pro meritis illius gloriosi martyris habemus, tum etiam
 “ tuæ probitatis et honestatis intuitu, eorum precibus assen-
 “ sum præstitimus et favorem, maxime quia multum credimus
 “ ecclesiæ et regni utilitatibus expedire, si talem in ministerio
 “ supradicto regio illa recipiat, qualem prædicti regis et
 “ eorum instantia de conversationis merito et fidei devotione
 “ commendat. Ideoque nos ad honorem Dei, et Cantuariensis
 “ ecclesiæ salutem, et pacem per totum regnum Angliæ, non
 “ obstante exceptione vel privilegio venerabili fratri nostro
 “ Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, aut ecclesiæ suæ, vel alii
 “ facto, officium tibi legationis concedimus, per apostolica
 “ scripta mandantes, quatenus illam cum fraternæ obedientiæ
 “ humilitate suscipias, et secundum datam tibi cœlitus facul-
 “ tatem, ad emendandum ea quæ necesse est emendari, et ad
 “ statuenda quæ fuerint statuenda, debitæ diligentiam manum
 “ auctoritate ipsius legationis apponas; ita nimirum in omni-
 “ bus reverentiam matris tuæ Romanæ ecclesiæ prompta
 “ devotione custodiens, ut de profectu ministerii quod tibi
 “ læta committit, tuis etiam facias operibus lætiorem. Datum
 “ Laterani, xv^o kalendas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno
 “ quarto.”

A.D. 1195.
 March 18.
 The good report which he has received of the archbishop, and the petition of the king and bishops,

have induced the pope to nominate him as legate.

² Præterea ³ Coelestinus papa prædictus scripsit in hac forma Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et universis episcopis et abbatibus et prioribus, et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis per regnum Angliæ constitutis;

The pope writes also to the archbishop of York.

¹ ut] om. A. B. D. I.

² Præterea constitutis]

omitted in MSS. B. D. I. with the following letter.

³ Præterea] idem, ins. G.

Epistola Cælestini papæ ad universum clerum Angliæ de legatia commissa Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.

A D. 1186.
March 16.
The pope writes to all the clergy in England.

The division of labour in the church.

The church of Rome, with supreme power, is accustomed to provide for the wants of distant churches.

He has appointed Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, to be legate.

“ Cælestinus ¹ episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus
 “ fratribus in Christo Eboracensi archiepiscopo et universis
 “ episcopis, et dilectis filiis, abbatibus et prioribus, et aliis
 “ ecclesiarum prælatis per regnum Angliæ constitutis, salutem
 “ et apostolicam benedictionem. Divinæ sapientiæ inscruta-
 “ bilis altitudo sacrosanctam ecclesiam in hujus mundi lati-
 “ tudine stabilivit, et ita regimen et gubernationem in ipsius
 “ immutabili provisione esse voluit, ut ad eam salubriter
 “ gubernandam plures assumerentur in partem sollicitudinis,
 “ quamvis pro unitatis ecclesiasticæ firmamento Romana eccle-
 “ sia acceperit plenitudinem potestatis. Voluit enim ut,
 “ secundum quod eam alloquitur in propheta, ‘ pro patri- Pa. xlv 17.
 “ bus ejus filii’ nascerentur, ‘ qui super omnem terram
 “ ‘ principes’ constituti, virtutum meritis et verbo doctrinæ,
 “ rudes ad fidem, profectos ad justitiam, erudirent. Unde
 “ sacrosancta Romana ecclesia, cui Dominus super ceteras con-
 “ tulit ecclesiæ magistratum, pium ad alias [habens] materno
 “ provisione respectum, providit ab initio, et laudabili hæcenus
 “ consuetudine custodivit, ut de diversis mundi partibus ad
 “ earum ministerium implendam viros prudentes assumeret,
 “ quorum auctoritas et doctrina sub Romani pontificis mode-
 “ ramine constituta, quod ipse non poterat, procul distantibus
 “ ecclesiis ministraret. Unde nos, qui licet insufficientibus
 “ meritis in sublimi sumus ejusdem specula constituti, patrum
 “ nostrorum vestigiis inhaerentes, ita intendimus cum Dei
 “ adjutorio injunctum nobis ministerium circa proximas eccle-
 “ sias gerere, ut his a quibus etiam positione distamus, oppor-
 “ tuna debeat providentia non deesse. Specialiter autem ad
 “ præsens Anglicanam ecclesiam paternæ considerationis acie
 “ intuentes, ad salutem ipsius et specialis in Christo profectus,
 “ communi consilio fratrum nostrorum decernimus, ut venera-
 “ bilis frater noster Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, de
 “ cujus meritis et virtute, sapientia pariter et doctrina, ecclesia
 “ universalis congaudet, ministerio legationis accepto, vires
 “ nostras ad honorem ecclesiæ, et totius regni salutem, et
 “ pacem per totum regnum Angliæ, non obstante exceptione
 “ vel privilegio tibi aut ecclesiæ tuæ, frater archiepiscope,

¹ Cælestinus] This letter is given | curs also among the Epistolæ Can-
 by Ralph de Diceto, 679; and oc- | tuarienses, p. 369.

“ vel alii facto, libere exequatur. Præsentium itaque auctori-
 “ tate universitati vestræ per apostolica scripta mandamus,
 “ quatenus eidem tanquam apostolicæ sedis legato reverentiam
 “ exhibeatís debitam et honorem; atque ejus salubria monita
 “ et mandata recipiatis humiliter et servetis, quas auctoritate
 “ legationis, qua fungitur secundum Deum, duxerit statu-
 “ enda, firmiter observantes. Datum Laterani, xv. kalendas
 “ Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno quarto.”

A.D. 1105.
 March 18.
 He com-
 mends him
 to the
 clergy.

Harum¹ igitur auctoritate litterarum prædictus Can-
 tuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, misit
 Eboracum Petrum priorem de Bineham in Nortfolc et
 magistrum Gervasium cum litteris domini papæ, et suis,
 ad canonicos Eboraci, et ad officiales Eboracensis archi-
 episcopi, mandans eis, se illuc ex auctoritate legationis
 suæ in proximo venturum, ad emendandum ea quæ
 essent emendanda, et ad statuenda quæ secundum
 Deum fuerint statuenda; et præcepit eis, ut ipsi con-
 vocato clero exhiberent ei, tanquam apostolicæ sedis
 legato, reverentiam debitam et honorem; adjungens se
 jam sententiam excommunicationis dedisse in omnes
 qui in hac parte mandato domini papæ contradicerent.
 Et super hoc misit litteras suas patentes Simoni Ebo-
 racensi decano, ut si quos ipse inveniret huic domini
 papæ mandato rebelles, denunciaret excommunicatos.
 Unde factum est, quod tam canonici quam officiales
 archiepiscopi Eboracensis responderunt nunciis legati,
 quod eum reciperent tanquam apostolicæ sedis legatum,
 sed non tanquam archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, nec
 tanquam primatem.

The new
 legate sends
 two clerks
 to York to
 announce
 his coming;

and asking
 to be re-
 ceived with
 due honour,
 under pain
 of excom-
 munication.

The canons
 and officials
 consent to
 to receive
 him.

*De adventu Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi,
 apostolicæ sedis legati, ad Eboracum.*

Venit igitur² legatus ille Eboracum die Dominica,
 festo Sancti Barnabæ apostoli, et cum solemnî proces-
 sione susceptus est a clero, et³ introductus in ecclesiam

June 11.
 The legate
 arrives at
 York.

¹ Harum] Here MSS. B. D. I. | ² igitur] ergo, B. D. I.
 resume. | ³ et] om. B. D. I.

A D 1103.
June 12.
He holds
both assizes
and Court
Christian.

sedis cathedralis, sequenti die Lunæ fecit ipse tenere assisas de omnibus placitis coronæ regis, et¹ de nova dissaisina, et de morte antecessorum, per ministros suos: ipse vero et officiales sui tenuerunt placita Christianitatis.

June 13.
He visits
St Mary's
and says
deposes Robert the
abbot.

In sequenti die, feria tertia, perrexit legatus ille ad abbatiam Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci; et ibi receptus est ab ejusdem ecclesiæ monachis cum solempni processione. Deinde intravit capitulum monachorum, et conquirentibus monachis, quod Robertus abbas eorum propter debilitatem et corporis sui ægritudinem domui suæ prodesse non potuit, deposuit eum a cura pastoralis, et ab administratione domus, reclamantem, et ad summum pontificem appellantem.

June 14-15.
He holds a
legal council
in the Minster.

In sequentibus autem duobus diebus, scilicet feria quarta et feria quinta, congregatis in ecclesia Sancti Petri Eboraci, Simone ejusdem ecclesiæ decano, et Hamone præcentore, et Willelmo Testard, et Gaufrido de Muschamp, de Nothingham et de Cliveland archidiaconis, et Johanne cancellario, et Roberto præposito Beverlaci, cum quibusdam ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicis, et fere omnibus abbatibus et prioribus, et officialibus et decanis, et personis ecclesiarum Eboracensis diocesis, ipse legatus in eminentiori loco cathedratus sedit, et concilium celeberrimum celebravit. In quo² hæc decreta subscripta statuit servanda.

Decrees of
the council.

*Decreta Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, apostolice
sedis legati.*

1. The Mass
to be celebrated
decently.

“(1.) Cum inter cætera ecclesiæ sacramenta Hostia salutaris præemineat, tanto impensior circa eam debet existere devotio sacerdotum, ut cum humilitate conficiatur, cum timore sumatur, cum reverentia dispensetur; et minister altaris sit certus quod panis et vinum et aqua in Sacrificio ponantur, nec sine ministro litterato celebretur: provideatur etiam, ut

¹ et] om. B. D. I.

² In quo . . . servando] omitted

in MSS. B. D. I. with the decrees of
the council.

- “ in pyxide munda et honesta Hostia reservetur, singulisque
 “ Dominicis diebus renovetur. A.D. 1195.
June 14-15.
Council of
York.
- “ (II.) Quoties autem Communio exhibenda est infirmis,
 “ sacerdos in propria persona Hostiam in habitu clericali tanto 2. Order for
the commu-
nion of the
sick.
 “ sacramento convenienti deferat lumine præcedente, nisi aeris
 “ intemperies, vel viarum difficultas, vel alia ratio præpediat.
- “ (III.) Quia secretum Missæ frequenter invenitur, aut scrip- 3. Correct
missals to be
provided.
 “ torum falsitate, aut librorum vetustate corruptum, ita ut
 “ legi distincte non possit; archidiaconorum sollicitudo pro-
 “ videat, ut in singulis ecclesiis ad verum et probatum ex-
 “ emplar canon Missæ cum omni diligentia corrigatur.
- “ (IV.) Prohibemus etiam ne sacerdos laico ad pœnitentiam 4. Masses
for penance,
fixed sums
for masses,
forbidden.
 “ venienti obtentu cupiditatis injungat, ut Missas faciat cele-
 “ brari; et illud etiam decrevimus prohibendum, ne sacerdos
 “ aliquis pro celebratione Missarum pretio constituto pactum
 “ ineat, sed hoc duntaxat, quod offeretur in Missa recipiat.
- “ (V.) Statuimus ne in baptisate plures quam tres susci- 5. Three
sponsors
only for
baptism.
 “ piant puerum de sacro fonte; masculum duo mares et una
 “ mulier; fœminam duæ fœminæ et unus mas. Ubi autem
 “ puer, cujus baptisma ignoratur, reperitur expositus, sive Foundlings
to be bap-
tized.
 “ cum sale sive sine sale reperiatur, baptizetur, cum non in-
 “ telligatur iteratum, quod nescitur fuisse collatum.
- “ (VI.) Decrevimus etiam ut non, nisi summa et gravi 6. Deacons
not to bap-
tize, deliver
the Sacra-
ment, or
impose
penance,
except in
cases of
necessity.
 “ urgente necessitate, diaconus baptizet, vel Corpus Christi
 “ cuiquam eroget, vel pœnitentiam confitenti imponat, ut juxta
 “ paternorum tenorem canonum hæc ordini sacerdotali proprie
 “ convenire decernat antiquitas. Sub eodem tenore constitu-
 “ tionis adjicimus, ut quoties sacerdos ad puerum baptizandum
 “ vel infirmum communicandum invitatur, moras innectere
 “ non præsumat.
- “ (VII.) Cum in domo orationis, quæ domus Dei nuncupatur, 7. Provision
for the re-
pairs of
churches,
and their
furniture.
 “ nihil debeat esse indecens, nihil inordinatum, præcipimus ut
 “ personæ et vicarii ecclesiarum studeant providere secundum
 “ competentes eis pensiones, prout ratio dictat, et consuetudo
 “ approbata expostulat, quatenus ecclesiæ, quæ reparatione
 “ indigent, reparentur; et cum ornamentis ministerio con-
 “ gruis ministretur; et cum calice argenteo, ubi facultas
 “ suppetit, sacramentum Eucharistiæ conficiatur. Huic ordi-
 “ nationi terminum præfiximus ab initio nostræ legationis in
 “ annum. Quod si hæc medio tempore executioni mandata Term for
executing
this article.
 “ non fuerint, decrevimus, ut post elapsum terminum de
 “ ecclesiarum redditibus dispositio nostra plenum sortiatur
 “ effectum.
- “ (VIII.) Statuimus etiam ut clerici, qui ab episcopo coro- 8. Of the
tonsure.
 “ nam susceperunt, tonsuram habeant et coronam; quam si

- A.D. 1185.
June 14-15.
Council of
York.
9. Of the
dress of
priests.
10. Justice
in ecclesiastical
suits to
be gratis.
11. Tithes
not to be
diminished.
12. Monks
and canons
regular and
none are
not to farm
obediences,
or to go on
pilgrimages,
or quit the
monasteries
without
cause; and
hymen not
to farm
tithes.
13. Perjurors
to be excom-
municated
annually.
- “ habere contempserint, ad hoc beneficiorum, si quæ habeant,
“ privatione cogantur; qui vero beneficia non habent, per
“ archidiaconum vel decanos tondeantur invito.
“ (IX.) Præcipimus etiam ut sacerdotes non in cappis mani-
“ catis incedant, sed in vestibus suo ordini congruis: ut sicut
“ cæteris dignitate præminent, sic plenius formam et ex-
“ emplum exhibeant honestatis.
“ (X.) Cum scriptura beatum eum esse testetur qui manus
“ suas exiit ab omni munere, diligenti studio providendum
“ est, ut gratis exhibeatur justitia, nec pro ea in causis eccle-
“ siasticis facienda vel adimenda, sive acceleranda vel diffe-
“ renda, quicquam pretii præsumat accipere, ut ei fructum
“ justitiæ suæ tempore opportuno retribuatur Justus Judex.
“ (XI.) Cum decimæ sint tributa egentium animarum, et ex
“ præcepto Domini dari debeant, non est reddentis eas dimi-
“ nuere. Statuimus itaque, ut de his quæ renovantur per
“ annum, cum omni integritate decimæ debitæ et consuetæ
“ conferantur: ita ut inprimis decimæ absque ulla diminutione
“ ecclesiæ dentur, postmodum de novem partibus mercedes
“ messorum et aliorum servientum pro arbitrio solventis
“ tribuantur.
“ (XII.) Exigit professio religiosæ sanctitatis, ut monachi et
“ canonici regulares, et moniales, religiose et regulariter con-
“ versentur. Ut ergo eis adimatur opportunitas evagandi,
“ prohibemus ne redditus, quos obedientias vocant, ad firmam
“ teneant; nec iter peregrinationis arripiant, nec extra mona-
“ steria sine certa et rationabili causa, nec absque societate,
“ cujus certa sit honestas et indubitata, proficiscantur. De
“ monialibus autem id specialiter adjicimus, ut absque societate
“ abbatissæ vel priorissæ ambitum monasterii non egrediantur.
“ Adjicimus etiam prohibentes, ne laicus aliquis ecclesiam vel
“ decimas ad firmam recipiat, sive solus, sive clerico sociatus.
“ (XIII.) Ut calumniatorum improbitas, et temere jurantium
“ malitia timore cælestis judicii retundatur, præcipimus ut
“ quilibet sacerdos de cætero ter in anno solemniter, accensis
“ candelis pulsatisque campanis, eos excommunicet, qui in
“ recognitionibus aliæve testimoniis scienter et sponte peje-
“ rabunt; et eos qui malitiose alios facient pejerare; cosque
“ singulis Dominicis diebus excommunicatos denunciatur, ut
“ crebra maledictionis iteratio eos a sua iniquitate retrahat,
“ quos accusatio propriæ conscientiæ non deterret. Si vero
“ de perjurio pœniteant, ad archiepiscopum vel episcopum, vel
“ generalem diocesis confessorem absente archiepiscopo vel
“ episcopo, transmittantur, ab eo pœnitentiam suscepturi: in
“ extremis vero laborantibus insinuanda non imponenda est

“ pœnitentia, eisque firmiter injungatur ut, si vixerint, archi-
 “ episcopum vel episcopum, vel generalem diœcesis confesso-
 “ rem absente archiepiscopo vel episcopo, adeant, ut eis pœni-
 “ tentia competens imponatur.

A D. 1185.
 June 14-15.
 Council of
 York.

Levit. iv 3.
 Mosca II. 8.

“ (XIV.) Quia sermo Domini est, ‘Sacerdos meus si deli-
 “ querit, delinquere faciet populum meum; et ruina populi
 “ ‘sacerdos nequam,’ exigit tanti ordinis excellentia, ut a
 “ publicis potationibus et tabernis sacerdotes abstineant, et qui
 “ voto continentie sunt astricti, nequaquam ad actus turpi-
 “ tudinis se relaxent. Prohibemus igitur ne focarias habeant in
 “ domibus suis, nec ad ejectas, in nostrae constitutionis fraudem,
 “ accessum in domibus alienis. Si vero in turpitudine sua
 “ perstiterint, et hoc decani dissimulantes ad notitiam prae-
 “ latorum suorum non detulerint, ab officio suspendantur: qui
 “ vero zelo Dei accensi praelatis nunciaverint excessus eorum,
 “ Divinae benedictionis gratiam consequantur. Poena autem
 “ eorum qui publice focarias tenent, hæc erit, ut tanquam
 “ infames ab aliorum accusatione et a testimonio repellantur:
 “ si vero nec hujus pœnae metu resipuerint, ab officio et bene-
 “ ficio se noverint suspendendos.

14. Of the
 morals of the
 clergy.

“ (XV.) Suspectus de crimine per famam communem, vel
 “ verisimilia indicia, per decanum loci admoneatur familiariter,
 “ semel, secundo, et tertio, ut se corrigat: quod si non fece-
 “ rit, decanus adjunctis sibi duobus vel tribus, penes quos
 “ ejus fama laborat, eum corripiat; si nec sic videatur corrigi,
 “ dicatur ecclesiae, scilicet arguatur in capitulo, ut convictus vel
 “ confessus canonice puniatur; inficanti, si convinci non pote-
 “ rit, canonica purgatio indicatur; ita quod numerum duodena-
 “ rium non excedat; infra numerum plures paucioresve poterant
 “ recipi secundum statum personae et quantitatem sive quali-
 “ tatem infamiae pro arbitrio judicantis; et statim primo die
 “ quo paratus est is, qui infamia laborat, se purgare, purgatio
 “ admittatur, ne metu vexationis ex dilationibus contingens
 “ pecunia extorqueatur. Hoc et supradicta statuimus salva in
 “ omnibus sacrosanctae Romanae sedis auctoritate et dignitate.”

15. Of pro-
 cees against
 clergy of bad
 character.

In concilio¹ autem illo magister Petrus de Dinan
 exigebat sibi fieri plenariam restitutionem de archidia-
 conatu de Westrihing, quem Gaufridus Eboracensis
 archiepiscopus ei dederat, mandans capitulo Eboraci per
 litteras suas, ut eum reciperent, et in stallum mitte-
 rent; cui Symon decanus et capitulum Eboracense

Peter of
 Dinan de-
 mands the
 archdia-
 conry of the
 West Riding

¹ In concilio } Here MSS. B. D. I. resume.

A D. 1195.
June 14-15.
The dean
and chapter
claim the
appointment
on the
ground of
lapse.

responderunt, quod archiepiscopus non potuit archidiaconatum illum alicui dare, quia ultra terminum statutum in concilio Lateranensi dare distulit; in quo concilio Alexander papa tertius constituit, quod "cum præbendas, ecclesias, seu quælibet officia in aliqua ecclesia vacare contigerit, non diu maneant in suspensio, sed infra sex menses personis, qui digne administrare valeant, conferantur. Si autem episcopus, ubi ad eum spectaverit, conferre distulerit, per capitulum ordinetur; quod si ad capitulum electio pertinuerit, et infra præscriptum terminum hoc non fecerit, episcopus secundum Deum, cum religiosorum virorum consilio exequatur: aut si omnes forte neglexerint, metropolitans de episcopis¹ secundum Deum absque illorum contradictione disponat."² Hujus ergo dispositionis auctoritate, et privilegii sui munimine a Coelestino papa tertio ecclesie Eboracensi indulto, asserebant præfatus decanus et capitulum Eboracense, quod ad illos spectat donatio prædicti archidiaconatus et aliorum reddituum vacantium in ecclesia Eboracensi, quos archiepiscopus suus non dederat in fixum Lateranensis concilii terminum; sed officiales Eboracensis archiepiscopi, scilicet, magister Gyrardus de Rowelle, et magister Honorius,³ appellaverunt contra privilegium illud, et appellationem, quam dominus eorum archiepiscopus in recessu suo fecerat pro statu ecclesie sue, renovaverunt coram legato et toto concilio; et quamvis in privilegio illo continebatur, "remota appellatione," tamen legatus destulit appellationi officialium Eboracensis archiepiscopi.

The arch-
bishop's
officials
appeal
against this,
and the
legate defers
to them.

Illness of the
king of
Scots.

Eodem anno Willelmus rex Scottorum ægotavit, in villa sua quæ dicitur Clacmannan; et statuit Othonem

¹ [episcopis] ipsis, D. I. Benedict also has *episcopis*; but Gervase reads *ipsis*, which is the reading approved by the editors of the *Concilia*, and gives the best sense.

² [disponat]. See the decree of the

Lateran Council of 1179, Vol. II., p. 185

³ [Honorius.] Made archdeacon of Richmond in 1198, by the archbishop, but refused installation by the dean.

filium Henrici ducis Saxoniae, nepotem Ricardi regis Angliæ, sibi successurum in regnum Scottorum, ita quod ipse Otho filiam suam primogenitam¹ in uxorem cum regno duceret. Et quamvis rex plures haberet qui voluntati suæ in hoc consentirent, tamen comes Patricius² et alii multi contradixerunt, dicentes quod filiam suam non reciperent reginam, quia non erat consuetudo regni illius, quod mulier regnum illud haberet, quamdiu frater vel nepos esset in progenie sua, qui regnum de jure habere posset. Et paulo post per Dei misericordiam rex Scottorum de illa convaluit infirmitate, manens in eodem proposito, quod habebat, de filia sua maritanda prædicto Othoni cum regno suo.

A.D. 1195.
He wishes to marry Otho of Saxony to his daughter and make him his heir, but the barons forbid.

Recovery of the king.

Eodem anno Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, et totius Angliæ justitiarius, deposuit Robertum abbatem de Tornai, reclamantem, et ad præsentiam domini papæ appellantem: et in carcere et in vinculis eum tenuit per annum et per³ dimidium anni apud Gloucestre.

The abbot of Thorney deposed.

Eodem anno prædictus⁴ archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ justitiarius, misit per totam Angliam hujusmodi formam juramenti, videlicet;

Judicial measures of the archbishop.

Edictum regium.

“ Quod omnes homines regni Angliæ pacem domini regis pro posse suo servabunt; et quod nec latrones nec robatores nec eorum receptatores erunt,⁵ nec in aliquo eis consentient; et quod cum hujusmodi malefactores scire poterunt, illos pro toto posse suo capient, et vicecomiti liberabunt; qui nullo modo deliberentur nisi per dominum regem, vel capitalem justitiam suam: et si illos capere non poterunt, eos ballivis domini regis, quicumque fuerint, scire facient. Levato autem clamore insequendi utlagos, robatores, latrones, aut eorum receptatores,⁶ omnes sectam illam plene facient

Proclamation for the capture and trial of malefactors.

Hue and cry

¹ *primogenitam*] Margaret, afterwards married to Hubert de Burgh. See below, p. 308.

² *Patricius*] Earl of Dunbar.

³ *per*] om. D. L.

⁴ *prædictus*] præfatus, G.

⁵ *erunt*] om. D. I.

⁶ *receptatores*] receptores, I.

A D. 1105.

Knights
assigned to
receive the
oaths of all
over fifteen
to maintain
the king's
peace.

“ pro toto posse suo; et si quem viderint, vel manifestum
“ fuerit sectam illam non fecisse, vel sine licentia se ab ea
“ subtraxisse,¹ eos tanquam malefactores ipsos capient, et vice-
“ comiti liberabunt, non deliberandos nisi per regem, aut ejus
“ capitalem justitiam. Milites vero ad hoc assignati facient
“ venire omnes de ballia sua coram se a quindecim annis
“ et ultra; et jurare facient quod pacem domini regis, ut
“ supradictum est, servabunt; et quod nec utlagi, nec roba-
“ tores, nec latrones, nec eorum receptatores erunt, nec in
“ aliquo eis consentient; et quod sectam, ut prædictum est,
“ plenam facient, et quod si cum malefactione aliquem² cepe-
“ rint, militibus in ballia sua super se positis, et ad hoc assignatis, eum liberabunt, qui eum vicecomiti liberabunt.³ Custodiendum; similiter si aliquem viderint, vel eis notum fuerit, levato clamore insequendi malefactores prædictos, qui sectam non fecerit, vel a secta illa se subtraxerit sine licentia, eum tanquam malefactorem ipsum capient, et militibus prædictis liberabunt, vicecomiti liberandum, et custodiendum, ut ipsum malefactorem; nec liberandum nisi per præceptum domini regis vel ejus capitalis justitiæ.”

Effect of this
provision.

Ad hæc igitur exsequenda missi sunt per singulos comitatus Angliæ viri electi et fideles, qui per sacramentum fidelium hominum de visnetis multos ceperunt, et carceribus regis incluserunt. At multi inde præmuniti et sibi male conscii fugerunt, relictis domibus et possessionibus suis.

After June
24.
The emperor
sends
Richard a
crown, and
charges him
to invade
Philip's
dominions.

Eodem anno, post Nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Henricus Romanorum imperator misit Ricardo regi Angliæ coronam magnam auream, et valde pretiosam, in mutuæ dilectionis signum; mandans ei in fide quam illi debebat, et sicut obsides suos diligebat, ne perirent, quod ipse terram regis Franciæ hostiliter invaderet, et ipse imperator succursum ei faceret competentem ad injurias sibi a rege Franciæ factas ulciscendas; sed rex Angliæ, timens quod in hoc mandato aliquid prodicionis lateret, misit ad imperatorem Willelmum Eliensem⁴ episcopum, cancellarium suum, ad in-

Richard
hesitates.

¹ subtraxisse] substraxisse, I.
[aliquem] aliqua, D I.

² liberabunt] ad, 108. B. D I
⁴ Eliensem] om B. D I

quirendum qualem succursum, et quantum, et ubi, et quando imperator ei faceret contra regem Franciæ. Notum enim erat regi Angliæ, quod prædictus imperator super omnia desiderabat, ut regnum Franciæ Romanorum imperio subjaceret; et exinde conjicietatur rex Angliæ, quod si imperator et rex Franciæ confederarentur, totum in detrimentum suum redundaret. Rex vero Franciæ sciens quod cancellarius regis Angliæ per terram suam transiret, apposuit apprehendere illum; sed fraudatus a desiderio, suo mandavit regi Angliæ treugam dissolutam; et statim concurrentes utriusque exercitus damna fecerunt hinc et inde maxima, in¹ interfectione hominum, et in rapinis, et in incendiis. Rex autem Franciæ videns se nequaquam defendere posse contra regem Angliæ, castella multa Normanniæ subvertit, quæ rex Angliæ postmodum refirmavit, et fortiora fecit quam prius fuerant.

Quadam autem die, ante subversionem castelli de valle Rodoli, prædicti reges venerunt ad colloquium prope castellum illud, et dum colloquerentur, cecidit magna² pars murorum castelli per suffosores regis Franciæ. Quod rex Angliæ videns, relicto colloquio, impetum fecit in exercitum regis Franciæ, et rex Franciæ cum suis versus est in fugam; et cum transiret pontem, pons corruit, et ipse cum gente sua pene submersus est in Secana fluvio; sed vix tandem ulteriorem ripam attingens ibidem in ripa fluminis castra metatus est. Et rex Angliæ ad castellum Rodoli rediit, et multos de familia regis Franciæ cepit; et congregans exercitum magnum de omnibus terris suis cismarinis et transmarinis, intravit terram regis Franciæ in pluribus locis, et fecit stragem magnam ex obstantibus, et segetes non maturas messuit, et vineas et arbores fructiferas extirpavit, et villas combussit.

A. D. 1195.

July.

The chancellor sent to inquire what help the emperor will give.

Philip tries to arrest him, and announces that the truce is broken.

Philip destroys several castles in Normandy.

Conference at Vaudreuil.

Narrow escape of Philip.

Capture of Vaudreuil.

Richard invades France.

¹ in] om. D. I.² magna] maxima, B. D. I. Ri- | good states that the breach of the

truce occurred in July; p. 196.

De adventu imperatoris Africa in Hispaniam.

A. D. 1165.
July.

The emperor
of Morocco
invades
Spain, wins
a great
battle, and
besieges the
king of
Castile in
Toledo.

Eodem anno, ex occasione dissensionis quæ erat inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Ricardum regem Angliæ, Boyac Almiramimoli, imperator Africanorum, magno congregato exercitu, intravit fines Christianorum qui¹ sunt in Hispania; et expugnavit eos, et cepit civitates et castella et munitiones eorum, et comminuit omnia, et Aldefonsum regem Castellæ devicit in prælio campestri,² et a campo fugatum obsedit in Toletto civitate sua; sed nihil ibi proficiens cum exercitu suo inde recessit.

Terms of
peace
arranged be-
tween
Richard and
Philip.

Quod cum rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ audissent, convenerunt ad colloquium de pace inter eos faciendâ, in quo inter eos convenit in hunc modum: quod Lodovicus, filius et hæres regis Franciæ, duceret in uxorem sororem Arturi ducis Britanniæ, neptem præfati regis Angliæ; et ipse rex Angliæ quæta clamaret eis et hæredibus eorum Gysortium, et Neafle, et Baudemunt, cum Wougesin³ Normannico, et Vernun, et Yveri,⁴ et Pasci, et insuper daret eis viginti millia marcarum argenti; et hæc contra rex Franciæ quæta clamaret regi Angliæ omnia quæ sibi petebat in comite de Engolismo, et redderet ei comitatum de Albemaria, et comitatum de Auco, et castellum de Arches, et alia castella multa, quæ ceperat super eum in Normannia et in aliis terris suis per guerram. Sed hæc omnia dilationem ceperunt usque ad octavas Omnium Sanctorum, propter prohibitionem Romanorum imperatoris, qui prohibuerat regi Angliæ ne ipse pacem cum rege Franciæ faceret, nisi de consensu et consilio suo. Præ-

Peace de-
ferred until
Nov. 8.

¹ The battle was fought July 18.

² *qui*] quæ, B. I.

³ *Wougesin*] Veugesin, B. D. I.

⁴ *Yveri*] Yvere, B. D. I. The terms of peace were drawn up on the 7th of May, between Issoudun and

Charroux, and confirmed by Richard between Gaillon and Vaudreuil the same year. They are given in the *Fœdera* I. 66, "ex rotulo in The-saurar.;" of which there is a copy in the Trésor des Chartes.

terea rex Angliæ in eodem colloquio¹ reddidit Philippo regi Franciæ Alesiam sororem suam, quam ipse mox dedit in uxorem Johanni² comiti de Pontif.

A.D. 1193.
August.
Alais at last
surrendered.

Interim pagani, terram Sanctii³ regis Portugalensis devastantes, venerunt ad abbatiam de Alkubaz, et monachos de ordine Cisterciensi ibidem Deo servientes, et eis resistentes, interfecerunt, et procedentes inde venerunt ad aliam domum ejusdem ordinis; et monachi exeuntes eis obviam, ceciderunt ad pedes paganorum, vitam et misericordiam postulantes, et pagani miseri illorum vitam donaverunt illis; et audientes vitam et conversationem illorum, laudaverunt eos, dicentes quod salvarentur in ordine illo, si mulieres haberent. Est enim sciendum quod summa paganorum religio est luxuria.

Massacre of
monks by
the Mos-
lems in
Portugal.

They spare
a monastery
for the good
lives of the
monks.

Eodem anno Hugo⁴ Lincolnensis episcopus dedit Ricardo regi Angliæ M. marcas argenti, pro libertate Lincolnensis ecclesie redimenda: rex vero, ex consuetudine regum Anglorum prædecessorum suorum, petiit ab episcopo Lincolnensi singulis annis unum mantellum furratum de sabelinis, et pro hujus mantelli quietam clamantiam in perpetuum ab ipso rege et hæredibus suis, prædictus Lincolnensis episcopus dedit regi præfatam pecuniam, et recepit a rege cartam suam de quietam clamantiam.

Hugh, bishop
of Lincoln,
free his
church from
the annual
tribute of a
furred
mantle.

Interim Willelmus Eliensis episcopus, et cæteri nunciæ regis Angliæ, qui missi fuerant ad imperatorem, redierunt, dicentes quod forma illa pacis, quæ inter ipsum et regem Franciæ formata erat, non placebat im-

The bishop
of Ely re-
ports that
the peace
displeases
the emperor.

¹ in eodem colloquio] Rigord gives the date of the marriage of Alais, Aug. 20.

² Johanni] The count of Pontieu who married Alais was not John, but his son William III., who succeeded him in 1191; and died in 1221, leaving a daughter by Alais named Mary.

³ Sancti] Sancti, G.

⁴ Hugo] The history of this transaction is given by the biographer of S. Hugh, in the *Magna Vita*, edited by Mr. Dimock, pp. 183-188. Mr. Dimock mentions the existence of a copy of the act of release, in the *Registrum Remigi*, at Lincoln, and giving the date *Le Mans*, June 23, 1194; note, p. 185.

A. D. 1195.
The emperor
remits 17,000
marks of the
ransom.

peratori, quia ignominiosum esse videbatur imperatori, si rex Angliæ quicquam quietum clamaret quod in potestate sua non erat: et ad recuperandum quod rex Angliæ amiserat per captionem suam, perdonavit ei imperator de redemptione sua septemdecim millia marcarum argenti.

*Item colloquium inter Philippum regem Franciæ
et Ricardum regem Angliæ.*

Nov. 8.
Conference
of Richard
and Philip at
Verneuil.

Adveniente igitur termino colloquii, quod statuerunt inter se rex Angliæ et rex Franciæ, convenerunt prope Vernolium in octavis Omnium Sanctorum; et appropinquante hora colloquii, rex Angliæ appropiavit, ut cum rege Franciæ loqueretur; sed Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus venit obviam ei, et dixit ex parte regis Franciæ, quod non oporteret eum ita¹ festinare, quia rex Franciæ adhuc cum suis in consilio erat. Credidit itaque illi rex Angliæ, et reversus est ad locum unde venerat, et exspectans usque ad horam nonam noluit diutius exspectare; sed appropiavit, ut cum rege Franciæ loqueretur; et Philippus Belvacensis episcopus dixit ei coram rege Franciæ: "Dominus noster² rex Franciæ calumniatur te de fide læsa et perjurio, quia "jurasti, et fidem dedisti, quod venires hodie ad colloquium hora tertia, et non venisti, et ideo ipse te "defidat:" et sic finito colloquio uterque rex reversus est in terram suam.

The bishop
of Beauvais
accuses
Richard of
treachery in
not coming
earlier.

Nov. 10.
The French
burn Dieppe.

Et tertia die sequenti homines regis Franciæ faciebant in Normannia, et in aliis terris regis Angliæ, violentas prædationes cum tumultu: et venientes ad villam de Depe, quam rex Angliæ paulo ante reædificaverat, combusserunt eam, et naves quæ in portu erant, injecto igne Græco, in cineres redegerunt.

Philip comes
to Issoudun.

Deinde Philippus rex Franciæ, post multos variosque bellorum casus, venit cum exercitu suo ad Yssoudun,³

¹ ita] om. B. D. I.

² noster] om. B. D. I.

³ Yssoudun] Ysoudun, D. I.

et villam cepit, et castellum obsedit. Quod cum regi Angliæ nunciatum esset, qui tunc temporis morabatur in Normannia apud Vallem Rodoli, omnibus aliis negotiis suis prætermisissis, trium dierum itinera in unum concludens venit Yssoudun,¹ et castellum suum, quod rex Franciæ obsederat, intravit. Confluebat ergo ad eum undique armatorum copiosa multitudo. De cujus adventu rex Franciæ valde territus, petiit ab eo licentiam recedendi inde cum exercitu suo sine impedimento; quod cum ei negatum fuisset, petiit colloquium habere cum rege² Angliæ, et factum est ita.

A. D. 1198.
November.
and takes it.

Richard
comes to
the rescue.

Philip asks
for a parley.

In colloquio autem illo mediantibus archiepiscopis et episcopis, et viris utriusque partis quampluribus, præstitum est sacramentum hinc et inde, quod ab illo die, videlicet a die Sabbati proxima post festum Sancti Nicholai, pacem et concordiam inter se et homines suos et terras suas haberent, usque ad festum Sancti Hilarii proximo sequens; et tunc convenirent apud Lovers, ad pacem et finalem concordiam inter eos faciendam in majori audientia suorum. Et quia Nativitas Domini instabat, et prædicti reges non habebant in partibus illis, quod in tanta solemnitate regalibus expensis sufficeret, reversi sunt in regiones suas. Et rex Angliæ perrexit inde Pictavim; et fuit ibi in Nativitate Domini, quæ secunda feria evenit.

Dec. 9.
Truce made
until Jan
13, when the
kings are to
meet at
Louviers.

Richard
goes to
Poitiers
for Christ-
mas.

Interim Aldefonsus rex Castellæ congregato exercitu, in sola virtutis Dei misericordia fiduciam habens, commisit prælium cum exercitu paganorum, et eos confecit, et maximam illorum partem gladio interfecit, et cæteros a finibus suis fugavit.

Victory of
the king of
Castile.

Eodem anno canonici Eboracensis ecclesiæ sæpe et multum sollicitaverunt Hugonem Lincolnensem episcopum, ut ipse sententiam interdicti et suspensionis proferret in Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum.

The canons
of York
pray for a
sentence
against the
archbishop.

¹ *Yssoudun*] Ysoudun, D. I. | ² *cum rege*] om. Savile.

A.D. 1195. *The bishop of Lincoln refuses to suspend him, and the canons compare it to the pope.* Constat enim quod prædictus archiepiscopus non comparuit in conspectu domini papæ ad terminum sibi constitutum. Quibus præfatus Lincolnensis episcopus respondit, quod mallet suspendi quam archiepiscopum illum suspendere. Quo audito præfati canonici miserunt nuncios suos Romam ad Cœlestinum papam, conquerentes quod Lincolnensis episcopus, et cæteri iudices sui delegati, non processerunt secundum formam apostolici mandati.

Death of the bishop of Worcester. Eodem anno obiit Henricus Wigornensis episcopus;¹ cui successit in episcopatu illo Johannes de Constantiis, Rothomagensis ecclesiæ decanus.

Death of William de Fortibus. Eodem anno obiit Willelmus de Forz, comes Albemariæ; cui successit in comitatu illo Baldewinus de Betun, dono Ricardi regis Angliæ; et duxit uxorem comitissam Albemariæ.²

Death of Isaac of Cyprus. Eodem anno obiit Ysakius quondam imperator Cypri, quem Ricardus rex Angliæ expugnavit.

and of Guy of Lusignan. Eodem anno obiit Gwido quondam rex Jerusalem, cui rex Ricardus Angliæ vendiderat insulam Cypri.³ Quo defuncto, Aymery⁴ frater suus factus est dominus Cypri.

New marriage of Philip. Eodem anno Philippus rex Franciæ duxit sibi in uxorem filiam ducis de Genest⁵ in Alemannia:

¹ Henry de Soilli; see above, p. 15. He died Oct. 24, 1195, and his successor was consecrated Oct. 20, 1196. Gerv., 1597.

² *comitissam Albemariæ*] Hawisia, daughter of William I., son of king Stephen; she was married first to William Mandeville, earl of Essex, who died in 1189. According to the Chronicle of Meaux Abbey, ed. Bond, vol. i., p. 91, Baldwin of Bethune was her second husband; and William de Fortibus her third. But this account, which I have followed in a note on Benedict of Peterborough, ii. 92, is wrong;

for Baldwin was alive until 1211. The *Art de Verifier les Dates* gives Hawisia four husbands, William Mandeville, Geoffrey de Fortibus, Baldwin of Bethune, and William de Fortibus.

³ *Cypri*] de Cypri, D. I.

⁴ *Aymery*] Haymeri, G. Amalric II., king of Jerusalem, 1197-1205; king of Cyprus, 1195-1205; he was the fourth husband of queen Isabella.

⁵ *Genest*] Berthold V., duke of Merania, margrave of Istria, and duke of Dalmatia, 1187-1204. It is not easy to say which of his widely scattered territories is re-

quo facto Cnut rex Dacorum, frater prædictæ Botildæ reginæ Francorum, conquestus est Cœlestino papæ de injuria quam præfatus rex Franciæ fecerat sorori suæ, qui eam dimisit sine causa cognita. Conquestus est etiam de Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo, qui sine auctoritate apostolica, sedens pro tribunali, divortium fecit inter prædictum regem Franciæ et Botildam sponsam suam, sine cognitione causæ. Conquestus est etiam de Stephano¹ de Noyun, et Philippo Belvacensi, et Reginaldo Carnotensi, et Gwidone² Aurelianensi, et Rotrodo³ de Chaeluns episcopis, et de Roberto de Drues, et Lodowico de Blais,⁴ et Theobaldo de Campania, et Stephano⁵ de Neverz comitibus, et de Simone Castellano de Insula, et Petro de Maynil, et Valtero camerario regis Franciæ, baronibus; qui juraverunt coram Remensi archiepiscopo, quod prædicta Botilda, et filia comitis de Haynou,⁶ quæ fuerat uxor prædicti regis Franciæ, ita affines erant in consanguinitate, quod idem Philippus rex Franciæ nulla ratione debuit aut potuit præfatam Botildam habere uxorem. Et quamvis prædictus rex Dacorum paratus esset probare, illos falsum dixisse adversus eam testimonium, et quod divortium illud nullum fuit, nec teneri debuit; tamen, propter favorem regis Franciæ, noluit eum Cœlestinus papa in hac parte exaudire.

A.D. 1196.
Complaint of the queen to the pope, against the bishops who pronounced the divorce.

The pope favours the king of France.

presented by the word in the text. His daughter, commonly called Agnes, is named Maria by Rigord, who dates the marriage in June 1196.

¹ *Stephano*] of Nemours, 1188-1221.

² *Gwidone*] Henry of Dreux was bishop of Orleans from 1186 to 1198.

³ *Rotrodo*] of Perche, 1190-1201.

⁴ *Blais*] Bleis, B. I.

⁵ *Stephano*] Properly Peter of Courtenay.

⁶ *Haynou*] Hanov, B. Hanou, I. The names are summed up in D; "de aliis episcopis et comitibus et baronibus, et aliis viris quampluribus."

A D. 1194.
Dec. 25.

Septimus annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Richard
keeps
Christmas
at Poitiers.

The arch-
bishop of
Canterbury
at York.

Proposed
marriage of
Otho of
Saxony.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo sexto, qui est annus septimus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, idem rex fuit apud Pictavim die Natalis Domini, quæ feria secunda evenit. Et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ justitiarius, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, fuit eodem die apud Eboracum, missus ex parte regis loqui cum Willelmo rege Scottorum de matrimonio contrahendo inter Othonem filium Henrici ducis Saxonie, nepotem Ricardi regis Angliæ, et Margaretam filiam suam. Convenerat enim inter Ricardum regem Angliæ, et Willelmum regem Scotiæ, quod idem rex Scotiæ daret prædicto Othoni Margaretam filiam suam in uxorem cum toto¹ Loennais; et quod rex Angliæ daret Othoni, et filiæ regis Scotiæ, et hæredibus eorum, totam Northymbriam et comitatum Carleoli;² et rex Angliæ haberet in custodia totum Loennais³ cum castellis suis; et rex Scotiæ haberet in custodia totam Northymbriam et comitatum Carleoli⁴ cum castellis suis. Sed quia regina Scottorum tunc temporis prægnans erat, noluit rex Scotiæ stare prædictæ conventioni, sperans quod Dominus daret ei filium.

Dec. 29.
Election of
Philip of
Poitiers as
bishop of
Durham.

Eodem anno, quinto Natalis Domini die, Bertrannus,⁵ Dunelmensis ecclesiæ prior, occurrit Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Alvertonam; et ibi coram eo elegit magistrum Philippum clericum et familiarem Ricardi regis Angliæ, in Dunelmensem episcopum.

Letter of
the pope to
the Dean of
York.

Eodem anno⁶ Cælestinus papa, ad instantiam nunciorum decani et canonicorum Eboraci, in hac forma scripsit prædicto Simoni, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decano;

¹ *toto*] om. I.

² *Carleoli*] Cardeoli, D. I.

³ *Loennais*] Loenais, B. Leonais, D. I.

⁴ *Carleoli*] Cardeoli, D. I.

⁵ *Bertrannus*] Bertrannus, I. He

was prior of Durham from 1188 to 1209.

⁶ *Eodem anno decano*] omitted in B. D. I., with the letters following.

Epistola Cælestini papæ ad Simonem decanum Eboracensem, de administratione Eboracensis diocesis sibi commissa.

A. D. 1105.
Dec. 23.

“ Cælestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, dilecto filio
 “ Simoni, decano Eboraci, salutem et apostolicam benedic- The pope writes to Simon of Apulia, dean of York,
 “ tionem. Cum universalis ecclesiæ regimen nobis licet in-
 “ sufficientibus, Divina favente gratia, sit commissum, et
 “ singularum ex eis casibus præcavere teneamur, et utilitati
 “ bus providere. illud nobis est summo opere præcavendum,
 “ ne inde ecclesiæ in temporalibus vel spiritualibus detri-
 “ mentum incurrant, unde ipsarum honorem et commodum
 “ credimus procurare. Cum enim pensatis personarum meritis,
 “ et diligenter inspectis, aliquis juxta suorum exigentiam
 “ meritorum per nos fuerit suæ dignitatis potestate suspensus,
 “ et ab ecclesiarum prælatione ad tempus amotus, ne subditis
 “ pastoris cura privatis malignandi materia tribuatur, et
 “ occasio litigandi, eis in tali debemus providere persona,
 “ quæ et litigantium dirimere questiones, et subditorum ex-
 “ cessus corrigere noverit; et quantum sui officii debitum that since he has sus- pended the archbishop for contumacy,
 “ patitur, et dilgat et affectet. Inde est, quod cum Eboracensis
 “ archiepiscopus, ejus actibus exigentibus, et contumacia
 “ faciente, qui abusus patientia nostra neque a suis iniqui-
 “ tatis destitit, nec nostro se conspectui, indulto sibi miseri-
 “ corditer termino, præsentavit, ab usu pallii, et episcopalis
 “ officii executione, administratione quoque tam spiritualium
 “ quam temporalium, et beneficiorum perceptione, nostra sit
 “ auctoritate suspensus; discretioni tuæ auctoritate præsentium
 “ duximus indulgendum, ut cum consilio canonicorum in Ebo-
 “ racensi ecclesia residentium, clericorum Eboracensis diocesis
 “ excessus corrigere valeas; et querelantium tam clericorum he commits to the dean the care of discipline in the church and diocess.
 “ quam laicorum Eboracensis diocesis controversias, quæ
 “ judicio exigunt ecclesiastico terminari, canonicè diffinire;
 “ canonice severitate, appellatione remota, percellens eum qui
 “ super hoc contumaciter duxerit resistendum, donec eidem
 “ ecclesiæ aliter fuerit sollicitudine nostra provisum. Nulli
 “ ergo omnino hominum liceat hanc paginam nostræ conces-
 “ sionis infringere, vel ei ausu temerario contraire: si quis
 “ autem hoc attentare præsumperit, indignationem Omnipotentis
 “ Dei, et Beatorum Petri et Pauli Apostolorum Ejus, se
 “ noverit incursurum. Datum Laterani, x. kalendas Januarii
 “ pontificatus nostri anno quinto.”

A. D. 1185.
Dec. 23. *Epistola Celestini papæ universo clero archiepiscopatus Eboracensis, de suspensione Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi, et administratione concessa Simoni decano.*¹

The pope writes to the clergy of the province of York.

The charges against the archbishop have been examined by proper judges.

These fixed June 1, for his appearance at Rome.

“ Cœlestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, dilectis filiis
 “ universis abbatibus, prioribus, archidiaconis, decanis, et aliis
 “ clericis, comitibus et baronibus, et aliis in Eboracensi pro-
 “ vincia constitutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
 “ Quam misericorditer Romana ecclesia super facto Eboracensis
 “ archiepiscopi processerit, et honeste, si litterarum nostrarum
 “ tenorem, quas utraque partiam a sede apostolica diversis
 “ temporibus impetravit, diligenter attenditis, vobis poterit
 “ manifestius ac liquidius apparere. Cum enim significantibus
 “ dilectis filiis decano et capitulo Eboraci, et non paucis
 “ abbatibus, prioribus, et aliis ecclesie prelati in regno
 “ Angliæ constitutis, ad apostolatus nostri audientiam
 “ pervenisset, dictum archiepiscopum, pastoralis officii debito
 “ prætermisso, sæcularibus negotiis implicari, et non Divinis
 “ obsequiis, non clericis ordinandis, non ecclesiis dedicandis,
 “ non synodis celebrandis, non benedicendis abbatibus;
 “ sed venationibus et accupitio totius animi sui studium
 “ applicare, et exercere alia quæ commisso sibi officio pontificali
 “ et honori non modicum derogant; non statim formavimus
 “ judicium contra eum; sed inquisitionem fame ipsius
 “ venerabili fratri nostro Lincolnensi episcopo, et dilectis
 “ filiis archidiacono de Northampton, et priori de Pontefracto
 “ duximus committendam; cupientes ipsum archiepiscopum
 “ per interminationem suspensionis, si de his quæ nobis fuerant
 “ significata constaret, vel si ea legitime comprobari non
 “ possent, per exhibitionem canonicæ purgationis, quam ei cum
 “ tribus episcopis et totidem abbatibus feceramus indici, a suis
 “ excessibus deterrere, et ad veritatis tramitem revocare.
 “ Verum quoniam idem archiepiscopus, antequam citatio
 “ eorundem judicum pervenisset, ad sedem appellavit
 “ apostolicam, dicti judices juxta litterarum nostrarum
 “ tenorem, spatio ei trium mensium indulto, kalendas
 “ Junii, quo appellationem interpositam prosequi non
 “ differret, ipsi procuraverunt pro termino assignare.
 “ Deinde vero, cum archiepiscopus ipse iter arripisset
 “ ad sedem apostolicam

¹ This letter is omitted in MSS. B, D, I.

“ veniendi, timens ne propter inclementiam aeris aliquod per-
 “ sonæ ipsius periculum eveniret, a nobis litteris et nunciis
 “ postalavit, ut statutum sibi terminum deberemus miseri-
 “ corditer prorogare; nos vero precibus ipsius annuentes, et
 “ credentes quod eo citius de suis excessibus pœniteret, quod
 “ nos ad audiendas petitiones suas magis propitios et faciles
 “ inveniret, terminum usque ad octavas Beati Martini proximo
 “ præteritas, prosequendæ appellationis ad ipsum purgandum
 “ statuimus; memoratis iudicibus dantes nihilominus in man-
 “ datis, ut si tunc inde archiepiscopus nostro aspectui neglig-
 “ eret se præsentare, exinde juxta priorum litterarum tenorem
 “ in causa procederent, et quæ ipsis per easdem litteras man-
 “ data fuerant, exsequi procurarent. Cæterum memorato
 “ termino jam transacto, cum ad Romanam ecclesiam nec
 “ accesserit, nec aliquem miserit responsalem qui absentiam
 “ suam quolibet modo excusaret, ipsius inobedientiam et
 “ contumaciam attendentes, ipsum ab usu pallii, et pontificalis
 “ officii executione, administratione etiam tam temporalium
 “ quam spiritualium, ac perceptione beneficiorum, duximus
 “ suspendendum; memoratis iudicibus per apostolica scripta
 “ mandantes, ut eum per totam Eboracensem diocesim et pro-
 “ vinciam suspensum a nobis publice statuunt nunciare. Ideo-
 “ que universitati vestræ per apostolica scripta mandamus,
 “ quatenus eidem archiepiscopo, vel officialibus ejus, nec in
 “ spiritualibus nec temporalibus præsumatis aliquatenus re-
 “ spondere; sed si quas inter aliquos vestrum in Eboracensi
 “ diocesi positorum quæstiones oriri contingat, quæ iudicio
 “ ecclesiastico debeant terminari, ad audientiam dilecti filii
 “ nostri Simonis, Eboracensis decani, easdem controversias de-
 “ feratis, ipsius iudicium recepturi humiliter, et firmiter serva-
 “ turi; scientes nos eidem decano de solita sedis apostolicæ
 “ misericordia indulsisse, ut cum consilio canonicorum suorum
 “ in Eboracensi ecclesia residentium excessus corrigat cleri-
 “ corum, et eorum ac laicorum, qui ecclesiasticam audientiam
 “ exigunt, in Eboracensi diocesi definiat quæstiones. Datum
 “ Laterani, x. kalendas Januarii, pontificatus nostri anno
 “ quinto.”

A.D. 1195.
Dec. 23.

He asked
for a post-
ponement.

The 18th of
November
fixed.

The arch-
bishop
failed to
appear.

He is there-
fore sus-
pended.

The dean
of York will
act as judge
in cases of
discipline.

A D. 1185.
Dec. 25.

*Item epistola Cælestini papæ contra Gaufridum
Eboracensem archiepiscopum.*¹

Letter of
the pope to
the judges
delegate.

The position
of the
Roman
Church.

The pope
has been
very patient
with the
archbishop
of York.

“ Cælestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili
 “ fratri Lincolnensi episcopo, et dilectis filiis archidiacono de
 “ Northampton et priori de Pontefracto, salutem et apostolicam
 “ benedictionem. Cum sacrosancta Romana ecclesia super
 “ immobile fundamentum, lapidem scilicet angularem et verum,
 “ perpetua stabilitate fundata, de Se Ipsa Veritate dicente,
 “ ‘ Super hanc petram edificabo ecclesiam Meam,’ per Beati ^{8. Matt. xvi.}
 “ Petri merita ecclesiarum omnium magisterium cepit et pri- ^{18.}
 “ matum; ad principem apostolorum Domino protestante, ‘ Si
 “ ‘ diligis Me, pæce oves Meas;’ et non solum corporum, sed ^{8. John xii.}
 “ etiam animarum, judicariam accepit potestatem; eodem apo- ^{17.}
 “ stolorum principe audiente a Domino: ‘ Quodcumque ligaveris
 “ ‘ super terram erit ligatum et in cælis:’ nos, quos non ^{8. Matt. xvi.}
 “ propria merita, sed sola Divina miseratio ad summi pontifi- ^{18.}
 “ catus apicem evocavit, si judicia nostra recta volumus et
 “ provida deliberatione formare, et potestate nobis tradita non
 “ abuti, illius debemus, quantum humana permittit fragilitas,
 “ exempla sectari, in quo sedes apostolica fundata consistit, et
 “ a quo cæterarum ecclesiarum curam suscepit, et ligandi
 “ atque solvendi plenitudinem potestatis. Mirabilis enim super
 “ omnia Deus, et inscrutabilis Divini consilii altitudo, licet
 “ incomprehensibilia sint judicia Ejus, et investigabiles viæ ^{8. Rom. xi. 33.}
 “ Ipsius; aliquid tamen ex his, quæ in inferioribus operatur,
 “ si recte conspiciamus, nobis et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis in
 “ forma judicii inuit imitandum, Qui cum sterilem arborem
 “ de vinea Sua juxta illud Evangelii præceperit succidendam,
 “ ne terram fertilem occuparet, præmisit, dicens: ‘ Ecce tres
 “ ‘ anni sunt, ex quo venio quærens fructum in ficulnia hac,
 “ ‘ et non inveno; succide ergo illam:’ hoc siquidem nos, ^{8. Luke xii.}
 “ licet minimi, et humanæ fragilitatis subjacentes defectibus, ^{7.}
 “ intra nos ipsos assidua meditatione pensantes; auditis ex-
 “ cessibus Eboracensis archiepiscopi, et de inhonesta vita et
 “ de inutili conversatione ejus rumoribus in nostra et fratrum
 “ nostrorum audientia recitatis, non statim formavimus judi-
 “ cium contra eum, sed exemplo Illius, Cujus miserationes ^{Ps. cxlv. 9.}
 “ super cætera opera Ejus, ut sterilis arbor pullularet in
 “ fructus, et virorem reciperet jam amissum, non modico tem-

¹ This letter is omitted in MSS. B. D. I.

"poris spatio ad correctionem ipsius, multiplicatis litteris et
 "mandatis, non destitimus laborare; nunc eum ad viam salutis
 "nostris monitis revocantes, nunc per interminationem sus-
 "pensionis officii et beneficii deterrentes ab iniquitatis suae
 "semitis et erroris, sicut vobis, qui totam rei seriem et pro-
 "cessum negotii quoad ordinem agnovistis, credimus mani-
 "festum. Sane ad audientiam nostram ex personarum et
 "capituli Eboracensis ecclesiae insinuatione pervenit, et id
 "ipsum dilectorum nostrorum Roberti de Eboraco et Rogeri
 "de Selebi et aliorum undecim abbatum Præmonstratensis
 "ordinis testimonia manifeste declarare videntur, quod Gau-
 "fridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus sacramenta injuncti sibi
 "officii vilipendens, venatione, aucupatio, et aliis militaribus
 "curis inutiliter occupatus, ordinationi clericorum, ecclesia-
 "rum dedicationibus, aut synodis celebrandis, nec manum nec
 "operam post sui promotionem adhibuit, nec abbatem aliquem
 "benedixit; licet tam contra clericos quam abbates ad male-
 "dicendum et excommunicandum linguam consueverit, juxta
 "motum proprium, indiscrete laxare. Libertates ecclesiae suae,
 "ac consuetudines approbatas, evacuat ac subvertit; appella-
 "tiones, quæ solent esse ad remedium oppressorum, ad Ro-
 "manæ sedis injuriam reduxit in contemptum; et plures, pro
 "eo quod ad nos appellationem emisserant, vinculis fecit car-
 "ceralibus vehementer astringi. Personas ecclesiae suae, post
 "appellationem ad nos factam, honoribus et beneficiis spolia-
 "vit; quosdam canonicorum appellatione contempta excom-
 "municationi subjecit; privilegia Romanorum pontificum in
 "ejus præsentia sua omnino auctoritate frustrantur; et qui
 "forte alias tutus esset, in ostensione privilegii nostri, optati
 "coram eo præsidii beneficium demeretur. Cum contingit ali-
 "quem ad subtractam sibi ecclesiam vel possessionem per
 "judices delegatos auctoritate nostra restitui, eum, per quem
 "judicium debuerat executioni mandari, statim sentiet inimi-
 "cum. Plures enim taliter restitutos destituit, et ecclesias
 "suas per ministros suos violenter aggrediens fores earum
 "fregisse, et eos proponuntur per violentiam expulisse; quam-
 "plures etiam regum perjuri fecit perniciose incurrere; ipsos
 "ab obedientia, quam archidiaconis suis canonicè servandam
 "jramento promiserant, quadam necessitatis violentia retra-
 "hendo; præterea majorem ecclesiam cum multitudine arma-
 "torum aggrediens, fores capituli per violentiam confringi
 "et asportari fecit, et bona canonicorum et clericorum plu-
 "rium, qui res suas tam in ecclesia quam in thesauraria ibi
 "deposuerant, fecit per potentiam detineri: pro quibus on-

A D. 1395.
Dec. 23.

The charges
made
against him.

His neglect
of duties.

His tyranny
over his
canons and
contempt of
the papal
privileges.

His violence
in the
minster.

A D. 1105, Dec. 23. " nibus Eboracense capitulum ad nostram præsentiam appellavit. Comperimus etiam ex testimonio prædictorum, quod ecclesiis quandoque vacantibus, præsentatas sibi ab his ad quos præsentatio pertinet personas idoneas non admittit; sed eas aut pueris et minus honestis personis assignat, usus pariter et præsentantis et instituentis officio, aut facit eas de sola voluntate vacare, ut earum fructus usibus ipsius applicentur; et quod sustentationi alienus honesti clerici debebatur, sibi non metuit retinere. Adjecerunt etiam, quod cum spiritalia dona gratis debeant et sine pravitate distribui, frequenter cum donat ecclesiam, aut eam scindit per partes contra statuta canonica, vel in ea sibi novam et indubitam retinet possessionem; et quamplures excommunicatos vel suspensos, non nisi pecunia interveniente absolvit. religiosi vero et honesti viri in conspectu ejus despecti et contemptibiles fiunt; viles et suspectæ personæ de facili familiaritatem ejus et gratiam asequuntur. Nos vero de rumoribus tam profanis auditis non semel, sed sæpius, et tam prædictorum quam aliorum prælatorum in regno Angliæ et in Eboracensi provincia positorum litteris, nostris auribus frequentius inculcatis, volentes eum a suis excessibus deterrere, et ad exsequendum pastoralis officii debitum revocare, inquisitionem famæ ipsius vobis duximus committendam, ut convocatis abbatibus et prioribus, et aliis ecclesiasticis personis Eboracensis diocesis, inquireretis de præmissis diligentius veritatem; et si accusatores legitimi procederent contra eum, auditis quæ proponerentur hinc inde, et depositionibus testium redactis in scriptis, eas sigillorum vestrorum signatas minime ad sedem apostolicam transmittere deberetis; assignato partibus termino competentis, quo ad audiendam sententiam nostro se conspectui præsentarent. Hoc etiam eisdem litteris meminimus fuisse insertum, ut deficientibus accusatoribus, si fama publica faceret contra eum, purgationem ipsius cum tribus episcopis et totidem abbatibus, sublato appellationis obstaculo, indicare curetis. In qua si forte deficeret, ipsum ab archiepiscopali officio et administratione suspensum, nostro faceretis conspectui præsentari; si vero archiepiscopus memoratus, antequam citatio vestra perveniret ad ipsum, ad sedem apostolicam appellaret, induciis ei mensium indultis trium, si infra eos interpositam appellationem prosecqui negligeret vel differret, ipsum ab omni pontificali officio, et archiepiscopatus administratione, nostra nunciaretis auctoritate suspensum. Quia vero idem archiepiscopus antequam per vos citaretur

His im-
proper use
of patron-
age.

His avarece.

The exami-
nation of
these
charges has
been made.

" ad causam, sicut nobis suis litteris et nunciis intimavit, A.D. 1125.
 " sedem curavit apostolicam appellare, et vos ei ad prose- Dec. 23.
 " quendam appellationem kalendas Junii pro termino assig- The post-
 " nastis, ipsius laboribus et expensis parcere disponentes, ac ponement
 " timentes, si æstivo tempore ad urbem accederet, aliquod of the day
 " personæ ipsius ex aeris inclementia periculum proveniret, for appear-
 " cum, sicut nobis intimatum fuerat, iter arripisset ad sedem ing at Rome.
 " apostolicam veniendi, et paratus existeret de objectis sibi
 " criminibus respondere, de solita sedis apostolicæ benignitate,
 " prosequendæ appellationis ab ipso usque ad octavas Beati
 " Martini proximo præteritas, terminum duximus prorogan-
 " dum; omnia quo fuerant contra eum impetrata usque ad
 " eundem terminum suspendentes, et revocantes in statum
 " pristinum quicquid contra eum post appellationem ad nos
 " interpositam priorum litterarum obtentu fuisset a nobis vel
 " aliis immutatum. Vobis etiam per apostolica scripta d. The conti-
 " trictè mandavimus, ut nisi in octavis Sancti Martini nostro nancy of the
 " conspectui se præsentaret juxta formam primæ commissionis, are Bishop.
 " sublato cujuslibet contradictionis et appellationis obstaculo,
 " procedere nullatenus differretis. Verum quoniam memoratus
 " archiepiscopus abusus patientia nostra, nec ad Romanam
 " ecclesiam accessit, nec responsalem aliquem destinavit qui
 " vel ejus absentiam excusaret, cum eum non modicum ultra
 " præfixum sibi terminum misericorditer curaverimus expect-
 " tare, licet eo ipso videatur confessus de crimine, quod nostro He is sus-
 " se conspectui præsentare neglexit; ipsum ab usa pallii et pended
 " omnis episcopalis officii executione, a ministrations quoquo
 " tam spiritualium quam temporalium, et beneficiorum per-
 " ceptione ipsius Eboracensis ecclesiæ et provinciæ duximus
 " suspendendum; ut sic saltem a suæ iniquitatis pertinacia
 " respiciens canonicæ severitatis censuram in se non exigat
 " fortius exerceri. Ideoque discretioni vestræ per apostolica The dele-
 " scripta mandamus, atque præcipimus, quatenus eum per gates are
 " omnes ecclesias Eboracensis diocesis et provinciæ suspen- to dis-
 " sum a nobis publice nunciatis; omnibus clericis et laicis tance
 " ejusdem provinciæ ex parte nostra firmiter injungentes, ne the suspen-
 " ipsi archiepiscopo vel officialibus ejus in temporalibus vel sion
 " spiritualibus respondere præsumant, donec de ipso archiepi-
 " scopo aliud duxerimus statuendum. Mandamus autem, et per
 " vos volumus in Eboracensi diocesi nunciari, ut si forsitan
 " inter aliquos quæstiones moveri contingat, quas ecclesiastico
 " judicio conveniat terminari, ad audientiam dilecti filii nostri The dean of
 " Simonis, Eboracensis decani, cui, cum consilio canonicorum York is to
 " in eadem ecclesia residentium, et clericorum excessus com- act as judge
 " mittimus corrigendos, et litigantium tam clericorum quam in spirituals.

A. D. 1105.
Dec. 23.

The inquiry
into the
cause is
to be pro-
ceeded with.

The arch-
bishop's
sentences
against the
canons are
null.

“ laicorum controversias decidendas, referant ipsius iudicium
“ suscepturi humiliter, et firmiter servaturi. Adhæc omnia,
“ quæ auctoritate litterarum nostrarum, antequam ad vos
“ secundarum notitia pervenisset, super negotiis eundem archi-
“ episcopum contingentibus, tam restitutionibus ablatorum
“ quam de aliis, provide et rationabiliter statuistis, rata de-
“ cernimus permanere: mandantes ut, auctoritate nostra suf-
“ fulti, ad Eboracensem ecclesiam accedentes juxta priorum
“ litterarum tenorem, tam inquisitione fama, quam restitu-
“ tione ablatorum canonicis facienda, nihilominus procedatis,
“ non impediende appellatione vel absentia archiepiscopi me-
“ morati, nec obstantibus litteris in primarum litterarum præ-
“ iudicium hactenus impetratis. Ad hæc, præsentium vobis
“ auctoritate injungimus, quatenus sententiam excommunica-
“ tionis in quosdam canonicos, vicarios, clericos, et servientes
“ canonicorum Eboracensis ecclesie, ab eodem archiepiscopo
“ post appellationem ad nos interpositam promulgatam, irri-
“ tam judicetis penitus et inanem; ita tamen, ut dictos cano-
“ nicos, et alios in eadem sententia nominatos, ad majorem
“ cautelam auctoritate apostolicæ sedis absolvatis. Omnes
“ autem illos qui in Benedictum clericum supradicti decani,
“ Gualterum presbyterum, Ricardum de Semare, et quinque
“ de Cava clericos, et alios clericos Eboracensis ecclesie¹
“ manus temerarias injecerunt, vel qui eis violentiam præce-
“ perunt inferri, tandem nuncietis, appellatione remota, excom-
“ municationis vinculo detineri, donec passis injuriam congrue
“ satisfecerint, et cum vestrarum testimonio litterarum ad
“ sedem veniant apostolicam absolvendi. Quod si omnes his
“ exsequendis nequiveritis interesse, duo vestrum ea nihilomi-
“ nus exsequantur.² Datum Laterani, x. kalendas Januarii,
“ pontificatus nostri anno quinto.”

A. D. 1106.
The arch-
bishop's
officials dis-
posed.

Harum³ igitur auctoritate litterarum, officiales archi-
episcopi Eboracensis depositi sunt; licet Hubertus Can-

¹ *Gualterum—ecclesia*] For these names MS. G. has only “et alios “ quamplures.” This is very un-
fortunate, as the reading of the
word given above as “Cava” is
very uncertain in MS. A., the only
one in which the passage is found.
Savile read it “Cavel,” and it may
also be read “Caud.” In this we

may detect *Cawood*, the castle of
the archbishops of York. But *Cave*
is also in Yorkshire, and, on the
whole, seems the safest reading.

² *nequiveritis — exsequantur*] om.
G.

³ *Harum, &c — Eboraci*] omitted
in MSS. B. D. I.

tuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, eis
 licentiam exercendi officium suum retribuerat; qui eos
 prius suspenderat, quia noluerunt eum hospitari apud
 Eboracum tanquam legatum. Tradita est ergo omnis
 potestas Simoni decano Eboraci, secundum apostolici
 formam mandati; et regis ministri omnes res et pos-
 sessiones præfati archiepiscopi regiis incluserunt mar-
 supiis.

A. D. 1186

The dean
becomes all-
powerful.

Interim Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus in
 hac forma scripsit officialibus archiepiscopatus Eboraci;¹

*Epistola Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi,
 apostolicæ sedis legati.*

" Hubertus, Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius
 " Angliæ primas, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, dilectis in Christo
 " filiis officialibus archiepiscopatus Eboraci, salutem in Domino.
 " Litteras domini papæ in hæc verba suscepimus: ' Cælestinus
 " episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili fratri Huberto
 " Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et apostolicæ sedis legato, salu-
 " tem et apostolicam benedictionem. Ex parte tua in audi-
 " entia fuit nostra propositum, quod multi sunt in Anglia,
 " qui ut sepulcrum Domini visitarent, et illi terræ sanctæ, in
 " qua steterunt pedes Domini, subsidium opportunum con-
 " ferrent, crucem Dominicam assumpserunt; et licet votum
 " possint perficere, tamen ab executione ejusdem se sub-
 " trahunt, in suarum periculum animarum. Sunt etiam qui-
 " dem qui, licet crucem susceperint, pro paupertate tamen
 " et corporis debilitate, vel² alia justa causa, emissum votum
 " non possunt, sicut convenit, adimplere. Verum quia quid
 " super his agendum sit circa nos duxit fraternitas tua con-
 " sulendos, auctoritate tibi presentium respondemus, per apo-
 " stolica scripta tibi mandantes, quatenus omnes illos qui vo-
 " tum tale emisserunt, sicut dictum est, et ad illud explendum
 " propriæ suppetunt facultates, nisi ex justa causa omitten-
 " dum, eos ad exsequendum, quod gratis vorisse dicuntur,
 " per censuram ecclesiasticam, appellatione remota, compul-
 " las. Cæterum de his, qui paupertate et corporis debili-

January
The arch-
bishop
writes to
the officials
of the see of
York.He has
received
letters from
the pope,
dated Jan.
13, 1186,
urging a
crusade.Persons
who have
made the
vow are
to be com-
pelled to
fulfil it.

¹ This letter is omitted in MSS. | ² *vel* non, A.
B. D. I.

A. D. 1190.
January.

The arch-
bishop di-
rects search
to be made
in the parish
churches
for such
persons :

Their names
to be given
in before
Michael
Sunday,
March 31.

People are
to be urged
to fulfil their
vows :

and to re-
sume the
cross before
Passion
Sunday,
April 7 :

“ tate, vel alio justo impedimento, votum quod emisisse
“ noscuntur, non possunt, sicut convenit, adimplere; volumus
“ ut, cum super his tibi fuerit veritas declarata, poenitentia
“ congrua eis injuncta, licentiam eis tribuas remanendi; eis-
“ dem firmiter injungens, ut quam cito exsequendi votum
“ suum libera eis fuerit attributa facultas, id exsequi sine
“ dilatione aliqua non postponant. Hi vero quos pro infir-
“ mitate corporis tibi constiterit nullatenus posse in propria
“ persona votum suum prosequi, unam personam idoneam,
“ vel plures, secundum quod facultates eorum suppeterint,
“ ultra mare transmittant in suis expensis, per annum vel
“ amplius, juxta tuam arbitrium, ibidem in Jesu Christi
“ obsequio moraturos. Datum Laterani, secundo idus Janu-
“ arii, pontificatus nostri anno quinto.’ Quoniam igitur
“ vovete et non reddere periculosum est, cum ex votis que
“ solemniter emissa fuerint, non impletis, consequens sit,
“ et Deum offendi, et nihilominus in domo Ejus scandala
“ suboriri: litterarum, quas transcribimus, auctoritate vobis
“ precipiendo mandamus, quatenus per singulas parochiales
“ ecclesias archiepiscopatus Eboraci, de his qui pro visitando
“ sepulcro Domini crucem assumentes, vota sua Domino non
“ solverint, diligenter et sollicito inquiratis; sub intermina-
“ tione anathematis generaliter inhibentes, ne in præjudicium
“ scrutiniis hujus vesana enjusquam taciturnitate veritas sup-
“ primatur; cumque nomina singulorum, vel eorum confessio,
“ vel certa vestrorum inquisitio designabit; ipsa distincte no-
“ tata, infra Dominicam qua cantatur ‘Lætare Jerusalem,’ per
“ fidelem nuncium nobis innotescant. Ad hoc discretionis vestræ
“ mandantes, injungimus, quatenus causam Crucifixi constanti
“ patrocinio prosequentes, universos tales in diocesi Eboracensi
“ caritative velit is cohortatione, et conventiones sedula
“ prævenire; sub specie consilii proponentes, ut fideliter im-
“ pleant que liberaliter promiserunt; ut quod Domino vove-
“ runt in conspectu omnis populi Ejus, cum propheta, in atriis
“ domus Domini in medio Jerusalem exsequantur; sicque
“ voluntariis eorum sacrificiis placetur Altissimus, et factis
“ solutionibus evacuetur importunitas scandalorum. Moneatis
“ etiam prædictos omnes et singulos, quatenus in veræ devo-
“ tionis signum, infra diem Passionis Dominicæ proximo futu-
“ ram, crucem depositam reassumant, et eam cum reverentia
“ et veneratione gestantes, suam obnoxietatem, qua interius
“ astringuntur, exteriore signaculo protestentur, et in quibus
“ fructum habituri sunt plenum et abundantem, nequaquam
“ ex pusillanimitate spiritus erubescant. Cæterum si vel
“ commonitiones hujusmodi quasi vanas contempnant, vel ad

“ eas quasi duras pertinaciter aures suas obturent; ne impu- A.D. 1198.
 “ nitis licentia injiciatur, certa generali faciatis assertione January.
 “ proponi, cunctos, qui citra voti solutionem crucem abjectam
 “ infra terminum nominatum non receperint, in sequenti Pascha
 “ Domini proculdubio a perceptione Corporis Christi et com- or at Easter
 “ munione fidelium excludendos. Sed ne verba commonitionis they will be
 “ hujus credantur, vel censura in irritum, vel effectu debito excluded
 “ caritura, pœnam supradictam in omni forma, et ea pleni- from Com-
 “ tudine qua præmittitur, die prædicta contumacibus univer- munion.
 “ sis volumus, et auctoritate apostolica mandamus infligi.¹ Sic
 “ enim ex tempestivo rigoris seminario fructus iste pullulabit
 “ in posterum, ut veriore trutina ponderetur² cum severitate
 “ canonica prælatorum auctoritas; et. qui faciles erant ruituri
 “ in contemptum, securam indemnitate minus audacter ex-
 “ spectent. Valete.”³

¹ *sed ne—infligi*] om. G.

² *ponderetur*] *panderetur* A.

³ *ut veriore—Valete*] om. G.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—570.]

CATALOGUE
OF
RECORD PUBLICATIONS
ON SALE

BY

**Messrs. Longman & Co., and Messrs. Trübner & Co., London ;
Messrs. James Parker & Co., Oxford and London ;
Messrs. Macmillan & Co., Cambridge and London ;
Messrs. A. & C. Black, Edinburgh ;
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.**

CONTENTS.

	Page
CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c. - - - - -	3
CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES - - - - -	9
PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c. - - - - -	25
WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY - - - - -	30

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[IMPERIAL Svo., cloth. Price 15s. each Volume or Part.]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the present Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls :—

CALENDARUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. Edited by CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1856-1865.
Vol. I.—1547-1580. | Vol. II.—1581-1590.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANN EVERETT GREEN. 1867-1869.
Vol. III.—1591-1594. | Vol. V.—1598-1601.
Vol. IV.—1595-1597. |

Of the above series, five volumes are published, extending from 1547 to 1601.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1857-1859.

Vol. I.—1603-1610. | Vol. III.—1619-1623.
Vol. II.—1611-1618. | Vol. IV.—1623-1625, with Addenda.

Mrs. Everett Green has completed a Calendar of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of James I. in four volumes. The mass of historical matter thus rendered accessible to investigation is large and important. It throws new light on the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the particulars connected with the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward Coke; and other matters connected with the reign.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. 1858-1869.

Vol. I.—1625-1626. | Vol. VII.—1634-1635.
Vol. II.—1627-1628. | Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. III.—1628-1629. | Vol. IX.—1635-1636.
Vol. IV.—1629-1631. | Vol. X.—1636-1637.
Vol. V.—1631-1633. | Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. VI.—1633-1634. | Vol. XII.—1637-1638.

This Calendar is in continuation of that of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of James I., and will extend to the Restoration of Charles II. It now comprises the first fourteen years of the reign of Charles I., but is in active progress towards completion, presenting notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers into the history of the period to which it relates. Many of these documents have been hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860-1866.

Vol. I.—1660-1661. | Vol. V.—1665-1666.
Vol. II.—1661-1662. | Vol. VI.—1666-1667.
Vol. III.—1663-1664. | Vol. VII.—1667.
Vol. IV.—1664-1665. |

Seven volumes, of the period between 1660 and 1667, have been published.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509-1589.
Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589-1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543-1592; and the State

Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568-1587.

The above two volumes of State Papers relate to Scotland, and embrace the period between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are notices of the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860-1867.

Vol. I.—1509-1573. | Vol. II.—1574-1585.

The above have been published under the editorship of Mr. Hans Claude Hamilton; another volume is in progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. Edited by W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860-1862.

Vol. I.—America and West India, 1574-1660.

Vol. II.—East India, China, and Japan, 1513-1616.

These volumes include an analysis of Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862-1867.

Vol. I.—1509-1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515-1518.

Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519-1523.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547-1553. Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553-1558. Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest.

A valuable series of Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merits a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. The domestic affairs of England are of course passed over in these volumes, which treat only of its relations with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A.*, of University College, Durham. 1863-1869.

Vol. I.—1558-1559.

Vol. II.—1559-1560.

Vol. III.—1560-1561.

Vol. IV.—1561-1562.

Vol. V.—1562.

Vol. VI.—1563.

These six volumes contain a calendar of the Foreign Correspondence of Queen Elizabeth, from her accession in 1558, to 1563, of which the originals, drafts, or contemporary copies, are deposited in the Public Record Office, &c. These documents are of the greatest value as exhibiting the position of England at one of the most interesting periods of history, in regard to its relations with France, Scotland, Spain, and Germany. They are of especial importance as illustrating not only the external but also the domestic affairs of France during the period which immediately preceded the outbreak of the first great war of religion under the Prince of Conde and the Duke of Guise.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Vol. I.—1557-1696. *Edited by JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq.* 1868.

The Papers connected with the administration of the affairs of the Treasury, from 1556-7 to 1696, comprising petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c., are calendared in this volume. They illustrate civil and military events, financial and other matters, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A.*, Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and *WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq.* 1867-1870.

Vol. I.—1515-1574.

Vol. III.—1589-1600.

Vol. II.—1575-1588.

Vol. IV.—1601-1603.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland deposited in the Lambeth Library are not only unique in themselves, but are of great importance. Four volumes of the Calendar of these valuable Papers have been published, extending from 1515 to 1603, which cannot fail to be welcome to all students of Irish history. Another volume is in the press.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPACHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by G. A. BERGENROTH.* 1862-1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485-1509.

Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509-1525.

Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain, and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katharine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864-1869.

Vol. I.—1202-1509,

Vol. II.—1509-1519,

Vol. III.—1520-1526.

Of the Papers in the Venetian archives, Mr. Rawden Brown has published three volumes of his Calendar, extending from 1202 to 1526, and has made considerable progress in the fourth volume. Mr. Brown's researches have brought to light a number of important documents relating to the various periods of English history, and his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price 2s. 6d.*

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price 2s. 6d.*

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S *Fœdera*. *By* THOMAS DUFFY HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.—Edw. III.; 1066-1377. 1869.

The "*Fœdera*," or "*Rymer's Fœdera*," is a collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "*Fœdera*" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

In the Press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617-1621.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. IV.—1524, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham; and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., B.A., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. VII.—1564-1565.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A.; and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. XIII.—1638.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. VI.—1601-1603, with Addenda, 1547-1565.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. IV.—1527, &c.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. Vol. V.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Vol. II.—1697, &c. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA; with Index. Vol. II.

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. III.—1586, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. Hen. VIII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo., half-bound. Price 10s. each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. **THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND**, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.* 1858.

Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. **CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON**. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard.* 1858.

This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.

3. **LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR**. I.—*La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Roi*. II.—*Vita Beati Edwardi Regis et Confessoris*. III.—*Vita Æduardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit*. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.* 1858.

The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,688 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., and probably written in the year 1243, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between the years 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between the years 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. **MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA; scilicet**, I.—*Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam*. II.—*Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ*. III.—*Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ*. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.* 1858.

This volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It has been the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed.

5. **FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO**. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTFR, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by the Rev. W. W. SHURLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.* 1858.

This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written, the disputes of the school-

men had been extended to the fact of marriage, and that record both in the writings of Wulfstan and in those of his successors. The usual custom however of times are not less remarkable than elsewhere, and the contrast between Scandinavian and English laws and its effect with the contrast between the different conceptions of marriage. The work gives a good idea of the public opinion at the end of the tenth and the beginning of the next century.

6. **THE BOOK OF THE CONSTITUTIONS OF SCOTLAND; OR, A METRICAL VERSION OF THE HISTORY OF ROBERT BROWN; BY WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by W. B. TURNER, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Esquire-at-Law. 1828.**

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Poem of Chaucer, and was written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the death of Edward, and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "concluding of the treaty that was then." Great accuracy of statement is said to be observed, but such a work as this; but the stories of the construction of David, Edward, and Boniface are interesting if not true; and the chronicle is valuable as a specimen of the language, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The particulars of the poetical character well illustrated in the metrical version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern dialects, Scotch.

7. **JOHANNES CAPORAVI LIEBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS. Edited by the Rev. F. C. HENNINGTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1828.**

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three distinct parts, each having its own separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the houses, and extends from the coronation of Henry I. the First to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, and extends from the accession of Henry I. in the year 1100, to the year 1444, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

Caporavi was born in 1380, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for the history of which period his work is of some value.

8. **HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS, BY THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. Edited by CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1828.**

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent near 1000. Printed in a chronology as far as 1440, which shows in some what was to have been the duration of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norwich, and most probably with Fressingfield, whence he derived his name.

9. **ENCLICHUM (HISTORICARUM SIVE TEMPORIS): CHRONICON AB OLYE CONDITO usque ad ALBUM INNOCENTI 1266; a Monacho quodam Malthe scriptum existunt. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by F. S. HAYDN, Esq., B.A. 1825-1828.**

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward I., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Westminster, in Westminster, about the year 1267. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1443, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially

of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of these volumes are—(1) a life of Henry VII. by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in the year 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest in connexion with the period are given in an appendix.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. Edited by CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A Life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. MUNITMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS: Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. Edited by HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and early part of the fifteenth centuries.

The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the fourteenth century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OKENEDES. Edited by Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.II. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in the year 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and

comes down to the year 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the kingdom, which are not to be elsewhere obtained, and some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us, through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. THE "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon—also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologici*."

16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA; 449-1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially), is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; OR, THE CHRONICLE OF THE PRINCES OF WALES. Edited by the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHUR, M.A. 1859.

This work, also known as "*The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales*," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Cadwallan at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. 1399-1404. Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1859.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation, to which it will materially contribute.

19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. BY REGINALD PRYSECK, SOMETIME Bishop of Chester. Vols. I. and II. Edited by CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1859.

The "*Repressor*" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born

about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual medieval reward—persecution.

20. *ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. Edited by the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.*

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in the year 447, and come down to the year 1289. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, which was also used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Bigewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. *THE WORKS OF GIRALDU'S CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V. and VI. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861-1869.*

The first three volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before, and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The *Topographia Hibernica* (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in the year 1183, the second in 1185-6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the *Topographia* of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* was written about the year 1189, and may be regarded rather

as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history.

Vol. VI. contains the *Itinerarium Cambriae et Descriptio Cambriae*.

22. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND.** Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.

The letters and papers contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Dépôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the line of policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and such other provinces of France as had been acquired by Henry V. We may here trace, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared to read of its final overthrow.

23. **THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES.** Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to the year 1154, is justly the boast of England; for no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In the present edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.

The Papers are derived from MSS. in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from these documents is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. **LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE,** illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LEARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (191 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. **DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.** Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066-1200. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862-1865.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials,

when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which the original portions are distinguished from those which are mere compilations. When possible, the sources are indicated, from which such compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice has also been given of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. **ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III.** Vol. I., 1216-1235. Vol. II., 1236-1272. *Selected and edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D.,* Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862-1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. **CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.**—1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272-1381; Vol. II., 1381-1422. 2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1307. 3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELowe ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1296; 1307-1324; 1392-1406. 4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMÆ WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIE PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA; Vol. I., 793-1290; Vol. II., 1290-1349; Vol. III., 1349-1411. 5. JOHANNIS AMUNDESHAM, MONACHI MONASTERII S. ALBANI, IT VIDEUR, ANNALES; Vol. I. *Edited by HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A.,* of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1870.

In the first two volumes is a history of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., written by Thomas Walsingham, precentor of St. Albans and prior of the cell of Wymundham, belonging to that abbey. Walsingham's work is printed from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the third volume is a Chronicle of English History, from 1259 to 1306, attributed to William Rishanger, monk of Saint Albans, who lived in the reign of Edward I., printed from the Cottonian Manuscript, Faustina B. IX. (of the fourteenth century) in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219-231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cottonian Manuscript Claudius E. III., fols. 306-331: Also an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol by King Edward I., 1291-1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., attributed to William Rishanger above mentioned, but on no sufficient ground. A short Chronicle of English History, from 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A short Chronicle from 1297 to 1307, Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with an addition of Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1299, 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History,

1295 to 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : and a fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1285 to 1307, from MS. 14 C. 1 in the Royal Library.

In the fourth volume is a Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : Annals of King Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : A continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henricus de Blanesforde, from MS. Cotton Claudius D. VI. : A full Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer of St. Albans, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and an account of the benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the fifteenth century, from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The fifth, sixth, and seventh volumes (which form an entirely separate work), contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, and of the fortunes and vicissitudes of the house, from 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, Præcentor of the Abbey in the reign of Richard II., and transcribed from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum; with a brief Continuation of the History, extracted from the closing pages of the Parker MS. No. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The eighth volume is in continuation of the Annals, containing a Chronicle, supposed to have been written by John Amundesham, a monk of that monastery.

29. **CHRONICON ABBATIE EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMLE ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418.** Edited by the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. **RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIE.** Vol. I., 447-871. Vol. II., 872-1066. Edited by JOHN E. B. MATOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863-1869.

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355-1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sadbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Britannie*, in 1747.

31. **YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST.** Years 20-21, 30-31, and 32-33. Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1866.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, and have been held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and were received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of the attention of the general reader on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. **NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY: 1449-1450.**—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normannie: Le Recouvrement de Normandie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conférences

between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in the year 1450. The history commences with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ends with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The whole period embraced is less than two years.

33. *HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ.* Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.* 1863-1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. *ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ.* *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.* 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre; and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. *LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest.* Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1864-1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. *ANNALES MONASTICI.* Vol. I.:—*Annales de Margan, 1066-1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066-1263; Annales de Burton, 1004-1263.* Vol. II.:—*Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519-1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1-1291.* Vol. III.:—*Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1-1297; Annales Monasterii de Bermundescia, 1042-1432.* Vol. IV.:—*Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016-1347; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066-1289; Annales Prioratus de*

Wigornia, 1-1377. Vol. V. :—Index and Glossary. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LEARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registry of the University, Cambridge. 1864-1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces an the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. *MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS.* From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barabugh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and, being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities he was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

38. *CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST.* Vol. I. :—*ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI.* Vol. II. :—*EPISTOLÆ CANTUARIENSIS;* the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864-1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. *RECUEIL DES CHRONIQUES ET ANCIENNES HISTOIRES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN.* Vol. I., Albida to 688. Vol. II., 1399-1422. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq. F.S.A. 1864-1868.

40. *A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, by JOHN DE WAURIN.* Albida to 688. (Translation of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

The curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV., to England in the year 1471, after the second deposition of

Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. **POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN**, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1865-1869.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. **LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVRE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE**. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livre de Reis de Engleterre." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French.

It is supposed that Peter of Ickham must have been the author, but no certain conclusion on that point has been arrived at.

43. **CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406**. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866-1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. **MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR**. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067-1253. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866-1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the 'Historia Major.' The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. **LIBER MONASTERII DE HYDA: A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER, 455-1023.** Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources, which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from, writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. **CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO 1135; WITH A SUPPLEMENT, CONTAINING THE EVENTS FROM 1141 TO 1150.** Edited, with a Translation, by WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked, year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are the invasions of foreigners and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the Library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. **THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I.** Vols. I. and II. Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1866-1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and that he lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum," in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, down to the death of Henry III., and in the third a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. **THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, OR, THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN.** Edited, with a Translation, by JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not himself an eye-witness, must have derived his information from those who were eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. **GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169-1192 ; known under the name of BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH. Vols. I. and II. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.**

This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. **MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD (in Two Parts). Edited by the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.**

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. **CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOUEDENE. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868-1870.**

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (see No. 49), but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree, showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work: it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. **WILLELMI MALMESBURIENSIS MONACHI DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI QUINQUE. Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.**

William of Malmesbury's "Gesta Pontificum" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

In the Press.

- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.
- OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited by* the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.
- ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES GRAYES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.
- THE WORKS OF GERALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. VII. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barburgh, Yorkshire.
- CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO IEROSOLYMIS. *Edited by* JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.
- ITER BRITANNIARUM: THE PORTION OF THE ANTONINE ITINERARY OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE RELATING TO GREAT BRITAIN. *Edited by* WILLIAM HENRY BLACK, Esq., F.S.A.
- YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 21-22. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.
- HISTORIC AND MUNICIPAL DOCUMENTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN, &c. 1172-1320. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland.
- THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. *Edited by* WILLIAM MACNELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A.
- CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE. *Edited by* FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.
- POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. III. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, M.A., of Magdalene College, Cambridge.
- THE ANGLO-LATIN SATIRISTS OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.
- DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and late Fellow of the University, Durham.
- DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. III.; 1200-1327. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L. Oxon., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

In Progress.

LIBER NIGER ADMIRALITATIS. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, D.C.L.,
Queen's Advocate-General.

THE METRICAL CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER. *Edited by* WILLIAM
ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge.

ORIGINAL LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GENERAL AND
DOMESTIC HISTORY. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM CAMPBELL, M.A.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUEZ ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT
BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN.
Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.

LIVES OF ARCHBISHOP DUNSTAN. *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN RICHARD
GREEN, M.A.

CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—5. JOHANNIS AMUNDESHAM, MONACHI
MONASTERII S. ALBANI, UT VIDETUR, ANNALES; Vol. II. *Edited by*
HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College,
Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

MATTHEI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA MAJOR. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS
LUARD, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, and Registry of the
University, Cambridge.

PUBLICATIONS
OF
THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

- ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARI ABBREVIATIO.** Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLATFORD, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25s. boards, or 12s. 6d. each.
- CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM.** Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 3 and 4, folio (1821—1828), boards: Vol. 3, *price* 21s.; Vol. 4, *price* 24s.
- LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS.** Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18s.
- ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM.** Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). *Price* 21s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4). *Price* 21s.
- STATUTES OF THE REALM.** *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHEY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 Vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31s. 6d. each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30s. each.
- VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus.** *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817—1834), boards. *Price* 25s. each.
. The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.
- ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI.** 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 Vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42s.
- FÆDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FÆDERA, New Edition.** Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, 1344—1377, folio (1825—1830); Vol. 4, 1377—1383 (1869). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOK, Esqrs. Vol. 3, *price* 21s. each Part; Vol. 4, *price* 6s.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31s. 6d.; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21s.

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed. Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21s. each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. *Edited by* SIR FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42s.

ROTULI LITFRABEM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81s., cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* SIR NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98s.; or separately, 14s. each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

. The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9s.

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28s.

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12s. 6d.

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18s.

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÀ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8s. 6d.; Vol. 2, *price* 2s. 6d.

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 Vols, royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42s.

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18s.

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30s.

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831—1837. 1 Vol. folio (1837), boards. *Price* 8s.

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," a codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbriht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Index and Glossary. *Edited by* ANDURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44s. Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36s.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4s. 6d.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records of the Department of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by HENRY COLE, Esq.* 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price 45s. 6d.*

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq.* 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price 2s. 6d.*

MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price 42s.*

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq.* Folio (1814). *Price 15s.*

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs.* *Price 42s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11; *price 10s. 6d.* each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq.* Folio (1839). *Price 10s. 6d.*

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII). 1478—1495. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq.* Folio (1839). *Price 10s. 6d.*

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq.* 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price 35s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 25s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq.* 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price 30s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 21s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq.* 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price 40s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 30s.*

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office.* 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price 12s.*

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is

placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40s.

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.* ; or separately, *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.

Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.

Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.

Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861-1863) boards. Price 4s. 6d. to 1*l.* 1s. each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 18*l.*

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish-ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late king; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, "it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

*For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed, Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribbles and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 683 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey. Price, each Part, double foolscap folio, with translations and notes, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865.

Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.). 1866.

Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.

Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580-3.

*Public Record Office,
July 1870.*

GENERAL BOOKBINDING CO.

TY CONTROL MARK


18









Stanford University Libraries

3 6105 005 614 495

94
67.
no. 51
v. 3

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

F/S JUN 30 2000

JUN 21 2001

JUL 07 2002

JAN 24 2003

